

# The right pleſaunt and goodly

Hiſtorie of the foure ſonnes of Amon. the which for the  
excellent endyng of it, and for the notable Proddes and great  
vertues that were in them: is no les pleaſaunt to  
rede, then woꝛthy to be knowne of  
all eſtares bothe hygh  
and lowe.







## The Prologue.



**S** the Philosopher in the fyrst booke of hys methaphysique sayth þæt euery man naturally desireth to know and to connewe thynges. And therfore haue the Clerkes & people of great vnderstandyng despised and coueite to lerned sciencēs and to know vertues of thynges. Some by Philosophy, other by Poetrie, and other by Histories and cronycles of thynges passed. And þpō these three they haue greatly laboured in suche þæt thanked be God, by theyr good diligence and laboures; they haue had greate knowledge by innumerable volumes of bookes, whiche haue been made and compyled by great studye & payne vnto this day. And bycause that aboue all thynges the princes & lordes of hie estate and entendement desyre to see the histories of the ryght noble and hie vertues of the predecessours whiche ben digne, and worthy of remembraunce of perpetual recommendation. Therfore late at þæt request and commaundement of the ryght noble and vertus Erie John Erie of Dreforde my good synfuler and especial lord I reduced & translated out of frenche into our maternall and Englyshe tongue the lyfe of one of his predecessours named Robert Erie of Dreforde tofore sayd wh diuerse & many grete myracles whiche God shewed for him as wel in his lyfe as after his death, as it is shewed all a longe in hys sayde booke. And also that my sayd Lord desyreth to haue other histories of olde tyme passed of vertues chival-

ry reduced in lykewyse into our Englyshe tongue: he late sent to me a booke in frenche conteynyng thactes and saytes of warre doone and made agaynst þæt great Emperour and king of fraunce Charlemayne by þæt. sonnes of Aymon, other wyse named in frenche, Les quatre filz Aymon. Whiche booke accordyng to hys request I haue endeoured me to accomplish and to reduce it into our englyshe, to my great coste and charges as in the translatinge as in enprynting of the same, hoppyng & nor doubtyng but that hys good grace shall rewarde me in suche wise that I shall haue cause to pray for his good and prosperus welfare, And besechyng his said noble good grace to pardon me of þæt rude and this simple worke for accordyng to the coppy whiche he set to me I haue folowed as nigh as I can, and where as any defeaute shall be founde I submyt me to the correction of them that vnderstande the cronycle & history besethyng the to correcte it & amende there as they shall fynde faute. And I shall praye almighty God for them that so doo to rewarde them in suche wyse that after this wyte and translatyng lyfe we all may come to euerlastyng lyfe in heuen. Amen.

¶ Thus endeth the prologue.

¶ Heere foloweth the Table of this presente booke.

A.ii.

who



**W**ho that wyl knowe the hi-  
story of the four noble and  
worthye knyghtes, named  
the four sonnes of Aymon, wherof  
the fyrste was called Reynawde, the  
seconde Blarde, the thyrde Guychard  
and the fourthe Rycharde: let hym first  
reade this presente table folowynge,  
In whiche men shal fynde that this  
presente booke conteyneth. xxviii. cha-  
pytres, whiche speaken of many fa-  
re and dyuerse matters, whiche they  
that shal reade this sayde chapytres  
shall now see the history all alonge.  
And ye shall see in this fyrst chapytre,  
howe that after kynge Charlemaigne  
was come agayne from the parties  
of Lombardy where he had had great  
and merueylouse battaylles ayenste  
the Sarasynghe helde vpon whiche  
daye open courtte at Parys where  
was a fayre felawshipp of Prynces  
and Barons, as ye shall heare after  
alonge. And in the same chapytre ye  
shall also see howe the same daye the  
duke Aymon of Ardeyne broughre  
to the courtte his four sonnes, that is  
to wit Reynawde, Blarde, Guychard  
and Rycharde, and howe kynge Char-  
lemaigne made theim knyghtes woth  
his owne handes, also howe the duke  
Benes of Aygremonce slew the  
eldest sonne of kynge Charlemain.  
the duke benes was vncle to the four  
sones of Aymon, and after howe the  
duke Benes of Aygremonce was slai-  
ne coming to Parys by the commaun-  
dement of kynge Charlemaigne after  
that he had appointed for the deach of  
his sonne. And also in this first chapy-  
tre men shal now see many other fa-  
re matters, whiche were to longe for

to be rehersed in this preamble of  
this present booke. fol. i.

**T**he seconde Chapytre sheweth  
howe Geyffon of haultefelle and  
Guenes after that they had slayne the  
Duke Benes of Aygremonce: resour-  
ned to Parys and recounted to kynge  
Charlemaigne the mortall treason that  
they had put to execucion, wherof the  
kynge was ryght glad and syn after  
he was ryghte soye for it. For after  
that the two bytherne of the Duke  
Benes made great warre ayenst him,  
and so dyd Gerarde of Roussillon, and  
Biron, and Hawgys the sonne of the  
duke Benes, and after they made pea-  
ce and accorded togyther. But the  
kynge Charlemain accorded not with  
the four sonnes of Aymon nor to the  
cousin Hawgys. Item howe Rey-  
nawde slew the newew of king Char-  
lemaigne with a chesse boorde as they  
played togyther at the chesse, wherof  
the warre began the whiche was so  
mortall and lasted so longe: that it  
bare a great domage to the realme of  
fraunce. fol. xiii.

**T**he thirde chapytre speaketh,  
howe after that kynge Charle-  
maigne hadde made all his batons to  
forsake the four sonnes of Aymon.  
He went and besyged them at mou-  
tenforde where he was discomfyred  
two tymes but the castelle of Mou-  
tenforde was taken after that, by  
treason. And after howe Reynawde  
and his bytherne auenged theim of  
the traytours that betrayed theim.  
And after saued theim selfe wothin  
the forrest of Ardeyne where they  
father

the table.

father found the as he went from the  
pyge to warde his londe of Dordoun.  
And howe for to keep his othe that he  
had made to kynge Charlemayne: he  
doyd assaile hys sonnes, so that of  
spue hundred menne that they were  
there abod on lyue with his sonnes but  
xviii. persones. But Reynawd and his  
brethern had none euil, but slew many  
of their fachers men. fol. xvi.

**T**he fourth chapytre sheweth how  
after that the olde Aimon had dis-  
comfyred his chyldren: they went  
and dwelled in the depeth of the forest  
of Ardeyne and abode there tyll that  
they were al councersayre blacke and  
rouge as wilde bestes for the greace  
hungre that they had suffred, and af-  
ter they went to Dordoun for to see their  
father that made them good here, and  
feasted them greatly. And gaue them  
of hauoyr so muche that they myghte  
well make war with anyst the king,  
and howe Margis their cosyn appoy-  
ned whan that they shoulde haue depar-  
ted, whiche went with them in to the  
realme of Gascoygne with spue hun-  
dred knyghtes. And whan they mo-  
ther sawe them departed she was for  
full sope. fol. xxi.

**T**he fyfthe chapytre sheweth how  
after that Reynawd and hys  
brethern with their cosyn mathe-  
wys were departed from their mother  
for to seeke their aduventure: they went  
so longe tyll they came to the realme  
of Gascoygne. And howe goyng thither  
warde they made manye euylles  
in Fraunce. And howe the kynge of

Gascoign whā they were come thither  
doyd receiue them in his seruise ryght  
sweetly in bourdeux vpon Gyzond, be-  
cause that whan this king of Gascoig-  
ne that was called Pon had warre a-  
gynst a kynge Sarasin that was entred  
in to Gascoygne, that had to name  
Dortus that helde Tholouse and all  
the londe aboute. fol. xxvi.

**T**he vi. chapytre speaketh how  
Reynawd and his brethern  
distressed bourgong a Sarasin that  
had destroyed the realme of Gascoign,  
and had chased the kynge pon to bour-  
deux vpon Gyzonde that durste not  
depart from thence, for feare of the Sa-  
rasyns. And howe kynge pon gaue his  
sister Clare vnto Reynawd to be hys  
wyfe, for the greace seruyse that he  
hadde doon to hym. And byd doo ma-  
ke for hym the castell of Pounta W-  
ban. fol. xxxviii.

**T**he seuenth chapytre speaketh  
how Charlemayne for a voya-  
ge that he made to saint James  
in Galys he knewe in his comynge  
agayne howe Reynawd and his bre-  
therne that were his mortalle enemyes  
were in Gascoygne with in a stronge  
castell called Pounta Wban. And howe  
he sene worde to kynge pon that he  
shoulde deliuer to him Reynawd and  
hys bretherne. And yf he refused  
to doo this: he shoulde come and  
besyge hym in hys londe afore. x. or  
xi. moneths were passed, wherof kyg  
pon answered that he shoulde not doo  
it. And howe after that kynge Char-  
lemayne was returned to Parys,  
A.iii. Howe



## The table

Rolande his newes arrived at  
Baris, which the kyng made knyght.  
And after sent him for to reple a siege  
afoze Colopne that a sarasyn had be-  
spaged, that was called Estofawde  
the which was ouercome by Rowland  
And howe Reynawde wan the crow-  
ne of Charlemayne for his well ren-  
nyng upon hys bape hoyle at Ba-  
rys. fol. xliii.

He. viii. chapitre speaketh how  
C Charlemayne went in to Gal-  
cogne with his host & besieged  
Reynawd and his bretherne within  
Mountatoban, and howe Reynawde  
wan the first bataill of the king, which  
Rowlande conduyred with Olpuet,  
and the bishop Turpin wherof Char-  
lemayne was so sore wrothe: that he  
wende to haue werred mad for it of the  
great shame that he had of it. fol. li.

He. ix. chapitre sheweth howe  
C Reynawde and his bretherne  
were betrayed and solde to king  
Charlemayne by kyng yon, that sent  
theym in to the playne of Alcolou-  
res all unarmed, but onely of theyr  
swords, rydinge vpon mules: they clo-  
thed with mantelles of scarlate fur-  
red with ermynes. From the whyche  
walle they escaped worthylly, by the  
wyll of our lord. But they were so  
re wounded. Of Charlemaynes par-  
tye abode there deade foulques of  
Mozillon, and many other barons for  
whome the kyng was ryghte sorre.  
fol. lvi.

He. x. chapitre speaketh, howe  
C after that Goodard the secter-  
rye of kyng yon had be wyaped

all the treason to Hagogys that the  
kyng yon had doone to hys cosyns  
whiche he knewe well. For he had  
seene kyng Charlemaynes lettres.  
And had wyrtten and were therupon  
from kyng yon, Hagogys brought to  
reynawde and hys, suche a succours  
that by his wyrt they were kepte from  
death. fol. lxxii.

He. xi. chapitre speaketh howe  
C by the succours that Hagogys  
brought to reynawd and to his  
bretherne into the playne of Alcol-  
lours, they discomfited kyng charle-  
maynes folke, wherof Ogier had ma-  
ny reproches of rowlande for some  
goodnes and fauoure that he had shew-  
ed to reynawde and his bretherne at  
roche mountyon, and was therfore  
called traitoure, wherof a great incon-  
uenience came therof afterwarde a-  
gainst kyng Charlemayne. fol. lxxxi.

He. xii. chapitre sheweth howe  
C that after reynawde and hys  
bretherne were whole of their woundes  
that they had had in the playnes  
of Alcolours: they returned to  
Mountatoban. But when kyng yon  
knewe of theyr commynge agayne: he  
fledde awaye, and made hym selfe to  
be wyne a monke in a monastery that  
was within the woode of the Serpence,  
where rowlande and Ogier the Dane  
founde him and wold haue made him  
be hanged, for the treason that he had  
doone to reynawde and to his brethe-  
ren, if Reynawde had not succoured  
him. fol. lxxviii.

## The table.

**T**he xlii. chapitre sheweth how  
that after Reynard had suc-  
coured kyng yon, was the same houre  
a merueylouse battaille betwene  
Reynard and the frenche men. For  
Rowlande was there soze beten and  
many ocher, wherof Ogier was glad  
by cause that Rowland had called him  
traptoure. And also he knewe that the  
fourte sonnes of Ymon, were not for  
to be so lyghtely ouercomen, as men  
had sayde afore. And for this cause  
there had been a soze medle betwene  
Rowland and Ogier, yf it had not be  
the ocher barons that departed them,  
and in this recountrie Rycharde the  
brother of Reynard, abode for pris-  
soner of Rowlande. fol. lxxxviii.

**T**he xliii. chapitre sheweth how  
after that Reynard, Alard,  
and Guycharde were gone to Warde  
Mountraban after the battaille, and  
that they had made full greete sorowe  
for Rycharde they brother which was  
in kyng Charlemaignes handes, The  
sayd Rycharde was deliuered by mar-  
gys greete wysedome. fol. xc.

**T**he. xlv. chapitre speaketh how  
after that Reynard and hys  
brethern and Margys had dis-  
comfyted Charlemaigne: they came and  
ouerthrewe downe his paullyon, and  
bare a waye with theym the Egle of  
golde, that was there vpon the paully-  
on wherof kyng Charlemaigne was  
soze an angred, in so muche that he  
wolde peeble vp his crowne vnto his  
barons, sayinge that he wolde be no

more kyng, for they had sayled hym  
and habandonned for the fourte sonnes  
of Ymon, and sayde to the that they  
shoulde crowne Reynard that he mighte  
be they king, for they loued him much  
more than they dyd hym. Than Dy-  
uer sayde to kyng Charlemaigne, that  
he shoulde take agayne the crowne, and  
that he shoulde byngne to him Mar-  
gys that he had taken, whan he was  
about to pylle the paullyon, for he a-  
bode alone. Whan kyng Charlema-  
igne hearde the same: he tooke agayne  
his crowne, and was ryghte glad of  
the pylle of margys. fol. cii.

**T**he. xvi. chapitre speaketh how  
the kyng Charlemaigne wolde  
doo hange Margys Incony-  
nence that Dyuer had take hym to  
him. But by the meane of the Doute-  
peres of fraunce that at the requeste  
of Margys pledgyd hym, for one  
nyght onely: he made so muche that  
he escaped to the honoure and acquy-  
raunce of hys suterles and of hym,  
and bare a waye with hym to Moun-  
traban the crowne and the swerde  
of kyng Charlemaigne the same ny-  
ght. Wherof kyng Charlemaigne  
was full sorow. And therfore he sende  
word to Reynard that he shoulde  
sende to hym agayne his crowne and  
his swerde, and all that Margys  
had borne a waye with hym, and he  
shoulde graunt hym his truce for two  
yeres. To the which thing Reynard  
accoorded hym, wherof happed to hym  
after that many great euylles. fol. cv.

The



## The table

**T**he. xvii. Chapptre sheweth how Reynawde taught with so wland. Which he ouercame, by the wyl of god. And brought him to mountaiban, wherof kyng Charlemayne was greatly wrothe. And also sheweth how marogis brought king Charlemayne in to the castel of Mountaiban upon bayarde all a slepe. And after tooke him to Reynawd within his bed. And after went and arrayed hym selfe in maner of an Hermyte poorly clothed. And lefte all his kinnemen and freendes, by cause that he wolde not let the peace of Reynawde toward the kyng Charlemayne. For the war had lasted so longe. fol. cxlii.

**T**he. xviii. chapptre sheweth how after that Marogys had taken Charlemaine in to the handes of Reynawde his good colin: he went with our leue in to a woode nyghe the ryuer of Bozdon, in to a hermitage wher he dyd dwelle as an Hermyte, lyvinge poorly for to saue his soule. fol. cxli.

**T**he. xix. chapptre sheweth how the barons of Fraunce that were at Mountaiban made great sorowe by cause that they myghte not awake the kyng Charlemayne that Marogys by his craft had made to slepe, and broughte vnto Mountaiban. But whan the houre of the enchauntment of Marogys was passed: kyng Charlemayne awaked. And whan he saw himselfe in Mountaiban: he swore that he wolde neuer make peace with Reynawde as

longe as that he were prysoner. And so Reynawde dyd sende him agayne vpon his horse bayard free and quyte, wherof he repented him soze afterwarde. For soone after this, kyng Charlemayne made Mountaiban to be besyged of so nyghe: that he samys shed Reynawd and his bretherne, his wyfe and his children, and all the people, so that they dyed for hungre and thirst, the most parte. fol. cxvii.

**T**he. xx. chapptre speaketh how after that Charlemaine had besyged Mountaiban of so nyghe that he dyd samys all them that were within, kne we howe Reynawd was gone, and had habandonned Mountaiban, and was gone his waye he and his bretherne, his wyfe and his children by vnder the erthe, and were gone to Ideyne, where kyng Charlemayne went and besyged the agayne. But afore that he dyd set his syege: Reynawde and his bretherne ysued ouer a peny hym, wherby manye one loste their lyfe of the one partie and of the other. And the duke Richard of Normandy was taken there, which was one of the Doule peres of Fraunce, and a ryght noble and a worthy knyght, prou and hardy, wherfore kyng Charlemaine was righte sorre. fol. cxviii.

**T**he. xxi. chapptre sheweth, how Marogys beyng in his hermitage, came in his mynde a vpsoun that he hadde by nyghe in his slepe, for to goe see Reynawde and his bretherne. Than in the mornynge he took his waye, and founde wo marchauntes

## The table,

chauntes the whiche had be robbed by  
seuen cheues in a wood. Of the whi-  
che seuen cheues: A Bawgys slew five  
of theyn with his palster, and tooke  
again to the marchauntes theyn mar-  
chaundyles, and all theyn hauoyre.  
And than he went forth his way to-  
ward Mountauban for to see his cou-  
syns and his brethern. fol. cxxiii.

**T**he. xxi. Chapter the weth,  
how Reynawde wolde haue  
doon hange Richard the duke of Nor-  
mandye by cause he myghte not haue  
peace with the kynge Charlemayne.  
And howe whan the House peeres  
of Fraunce knewe this: they came to  
kyng Charlemayne and prayed him  
to make peace with Reynawde, for  
to haue againe theyn feis. We the duke  
Rycharde of Normandye, to the whi-  
che chynge kyng Charlemayne an-  
swered that he would not doo it, wher  
of they were so soze an angred that  
they left him, but kyng Charlemain  
dyd sende after theyn and sent theyn  
worde that they shoulde recerne  
agayne to hym, and that he shoulde  
make peace with Reynawde vnder  
this condicyon that Reynawd shoulde  
goe beyonde the sea, beggynge his  
breaue. fol. cxxvii.

**T**he. xxiii. Chapter the weth,  
howe after that Reynawde  
was departed from Ardeyne for to  
make his vyage beyonde the sea, poo-  
rly clothed as a pylgrym seekynge  
hys breaue for goddes sake: Rycharde  
of Normandye tooke Baparde and  
brought with him Blard, Guphard,  
and Rycharde bretherne to Reynawd

and presented them to Charlemayne:  
the whiche he receyued ryghte honou-  
rablye by good loue, and after brake  
his spege and departed for to goe to  
Barys. But whan he was in the ci-  
tye of Lyege vpon the bydge ouer  
the ryuer of Aueuse: he made Bapard  
to be cast into the water with a mille  
stone at the necke of hym, but Baparde  
the horse escaped and is yet a lyue in  
the forest of Ardeyne, as men sayen.

fol. cxxiiii.

**T**he. xxv. Chapter the weth  
howe that after Reynawde was  
departed from Ardeyne from  
hys bretherne, from his wyfe and fro  
hys chyldrene for to goe beyonde the  
sea, for to accomplyshe hys voyage to  
to the holy graue: he found in Consta-  
ntynople his colyn Hawgis and went  
both togither vnto afore Iherusalem,  
that a kynge Iacobsyn whiche was ad-  
myral of percie had taken by treason,  
but Reynawde and Hawgis dyd so  
muche with the folke of the lond, that  
the cytye was take agayne of the chri-  
sten. fol. cxxvi.

**T**he. xxv. Chapter the weth, how  
that after Reynawde was come  
agayne from the holy londe whe-  
re he had doone merueyles: he sent Al-  
monet and Pontier hys two sonnes  
to kyng Charlemayne muche honou-  
rably for to be made knyghtes of hys  
hande. For he taughte theyn well in  
armes in all good maners, and tooke  
to them fyue hundred good men well  
horsed for to conduyte them towards  
the kyng at Barys. fol. cxxvii.

**T**he. xxvi. Chapter the weth  
how after that kyng Charle-  
mayne



mayne had muche sweetly receyued  
the chyldren of Keynawde and made  
them knyghtes: they fought wyth þ  
sonnes of Foulques of Moryllon,  
and discomfited them in the feild at  
Darys, whiche is called the yle of  
our lady. Bicause that they had char  
ged theyr father of treason, bycause  
he had slaine theyr father Foulques  
of moryllon in the playnes of Ual  
colours. fol. Cxviii.

**T**he. cxviii. chapitre containeth  
how þ after Keynawde was  
gone fro Mountawban in maner of  
a pilgrime neuer to haue returned a  
gayne after that he had dealed his  
goodes to his chyldren, his brethern  
and his sonne Symoner made great  
sorrow, whan they wytt that he was  
gone wythout theyr knowledge all  
barefote with a palster in his hande.  
Folio. Cxviii.

**T**he. cxviii. chapitre sheweth  
how after that Keynawde  
was departed fro Mountawban for

to saue his soule: he went to Colcine  
bpon the Rine, and founde that men  
builded the churche of saynt Peter.  
And there came to hym a wyll and  
a deuocyon for to serue the masons  
that wrought there, for the loue that  
he had to our lord. But at the laste  
the other labourers had so great en  
uy at hym of that he was more lo  
ued than they were of all the may  
sters for the good service that he dyd  
that they slew hym, and after they  
put hym in a sacke & caste hym into  
the water of the Rine, but by the wil  
of our lord his corpe appered aboue  
þ water makyng so many fayre my  
racles healyng of all sykneses, so  
that he was named a saynte the day  
of his buryenge. fol. Cxix

**T**here finyssheth the table  
and consequently foloweth  
the booke here after.

Howe Duke Aimon of Ardein brought to the courte his  
fourte sonnes, that is to wit Reynawde, Alarde, Guichard, and Richard, and  
howe kynge Charlemayne made theim knyghtes wpyth his owne bandes, also  
howe the duke Benes of Agremount slewe Lohier the eldest sonne of kynge  
Charlemain. the duke benes was vncle to the fourte sonnes of Aimon, and after  
howe the duke Benes of agremount was slaine coming to Paris by the  
commaundement of kynge Charlemayn after that he had appoin-  
ted for the death of his sonne. And also in this first chapitre  
men shal now see many other faire matters, which  
were to longe for to be reherced in the  
preamble of this present.  
booke.



Helpe we finde in  
the gestes & laices  
of the good kynge  
Charlemayne that  
vpo a tyme at a feast  
of Penthecolste the  
sayde kyng Charle-  
mayne kept a ryght great and solemp-  
ne court at Paris, after that he was  
come agayne fro the parties of Lom-  
bardy where he had had a ryght great  
and meruaylous barayle ayenst the  
Sarasyngs, and suche folke as were  
pore of the beleue, wherof the cheef of  
the sayde Sarasyng was named Gyl-  
t helym the lesne. The whiche the said  
kynge Charlemayne by his prowesse  
and valpauyntnes had dyscomfyred  
& ouercomen. At the which battaylle  
and dyscomfyture dyed greate noble-  
nesses of kinges, princes, Dukes, Er-  
les, barons, knyghtes and squyers.  
As Salamon of brytayne. Huon erle  
of Mauns, syz puez, syz puoyz beren-  
ger, and baron, syz Arnaulde of Be-  
aulande, syz Walleraunte of Bollon  
and many valpauinte knyghtes. The  
Douse peres of Fraunce were come

there and many Almaynes and Eng-  
lyshemenne. Normans Poeteuyns.  
Lombardes and Barnyers. And as  
monge other Dukes & princes was  
come thys her. The good and worthye  
duke Jymes of Ardeyne. And in his  
fela wyth his fourte sayre sonnes,  
that is to wit Reynawde, Alarde,  
Guichard, and Richard, that were  
wonderfull sayre, wyrtty, great, migh-  
tye, and valpauinte, specially Rey-  
nawde whiche was the greatest and  
the tallest manne that was founde at  
that tyme in al the worlde. For he had  
xvi. feete of length and more. Than at  
this assemble and feast stood the sayd  
kynge Charlemayne on his feete a-  
monge his prynces and barons, say-  
inge in this wyse, barons my brethe-  
ren and freendes, ye knowe howe I  
haue conquested and gotten so manye  
greate londes by your helpe and suc-  
cours. So many of the Sarasyng and  
misbeleuers brought to deatch, & in my  
subieccion, howe but late agoe ye haue  
seene by this paynym Gyltelym whiche  
I haue dyscomfyred & ouercomen, and  
reduced to the chrysten faith. For with  
standing



## The table

Landynge we haue losse there ryghte  
 greace cheualry and noblenesse. And  
 for faute of many of oure bassayles  
 and subiectes that to vs dayneth not  
 to come, howe be it that we had sent  
 for theym, as the Duke Rycharde of  
 Roussellon, the duke Dion of Fran-  
 cwell, and the duke Benes of Aygre-  
 mounthe, that been all thre byetherne  
 Germapne. Wherof vnto you I com-  
 playne me, and tell you that yf it we-  
 re not for Salamon that Worthylle  
 came to succoure vs with. xxx. thou-  
 sande fyghenng menne, and for Lam-  
 byeght bermyer and for Gestrage of  
 Bourdelle with walleraunce of Bul-  
 lon that bare our baner: we were alle  
 dyscomfyred and lost as ye all knowe  
 wel, and this by the defaute of the said  
 thre byetherens that dayned neuer to  
 come to our sendynge, nor obey, and  
 aboue all the duke Benes of Aygre-  
 mounthe. All be it that they be all oure  
 lyge menne that euer owen to me ser-  
 uyce and fydelyrie. Now I shall sende  
 hym worde that he come to serue me  
 at this nexte somer with all his po-  
 wer. And in case that he shall be refu-  
 syng to obey oure commaundemen-  
 tes: by saynt denys of fraunce I shall  
 sende for al my freendes and subiectes  
 and I shall goe besyge him at Aygre-  
 mounthe. And yf we can haue him: I  
 shall make him to be shamesfully han-  
 ged and his sonne Hawgis to be slai-  
 ne all quicke, and shall do byenne his  
 vncourteous wyfe. And I shall sert  
 all his londes in fyre. Than the good  
 Duke Raymes of Baupere rose vp  
 diligently and said to kynge Charles  
 mayne in this wyse. For me semeth  
 that ye ought not to angre your selfe

so sore. And yf ye will beleue my coun-  
 sell: ye shall sende a messenger to the  
 duke of Aygremonthe which messan-  
 ger shall be wel and honourably accom-  
 panied. And he muste be sage and pru-  
 dent, for to shewe wel to the Duke of  
 Aygremonthe all that ye shall charge  
 hym. And after whan ye shall knowe  
 hys answer and his wyll: ye shall  
 than aduise you what ye oughte for  
 to doo. In good fayth sayde the kyng,  
 ye counseyle me ryght well and wi-  
 selpe. Than thought Charlemaigne  
 what message he myght sende to him.  
 And than he sayde all hyge afore  
 them all, complayninge himselfe who  
 shall be he that shall doo this messa-  
 ge. And for doubte of deache shall not  
 leue nothyng vnsayd of hys message  
 to the duke benes, but there was no  
 ne of them all that oughte answered.  
 For manye of cheim were of sybber to  
 hym. As the duke hymon of Ardenne  
 that was his brother Germapne.  
 Thus were the fourte byethern of one  
 father and of one mother. Than was  
 kynge Charlemaigne ryghte wrothe  
 and angry. And swore by saynt de-  
 nys that the Duke benes shoulde be  
 wasted and destroyed. And no manne  
 shoulde be in the worlde that shoulde  
 keep him thereto. Than he called hys  
 eldest sonne Lohier saying in this  
 maner, ye must doo this message my-  
 dere sonne, and lede with you for your  
 conduyt and surety an hundred kny-  
 ghtes armed and honourably arrayed,  
 And ye shall saye to the Duke benes  
 of Aygremonthe that yf he come not  
 for to serue vs this somer aboute  
 saynt Johans daye nexte comynge  
 as I haue saide afore: that I shall be-  
siege

seyge Aggremounte & shall dystrope  
all his lande and he and his I shal  
doo hange oʒ slea al quyeke, and his  
wyfe to be byente. Syr sayd Lohier  
al at your pleasure. I shal doo. And  
wit þe it shall not be taryed, for feare  
of death, but that I shal tell him al  
a longe all that ye haue charged me  
of. And I shal depart to morow in  
the moynynge by the grace of God.  
Than should you haue sene þe king  
weepe of pitie for his sonne Lohier  
for he repented him þe he had char-  
ged him for to doo this message, but  
syn þe he had so sayd: he must doo it.  
And the moʒne was come Lohier &  
his noble company made them re-  
dy and after lept on horsbacke, and  
came afoʒe þe kyng. Than sayd Lo-  
hier to the king his father. Syr here  
I am redye and all my folke for to  
fulfyll your wyll. Fawze sonne sayd  
Charlemayne I recomend thee vnto  
god that on þe crosse suffred death  
and passion, and hym I beseeche to  
kepe and waraunt thee & all thy fe-  
lawshyp from euyl & from any com-  
braunce, than departed Lohier and  
his company, wherof after warde  
the kyng made great lamentacyon  
for his sonne Lohier, and not wyth-  
out a cause. For he shal neuer see hi  
quicke agayne as ye shal vnderstād  
yf ye wyll herken it. Now go the ge-  
till messangers streyght towarde  
Aggremount, soʒe thretenynge the  
duke Benes of Aggremount, saying  
that they should take the head from  
the body of hym yf he doo ought to  
them agaynst his deuoyze. But it  
shal go all other wyse w them. For  
it haped all contrary to theyʒ myn-

des and purpose wherof afterwarde  
many ladyes abode widowes wout  
husbādes, & many gentil womē with-  
out a louer. And so many churches  
dystroyed, and so many landes byete  
and wasted, wherof it is yet pitie for  
to see. And thus ridynge & thretenynge  
Benes of Aggremount, a spy heard  
all that they sayd, and came hastelye  
to Aggremount to ward Benes that  
was in his Palays and tolde hym  
how messagers were coming vnto  
hym from kyng Charlemayne that  
soʒe thretened him, and that the sone  
of kyng Charlemayne was there in  
person. Than sayd the Duke to hyʒ  
folke wherof he had at that houre fol-  
son with him in his Palays bicause  
of the feast of Penthecoste. Lordes  
sayd he, the kyng Charlemayne set-  
teth lytle by me, that will that I shal  
go serue him with all my power and  
my purssance, and that woʒs is, he  
sendeth to me his eldest sonne for to  
tel me some message þe threteneth me  
greatly, what counsell ye me thereto  
my bʒetherne & frendes. Than spa-  
ke a good knyght that was called  
syr Simon, & sayd. My lord I shal  
counsell you truly yf ye wyll herken  
and beleue me. Receyue honourably  
the messangers of the kyng Char-  
lemayne. For wel ye wote that he is  
your ryght wyse lord, and wit that  
who þe warteth agaynst his souerayn  
Lord: he doth agaynst god & rayson  
and haue no regarde to your kynne  
nor to thys that your bʒetherne Cy-  
sarde of Roussillon and the duke of  
Nantuell wolde not obey hym. For  
I aduysc you wel that Charlemayne  
is myghty, and he shall dystrope you



## The booke of the foure

of body and of goodes, but yf that ye obey him. And yf ye amiable go to hym, he shall haue mercy of you. Than answered the duke that thus he wolde not doo, and that the sayd knight gaue him euill counsell. For yet sayd he I am not so low brought but that I haue three byrthens that shall helpe to susteine and beare out my warre agaynst Charlemanyne, & also my foure newewes the sonnes of my brother Hymes of Dozdon þ ben full fayre knyghtes, worthy and wel taught in saytes of warre. Alas sayd than þ duchesse. My good lord beleue your good counsell. For no men shall praysse you that ye make warre agaynst your right wysse lord, and wit it well that it is agaynst the commaundementes of God, & agaynst all equitie. Wherfore yf ye haue misdoone any thig agaynst hym, doo so much þ ye be accorded w him. And take none heed to your byrthens, as syz Symon dothe counsell you. For neuer good may come therof for to be euyl in fauoure w his souerayne Lorde. Than behelde the duke the duchesse in great wrathe and bad her that she should holde her peace in þ deuilles name, & that she should neuer more speake to hym of this matter. For in certayne he should not do for the kyng Charlemanyne the mouenaunce of a peny. So helde her peace þ duchesse & sayd that she should speake nomore to hym therof.

**O**reat was the noyse and the bruyte within the palayce of Aygremonut, for some counselled the duke, that thus as the duchesse

sayd: he should doo, and many other sayd nay. Than sayd the duke vnto them that counselled him naye and that he should not accorde nor make peace w the kyng Charlemanyne, that he could theym thanke, muche longe they spake of this mater. And the messangers of the kyng Charlemanyne durynge the same haue riden so muche that they ben come to Aygremonut. And the castell was set vpon a roche ryght hye and well enuyroned with stronge walles thycke highe and wel garnysed with great towres, so that for the strength and sytuacion of the castell, it was imprenable, but only by famyshynge. Than sayd Lohier to þ lordes that were wth hym. Lordes now we see what a fortesse is there, what walles what a ruet reneth at the foote of it: I beleue verely that in al christendome is not her lyke. It can neuer betake by force, but yf it is by famyshynge. Thā spake a knight that was called Sauary and sayd to Lohier his lord, syz sayde he it semeth me (spekyng vnder correccion) that my lord the kyng Charlemanyne your father hath enterprised a great folly, whan he troweth to come to at an ende of this duke of Aygremonut for in good sothe he is right puissant. And I beleue that he shall make as many men for to make the warre, as shall my lord your father yf it cam there to that he wolde make hym warre. It were a fayre thyng yf they myght be accorded together, and of my parte I shoulde counsell the same yf it myght be doone. But well I wot that yf your father had

had hym, al þe golde in Paris shoulde not kepe hym, but that he shoulde do hangen hym or els slea hym quykke.

So beseeche I you ryght deere sirs þe speake humbly vnto the duke benes of Aygre mouit. For in certayne he is ryght fiers and outragious & incontinent might haue there a sore meddle betwene you and hym, wher of the losse shoulde tourne vpon vs. For we ben to few folke. Than answered Lohier and sayd to hym that he sayd well and wysely, but alwayes sayd he we doubt hym not of any thyng. We be here al redy an hōdred knyghtes well appoynted, and for sothe if he say vnto vs anye thyng vnto our dyspleasure: he shalbe the fyrst that shal repent and be soȝy for it. Than sayd the knight Sauare al sofly to hymself, that this were not wysely doone. For wel I were said he vpon my sayth that yf it hap you to say any thyng to hym that by any maner shal displease hym: he shal make you soȝy and shal wreke it vpon your bodie. And happely we shal all be in a waye for to dy. Sirs aduise your selfe well & wyl to procede prudently in your message. For well I say vnto you that he is ryght cruell, and of greate woorthy- nesse accomplished.

**T**hus spekyng of one thyng and of other rode so longe the messengers, that they ben come to the gate of the castel which was sone shet by the porter, then knocked the sayd knyghtes, and the porter answered to them. Lordes what be you? Freende answered Lohier open to

vs this gate presently. For we wyl speake to the Duke Benes of Aygre mouit from the king Charlemayn. Now abyde you a lytle and hast you not sayd the porter. And I wyl goe speake redely to my lord the Duke. So went the sayde porter into the halle where he sawe the Duke his lord. He kneeled incontynent afore him & tolde him howe downe at the gate was a right great company of men of armes. And that they were well an hondred men or moze ryght well horsed & well armed, and with them is the eldest sonne of king Charlemayne þe strongly threteneth you, and also your folke. My lord sayde the porter shal I open the gates vnto the, yea sayd þe duke. For I doubt them nothyng, and we ben ynough for them. And many woorthy knyghtes and esquyers ben now here able for to defende vs all, were Charlemayne himself with them with hys puissance. So ran incontinent the porter downe agayne for to open vnto them the gate. Lohier & his felowes entred in and mounted vp vnto the dongeon of the castell where the Duke was that sayd to hys barons. Lordes heere cometh the eldest sonne of the kyng Charlemayne for to tell me his message. But (bi þe god þe sufferd death and passion) yf he speake wysely to vs he shal do as sage. And yf he sayth any thyng that shal displease vs, we shal soone & without delaye take vengeaunce therof. So was the duke Benes well accompanied & nobly of wel two hondred knyghtes & moze. Thys was in the moneth of May that all creatures



The booke of the foure

humain ought wel for to reioyce the  
and that folke prou and worthy in  
armes taken hert and hardinesse for  
to defende them self wel, and warre  
agaynst theyr enemyes. And this du  
ring: Lohier the sonne of king char  
lemayne entred into the halle of the  
Palays of Aygreymount ryght no  
bly armed and his folke also, and  
saw the halle ryght well garnyshe  
d of fayre folke ryche lye arrayed. And  
the duke sittynge right proude lye a  
monge his barons, and the duchesse  
hys wyfe next by hym, and befoze  
hym his sonne Bagwys that was  
a great mayster of the science of A  
gromancy that played afoze his fa  
ther of his art of nigromancy, wher  
in the Lordes that were there tooke  
great pleasure. And wit it well that  
in all the worlde was not a wor  
thyer chrysten, nor more able, than  
was the sayd Bagwys. Except on  
lye hys cosyn Reynawde one of the  
sonnes of Iymon, wherof special  
ly treateth now this history. Than  
marched for the Lohier and wente  
in the fyrst of all, and after hym hys  
folke by good conduyte. And salued  
the duke Venes of Agremount in  
thys wyse, wherby moche great euill  
happened vnto him at last. That God  
that created þe firmament and made  
all thyng of nought for the people  
to susteyne. And on the crosse suffred  
death and passyon for all soules to  
be redemed out of the paynes of hel  
keep and saue the king Charlema  
yne Emperour of Almayne and king  
of ytraunce and all hys noble lyne  
and confound the Duke Venes of  
Aygreymounte. By father the kyng

by me expressely sedeth to thee word  
thou come incontinent to Paris wh  
fyue hondred knyghtes for to do to  
him right and reason of thys that  
thou were not wyth him in armes  
in the partyes of Lumbardy for to  
fght agaynst the enemyes of the  
christen fapth. Where by thy faute  
were dead there Sawdoyne lorde of  
Melanck. Gelfroi of Bourdel, and  
many other great Dukes Prynces  
knyghtes and barons. And yf thou  
wylt not doo it: I tell thee (duke be  
nes) that the kinge shall come vpon  
thee wythan hundred thousand men  
of armes. So shalt thou be take and  
brought into fraunce. And there þ  
shalt be iudged as a theefe and a fal  
se traytour vnto thy Souerayne  
Lorde, for to be slayne and hanged  
all quicke, thy Wyfe brente and thy  
chyliden destroyed and banysshed.  
Doo therfore this that I commaund  
thee in the kinges behalfe, for thou  
knowest well that thou arte his mā  
vassalle and subiccte.

**W**han the Duke Benes of Ar  
greimount had heard Lohy  
er thus speake: Than yf ye had sene  
hym chaunged hys coloure pouffe  
a blowe, as a mā cruel, proude and  
outrageouse, and sayd to Lohier in  
thys maner. I Shall not goe to hyng  
Charlemayne nor nothyng of hys  
wyll I Shall not fulfyll. For I hold  
nother Castell ne Fortresse of hym,  
but I Shall goe vpon him with all  
my puyssaunce, and Shall destroy all  
the lande of Fraunce vnto Paris.  
Than sayd Lohier vnto Duke Be  
nes

nes of Agremount. Alassayle sayde  
he wo darest thou answer thus?  
And if the king knew now that thou  
thretenest hym thus as thou doest:  
he should come incontynent vpon  
thee, and should vtterli destroy thee,  
Well thou knowest that thou arte  
hys liege man, and that thou canne  
not say agaynst it, come than redely  
and serue thy souerayne lord kinge  
Charlemyan, and beleue me yf thou  
wylt saue thyne owne lyfe. For if þ  
doo it not: I make thee sure and cer-  
taine þ yf ye can haue thee by force  
that ye shall make thee to be hanged  
there as the apye and the wyndes w  
they: great blastes shall dry vp the  
bones of thee. When the duke heard  
Lohier speake to him in this maner  
he stode vp anon vpon his feete, and  
sayd, þ to his euil chere he cam there  
for to make to hi hys message. Tha  
came forth a knyght named sy wa-  
ter that was a man of the Duke of  
Agremount and sayd to the Duke  
My lord kepe for gods loue that ye  
doo no folp. Let Lohier say all hys  
wyl, for ye be neuer the worse for  
his sayenge, and as ye well knowe  
kyng Charlemyan is ryght purs-  
sant and so moche that there is no-  
ther castell, Citie, nor towne neuer  
so stronge that can holde agaynst hi,  
So than to him by my counsell, for  
ye be his man his vassalle & his sub-  
iect. and of hym you holde your cas-  
tell of Agremount and all your lan-  
des, and yf ye so doo: ye shall doo as  
sage, and it shall be your prouffyte, &  
also of al your lande, and for to war-  
agaynst your ryghtwise lord, no-  
thyng but euil can come to you there

of. When the Duke had hearde the  
wyl knyght to speake: he coude to  
him right good thanke therfore, but  
al wayes all angry he sayd to hym,  
holde your peace. For I shall holde  
nothyng of hym as longe that I shall  
may beare armes, and moue a horse  
backe. I shall sende for my deere bre-  
therne Gerrade of Roussillon, and  
Bion of Haturcl, and Garnier his  
sonne, and than we shall gone vpon  
kyng Charlemyan, and yf I canne  
mete with him in any place: we shall  
destroy hym, & shall doo of hym that  
he croweth to doo of me. Wene he þ  
I am a cowardenay by my saythe,  
for I should not take all the gold in  
Barrys but that I should lea þ mes-  
sanger. Eyll was to hym when he  
durst so threten me. And than sayde  
Lohier, I nether prayse you nor do-  
ubt you not. When the Duke benes  
of Agremount vnderstode Lohier:  
he wored for great wrathe as red as  
ony fyre in hys face, and began to  
ryse vp and to call. Howe Barons  
vpon hym, byngge hym to me, for he  
shall neuer be wraunted but that I  
shall make hym to dye shamefullye.  
And the barons durst not say agaynst  
they: lord, but drew al they: swe-  
des. And incontynent did ren vpon  
Charlemyans folke. And Lohier  
called his baner, and than began he  
and his folke to defende them selfe  
sharply. And god knoweth howe  
many heades and armes were there  
cut of þ day. For at the same houre:  
began a thyng, wherof afterwarde  
so manye ladyes and damoyelles  
were w out husbandes & wythout  
louers, so many of children father-



The booke of the foure

lesse, and so manye churches wasted  
and distroyed that neuer sythe were  
repayred. what shal I tel you moze  
wyt it that they fought there so  
longe wythin the halle of the Pa-  
lays; that the noys went through all  
the towne. Tha shoulde ye haue seen  
the bourgeys, Marchauntes, & men  
of craft with axes swerdes and other  
wepyng, and came to the Castel war-  
de aboute seuen thousand men and  
moze. But the entre of the Palays  
of Aygreymount was narrow, and þ  
frenche men were within that kept  
them well that they entred not in at  
theyr ease. Alas what terribble and  
vnhappye a slaughter was there that  
daye. For the folke of kynge Charle-  
mayne were but a fewe to the regard  
of them of the other parte. And as  
ye may knowe suche assemble was  
ryght euyl. So defended them selfe  
moche noblye and valyauntlye the  
folke of kynge Charlemayne and so  
much that Lohier seyng that, that  
he and hys folke had the worse: he  
smote a knight by fore þ duke Be-  
nes of Aygreymount by suche a wyse  
that he ouerthrew hym downe dead  
forth sayd he gods curse haue thou,  
and after ward he sayd pteously in  
waylyng himselfe. Lorde God that  
withyn the holy wombe of the bles-  
sed Marye tooke thy her-  
bowyng and suffred death & pas-  
sion for to redeime mankynde, wilt  
defende me this daye from shame,  
full death and from tourment, for  
I wot well, but yt it be that your  
hygh diuynitie socoure me this daye:  
I shall not see þ king Charlemayne  
my father no moze. Than the Duke

called hygh vpon hym saynge, Lo-  
hier so helpe me. God this daye shall  
be your laste. It shall not be so sayde  
Lohier. And with this he smote the  
Duke vpon the head, but hys helme  
saued hym. And the stroke descended  
to the heele of him so that the bloud  
ranne out. By God sayd Lohier ye  
shall not escape. Than came the du-  
ke Benes of Aygreymount to him as  
woode and sore an angred, saynge  
I shoulde prayse my selfe full lytle if  
I might not auenge me vpon thee.  
So heaued vp the Duke hys brande  
of Steele and smote Lohier so harde  
vpon hys bryght helme that he cle-  
ued hym to the teeth. And Lohier  
fell dead afore hym, vpon the paue-  
ment of the Halle. Ha God what  
great domage hath done the Duke  
Benes of Aygreymount to haue thus  
slayne Lohier the eldest sonne of the  
great kynge Charlemayne. For after  
warde al the este of Fraunce was in  
moche great and innumerable tour-  
ment therfore and in ryght greate  
payne continual, and the Duke him-  
selfe dyed therfore, full sorowly. That  
was the payment that he had for it,  
as ye here after shall heare yf peasy-  
ly ye will heare me.

**N**ow is outrageously slayne  
the good Lohier the eldest  
sonne of kynge Charlemayne. And þ  
duke Benes of Aygreymount full of  
cruelnes tooke the hed from the bo-  
dy of hym. And after that the folke  
of the sayd Lohier the sonne of the  
great kynge Charlemayne saw their  
Lorde dead: thynke ye they made no  
great defence. Alwayes of a hyndred  
that

that they were entered within the pa-  
lays with they? Lord Lohyer abode  
there on lyue but. xx. wherof þe duke  
incontynente made. x. of them to be  
slayne, and the other. x. he reteyned a  
lyue, and to them sayde, yf ye wyll  
promyse and swere to me vpo your  
oth, and fapth of knighthode that ye  
shall beare your Lorde Lohyer to  
hys father the kyng Charlemayne,  
and say to hym that I sende to hym  
his sonne Lohyer in good aray, and  
that in an euyl houre he dyd sende  
hym to me for to tell me suche wo-  
des, I shall let you goe quyte and  
saue, and to hym ye shall saye that  
for hym I shall not doo the moun-  
taunce of a peny, and that I shall  
go vpon hym in thys Sommer next  
comynge wyth fourtye thousande  
men, and that I shall destrope hym  
and all hys lande. They answered,  
Syr wee shall doo that, that shall  
please you to commaunde vs. Cha-  
the Duke dyd doo make redy a by-  
ere, and made the corps of Lohyer  
to be put wythin the sayd byere. And  
after he deliuerde it to his. x. knigh-  
tes that were left on lyue and put it  
in a carte to draue wyth two hor-  
ses. And the Duke conueyed them  
thorough the Towne. And whan  
they were in the felde; the. x. knigh-  
tes beganne to wepe and to make  
great mone for they? Lorde Lohier  
sayng, alas my lorde Lohier what  
shall wee no we saye for you to the  
kyng your father that so great so-  
ro we shall haue, whan he shall kno-  
we your cruell death. We may well  
be incertayne that, that he shall ma-  
ke vs all dye. Thus wepyng and

makynge they? mone for the loue of  
they? Lorde Lohyer, the rode on  
they? way strerght to Parys.

¶ But now we shall heere leane to  
spake of the messangers and shall  
tell you of the kyng Charlemayne  
that was at Parys.

¶ Charlemayne that was at Pa-  
rys with a great multitude of  
Lordes that were there assembled.  
And there vpon a day kyng Char-  
lemayne sayd vnto hys Lordes and  
barons. Lordes I am moch wroch  
and soyr of my sonne Lohyer that I  
haue sente to Agremounte, and I  
feare me sore that they haue take de-  
bate wyth the duke Benes of Agre-  
mounte, whiche is fell, and cruell, &  
I doute me leste, he hath slayne my  
sonne Lohier. But by my crowne yf  
he haue so doone, or any thyng that  
turneth to dyspleasure or domage  
to my sayd sonne: I shall go vpo him  
wyth a hundred thousand men and  
shall make hym to be hanged at a  
gybet. Syr sayd the good Duke Ay-  
mes of Bordeaux, I shall come you  
ryght soze, yf he hath offeded agaynst  
you that ye make punysshment of  
and weke on hym grete venge-  
aunce. He is your liege man, and  
ought to serue, prayse and honoure  
you. Alwayes yf he hath trespas-  
sed agaynst you in any manere I am  
ryght soyr for it, and yf ye haue a  
cause to be wrothe wyth hym, I  
haue heere my four sonnes, That  
is



## The booke of the foure

is to wyrt Reynawde Alarde Guy-  
charde and Wycharde, that ben ry-  
ght valyaunt as ye syr will knowe  
which shalbe trusty and true to you.  
Iymon sayd the kyng Charlemayn  
I conne you great thanke of the of-  
fre that now ye haue doone to me.  
And it is my Wyll that ye make the  
to come hether presently to the ende  
that I make them knyghtes, and I  
shall gyue to them Castelles, tow-  
res and Townes, and Cities ynou-  
gh. Than sent the duke Iymes In-  
continent for hys chyldren, and made  
them to come afoze kyng Charle-  
mayne. And whan the kyng Charle-  
mayne saw them: they pleased him  
moche, and Reynawde was the first  
that spake and sayd. Syr yf it please  
you for to make vs knyghtes, we  
shalbe euer redy for to serue you and  
your noble Lordshyp. Thā the kyng  
Charlemayne called hys steward  
and sayd to hym. Bringe to me the  
armes that were the kynges Cedres  
whych I haue wryth my handes  
layne in batayle besoze Pampelune  
and shall gyue theym to the gentyl  
Reynawde as to hym that is as I  
wene the moste valyaunt of all, and  
of other good armes I shall gyue to  
the other thre bretherne. So brou-  
ght there the steward & armes that  
were full fayre and riche, and than  
were armed the foure gentyl brethre  
chyldren to the good Aimes of Dordō-  
ne, and Ogret of Denmarke that  
was of theyr kynne dyd on theyr  
spurres to the new knight Reynaw-  
de, & the kyng Charlemayne gyde  
hym his swerde, and than doubde

him to a knyghte sayinge God en-  
crease in the goodnes, honour, and  
worthines. And than mounted Rei-  
nawde on horsebacke vpon Bayard  
that was suche a horse, that neuer  
was his like in all the world nor ne-  
uer shall be except Buisfal the horse  
of the great kyng Alexander. For  
as for to haue conne. xxx. myle toge-  
ther he wolde neuer haue sweted.

The sayd Bayard thys horse was  
growen in the Isle of Boiusca, and  
Batwys the sonne of the duke Be-  
nes of Hygremount had gyue to his  
colin Reynawde, that after made the  
kyng Charlemayne full wrothe  
and soz, as ye shal now heare here  
after.

**R**eynawde was a horse backe  
w a sheelde paynted hangyng  
at his necke, and thwerled his swer-  
de by great fyrtnesse. And wyrt wel  
that he was a fayre knight wound-  
derful great and well founded, and  
of hym was a fayre syght, for well  
he semed one of the moste valyaunt  
knyghtes that men coude fynde  
in all the worlde. And the Barons  
that were there sayde. Ha god what  
a fayre knight is he. Neuer was  
nor shall be sene so fayre a man of ar-  
mes as Reynawde, god encrease to  
hym honour and worthynesse, good-  
nes and pryse. And after were  
moche honourably and worthily a-  
rayed and armed the other thre bre-  
therne of Reynawde, and sith lyght  
all on horsebacke vnder Saint Uic-  
tor nyghe Darys. Than made the  
kyng Charlemayne to sit vp in the  
groude

grounde a poste agaynst whiche he made the new knightes for to assaye them selfe. They Justed moche wor- chelp, but Reynawde Justed best v- pon his horse bayarde, & ryght well lyked and were a greable vnto char- lemayne the saytes of the valyaunt knyght Reynawde, vnto whome the king sayd, Reynawde fro hens forth ye shal come with vs in batayle and Reynawde answered him in thys maner. Syr god yelde it you an hun- dred thousand tymes, and I promit you in good fayth to obey and serue you truly. Noz neuer ye shall fynde my selfe in no forsaite, but yf it com of you.

**T**he Emperour Charlemaine after the Justynge was do- one: he retourned to his Palays in Parys. Than he resoned wyth hys prynces and Barons, and there were the duke Raymes of baypres, Oger the dane and the Archebysshop Tur- pin, and sayd to them in thys wyse. barons sayd he I cannot maruaile me to moche of Lohier my eldest son that tarieth so longe in hys message I haue great feare that some incon- tinent be happed vnto hym. I dre- med this night in my slepe that the thonder bolte fell vpon my Sonne Lohier, and then came the Duke be- nes of Aygreount vpon hym and smote his head of, but by my bearde yf he haue doone so: Whyles he ly- ueth he shall neuer accorde with me. Noz I shall neuer haue Joye at my herce. for it is he that I loue best in this worlde. Syr sayd y duke Ray- mes I beleue not such thinges, noz

vnto suche dreames ye shall not gyue no credence, alwayes sayde the king yf he haue doone so: I shall neuer le- ue him the value of a peny, for I shall sende for the Normans, the Bernyggers, the Fleminges, the cha- penoyes, the Almaynes, the Bauiers and for Englichemen, and so shall I goe vpon hym and shall bitterly de- stroy hym, and Raymes sayde euer vnto hym that he shoulde not feare hym selfe of nothyng eyll that he knewe the certentye. And as they spake thus: there came rydig a mes- senger vpon a horse fauell soze sicke and werpe, and also soze wounded vnto the death. He came vnto Pa- rys afoze the Palays where kyng Charlemayne was at the wyndow- es. And whan he sawe come the messanger: he came downe lightlye from the Palays halle vnto the gate and with him Raymes of Bayler and Oger the Dane. And whan the messanger saw the king: he salued him full soft as he that was ryght soze and soze wounded, and that wyth payne myght speake, and said in this maner wyse. Great folpe ye dyd, whan ye dyd sende my Lorde your sonne for to aske trybute and obeyssaunce of the Duke Benes of Aygreounte, the whiche trybute your sonne asked him whāfully, but the duke whiche is soze fel and cruel whan he heard speak my sayd lorde your sonne: he comaūded to a mayny of knightes y were there y he shoulde betake & y he shoulde neuer retourne agayn to you for to recoūt his messa- ge noz what answer he had founde to y which takyng y meble was great  
and



and cruell, so that your dere sone Lohier was dead there. And the Duke Venes of Aygreount kyled hym and all your folke except me and ix other that conduyte and byng your sonne in a byere. And I my selfe am sore hurt as ye may se. And than the messager could speake no more. But fell downe in a swoone of the greates greefe and soze that he felte bycause of hys woundes. And Whan the kyg had heard these wordes: he fel down vpon the ground for the great sorow that he tooke therof and wrange his handes, and pulled his beard. And tare all hys heres sayinge. Ha good lord that made heauen and erth, ye haue brought me in great sorow & tourment irrecoverable that neuer shall cease with me. So requyre I vnto you the death humbly. For neuer more desyre I not to lyue. The good duke of Baurye began to recomfort him, sayinge. For goddes loue sye tourment not your self, but haue good hert and hope in god and recomfort your folke. And thys wolde say the duke Raymes for the that he saw wepe there for theyr kyllen and freendes that were dead w Lohier. And doo (sayd he to y kyng) let your sonne be worshypfully buried at saynt Germaine of the medowes. And than ye shall goe vpon the Duke Venes of Aygreount wth all your noble power, and great puyssaunce, and shall destroy hym and all hys landes at your pleasure.

Than the kinge Charlemayne recomforted him selfe, and well he knew that Raymes coucelled hym truly and lawfully. Than sayd the

kyng, Barons make redy, and wee shall go agaynst my dere sonne Lohier. And incontinent all the prynces and Barons made them selfe redy for to doo the commaundement of the kinge. And Whan they were gone two myle out of Parys: they met with the corps. And were there with the kinge Raymes Ogier. Sampson of bourgoyne, and many other great Lordes. Than sayd the kinge Charlemayne Whan he sawe the body of his deere sonne Lohier: Alas how shamefully am I treated: he descended from his horse a foote, & tooke by the cloth that was vpo the bier & beheld his sonne Lohier. Than saw he the head y was synctified off from the body and the face that was all to hewen. Ha good Lord sayd he, how well maye I be made now al quicke, well I ought for to hate y duke Venes of Aygreounte that thus hath murdered my sonne, he than kissed his childe al bloudy ful often and said vnto him in this wise. Ha faire sonne ye were a talle man and a gentill knight. Now praye I the puyssant God of gloze that he take your soule this yf it be his pleasure into hys Realme of Paradyse. Great sorow made the kyng Charlemayne for the death of his sonne Lohier. But alwayes recomforted him the good Duke Raymes And the Ogier the Dane and Sampson of Bourgoyn took him vnder the armes of him and ledde him vnto saynt Germaine of the medowes. And there the bodye of Lohier was buried and enoynted with balme as it apperteyneth vnto all the sonnes of

of kinges. Thus was he put into  
hys graue God haue of hys soule  
mercy.

**W**e shall leue here to speake of  
the good king Charlemayne &  
was moch sorri of his sonne Lohier  
as ye haue heard, and shall tell you  
of the good Duke Aymon of Re-  
ynawde, his sonne, and of his three  
betherne that were at Parys. My  
children sayd Aymon, ye know how  
the kyng Charlemayne is moche  
wrothe and not without a cause, by  
cause & my brother your vnkle hath  
slaine Lohier his sonne. And I wote  
well that he shall go vpon him with  
all his pupsaunce, but verely we  
shall not go wyth him. But rather  
shall we goe to Dordon, and yf the  
kyng make warre agaynst hym we  
shall helpe him with all our power.  
So lyghed anon on horsebacke the  
good duke Aymon & the foure knigh-  
tes his children, and bartyed no wher  
tyll they came to Laon & from thers  
they rode so longe tyll they came to  
Dordon. And whan the Lady sawe  
her Lorde and her foure children:  
she was right glad and went against  
them for to welcom them, and asked  
after tydings, and yf Raynawde &  
hys other children were made kni-  
ghtes: Than the good duke answer-  
ed yea, and after she asked why they  
were departed fro the kinges court.  
And than he rehersted vnto her word  
by word, how hys brother the duke  
Benes had slayne Lohier the sonne  
of the king Charlemayne. Wherof  
the good Lady Margery was won-  
derfull wrothe and sore. For well

she knew that this death of Lohier  
was the totalle destruction of the  
Duke Aymon her housbande of her  
self and of her childerne and of theire  
lande. She heard Raynawde her el-  
dest sonne that thretened Charle-  
mayne the great kyng, then sayd to  
hym the Lady hys Mother. My  
sonne Raynawde I pray thee vn-  
derstande me alytle. Loue thy soue-  
rayne and thy naturall Lorde, and  
dread him aboue all thinge, and bere  
him honour and reuerence. And God  
shall rewardethe for it, and ye my  
Lorde Aymon I am moche maruel-  
led of you that are departed from  
Charlemayne without leaue of him  
& hath doone to you so moche good  
and so great worship, and hath geu-  
en to your sonnes so noble and so riche  
armes, and hath made them knigh-  
tes with his owne handys, more  
great honour he might not doo to  
you nor to your childre. Lady said &  
Duke we be thus departed fro king  
Charlemayne because that my bro-  
ther hath slayne his sonne as I haue  
tolde you afore. A God sayd & Lady  
that of the virgin was borne in beth-  
lehem, howe hath that myll this  
day surmounted the good? For gods  
des loue my Lorde sayde the Lady  
medle not withall. For ye shall see  
this next somer that the kinge shall  
go vpon your brother, & by my coun-  
sell serue the kyng your right wyse  
Lorde, nor sayle him for nothyng.  
For and ye doo other wyse ye shall  
be vntrew and false to warde your  
Souerayne and naturall Lorde.  
Lady sayd the duke by god omni-  
pote I wold leuer haue lost my eas-  
el



tell and the halfe of my lande, than that my brother should haue slayne Lohier. Now the Wyl of god be done therein, and none other wyse.

**U**nyspeake of the good Duke Iymon of Dozdo and of his wife the duchesse and of theyr sones: We shal heere leue, & shall retorne to speake of kynge Charlemayne that was come agayne to parys, makig great sorow for his sonne Lohier. There had you seene many a golwe torne & broken, many a hande wonden, and manye heares of the head pulled so that it was pite and wonder for to se. Alas mi dere sonne said kynge Charlemayne, he þ hath slayne thee so cruelly loued me but lytle. I shall neuer be in quiete nor in reste till that I haue take vengeance of thy death. Syr sayd the duke Bayere haue mercy of your selfe. For it behoueth not so great a prince as ye be for to make so great sorow as ye doo. And in þ meane whyle came a messenger afoze þ kynge, which shewed to him howe Iymon Duke of Dozdon & his foure sones were gon into their countrie, wherof the kynge was soze an angred and wrothe. And swaie god and saynt Denis þ afoze he sholde dye: that Iymon and his chylderen sholde abyte full soze for it & that þ duke Venes of Aygre mouite sholde not kepe them therfro. The dyner was redy & they washed their handes and were set at dinner but wylt it that the kynge dyd eate but lytle, as he þ was in greate melancolye, & the fayre Salamon serued that day afoze hym the cuppe, &

great people was there. After dined the Emperour Charlemayne did resson with his barons and sayd to the (lorde sayd he) þ duke Venes of Aygre mount hath doone to me greate outrage þ so shamefully hath slayne my sonne Lohier. But and it please God I shall go wycke it vpon hym this next somer and I shall destroye all his land, and yf I may take him I shall not leaue hym for the duke Iymon þ shamefull ye is gone from mee, nor for his foure sones that I haue made knightes wherof I me repente soze, but that I shall make them to be hanged. Syr sayd than þ duke Baymes now we heare what I shal say to you, your sone is dead by great vnhap & well in an euill hour was he put to death, for neuer death was so soze solde ne so dere bought as this shalbe. So sende now for your folke through all your londes, and than from hens toward Aygre mouite take your waye. And yf ye may take the Duke Venes, let the death of your sone Lohier be to him ful dere souldre.

**N**aymes sayd the kynge ye be a good man, sage curtoyle & valyaunt, euen thus shall I doo, for well wylsely ye haue counselled me. Than gaue he leaue to many of hys barons and gentil men that were in his courte at that time & tolde them that eche of them should go into his countrie for to make them self redy, and that they should come agayne to him the next sommer. So was it doone as þ kynge had commaunded. And thus wente the barons and the gentil men from þ courte into theyr coun

coultre, and by them were tydings brought throughe all the landes vnto Rome, that kynge Charlemayne made a great assemble of men of armes, so that the renome therof flouge vnto the duke Venes of Aygre-mountes court, which of that other parte dyd sende for his kynsmen and freendes, and in especiall for his brethren Gerarde of Roussillon, and Bron of Mantuel, so that they were whā they came together well foure scoze thousand fyghtyng men and mo, and as saye folke as euer were sene, whiche than sayde I beleue yf the kynge besyge the Castell: that the worlde shall retorne vnto hym. Than sayd the Duke Venes of Aygre-mount to Gerarde of Roussillon. Brother sayd he be not dysmayed, for I hope to hurte the kyng so soze yf he come vpon vs: that he shal be wery of his bargayn, but let vs goe forth towarde Troy in chāpaygne and there we shall fyght wyth the kyng vngozously. For well I wote that God shall helpe vs agaynst hi. This was at the begynnyng of the moneth of Maye, and Charlemayn was at Paris, that abode after hys men that should come, for to go with a great pupsaunce vpon the Duke Venes of Aygre-mount. And bode not longe that Rycharde of Normandy came to the kyng wyth. xxx. thousande fyghtyng men. And of a nother syde came to hym the Erle Guy that had wyth hym a ryght noble & a great company of good men. and after hym came Salamon of Berryayne and the Erle Huon. And of al sydes ye should haue sene come to

the kyng Charlemayne Docteuils Gascopns, Normans, Flemynghes, Bernpers, and Bourgoynes, and so many other great Lordes that it was great wonder for to see, which came all and Lodged themselves in þe medowes of saynt Germaine.

**T**han whan the kyng Charlemayne knew that this folke was all arpyued: he had of it greates Joye, and incontynent made hys bayles to departe, for to goe to hys enterpyse, and made of Rycharde of Normandy, of Walleran of Buillon, of Guybellon of baupere, of pscar of Remours, of Oger the dane. and of Escouf the sonne of Dedon wyth them. xl. thousande men hys forewarde. There should ye haue se a ryght noble companye, and manye hardi men, they departed from nigh Paris. And put them self to þe way strayght to Aygre-mounte, and they (th<sup>e</sup> rydyng after many dayes Jurney whiche I can not tel) came there streyght to Oger the Dane that was in the forewarde a messenger soze hastily rydyng. That asked to whome was thys noble cōpany, and he answered to hym that they were kyng Charlemaynes folke. Than sayd s<sup>y</sup> the messenger that he wolde well speake wyth hym, than went Oger the Dane and shewed hym the kyng. And assone as the messenger saw hym: he made hym due reuerence, and the kyng gaue hym agayne hys salute, and him demaunded what he was and fro whens he came: and þe messenger tolde hym that he was of Troye and þe vnto him he was sent



fro Aubery the lord of Troye that was his liege man, whiche belounght hym humbly for socoures. For the Duke Benes of Aygreount, & his two byetherne Gerarde of Roussillon, and Dion of Nantuel and with them an hundred thousande fighting men had besyged him within Troye. And that yf ye came not to helpe hi, he must yelde vp the towne, also the saye towne that Julius Cesar dyd buylde there.

**W**han Charlemayne the Emperour vnderstode that Troy was besyged by the duke Benes & his byetherne, he was full sorry of it and he swore by Saynte Denys of Fraunce, that he should go there with his army, and that yf he might hold the duke of Aygreounte he should make hym dye a shamefull death, so called he the Duke Naymes of bayere, Goodche W of kryse, and the Duke Walleran and sayd to them. Barons ye vnderstande what thys messager sayth, let vs ryde hastelye toward Troye if it be take, and they answered to hym ryght gladly that they wolde doo it so. So dyd they ryde a good pace tyll that they came nyghe Troye. And firste of all came the forewarde with the Wyflame. Of the whiche were gouernours Ogier the Dane, Rycharde of Normandy, & the duke Walleran, and with them fourty thousand men. And the Messenger of Troy that conuerted them. And whan they were come so nyghe y they sawe Troye afore the: a messenger came to Gerard of roussillon that was afore Troy, saying to hym that the kynge Charlemayne

came vpon them for to socoure Aubery With a ryght great & puissaunt companie. Than layde Gerarde to his byetherne, that is to wyte Duke Benes of Aygreount, and y Eue Dion of Nantuell that it were good that they should go agaynst kynge Charlemayne with all theyr puissaunce and that eche of them should proue himself a good man. They did so as they had deuyled, and Gerarde of Roussillon was the first in the forewarde, and they rode so longe till y the one partye saw the other. Than sayd Ogier the Dane to Richard of Normandy whan he sawe come Gerarde of Roussillon se: sayd he howe Gerard of Roussillon wenth for to fare soule with vs. But now let vs thynke for to defende vs wel, so muche that the worshyp abyde to the kynge Charlemayne and to vs. And than they let renne theyr horses fro one parte and fro the other, and Gerarde of Roussillon wente & smote an Almayne with his spere so muche, that he made it to entre through the body of hym. Whiche fell anon dead to the ground, and Gerard took his baner & cryed with an high voyce Roussillon Roussillon.

**U**han began the batayle soe stronge fell and cruell. And whan Ogier the Dane saw thus his folke dye: he was wood and mad with it. So went he and smote a knight named Pouson by suche a wyse that he put his spere thorough the body of hym whiche fel downe dead afore him. And whan Gerarde had seen the same: he went and smote one of Ogiers men, so that all dead he

cast

cast him afore hym. And then he said  
ye haue this for your maysters sake  
Egypt. Muche great and meruayl-  
lous was the stoure and the batayle  
so fiers. For there shoulde ye haue se-  
ne so many of theires perced and  
clouen, and so mani a habergeon bro-  
ken, and salettes and helmes vnbo-  
kled and sore beten, and so many me-  
lying vpon the other dead, that all  
the earth was couered with þe bloud  
of the dead men (and of theym that  
were hurt there) so þe it was a great  
pittie to for to see. And than came the  
duke Benes of Aygremonste that  
spurred hys horse terribly, and wet  
and smote Enguerran lorde of Pe-  
ronne & of saint Quintine so harde  
that he ouerthrewh him dead afore hi  
and than sayd. Now go goddes cur-  
se haue thou, and cryed with an hi-  
gher voyce Aygremonste, and than  
came to him his brother the Duke  
of Antuell with all his folke, and  
they went al together vpon Charle-  
maynes folke, and of the other part  
came with great puissaunce Almay-  
nes poeteuins and Lumbardes al-  
so þe were of the parte of kinge Char-  
lemayne. So medled theym selfe the  
one party amoge the other. And ther  
was moche haroe and horryble assa-  
ble. For there were slayne many mi-  
ghty and worthy knightes of bothe  
sides, and Richarde of Normandye  
shewed wel there his great proffesse  
and worthines. For he wente and  
smote a knight þe Gerarde of Rou-  
sillon loued moche by suche a stren-  
gh that he ouerthrewe hym dead  
from his horse to the erth afore the  
sayd Gerarde. Whiche than sayd.

Now am I wel sorry and wothe for  
hym that now is dead that I loued  
so sore, certes I shal neuer haue Joy  
at my hert but þe I be auenged ther-  
of shortly. Than tooke Gerarde of  
Rousillon his baner in his fist. But  
hys brother Antuell came anon to  
hym and sayd, brother I counsell you  
that ye tourne agayne. For here co-  
meth Charlemayne with hys folke,  
and well I tell you that ye we a-  
byde hym: the losse shal tourne vpon  
ys. And whyle they were speas-  
kyng thus: Walleran of Bollon  
smote þe neww of Gerarde of Rou-  
sillon so that he foyned at hym, with  
his swerde throughe the body of hym  
& fell do wne dead to þe earth. Than  
trowed Gerarde to haue gone out of  
his wytte, and sente anon for the  
duke Benes his brother þe he shoulde  
come soone to succoure him, and he  
dyd so as pteu and balpaunt that he  
was. And of the other syde assem-  
bled there the kyng and hys folke.

¶ So shal you now hear of a thing  
meruaylous of so greete a nobles þe  
at the same feeld were cruelly slayn.  
This was in the moneth of Maye  
vpon a mornynge that kyng Char-  
lemayne did assemble his folke with  
the folke of the duke of Aygremonste  
and of his bretherne. To the whych  
assemble ye shoulde haue sene manye  
fayre harnayles shynynge for the  
sunne that fayre and cleare was þe  
day, the whyche assemble was wun-  
derfull stronge. For there were so  
many feete and heades cryten of a  
so many good horses slayne, and the  
other ranne thoroughe the medowes  
wherof the maysters lay dead vpon



## The booke of the four

the grasse. And wyt it for trouthe y  
thete were dead that same day of the  
one spde and of the other: more than  
xl. thousand men. A God what lau-  
ghter, there was muche great nobles  
dead. The duke Benes soze angred  
went and smote syz walter Lorde of  
Pierrele in his shielde so y hys spere  
went through the body of hym and  
fell downe dead afore hym. Than  
cryed he with an hye voyce his baner  
Aygremonnte.

**O**reat was the pzeas, and y ba-  
table spers and meruaylous.  
And there the wed Rycharde of Ro-  
mandy much worthili his great bar-  
dynes. For he Justed agaynst y duke  
of Aygremonnt so that he perced hys  
shielde and dyd hurt hym right soze  
and sayd to him by God ye shall not  
thys daye escape deary. It was an  
euill daye for you whan ye dyd slea  
my Lorde Lokier, & with that he did  
draw out his swerde, and smote the  
duke agayne vpo his helme in such  
a wise that if it had not ben a copse  
of Steele that made his stroke to stur  
the said Benes had be dead y houre  
And the stroke fell downe vpon the  
horse, & cut y horse in two as though  
it had be nothing. And thus fell the  
horse dead vnder hys mayster. Tha  
was y Duke Benes soze abashed  
Whan he thus found him self a ground  
But he stode vpon his fecte redely  
as he that was pzeu and valpaunte  
holdyng his swerde in his hande, &  
Went and smote a knight named sir  
Symon so that he kyllid hym sterke  
dead in the place. And than he called  
Wyth an hyghe voyce. Aygremonnt

his baner. Than came to hym hys  
two betherne, the Duke of Roussil-  
lon and of Mantuell, and of the lde  
of kinge Charlemayne came Ogver  
Raymes, wailerā of Bollon, Quā  
lorde of Mauns the Erie Salamon  
Leon of frise the archebisshop Tuc-  
pyn and Escoufe the sonne of Dedō  
And than should ye haue sene there  
at that assemble muche great & mer-  
uaylous noblesse of knyghtes that  
lay dead vpon y erth, the one vpon y  
other that it was a pyteous syght  
for to beholde.

**A** this inhumayne occysion  
Was come theperour Char-  
lemayne crynge barons if they esca-  
pe vs we shall neuer haue honoure,  
and than he bare vp his spere to the  
rest and went and smote into the she-  
elde of Gerarde of Roussyllon so y  
he ouerthrew both horse and man to  
the ground, and there had be his last  
daye yf it had not ben the Duke Be-  
nes and Dion his betheren, y muche  
worthely and wyth great dylgēce  
succoured hym. Of that other party  
came Ogver the Dane vpon hys  
good horse Broysfort that smote a  
knyght of the folke of Gerard duke  
of Roussyllon called Syr Foullque  
so that he cloue him to the teeth and  
fell downe dead vnto the erth. And  
Whan Gerarde of Roussyllon sawe  
thus hys knyght slayne he called to  
god & to our lady saying. Well haue  
I thys daye lost my fayre and good  
knight. And the duke of Aygremonnt  
was soze abashed and prayed God  
also full pyteously y it wolde please  
hym to kepe hym from deary, and

from fallynge in to the handes of Charlemayne. For he was the sonne vnder and it was well aboute coplyn tyme & the fyghters of the one parte & of the other were wery & sore chauffed. And so wythdrew the thre byetherne abacke vnto theyr Centes With moche Wyathe, and in especial Gerarde of Roussillon that had lost that day Aymon his cosyn and a hundred other of the best knyghtes of his company. And he sayd in this wyse. In euill houre it was when the sonne of Charlemayne was slain. Than came to hym the duke Benes of Argremosir bledynge as he was horrible wounded. And when Gerarde saw hym: he began to sygh tenderly sayinge. For thy brother are ye wounded to deathe: Nay sayd he I shal soone be whole. Than swore Gerarde the duke of Roussillon that to morow at day sonne rising: He should begyn agayn his batayle against king Charlemayne and his folke wherfore thyrty thousande shal lose their lyues. Alas for god nay sayd his brother the Duke Rantuell. But yf ye wyll doo my counsell we shal sende xxi. of the worst knyghtes that wee haue vnto kyng Charlemayne, and by our sayd knyghtes we shal doo hym to wote and shew hūbly that he haue pitie and mercy of vs, and that the Duke Benes our brother shal amende hym the death of his sonne Lohier euen so as it shal be aduysed by the prynces & barons of his feleashipp and of ours, & ye know wel all redy that we be his lyge men, & that to warre agaynst hym we doo cruel falschod, & yet more it is, that yf

he had losse all his folke that he hath here with him, or euer that it were a moneth passed he should haue recovered twayne as many, so may we nothing doo agaynst hym. And therfore may we nothyng doo agaynst him, & therfore I pray you my byethern, that ye wyll doo thus, & to hym answered his two byetherne that they wolde doo it, syn that he counselled the so, and concluded together that they should sende thither as soone as it were day. They made that nyght good watche vnto the morning, and than they made redy their messengers for to sende to the kyng Charlemayne, And when they were redy: Gerarde of Roussillon sayd to them. Lordes say wel to kyng Charlemayne that we be sore dyspleased of the death of his sonne Lohier, and that our brother the duke Benes repented him selfe of it full sore, & that yf it please hym to haue mercy of vs that we shal go & serue hym where it shal please him to sende vs wyth. x. thousand fyghtynge men. And also ye shall saye to Raimon of Gaupere that we pray hym that he wyll employ hymselfe to warde the kyng Charlemayne that this accorde may be had.

**A**fter that the messengers had well all alonge vnderstand what they should saye to the kyng Charlemayne from the thre byethern dukes: They lychted on horsbacke ech of them, berynge brynches of Olyue tree in their handes, in token of peace. And ceased not to ryde tyll that they were come afore the tente of the kyng Charlemayne. Than spake



## The booke of the foure

one of them whiche was named Ste-  
uen, that salued the king in this ma-  
ner. *Syz* I praye our loyde that of  
his grace giue you good lyfe & long.  
And *wyt syz* that the duke Gerarde  
of Roussillon and the Duke Benes  
of Aygremount and Dion of Han-  
tuell ben come hither the whiche cry  
you merce, and beseeche you ryght  
humbly that it please you to pardon  
them the death of your sonne Lohi-  
er. Of the whiche they are wrothe &  
fory. And *p* duke of Aygremount let  
you wote by vs, that yf it be your  
pleasure to doo so: that he and hys  
brytherne shalbe your lyege men, &  
shal come to serue you with .x. thou-  
sand fyghting men in all that shalbe  
your pleasur to employ them, *syz* for  
goddes sake haue remembraunce that  
god forgaue his death to Longes *p*  
cruelly stiked him to the hart. Where-  
fore *syz* please it you to pardon the,  
& take them to your good grace. And  
of this right humbly they beseeche you.

**W**hen the kynge Charlemayne  
had thus heard speake *p* mes-  
sengers of the three brytherne: he tro-  
peled his forehead, & knitted his browes,  
and looked full angrely, and at  
that houre he answered to them no-  
thyng, and than soone after he bega-  
to speake in this maner. *Vi my fat-*  
*ch syz* Steuen sayde he well had the  
duke Benes lost his wyttes. Whan  
he so shamefully slew my deere sonne  
Lohier, whiche I loued so tenderly.  
Now is he my man wyll he or not.  
*Syz* sayd Steue I am certayne that  
he shall doo to you all reason to the  
direction of your good counsell.

Then sayd the kinge of this we shal  
counseyl vs, and withdrew hym  
a lytle a side, and called to him duke  
Raymes. Ogger the Dane, *syz* Sa-  
lamon. Huon of Mauns. Walleran  
of Bollon. Odet of Langres, and  
Leon of Fryse, & sayd to them. Loz-  
des heere ben the messengers of the  
duke Benes and of his brytherne *p*  
sende me worde *p* they wyll come  
for to serue me where my wyll shalbe  
wyth .x. thousand good fyghting me-  
n. We wyll pardon them the death  
of my sonne Lohier. And they shal  
be our vassayle and true liege men, &  
of vs they shal holde theyr landes  
and theyr lordshippes. *Syz* answered  
the duke Raymes in this is nothing  
but well. So counsell I you that  
ye pardon them. For they be muche  
valyaunte, and of great renome.  
Wherefore pardon them *pf* it please  
you.

**T**hen by the Counsell of the  
duke Raymys of Bauperc  
the kynge dyd pardon the three bry-  
therne & called to him the .iii. knigh-  
tes, and said to them, how he pard-  
oned the three dukes the death of his  
sonne Lohier, by suche a condicion  
that the duke Benes of Aygremount  
should come for to serue hym at the  
feast of Saynt John next comynge  
wyth .x. thousand fyghtyng men wel  
araped, and ye shal tel to them that  
they surely come now to me for to  
take of them theyr othe and sayth  
that they shal fro hens forth, obey  
and serue truly. And that of me they  
shal holde all theyr landes. Then  
departed the knyghtes from afo, &  
the

the kyng Charlemayne and came agayne vnto the Dukes and shewed vnto them how they had sped of their message with the king Charlemayn wherof the three brethren thanked much humbly our lord God. Then sayd the duke Rycharde of Roussillon it is reason that we take of our good gownes and go to the kyng Charlemayne naked and crye hym mercy of this that we haue thus offended agaynst his hygh pynsaunce & lordshippe, and the other two brethren answered that well they ought to doo so. So tooke þe noble knyghtes their clothes of, and al naked bare foote and in pooze estate departed from theyr lodges, and well foure thousand knyghtes wyth them all bare foote and in their shertes, and in such estate as were theyr masters. In this wyse they came tofoze the king Charlemayne. And wyth wel that in right great humilitie were set the three brethren for to haue peace and accord wyth the kyng Charlemayne that was wroth to them specially to the Duke of Agremount as more playnlye ye shall heare here after.

**W**han the kyng Charlemayne sawe thus come þe three brethren wyth theyr barons & knyghtes: he called to hym the duke Raymes & many other barons, and sayd to the, can ye not tell me what folke ye see ponder comyng? Spayd the dukes Raymes it is the Duke Benes of Agremount with his folke, that come for to requyre you of mercy. (This hanging) þe Duke Benes of Agremount came afore the king and cast hymselfe vpon his knee, &

sayd vnto hym in this wyse. Spayd for god I crye God mercy we ben heere comen by your commaundement, if I haue sayne your decree sonne by my folke: I now as your man yelde me & my brethren also Gerarde of Roussillon and Dion of Rancuall and wyl be your lyege men and serue you with all our pynsaunce where your plesure shalbe to set vnto, and neuer dayes of our lyues we shall sayle you but yf it belonge in you.

Than whan the kyng sawe theym thus come humblye towarde his pynsaunce in theyr shertes & barefoote and had hearde this that the Duke of Agremount had sayd to hym: he had of them ryght great pitie, & pardoned them the death of his sonne Lohier and all his euyl wyll. Than should ye haue sene from one part & from the other kysses and colleches of their knyghtesmen, and som wepe for Joye and the other for pitie.

**W**han were pleased þe barons with the king Charlemayne by the counsel of the good duke Raymes: than swore & promised the three brethren good fydeltie to the kyng Charlemayne, and that they should serue him at all tymes yf he should cal for the. So tooke they a glad leue from the kyng, but the kyng charged the Duke of Agremount that he should come to serue hym at the feast of saynt John next comyng. And than returned kyng Charlemayne towarde Barps, & the brethren went agayne ryght gladdes of theym towarde his place, for well they trowed for  
to



## The booke of the foure

to haue accord the Duke Benes of  
 Aygremonthe they brother to warde  
 Charlemaigne, but other wyse it wote  
 a full yere was worthe they accord  
 for soone after dyed therof the Duke  
 Benes of Aygremonthe by treason  
 and vnder the saufe conduyte of the  
 kyng Charlemaigne, as ye shall vnder-  
 stande yf ye wyll heare me. **T**he  
 shall wyte that a lytle afore the feast  
 of saynt John baptyst that the kyng  
 Charlemaigne helde a greate courte  
 in Parys and the Duke Benes for-  
 gat not to goe thither as he had pro-  
 mised, so departed he fro Aygremon-  
 the wyth two hundred knyghtes and  
 tooke his way to Parys towarde the  
 kyng for to serue hi where he wolde  
 put hym vnto. Now shall ye heare  
 how the kyng beyng in parys, came  
 towarde hym the earle Guenes his  
 newwe. Azy foulquet of Bozyllo  
 Hardres & Berenger, which told hi  
 how the duke Benes cam for to serue  
 hym w two hundred knyghtes, sayng  
 by this maner. **S**yr how may ye lo-  
 ue or well be serued of hym that so  
 cruelly hath slayne your some oure  
 cosyn, if your plesure were we should  
 well avenge you of hym. For in good  
 soth we should slea hym. Guenys said  
 the kyng it were treason, for we haue  
 gyven to hym trewes, alwayes doo  
 with it your wyll, so that the synne  
 touch not vpon me, & kepe you. for  
 in certayne the duke of Aygremonthe  
 is ryght myghty & of great kynred, &  
 well ye myght happe to haue a doo  
 yf ye fulfil in this your owne entet.  
**S**yr answered Guenes care ye not  
 therfore, for therin is so ryche a man  
 in all the worlde yf durst vndertake

any thyng agaynst me & my linage.  
**S**yr sayd Guenelon to mozowe cryp  
 we shall departe with foure thou-  
 sand fyghting me, & take no care for  
 it. For we shall delpyer this worlde  
 of hym. Certes sayd the kyng it were  
 treason. care not therfore sayd Gue-  
 nes he slew well your sonne Lohyer  
 by treason whyche was my kynsyna  
 and therfore I wyll be auenged and  
 I can. Now doo you there in sayde  
 the kyng porettyng alwayes that  
 I am not therto consentyng.

**W**han the moornyng came de-  
 parted well cryp fro Parys  
 the sayd Guenelon and his felawes  
 and wyth them well foure thousand  
 fyghtyng men, and neuer they tari-  
 ed tyll that they came in the valey of  
 Sopsons, and there they recountred  
 the Duke Benes w his puyssaunce  
 and whan the Duke Benes sawe  
 them come: he sayd to his folke. loz-  
 des I trow that yonder be some fol-  
 ke of the kynges that retourne again  
 from the courte. It is no force sayd  
 one of his knyghtes. I wote not what  
 it may be said the duke. For the kyng  
 Charlemaigne is soze vengeable for  
 to auenge hym self, and also he hath  
 with hym a lynage of folke the whiche  
 be fell and cruell. It is Guenes  
 Foulquet of Bozylon and certayne  
 other of his courte, and in trowth to  
 night in my sleape I dreamed that  
 a Gryffon came out of the Hea-  
 uens that perced my sheelde and all  
 myne armes, so that his narles  
 stakke into my Lyuer and my myl-  
 te, and all my men were therof in  
 great tourment, & they all were eaten  
 wyth

wyth bores and of Lions, and none of them scaped, but one alone. And also me seemed that out of my mouth yssued a whyte Bouc. Than sayde one of hys knyghtes that it was all but well, & that for cause of thys dre- me he ought not to dismay hymself. I Wote not sayde the duke what god shall sende me, but of thys my herte dredeth. So comaunded the duke Venes that every man should arme himself, & hys knyghtes answered that they gladly they wolde so doo. So began eueryche of them to seeke his armes and habylmentes. Here shal you heare of the harde bewynge and of a thyng heny to be recounted of the great laughter that made þat traytour Guenellon of the good Duke Venes of Aygreymount.

**T**he Erle Guenes rode wyth great force that was wonderfull stronge and fyers & well accompanied. Than went and met with the Duke Venes hyrste fow- quer of Morillon the whiche sayde to him that he had doone it for to slea Lohyer þe eldest sonne of king Charlemaigne, but oz ever the euyn came he should haue a soz reward for it. Whan the duke vnderstode hym: he meruayled hym selfe muche and said Ha god howe myght one kepe hym from traytours. Alas I helde the king Charlemaigne for a true prince & I le now the contrary but a foze þat I dye I shall sell my death ful dere. Than went they & fought þat party agaynst the other muche angry in so muche þat Guenes smote byforce the duke his cosyn Reynet so that he ouerthrew hym do wne dead to the

erthe afore his fete and after he cried with an hye voyce, smite on knyghtes for he slew my good cosyn Lohyer the duke Venes of Aygreymout dayned not accorde with me, but nowe I shall sell it him ful deare. So ran guenes & his folke vpon the duke of Aygreymount, and the Duke ryght worthly defended himself & smote a knyght named syz sawcon so that he shoud his swerde into the bodye of hym, and he fell dead afore hym. And after thys the Duke Venes of Aygreymount tooke himselfe for to weepe strongly, & wished much after his two bzytheren & also after his newwes. Alas sayd he dere Sonne Hawgys where be you now that ye be not here for well I wote yf ye wyske this enterpryse ye should well succour me. Ha my deere brother þat duke of dordon & of natuel & Gerard of roussillon wel I know þat ye shall neuer se me a lyue. Alas þat ye knowe not þat false enterpryse of charlemaigne & of þe Erle Guenellon, þat so cruelly & by great treason shal this dai make me inhumainly for to dye, wel I wot that right worthely ye should come helpe me. Ha my deere newwes Reynawode, Alarde Rycharde & Guichard so muche nede I haue this day of you. Ha my deere neww Reynawode worthy knight, as þat art, yf it please vnto god of hys benigne grace, that thou might know the greuous turlment and the sozowfull matter vnto the whiche by treason I am thys day lyuered. Wel I wot that by thee I should haue succours. For in al þat worlde is not thy peere of beaultie of goodnes of prowesse & of worthynes

Now



Now may not this day succoure me  
al my noble and Worthy Image, but  
that cruelly and vnder the faulcon-  
duyte of Charlemayne I shall dye  
pyteously.

**E**pers was the bataile a right  
harde to endure, but well ye  
may wyte þe duke of Aygremonit  
myght not respyte agaynst so manye  
folke. For he had not with him but  
two hundred knyghtes, and the o-  
ther were moze than foure thousand  
thus were they euill matched. Tha  
should ye haue sene that dai so moch  
brynes in the feld, so manye feete  
and heades smyten of, that it was a  
pytious thyng to behold. After cam  
yet agayne Guenes that smote Jop-  
usselyne of Blop so that he called hi  
dead to the erth, and he made soone  
to goe backe the Duke Venes folke  
of Aygremonite. Than was soze a  
bashed the duke of Aygremonit, the  
whyche knewe well that wythoute  
death he myght not escape. So went  
he and smote one of Guenes folke  
so great a stroke that he ouerthrew  
him dead. For none other wyse he  
coulde doo, but defende hym selfe  
as well as he could for to length his  
lyfe wythall. Ha god what a greate  
dommage it was to haue thus sham-  
fully betrayed hym. For after many  
chpyches many townes and Castel-  
les were therfore set in a fyre, and so  
many great nobles full pyteouslye  
brought to death. So much spede the  
traytour Guenes agaynst the good  
duke of Aygremonit that the folke  
of the duke were weke & almost go.  
For of two hundred þ he had brought

he had no moe with hym, but fourty  
Barons: sayd þe duke Venes of ay-  
gremonit ye se that we ben almoste  
all dead yf we defende vs not wyth  
gret herte and worthynes. And for  
goddes loue let euery of vs be wo-  
the thre as longe as we shall no  
be aloue. For ye se that here pyteou-  
sly we must departe & breake selow-  
shyp. Than wente the duke agayne &  
smote a knight named sy Helpe, so  
that he made hym to fall dead to the  
erth. And than cryed with an hyghe  
voyce Sympte well barons. The va-  
ley was farye and sounde of þe noyse  
that was made there, & at that houre  
one named Gryffon of Hautefell,  
wente & smote the dukes horse into  
the breste wyth hys spere so that he  
ouerthrew him vnder the horse, and  
the duke anon arose vpon his feete,  
& tooke his swerde wenyng to smite  
the sayd Gryffon, but the stroke fell  
vpon the horse so that he cutte him  
a sonder as it had ben nothyng.

**W**han the duke of Aygremonit  
sat to himselfe thus on foote he  
knewe well that it was doone of him  
but well he sware that hys death he  
should sell ryght dere. but sodaynly  
came there vpon him the cile Gue-  
nes that sat vpon a good courser þ  
which smote the duke Venes of Ay-  
gremonite with his speare suche a  
stroke, that he shoued hym throughe &  
throughe his body, & thus fell downe  
dead the duke Venes of Aygremonit  
and than þe duke Gryffon þe father of  
the sayd Guenes came to the Duke  
Venes of Aygremonit that lay dead  
vpon the sande & shoued his swerde  
in

in to his foundement. Than sayd þe Duke Gryffon, no Whast thou thy rewarde for int lozde Lohiers death þe thou let slew shamefullpe w in thy palays. Now is the good and woꝝ thy Duke Benes of Aygre mount de ceassed, god of his soule haue mercy, & the treatour Genellon & the Lord of Hautcfeil þe lighted vpon a good horse wente after the duke of Aygre mountes folke þe fled, whiche were but .x. a lyue of two hundred and yet these .x. were soone overtaken, and than the traytours made theym to sweare and prompt that the bodye of þe late duke theyz mayster they shold beare to Aygre mount, lyke þe he had doo byng the body of Lohier to paris in a byere, and the sayd knyghtes promysed them for to doo so. So toke they the corps from the other bodyes dead, wherof was there greate number, & put hym in a byere. And than went on theyz way with all & whan they were gon a lytle ferther: God knoweth what sorowe and lamentacion that they made for the death of theyz mayster, sayinge. Ha god good duke that so woꝝthy was how now we are sorpy for þe, certaynly full euyl hath doone kyng Charlemayne that vnder this saufsoudure hath made thee to be slayne in treason. These sorowful knyghtes went thus makynge theyz mone bearyng the body of the Duke Benes theyz mayster vpon a byere that two horses bare, whiche corps neuer staunched of bledynge by the space of .viii. myles, & how many dayes Journey that these knyghtes were w þe bodye of theyz mayster by þe way: I cannot

tel you. But they went so longe that they came nygh Aygre mount, and approached so moche that the cydynes came to þe towne & to þe duchesse þe her lozde had be thus traytourslye slayne. So ought not be asked of the greate sorow w þe duchesse & her sonne Matwis made. They yssued after out of the towne with them of the church & went agaynst the corps. Now also ought not to be asked yf there were made that day great wepynges & lamentacions. For whan the duchesse saw her lozde, & the woundes þe he had in his body moze than thre times: she fell do wne in a swoone vpon him. And in this wyse they bare the corps to the chief church & the bisshop of the towne dyd the seruys. And thā he was put in his graue & was right reuerently buryed. Thā sayd his sonne matwis. Good lozde what a domage is this of such a woꝝthy lozde to haue be thus slayn cruelly by treason, but & if I liue I log Charlemayne and the traytours þe thus haue doone: shal abyre for it fuldeedly. His lady mother he recomforted and said to her. My dcere mother haue a litle pacience. For myne vnkle Gerarde of Roussillon Bro of nantuel, and my cosyns Reynarde Blarde, Guicharde and Rycharde shal helpe me wel for to auenge the death of my lozde my father. Nowe shal we leue heare to speake of them of Aygre mount þe ben in great lamentacion & weptynges for the death of their lozde; and shal returne to tel of the traytours Gryffon & of Benes his sonne that with theyz folke were gone agayne to Paris.

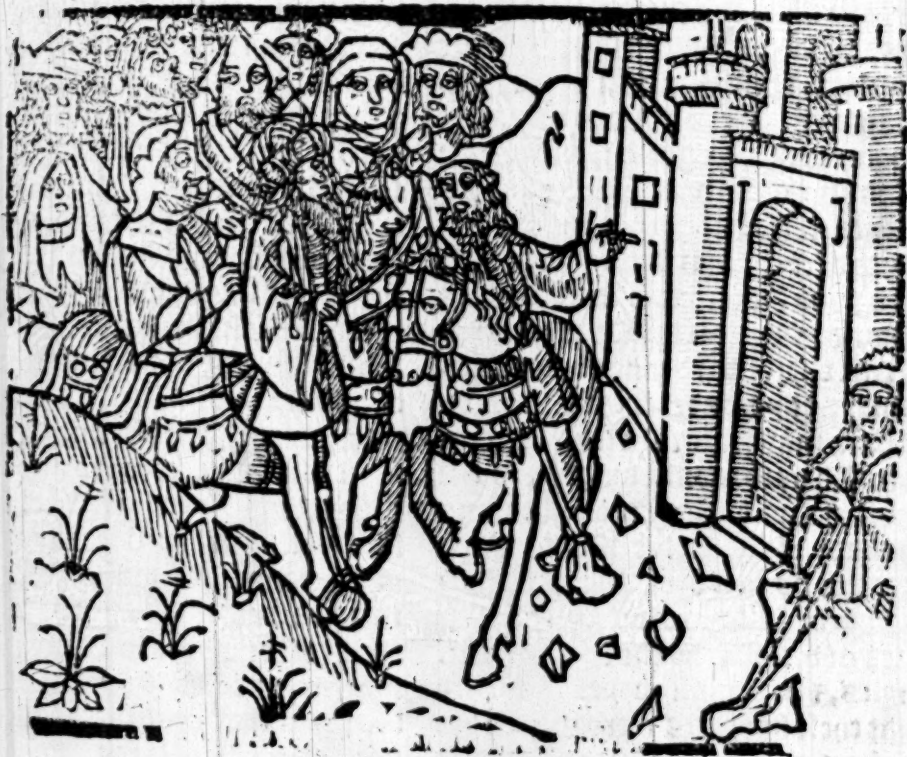
Now



**How** Gryffon of Haultefell and  
Gurnellon after that they had slayn  
the Duke Benes of Aygremonthe  
they retourned to Parys, & recoun-  
ted to the kynge Charlemayne the  
mortall treason that they had com-  
myssed and doone. Wherof the kynge  
Charlemayne was glad, But after-  
warde he was ful wrothe & sovy for  
it. For after þe Duke of Aygremon-  
tes deathe his two byetherne Gerard  
of Roussillon and Dion of Pantuel  
warred sore agaynst hym with their  
neuew Hadowys, & than they made  
peace and accorded together, but the  
kynge Charlemayne apoynted not  
wyth the foure sonnes of Armon,  
nor to Hadowys theyr colyn.

**Item** the weth also the same chap-  
ter how Reynawde slewe the neuew  
of kynge Charlemayne wyth a chesse  
boorde, as they were playng together  
at the chesses. Wherof the warre be-  
gan. The whyche was sore and mor-  
tall, as ye shal now heare here after  
and lasted so longe that it dyd great  
dommage to the Realme of Fraunce.

Lampitulum .ii. Fo. xiii.





**Y**E shall now here and under-  
stand from henceforth a merry  
tale and a piteous song, yf ye  
hereafter lyst to herken. This was  
at the feast of Pentecoste after the  
holy churcho daye, that the king Charle-  
mayne helde a great court at Baris,  
after that he hadde accorded with the  
bretherne of the saide duke Benes of  
Aygremou. And to þis saide feast came  
William the Englyshe, Walleran of  
Bullon, xv. kinges, & xxx. dukes, and  
well. lx. etles were there at þis daye for  
to crown Charlemain. And also was  
come there the duke Aymon, of Wor-  
don with his foure sonnes, that is to  
wit Reinawd, Alard, Richard, & Gui-  
chard, to the which Aymon: the kynge  
said. Aimo said he I loue you & your  
chilzen wel, and wot that I wyl ma-

ke of the saye Reinawd my sward, &  
the ocher shall serue me for to beare  
my faucons & goe with me. Spz said  
the good Aymon I thank you muche  
of the grete woorthyp that ye doo to  
me & to my chilzen. And wot that  
thei shall serue you truly as your lieg  
me, but wel I tel you good king that  
ye mysprised soze whan my brother  
the duke Benes of Aygremount vn-  
der your saufconduit, & in treason ye  
made thus shamefull ye die, & beleue  
that it greuech me ful soze at the hert  
& if w; doubted not you so much, cer-  
tes vengeance we should take ther-  
of. But sith that my brother Gerard  
hath pardoned it to you: I forgeue it  
you also. Aimo said þ king ye knowe  
better than that ye saye. For ye knowe  
wel the offence that your brother had  
doon to me for to haue slaine so true-  
ly. Lo here my eldest sonne þ I loued  
so much. Now let the one speke to the  
ocher, & let be spoken nomore therof.  
Now more we shal saide duke Aimo,  
but wel I pray god to haue merceye  
of his soule, for he was a right wo-  
thy knight. The came forth Reinawd  
de, Alard, Guychard, and Richard,  
which reasoned with the kinge, say-  
ing in this maner. Sir said Reinawd  
de the fairest of al knights and moste  
expert in fautes of knighthode, ye ha-  
ue made me & my brethern that been  
now afore you knightes, but wit it  
for very certain that we loue you not  
& that we haue toward you a grete  
and a mortall hate for the deache of  
our vncle the duke Benes of Aygre-  
mount, of the whiche deache ye haue  
not accorded with vs. whan the king  
vnderstoode Reinawd de: he looked  
D.i. grim-



grymly and frettly in his visage for  
greate wrauth and became blacke as  
a cole, and smote his forehead for angre  
and after said, Reinald thou yong  
bope doide our of my presence. For I  
swore by saynt Simon, and if it were  
not the compaignie of the barons that  
be heere: I should make thee to be put  
in such prison that thou shouldst  
not see nother hande nor foote that  
thou haste. Syr said Reinald it were  
not reason. But such that it is so fette  
come that ye will not heere us: we  
shall keep our peace.

**T**hus lefte the foure sommes of  
Simon the debate and spake no  
more to the kyng Charlemayn  
for that tyme of this matter. Fayre  
was the courte, and the day was ful  
fayre and byghce, and fayre was þe  
compaignie as of .xv. kynges. xii. du-  
kes, and .ix. erles. They went to the  
chirche for to heare þe masse that  
was songe, and muche ryche was the  
offeryng. And whan they had hearde  
the masse: they came agayn to the pa-  
lays, and asked after watet for to  
wasche theyr handes, and the dyner  
was readye, so they washed and set  
themy downe to dyner. And the .xv.  
kynges were all set, except the king  
Salamon that setued that daye with  
the Duke Godfrey. But Reinald  
de at chys dynner myght not eat by  
cause that the kyng Charlemayne  
had rebuked hym so shamefully. He  
saide Reinald to hymselfe Alas,  
howe shall I conne doo so muche  
that I may auenge my selfe of Char-  
lemayne for the death of my vncle, þe

so much was beloued, whiche traito-  
rully and shamefully hath be slain: &  
if I take not vengeance of it: I shall  
were mad. In this wise sorowed the  
good Reinald, and his brethern re-  
comforted him. The barons came out  
after diner for to play & spozte them-  
selfe, and Berthelot the newwe of  
Charlemayn called Reinald for to  
play with him, wherof grew a greate  
mischeef for afterward many a good  
knight died therfore & manye a fayre  
childe fatherles as here after ye shall  
herken well.

**N**owe was set Berthelot and  
the worthy Reinald for to  
playe at the ches whiche were of y-  
uoyr, wherof the boord was of golde  
massy, and so longe they played that  
debate fel betwene them two, by such  
maner that Berthelot called Reinald  
de horsonne, and rooke by his hand,  
and smote Reinald in the bylage  
so that the blood fell to the grounde,  
and whan Reinald sawe himselfe  
thus shamefully outeaged: he was  
ryghe wroth and soze angred & swate  
by god him should yf heyrde therfore.  
Tha rooke Reinald the ches boord  
and smote Berthelot vpon his head  
so harde that he cloued hym to the  
teeth, and thus Berthelot fell down  
deade to the grounde afore hym, so be-  
gan the crye at that houre soze strong  
in the Palays that Reinald de þe son-  
ne of Simon had slain Berthelot the  
newwe of kyng Charlemayne. whan  
the kyng vnderstoode chys: he  
went myghe oure of his wyf, and cal-  
led of heyghte. Barons keep well  
that Reinald scape not. For by salu-  
De

Denis of Fraunce: he shall not escape quicken if we maye holde hym, for he hath slaine our newew Berthelot. Than ran soone the knyghtes vpon Keinaude. And his kynnesmen defended him nobly. And thus was there grete strete and manye heres pulled, and many gownes toren. For suche a fray was there neuer seen as that daye was in the palays of Darys. Many strokes gaue there Hawgys the colin of Keinaude, and so in to the duke Venes of Argemount. And while that this fraye was in the palays: Keinaude and his three brethren, and theyr cosyn Hawgys escaped redyly out of the palays and came vnto theyr horses that soone were made redye. So lyghted they on horsebacke and rode soone out of Darys, and fled streight vnto Bozdo towarde theyr lady mother.

**A**nd when the myghty Charlemaigne wytt that Keinaude and his brethren were gone out of Darys: he made for to be redy wel two thousand knyghtes for to folow them. Now keep them our lord that on the crosse suffred passyon. For yf the kynge holde them: they shall dye withoute remysyon, but Keinaude vpon hym is no care. For he was vpon his horse bayard that goeth as the wynde. So raryed not the four brethren & theyr cosyn till that they came vnto Salmoze, and they bayted theyr horses of Blarde, Richard and of Guycharde. Thanne began Keinaude to make sorrowe saynge. Saye god that suffred deathe and

passyon, keep this daye my brethren and my cosyn from the deathe, and from combraynce, and from fallinge in the handes of Charlemaigne the cruell, and of the ocher parte chased them the frenchemen brochyng with the spottes as fast as theyr horses myghte runne, so muche that a knyght that was better horsed then the ocher were: ouertooke Keinaude and sayd to hym, ye shall abyde ye vntrewe knyghte and I shall bynge you to kinge Charlemaigne. And when Keinaude heard hym: he turned bayard ayenst hym and smot the knyghte with his spere in his sheeld, & tounge him with so grete a might that he deade he ouerthrew him. So seased Keinaude the knyghtes horse and tooke him to his brother Blarde that lyghted anon vpon the backe of him. And after that he was on this good horse: he went & smote a nother knyght with his sword so that he made him fall deade afore him, and so he tooke this knyghtes horse to his brother Guycharde that thanked hym muche for it. And a nother knyghte of the kynge Charlemaigne came to them. Glotons sayd the knyghte ye shall come to the king that shall make you al for to be hanged. Ha by my fayth said Keinaude thou shalt lye, and with this Keinaude rooke vp his sword & gaue him suche a stroke that he ouerthrew him dead at the ground. Than tooke Keinaude the horse by the reyne and gaue hym to his brother Wycharde that great need had of it. Now be the three brethren new horsed & Keinaude is vpon bayard and his colin Hawgys that he loued so



The booke of the foure

Wel behynde him, now they goe god  
wyl leade them & keep them from e-  
uyl, & Charlemayne pursued after  
them, but for nought he canapled,  
for they were neuer the rather taken  
for hym. Than was the sonne gone  
vnder, and the nyght began to come,  
and the foure brethren & their cosyn  
were come in to the towne of Soillō.

**S**o much rode Reynawd by nyght  
and by daye vpon bayarde that  
bare him and Hawgis his cosyn;  
that they came to Wozdon there they  
met with the duchesse theyr mother,  
that ranne for to kysse them and colle  
them. And syn asked what they had  
doon of theyr father and if they were  
departed from the court with wy-  
che. Lady sayd Reynawd, for I haue  
slayne Berthelot the newe we of the  
kyng Charlemayn, the reason why  
I dyd so: was because he called me  
hoierson & gaue me with his syt vpon  
my village so that the bloud came  
out of it. And whan the ladye vnder-  
stode him: she selle downe all in a  
swoune, and Reynawd tooke her by  
redely. And whan the good lady was  
come againe to her selfe she sayde to  
Reynawd. Fayre sonne and howe  
durst you doo this that ye haue doone  
for I promit you ye shal once repent  
for it. And your father shal be destroi-  
ed therfore and cast out of his lōdes.  
And if he scape on liue it shal be great  
meruayl. So pray I you all my chil-  
dren that ye flee awaye, but take a-  
fore all my treasour. For yf your fa-  
ther come againe from the court: he  
shall will see you to the king Char-  
lemayn. Lady said Reynawd weene

ye yf our father is so cruel & so wroth  
with vs that he wolde take & deliuer  
vs in to the hādes of the kyng Char-  
lemayne, that is our greate enemye  
mortal:

**R**eynawd, his three brethren  
& Hawgis wolde make no  
ne other sojournynge: but rooke so  
muche of the hauoyze and treasoure  
of theyr father and mother: that they  
had ynough of it. And thenne rooke  
theyr leue of their lady mother, wher-  
of there was great pytie at the depar-  
tinge. For the children wept tenderly  
and the mother also of the ocher side  
whan she saw that her children that  
thus went fro her & wist not yf she  
should euer see them again: so depar-  
ted the newe knyghtes with theyr  
cosyn Hawgis and yssued out of the  
towne & entred in to the greate forrest  
of Ardeyne streyght through the va-  
leye of Feyr, and rode so much that  
they came vpon the ryuer of Aulse,  
and there they chose a faire grounde  
where they made to be buylded a fai-  
re castell vpon a fayre roche muche  
stronge, & at the foote of it: passed the  
saide riuer of Aulse. And whan that  
the castell was made vp: they called  
it Mountaynford, & as I row there  
was not suche another of stronge  
fro the said place vnto Mountpeller.  
For it was closed wth great walles &  
enuyronned rounde about wth dyches  
soe deep, & well garnished with all  
maner of victualles & of all thinges  
be nedeful to be had in a fortes, now  
doubte the newe knyghtes no bing  
Charlemayn yf he wrought not by  
treason. Charlemayn was at paris  
much angry for yf dech of his newe  
Bet:

Berthelot, the which Reinald had slayne playing at the chesse as it is sayde, so made he to come afore hym the duke Aymon of Dozdonne the father of the fourte knyghtes, and made hym to swere that he shoulde neuer gyue no help to his chyldren and that they shoulde neuer be the better of a peny by hym, & in what place that he shoulde them fynde he shoulde take them and shoulde bringe them to him, the which Aymon durste not saie ayenst hym, but sware that he shoulde doo so wherof afterwarde he was soze repyued. And after that he had sworn thus he departed oute of Parys all wroth & angrie of this that he muste chase thus his chyldren: and came to Dozdon. And whan the duchesse saw him she began to weep full soze: and the duke knew wel what she yeelde. Lady said the duke where be my sonnes gone. Syr sayde the ladye I can not telle whether they are drawen, but why suffered you that our sonne Reynawde slewe Berthelot the neuewe of kynge Charlemaine, ladye saide he I coude not doo thetts, & wist that our sonne Reynawde is of so greete a strength that neuer syth the incarnation of our lord was not seen so stronge a knyghte as he is. Nor all the assemble that than was in the pallas at Parys myghte not keep him, but that he slewe Berthelot afore all the lordes that were there. And afore this our saide sonne Reynawde demaunded of kynge Charlemaine ryght and reason to be doone to him of the deathe of my brother his vnckle the duke Benes of Aygre, mount, wherupon the king ful Ham

fullpe and outeraageously answered to our said sonne, wherfore Reinald was wrothe and soze angred, and cause why Reynawde slewe Berthelot was for to aueng him of the king Charlemaine. Nor withstandynge that Berthelot had iniuried our sayde sonne ful soze at the playe of the chesse. And also he smote hym fyrste outrageously that the bloud came out of his face, so Reinald for his great and hardy courage might not suffre this by no wise. And therfore the king made me swere that yf I can take my chyldren that I shal bringe them to hym at Parys, and that no helpe they shal neuer haue of me nor succours, nor that they shal not be the better a peny of all my hauoure. Wherof I am wrothe and full soze. We shall leaue heere to speake of the duke Aymon and of the duchesse that ben ryght soze for their chyldren: And shal shew you howe the worthye kynge Charlemaine made to seeke after the fourte sonnes of Aymon thorough all his realme, but he myght not knowe nor vnderstande no ridynges of them, tyll that at last came to hym a messenger that recounted to hym howe he had founde them in the forest of Ardenne. In which they had edyfied a fayre castell & soze stronge. And whan the kynge vnderstoode these rydynges he sent worde in conuenance to all his folke of armes that they shoulde make ready themselves, the which dyd so without delaye.



## The booke of the foure

How after that kyng Charlemai-  
ne hadde made the duke Aymon to  
forsake his sonnes: he went and be-  
sieged theym at Mowntaynforde,  
where he was discomfited two ty-  
mes. But the castell of Mowntayn-  
forde was taken by treason. And  
howe Reynowde and his byetherne  
suedged themselves of the traytours  
that had betrayed theym, and howe  
they saved them selfe after that with  
in the forest of Ardeyne, where they  
father found theym as he went from

the siege towarde his countrey, and  
howe for to keep his orbe that he had  
made to kyng Charlemaine, he dyd  
assayle to his sonnes, so that of .v.  
hundred men that they were, abode a  
liue with his sonnes but .xvii. perso-  
nes but Reynowde and his byethern  
had no hurt of their bodies, howe be  
it that they slewe manye of theyr fa-  
thers men.

Capitulum.iii.



**N**owe sayth the hystorie that  
 such the time of the kinge Al-  
 lexander: was none suche heard as  
 this same, & therfore faire lordes plea-  
 se you heare and vnderstande howe  
 befell of the foure sonnes of Aymon  
 that were enmyes of the emperoure  
 Charlemayne kynge of fraunce, for  
 the same time king Charlemain had  
 banished them ouce of the realme of  
 fraunce & made all his barons bothe  
 yonge & olde to seeke after them, and  
 also made thei were that they should  
 neuer helpe ne confort theym by no  
 maner of wise. And the same ork had  
 made with many ocher the olde duke  
 Aymon thei father as ye haue heard  
 afore, wherof he was full sorow after  
 warde. It happed than that the kyng  
 Charlemayne, helde a greate courte  
 in Parys. And as this courte was  
 assembled where all the barons of  
 fraunce were togyther: a messenger  
 came there befoze the kyng Charle-  
 mayne & kneeled afore him and sayd  
 Syr I brynge you tydynes of that  
 ye dyd sende me for, Wyt sy that I  
 cam fro the greate forest of Ardenne,  
 whete I haue founde the foure son-  
 nes of Aymon that dwell there with  
 in a stronge castell well sette vpon  
 a roche, and if ye wyll fynde theym  
 and be auenged of them: Wyt that  
 ye maye well ynough doo so as I by-  
 leue for certayne. whā Charlemayne  
 vnderstood this messenger: he began  
 to meruaile hymselfe soze and called  
 hys barons and sayd to them. Fayre  
 lordes whan it is so that ye be heere:  
 it apperteyneth not that I shoulde  
 sende for you at your places. So I  
 pray you and requyre as to my lyege

men that ye help me to be auenged of  
 the four sonnes of Aymon that so greate  
 domage haue doon to me as ye know  
 well.

**W**han the barons vnder-  
 stood the prayer that the  
 emperoure Charlemayne  
 made to them: they answered with  
 one voice. Sir we shal doo your com-  
 maundement without doubt, gyue vs  
 leaue if it please you that we may goe  
 to our countreys for to make vs ready  
 to harneys and of horses, the which  
 thing the king graunted them. And  
 so departed all the barons fro the court  
 and went in to thei countreys, the  
 which abode not long that they came  
 agayne to Parys all arrayed and rea-  
 dy to warre with thei army. And  
 whan the kyng Charlemayne sawe  
 them: he receyued them gladly, and in  
 continent without anye tarryinge he  
 departed out of Parys, & went with  
 all his hoste to Mounclion a towne  
 of his, and there he laye that nyght.  
 And at the morowe as soone as the  
 daye appered: the kyng Charlemayne  
 departed from Mounclion and went  
 on his way with his hoste, & ordeined  
 y forward to the erle Guy of mou-  
 peller that wolde much greate harme  
 to Reynawd, & whan they had set the  
 selfe in the way: the emperour Char-  
 lemayne called to him his good vas-  
 seilles Renyer, Guyon of aubeford,  
 the erle Garner, Gestray, Langan,  
 Ogier the dane, Rycharde of Noz-  
 mandy, & the duke Raymes of bavi-  
 ere, and saide vnto them all. Lordes  
 ye knowe well what ye haue to doo,  
 I praye you that ye keep well your  
 selfe from Reynawd and goe not to  
 nyght



## The booke of the four

nyghe, but abyde all togither in such a stronge place that we may haue no domage, and let good warche be made euerie night, for my hearte geueth me that we shal dwell there longe.

**T**han saide the duke Raimes of bayere. Sir we shall doo so. Than made they the trompettes to be blownen, & all the hoste they made to come together. And thus they rode so muche that they came to Mylepne otherwise called Alpes, & whā they were come there they saue the castell of Mountaynforde, that Reinalde & his bretherne & their cosyn Batogis had doo make, euen at that houre that king Charlemayne and his hoste were com to Alpes, & thre bretherne of Reynard were coming fro the chace oure of the Wood of Ardeyn, and Richard the yongest bare a right riche horne bothe fayre & good: the which Reinald loued full deare. And in their felawshipp myght well be .xx. knyghtes and no mo. And as they returned to Mountaynforde Richard beheld and saue ouer the Ryuer of Ruse chosse of the king Charlemayne wherof he began to be soze metueilled, & called Guycharde his brother & said to hym. Fayre brother what folke maye be they that I see ponder I heard say the other day of a messenger that tolde it oure brother Reynard: that the emperoure came for to bespege vs within our castell.

**A**nd after whan Guycharde vnderstoode his brother he behelde ouer the ryuer & saue the forewarde that Guyon conduxed, and

whan Guycharde saue them he smote his horse with his spurres, he & his folke went apenst Guyon, & sayde to hym. Fayre syster what are these folke: syster sayde Guyon these been the folke of the emperoure Charlemayne that goeth to Ardeyn for to bespege a castell that the four sonnes of Armon haue doo make there, for they strenge the they trauayle vs much, god gyue them euill rest. Certes said Guycharde I am a souldier with Reynard, & can you nother thanke nor grace of that that ye saye, for I am holden to defend them at my power & with this he spurred his horse, and smote the said Guyon throughte his sheelde so harde, that he ouerthrewe hym deade to the grounde, and than he tooke the horse of the sayde Guyon and tooke him to one of his squyers and assembled al the knyghtes together of one parte & of the other, they of fraunce cried Mounceiour sature Denys, & the bretherne of Reinald cried mountaynforde. Than shoulde ye haue seen a fell batayle and ryghte cruel the one aienst the other sheeldes broken and helmes broken, som dead and som soze wounded so muche that it was great pite to see. What shall I tell you moze al the folke of Guyon that made the forewarde were there slayne. This hangyng came a squier to the king & shewed him howe his foreward was vterly dystroyed, & that Guycharde the brother of Reynard had slayne the earle Guyon.

**G**od saide than the emperoure Charlemayne haue I now lost Guyon, of hym it is greate domage,

Now wot I not from hens forth on  
howe I should wynn, sich that I haue  
lost the forwarde, and than he called  
Ogier the dane & said to him. Ogier  
goe to the succours you & Raymes,  
for Guichard bereth with him al my  
hauoyze & haue slayne all my folke,  
than Ogier the dane abode not but  
lighted on horsbacke he and the duke  
Raymes with thre hundred knigh-  
tes well armed & well arated & went  
after Guichard, but they labour  
was nought worth to them, for Gui-  
chard & his men were all ready with  
in Mountaynford with al the hauo-  
re that they had won. Whā Keinawd  
saw his brother come with so greate  
hauoyze: he went ayenst him & killed  
them al, & than he said to Guichard,  
saye brother where haue ye taken so  
greate hauoyze that ye byng heere?  
spayde Guichard I shall tell you  
rydynge. Wherof ye shall be greatly  
meruaylled. Nowe wot that kynge  
Charlemain cometh for to bessege  
you with all his hoste & hath so great  
chualry with him that it is wonder  
for to see, my brotherne & I come fro  
the chase out of the Wode of Ardeyn  
& we haue recountered the forwarde  
of Charlemain that the erle Guy con-  
duyted, there foughte we togither w  
them, but god be thanked & my men:  
myne enemyes were discomfited &  
ouerthrowen, one parte we haue slai-  
ne: & the other fled away, so haue we  
brought they hauoyze ye see heere.  
And there is dead the earle Guy and  
many other greate lordes & all they  
men. Than sayd Keinawd I oughte  
to loue you dearly whā ye canne war  
so wel that ye haue ouerthrowe your

enemies at the fyrst comyng on, and  
than he called all his brotherne & his  
folke and sayd to them, saye lordes  
nowe is the time come that eueryche  
of vs must proue himself a good mā,  
wherfore I pray you that euery man  
forchymselfe to doo worthily his de-  
uoyze that your wo:shippe and oures  
be kept, and that men may not wyte  
vs no cowardes, & let vs doo knowe  
oure p:owesses to kinge Charles  
mayne so that he holde vs not for fe-  
ble & myschaunce, Whā Keinawd  
had spoke to his brethren and to his  
folke: they answered to hym in this  
maner, my lord haue no doubte of  
none of vs, but be sure that we shal  
neuer fayle you for the helypyng of  
our limmes as long as we shal liue.  
and whā Keinawd vnderstood the  
good wil of his folke and namely of  
his brotherne: he beganne againe to  
speke to the and sayde, let the gate be  
shette and drawe by the byrdege, & so  
go we to the windowes for to see this  
folke that come ayenst vs. And than  
they went there as Keinawd sayd, &  
whā they looked out of the Wyndo-  
wes: they saw Ogier the dane com-  
myng with a thousand men w him,  
whiche whā he saw that Guichard  
was entered into the castel: he retour-  
ned agayne & sayd to the king how it  
was, and than he sayd, Sir I let you  
wot that the castel of Mountaynford  
is the fairest & the strongest that euer  
ye saw for it is set vpon a hye roche  
of harde stone, and well I tel you for  
certayne that it shall not be so taken  
so lyghtly as men ween. For suche  
folke doo keepe it that wel and wo:  
shelp shall defende it.

Whā



The booke of the four

**W**han the Emperoure Charles mayne hearde speake Ogier the dane: he was of it so wrothe that he went myghe out of hys wyte, and swore god that he should neuer retorne into fraunce but that Reinalde were take, and that if he maye haue hym: all the worlde shall not saue hym but that he shall make him to be hanged & his brother Guy: shal be drawen at horses tailyes. For said Ogier Well ye oughite to doo so, for they haue trauaylled you full often and haue gyven you greate labour & payne. Sir sayde Fouques of Hozillon, haue no doubt for shortly we shal auenge you of them, make to be cried incontinent that poute hoste goe lodge lightly about Mountenford, Certes said the king ye saye well and than he made stomperres to be blowen of a hepghee for to assemble togyther al his men of armes and commaunded that all the castell of Mountenforde should be enuyronned rounde about with folke, & that euery baron shoulde doo ygher there his paulilion, and they dyd so as the king had commaunded. Now Wyl I shewe to you how noble the castell was set. The said castell was closed & set vpon a hie roche, & of the one side of it was bering a great riuer called Ouse, & of the other side it had euyn at hand a great wood ful pleasaunt, of a nother syde it hath a fayre plaine, and of that other syde a full faire meadow greace and pleasaunt to be holde. ¶ Whan the folke of the king Charlemaine were al lodged: the emperor lighted on horsebacke with a few felawship for to see the strength

of the castell, & when he had well beholden it & seen at his ease: he began to say in him self, ha god how is this castell closed & set in a stronge place god how these knightes know wel the craft of warre, not withstandinge if they be but yonge folke, saye lordes thinke to warre wel, for we haue som what more to doo than I wende, whā I paulilions & the tentes of I kinges were dressed vp: he made to be set a charbonk le right rich all hys on hys tence whiche stone full precious was shyning as a torch & byenech, & with the same a great appeil of fine golde of great value, & whan the said tents were al spred & hanged: the emperor entered within & made the duke Raimond to be armed, & charged him that no man of warre so hardy for to lichte on horsebacke of eygher dayes, but it were for to spore himself. For I wil doo knowe throughe al the realme that men bynge to vs vicayles in greace habundaunce more than I castell of mountenforde be by vs assailed, and make my chappel to be apparailled to chend that we pray god if he wil help vs to be auenged of I four sonnes of Simon the which we shall samely or euer it be a moneth. For they shal not can haue no vitallies fro thow by no way, than said I duke Raimond to the hig, sir you may doo better if it be your pleasure, send a messenger to Reinalde to tel him that he yeeld to you guy: chard his brother, & ye shal quite him al his londe, & if he yeeld him to you: make him to be beheaded anon. & if I Reinald refuse for to do this he may wel be sure I warre shal not leue him as long as he shal be alieue, than answered

were Charlemain, ye saye well and  
 ryght wylsely, but certaynlye I wote  
 not where to fynde a messenger, to  
 whom I myght well trust. **Sy:** said  
 the duke Raymes, yf it please you,  
 Ogier and I shal doo this message.  
 It please me well sayde the king, and  
 ryghte greace thanke I shal conne  
 you for it, for ye neuer fayled me at  
 a need. Than went Raymes, and  
 Ogier and made theym ready, and  
 whan they were ready: they tooke in  
 theyr handes braunches of Olyue  
 tree for to shew that they were mes-  
 sengers, and so went they both tog-  
 ether without any other company, &  
 whan Alays that kept watche sawe  
 that two knyghts come: he went & as-  
 ked theym what knyghtes they were  
 that came therr. **Sy:** said the duke  
 Raymes, we been messengers of the  
 kynge Charlemaine that hath sent  
 vs hyther for to speake with Rey-  
 nard the sonne of Aymon, and inco-  
 nent the saide Alays went to hys  
 lord and tolde him howe at the gate  
 were two messengers of the kynge  
 Charlemaine that wolde speake with  
 him, Reynard commaunded forth-  
 with that the gate shoulde be opened  
 to them & that the drawbrydge shoulde  
 be let downe for he wold see the mes-  
 sengers & speake with theym. Than  
 were the two barons let in & brought  
 afore Reynard, and whan Rey-  
 nard sawe them: he salued them cur-  
 tously, and after that they had salu-  
 red ech other: they set them al there  
 byon a bench. And than began the  
 duke Raymes to speake & said thus.  
 Reynard said he, the emperoure  
 Charlemaine of Fraunce lette you

wote by vs, that ye sent to him Gu-  
 charde your brother to make of hym  
 his pleasure and his will, and yf ye  
 wyl not doo so: Charlemaine despy-  
 eth you, and sayth that neuer he shal  
 leaue you into the tyme that he shal  
 haue you all, and whan he shal haue  
 you: he shal make you al to be drawen  
 and hanged, and dye an euill deache  
 with great shame.

**W**han Reynard vnder-  
 stood these wordes: he  
 woted all red for angre, &  
 than he saide to the duke Raymes.  
 Bi the faith that I owe to al my fre-  
 des, if it were not that I loue you: I  
 shoulde make you both to be hewen al  
 to peces, and ye haue wel deserued it.  
 For you Raymes are my nigh kins-  
 man, & as me semeth ye oughte well  
 to helpe and defende me ayenste all  
 men, and ye now counseyl me to my  
 great dishonoure & ayenst mine ho-  
 nesty. Tell to Charlemaine that he  
 shal not haue Guichard my brother,  
 & that he leaue his thretenyng & doo  
 the worst that he can, for we shal not  
 doo for hym nor for hys thretenyn-  
 ges the mountenaunce of a peny, and  
 goe you to tel him in my behalfe that  
 afore that he take vs: he shal haue a  
 greater need of helpe than he woteth.  
 So w yorde from our syght righte-  
 ly oure of oure palays, for to see you  
 thus heere greueth me to soze. Whan  
 the duke Raymes & Ogier vnderstood  
 Reynard: they made no lenger dwel-  
 lyng, but departed incontinente with-  
 out any more speaking, and are come  
 to Charlemaine & recounted to him  
 al this that Reynard had sayed.  
 whan



**W**han the emperour Charlemayn: he vnderstood this answere: he was so sore anged that he went almost oute of his witt, and thā he commaunded that the castel should be assailed to the whiche they sawe but thre gates. Wherof was set afoze the maysters gate, their Keiner, & folques of Worillon, the earle of Neuers, and Ogier the dane. And afoze the second gate: was the duke of Bourgoyn & the erle of Albinoys, & afoze the thirde gate: was y olde Symon the father of Keinaud that was come to Charlemayn for to warre against his sonnes as choother. Nowe wenth the emperour to haue besieged well Keinaud and his brytherne, but and god keep Keinaud in good helthe: Charlemayne shall lese there more than he shall wyne. Reynaud and his brytherne were such knyghtes & so sage that they defended well their castell against Charlemayn, alwayes it was besieged with so great numbze of folke as I haue sayde afoze that it was merueyl to see for there were brytong Fleminges maunsealt, originers, englysh bourgoines, the haupers and the frenshemen, but Keinaud made one thinge that turned hym to a great worshipp. For he sayde to his folke faire lordes I pray you that ye moune not vpon poure horsys tyl that ye heare the trompettes blowe. For I see wel that Charlemaynes folke ben right sore trauailed, and nowe while they been thus werry: it were no worship to vs for to renne them vpon, but whā they shall be a litill eased of their werynes: we shall thanne make dyligence and

Worthely our first yssue vpon them, and I praye you and requyte you all in general, that euery man shewethan his prowesse and strength, and wote it that in the castell of Mountenford was a saucebray vpon a roche, thorough the which Keinaud and hys brytherne went out vnder couerte at all tymes that they wolde withoute daunger.

**W**han Reynaud saw that it was time so to goe oute vpon their ennies: he called to him Sampson of bourdelloys, this was a knyght a trusty man that was come there for to help Reynaud and his brytherne, and hadde with him an hundred knyghtes, Reynaud said to him, sir it is nowe tyme that our ennies knowe what we been, for if we tary lenger: the kinge Charlemain mought wit vs of cowardnes, And whan he had said these wordes: he came to his brother Guicharde, & said to him. Faire brother Guicharde, leaue not for to be alwayes bolde and hardy as longe that I am a man on liue, for I loue you as much as I doo myne own body, and it is reason that I doo so, for ye & I are brytherne bothe of fathet and mother and also I beleue ye be the best knyghte of my lygnage. And than he takeh hym betwene hys armes and kyssed him by greute loue, and whan he hadde doone thus: he sayde. Brother make the Trompettes to blowe vp of heyghe, and lette vs make ready oute selfe for to yssue oute for to meete to Charlemayne what folke that we be

yf god wyll that we might take the  
erle of Estampes I should be therof  
ryght glad. For it is the mā, among  
all our enemies y worste dooth to  
vs, y more hath hurted vs, happely  
h: shal not scape vs, for he is alwai-  
es in the forwarde, whan these wo-  
des were fynnyshed: all the foure bze-  
therne and al them of theyr compa-  
nye arayed them self and yssued out  
of the castell at the sawce day, wyth  
out to make any noyse nor crye, and  
so gone they vpon the hoste of Char-  
lemayne by so great wyath: y it was  
marueyle, and begā to make so great  
destruccion of folke and to cast bothe  
tentres and pauplyons a ground: that  
it was wonder and pitie for to see.  
And who had scene than Reynawd  
the worthy knight vpon hys horse  
bayarde, and the faytes of armes y  
he made vpon his enemyes: should  
haue great merueyl, for to looke vpon  
him, for that man y he recoūtered  
myght well say that he was bozne  
in an euyl houre, for to say the trou-  
rh Reynawd smote no knight so that  
his stroke came ryght but that he cle-  
ued hym as lyghtly as they had not  
ben armed. whan the folke of Char-  
lemayne saw theyr enemyes: they rā  
incontynent to their harnes and  
whan they were armed they ran vpon  
Reynawd and his folke, & than  
began the batayle so cruell: y it was  
pytie for to see. For ye should haue  
sene many speres broken, and heer-  
des broken and clouen a sondre, and  
many a good haubergen vnnayled  
corsettes & flancardes all to broken  
and sore beaten, and so many a good  
ly man and noble knyghtes beyenge

full myserably vpon the earth. Whā  
y olde Aymon heard y crye: he mou-  
ted on horsbacke also sone as he mi-  
ghte he and his folke and came to y  
batayll ayenste his sōnes. and whā  
Reynawd apperceyued there his fa-  
ther: he was right sozy for it, & sayd  
to hys bzerhern. See here is a greate  
meruayle, for here is our father and  
by my counsell we shall make hym  
runne. For I wolde not for nothig  
that none of vs should set vpon him  
And than they turned at another si-  
de of the batayle: but Aymon theyr  
father came there agaynst them and  
began to set sore harde vpon them &  
theyr folke. And whan Reynawd  
sawe that hys father leyd sore vpon  
them and bare them greate damage  
of theyr men: he sayd to him al an an-  
gred. Ha father what do you certay-  
nelye doo great sīne. For ye should  
helpe defende and kepe vs, & ye doo  
to vs worse thā the other doo. Now  
I see well that ye loue vs so lytle,  
and that ye be dyspleased that we bē  
so pu and so good men of armes a-  
gaynst Charlemayne, for yf ye haue  
forbannyshed vs: Well we knowe it,  
and that we shall neuer haue nothig  
of your herptage and we haue made  
this lytle castell for to kepe our selfe  
therin, and yet ye come hecher for to  
helpe it to be destroyed. It is no fa-  
thers werke, but it is operacion of  
the deuyll, yf ye wil doo vs no good:  
at least doo vs no harme, for I swe-  
te you vpon all Sayntes that yf ye  
come any ferther agaynst vs I shal  
forbere you no lenger, but I shall  
gyue you wyth my swerde suche a  
stroke that ye shall haue no lēser

E. f.

for



The booke of the foure

for to repent you of the folpe that ye doo. Whan Iymon vnderstode the wordes of his sonne Reynawde: he tooke therof so greate angre at hys hert that it lacked lytle but that he fell do wne in a swoune to the erth, for he knew well þ Reynawde tolde hym trouth. But he could doo none other wyse for feare of Charlemayn but al wayes he wyth drew himself abacke, & suffred his sonnes to passe by hym harmles at that tyme. The whyche went and dommaged right soze the folke of king Charlemayne.

**D**Uyrnge the tyme that Reynawde spake thus to his father Iymon: came Charlemayne & Aubery, Ogier, and the erle Henry and Foulques of Morillon. And whan Reynawde sawe them come: he made hys trompettes to be blowe for to byg his folke together again, & whan they were assembled of one parte & of the other: a knyght of charlemayne þ was called Thierry made hys horse to renne agaynst the folke of Reynawde, and whan Blarde saw hym come: he spurred hys horse and came agaynst him and smote him so harde in hys sheeld: that he shoued a great hauberke that he bare through the body of hym, so þ the sayd Thierry fell dead do wne to the erth. And whan kyng Charlemayne saw falle dead his knight Thierry: he was therfore so sore angred that almoste he lost his wit and his vnderstandyng. Than began he to crye wyth a hye voyce, sayinge in this maner. Fordes and barons deliuer you for to avenge me of these gluttons that le-

den our folke so cursedly. See that they ben wel punysshed & Marpelye, Whan the olde Iymon heard Charlemayne speake thus: for doubt to be blamed he spurred hys horse & went and smote one of his sonnes knyghtes that was named amancey so cruelly wyth his hand of stele, it at he smote his head cleane of fro þ shoulders of hym, father (cryed Reynawde to hym) ye doo yt whan so cruelly ye slea my men, but by the sayth that I owe to god if I trowed not to hurt therbi my honour: I should take therof cruell vengeance. And than said agayne the valiaunt Reynawde, My lady mother how should ye be soze: yf ye kne we the great werkes and þ great harme that our father doth to vs this day.



**¶** Han Foulques of Poys-  
lon saw that the folke of  
Reynawde maintained the  
selfe so worthely agaynst them: he be-  
gan to cry. Sir Emperour and king  
what meaneth this? I beleue that  
ye befor gottē, send for many of your  
folke and cumaunde them that they  
take incontynent the traytours that  
now sayne themselfe agaynst youre  
enemies, & without delay make the  
to be hanged and slayne all quicke.  
Whan the frenche men vnderstode  
this that Foulques sayd to Charle-  
mayne: they made none other abydig  
but spurred theyr horses and smote  
vpon the folke of Reynawde so hard,  
that they made them to recule backe  
wolde they or not, whan Blarde saw

hys folke goe backe: he was ryght  
sore for it, and tooke his swerde and  
began w his folke to make so great  
effors, of armes: that the frenche mē  
were all abashed of it. What shall I  
tell you moze of this batayle: wpt it  
that it was so meruaylous & cruel,  
that it was pitie for to see, for euery  
one made the worste that he could, &  
one agaynst the other. And wit that  
the foure sonnes of Aymon made so  
great occision of men & of horses: &  
none durst come afore the, but none  
might compare w Reynawde for to  
doo well. For he made there so great  
meruaille of armes: that the frenche  
men durst not come forth for feare of  
him, for to say the trouthe Reynawde  
smote no stroke a right, but that he



slew him where vpon it lighted. What  
 will ye þ I tell you more: Wp þ in  
 thys batayle kynsmen nor parentes  
 spared not eche other for they slew þ  
 one þ other as dōbe beastes. There  
 should ye haue sene coming throughe  
 the battayle the kyng yon of saynte  
 Omars that rode vpon a good horse  
 that ranne well, & agaynst him came  
 a knyght called Gupon, & yon smote  
 Gupon suche a stroke: that he ouer-  
 threwe both horse and man to þ erth,  
 & whan Reynawde saw this he was  
 ryght wroth for it. And thā he tooke  
 hys baner & sayd to hys folke doo so  
 muche that I haue that good horse,  
 for yf he goth away: I shall neuer ha-  
 ue Ioye at my herte. for I wyll that  
 he kepe felawshyp to Bayarde. And  
 whan Richard his brother that was  
 so worthy a knyght and so gentyll  
 vnderstode his brother that so spake:  
 he made no caryeng but spurred hys  
 horse and smote yon of saynt Omars  
 so harde þ hys heerde nor hys har-  
 neys might not kepe, but that he sho-  
 ued hys glaue throughe the best and  
 ouerthrewe him dead to the erth and  
 than Richard tooke the horse by the  
 byddell & led hym to Reynawde and  
 sayd to hym, Syr we haue the horse þ  
 ye haue called after so soze. Nowe  
 make you lyght vpon hym whan it  
 please you, brother sayd Reynawde  
 gramercy of this present, for wel ye  
 haue serued me therof. Nowe haue  
 we two good horses to whome we  
 may trust well vpon now lyght at  
 once vpon hym sayd Reynawde, and  
 whan Richard vnderstode the com-  
 maundement of his brother: he ligh-  
 ted lightly vpon the horse & rooke his

owne for to kepe to a good knyght.

**A**nd whan Reynawde came  
 agayne to the baraille: he saw  
 yet his father, and whan he saw him  
 he was right soze for it so that he lost  
 almost his wit for the same and can-  
 a sayd to hi by a maner of reproche,  
 by my sayth father ye are greatly to  
 blame: ye myght well kepe your selfe  
 that ye come not so often to se vs, &  
 for to doo vs harme. We wyll shew  
 to you þ ye be our father. Not good  
 but euill. For ye shewe to vs harde  
 frendshyp and a soure loue at chyrch  
 masse and at Easter men ought to  
 go vpsyte and se his good frend for  
 to feast hym and to doo hym good &  
 eate wyth him whan the dyner was  
 redi, butt this ye doo not. For ye com-  
 to see vs in a hote warre, & with the  
 poynt of the swerde ye chere vs, it is  
 no loue of a natural father, but it is  
 rygour of a stepfather, thā answered  
 the duke Aymon I wyll that ye kepe  
 your selfe well. For if Charlemayne  
 can take you all þ wyllde shall not  
 kepe you, but that he wyll sea & hāg  
 you or otherwise make you to dye a  
 shamefull death, father sayde Rey-  
 nawde let þ alone & come & helpe vs  
 so shall the kyng be dyscomfyted, go  
 forth gloton gods curse haue þ sayd  
 Aymon to his sonne Reynawde, for  
 I am to olde for to doo treason. Fa-  
 ther sayd Reynawde litle ye loue vs  
 I se it wel, but kepe your self wel, for  
 I shall shewe you whether þ I can  
 doo any thyng worth the spere & of  
 the swerde & whan he had þ sayd: he  
 spurred Bayarde & went & smote a  
 squyer þ was called Gniuer so that  
 he ouerthrewe him dead fro his horse

to the ground. Whan Charlemayne saw his squier dead: he spurred his courser wyth an angey chere & had in his hande a staffe of yron, for he wolde parte the batayle & sonder, by cause he saw well that his folke had the worse & that they myght resyste agaynst þe great strokes of Reynawde in no wyse, for it was meruaylous for to see the great faytes of armes that he made there, for he ouerthrew downe dead both horses and men by great strength.

**C**harlemayne is comen to the frenche me, and commaunded them for to withdrau them self, for it was tyme for to departe fro þe batayle, & as they wolde haue gone a way: came there throughe batayle Berard the bourgopner & smote Symon of Bremoys so spersly: that he fell downe dead to the ground, whā the four sonnes of Aymon saw Symon dead: they were right sorre for hym, and spurred theyr horses wyth the spurs & came at that syde and brake the pzele for to venge Symons death, & wpt it whā Reynawde was come there it was knowe right wel for he w his sword brought to death wel thre hundred knyghtes of the best men that kynge Charlemayne had in his company. wherof þe king was right sorre & sore anged, this hanging: Alard wēt throughe þe pzele so came he & Iousted agaynst the erle Estapes, & his sheelde he letted not but he shoued his spere throughe the body of him, and thus was by hym slayne the sayd erle, whan that Reynawde saw that stroke: he came to Alard his brother & killed him vpon

his helme & bowed himselfe toward him and said faire brother blessed be the wōbe that bars thee, for ye haue auenged vs of þe greatest foe that we had. And whan he had said this word he made his trompettes to be blowe for to call his men together.

**W**han the Emperour Charlemayne sawe this greete damage that the four sonnes of Aymon dyd to hym: he cryed wyth a hye voyce. Lordes & barons withdrau our selfe & backe, for our enemyes be to good knyghts for vs, nowe is this to vs great dyshonour & great myschappe let vs retorne agayne to our pavillions I pray you. for I were vpon all sayntes that theyr castles shall neuer be taken but by canill thing, for they ben ouer good knyghtes pzeu and wise & well aduised of þe warre. Whan the barons of Charlemayne heard this commaundement they sayd, for we shall do your wyl, & as they wolde haue departed: came Reynawde spurking his horse, and his brethren, & wēt and smote vpon the folke of þe Emperour so sharply: that he departed them so well, þe they muste needs flee & take theyr pavillions, and so bode wyth them pylonniers Anthony Guyemaulte the erle of Fencers, & Chierri of Normandy for no man myght endure agaynst Reynawde and his brethren. And whan Reynawde sawe the dyscomfiture and the folke of the Emperour that fled: he made his trompettes to be blowen for to withdrau his folke. And whan they were assembled: Reynawde and his brethren returned



gladly into theyr castel. And was al-  
wayes the hindermoste man for to  
kepe his folke the better that led pri-  
soners afore, Then came Symon  
theyr father aresshe vpon them and  
began to makethē great combaunce  
and whan Reynawde sawe his fa-  
ther: he wēd for to haue wared mad  
for angre, so retourned he bayarde &  
smote the horse of his father so hard  
that he fell downe dead to the erth.  
For as of his father he wolde not  
touche, and whan Symon saw him  
selfe a ground: he rose vp quickely  
vpon his feete and tooke his swerde  
in his hande, & began ryght well to  
defende hymselfe. But his defence  
shoulde haue ben full lytle worthe to  
him, for his chylde shoulde haue take  
him for theyr prisoner yf it had not  
ben Ogier the Dane that cam & sue-  
coured hym. And than sayde to hym  
the sayd Ogier. Syr, what semeth  
you of your chylde, they be ryght  
cheualrous and hardy as ye may see  
and knowe.

**W**han Symon was horsed  
agayne: he pursued his  
chylde as a man dooth  
& out of his wit, and said to his folke  
Now goe we after the glotons, for if  
they lyue longe: they shall do vs har-  
me and domage so great that woth  
payne it shalbe recovered. Whā Rey-  
nawde saw his father that folowed  
them so sharply: he turned Bayarde  
and wēt and smote amonge the thic-  
kest of his fathers folke and began  
to hurt them so sore with the help of  
his brethren, yf he put them to flight  
maugre their teeth. For they might

no longer endure yf great maugre yf  
Reynawde bare to them, for to save  
the trouth: no harneys was nought  
worthe agaynst the swerde of Rey-  
nawde. For he cleued all that he  
rought.

**A**nd whan thempour Char-  
lemayne sawe this hye pro-  
wesse that Reynawde made: he ble-  
sed hymselfe of the great meruaile  
that he had therof, and so stronge he  
spurred his horse that he wēt agaynst  
Reynawde, and than he sayd to him  
Reynawde I forgyde you that ye go  
no farther. Whan Reynawde sawe the  
kyng: he made to hym reuerence and  
than withdrew himselfe abacke. And  
sayd to his men, let vs goe fourth,  
for here cometh the kyng. I wolde  
not for nothing in this worlde that  
any of you shoulde laye hande vpon  
hym. Whan the folke of Reynawde  
vnderstode these wordes: they put  
theyr swordes in theyr shethes and  
went agayne vnto theyr castel right  
glad of theyr sayre auenture yf was  
happed to them that daye. And whā  
that they were within theyr Castell  
of Mountaynforde: they made the  
drawe bydge for to be drawen vp, &  
went and vnarmed them and soide  
the supper redy, and so they set them  
selfe at the table. And there was a  
great mainy of prisoners. And whā  
they had eaten and dronken their fill  
Reynawde came to his brother and  
thanked hym muche with al his hert  
of that he had slayne the erle of Es-  
tampes.

And

**A**d whan thempour Charlemayne saw that Reynawde was with in his Castell: he lighted downe from his horse into his tente and sware by god þ he should neuer departe from thence vnto the tyme þ he should haue the four sonnes of Aymon or that the castell were take. What shall I tel you moze then: pour Charlemayne lay well. xiiii. monethes at syege afore þ castell of Mountaynforde, and there was no weke, but they had a batayle or a scar mythe, & I tell you that Reynawde was not so soze besyged, but that he wente to chace in woodes and in ryuers as often as hym pleased. And dyuerse tymes it happed that Reynawde spake wyth the frenche me of trayte the one to the other, sayinge thus to them. Fayre Lordes I pray you that ye speake to the Emperour Charlemayne & tel hym that he shal neuer take vs by no force, for our castell is right stronge and well garnished. But knowthe kynge one thing that whiche he may haue by goodnes, he need not make by force. He may haue the castell and vs also yf it please hym in such maner as I shal tell you. Whan I shal put in his had the castel of Mountaynforde my brotherne and my selfe, our goodes and baggage saue, & that the warre take an ende that hath lasted so longe: he may be well content. Reynawde said Ogier the Dane ye say wel and wise ly, & I promyt you I shal thew the same to the kinge as ye haue sayd, & yf ye will beleue my counsell: I ensure you I shal tell hym that ye doo so for ye are not folke for to be set lytel

by, thus, nor for to be fro the courte, for yf the kinge had you nyghe him, he shoulde be the better for it.

**A**l thus as Reynawde & Ogier spake together, there came folques of Donilon that cried to Reynawde passayle yee be but a foole, for certes I haue heard youre wordes well, ye shal leue vs Mountaynforde for it is not your heritage and your brades in l. & wyse, foulques sayd Reynawde ye haue reppeued me full often. I know well all þ harme þ the Emperour Charlemain wyll to me, is because I haue slayne Berthelot his newew with a Chesse bozde of whome god haue merce. Certes I could not doo therto, but I was full soze for it god wor it, It is trouth whan we played together we had some wordes, by whiche with out any wordes he gaue me suche a stroke vpon my face that the bloud ranne downe at the ground. And whā I saw my selfe so armed. I myghe not be so soft that I could endure þ great outrage that he had doone to me with out a cause. So defended I my selfe to my power. For who letteth hym selfe to be slayne his soule shal neuer haue pardon. And thou knowest wel foulques þ I dyd was in my defēdyng. But to this must be made shorte wordes, and if it please you, ye shal tel to þ king charlemain that he taketh vs to mercy, and that we may be frendes. And yf ye doo thys: ye shal doo your honoure. For as soone may ye be slayne there as a nother. Than sayde foulques by god all thys is nought woorth vnto



to you, for ye shal die therfore ye and  
your brethren. Foulques sayd Re-  
ynawde ye threten to muche, it apper-  
teineth not to you for to threten kni-  
ghtes so muche that beir better than  
you, and yf ye haue any thyng vpon  
your hert: doo it without any more  
wordes, for I tell you well that ye  
purchace your death. And whanne  
Reynawde had sayd these wordes:  
they wente agayne to thei pauply-  
ons. And thus abode the hoste vnto  
than without any fyghtyng, but the  
frenchemen came agayne wolde they  
or not, wherfore the kynge Charles  
mayne was wrothe.

**W**han the Emperour Charles  
mayne sent for menthrough  
all his lande, and whan they were  
all come: he sayd to them. Syrres I  
complayne me to you of the foure  
sonnes of Aymon that hath my lād  
destroyed and wasted. And Moun-  
tayneforde is so stronge: ybi strength  
it can neuer betaken, but by sampl-  
hyng. Now tell me what I ought  
to doo: for I shall doo therein your  
counsell, whan the barons heard the  
complaynt that the kynge made to  
them of the foure sonnes of Aymō:  
there was none so hardy y durst say  
a worde, but y duke Raymes of Ba-  
uiere that sayd to the king. Syr em-  
perour yf ye wyll haue good counsell:  
I shall gyue you good, yf ye wyl be-  
leue me. Let vs retourne into hyghe  
Fraunce, for we be to nigh the win-  
ter for to make warre. And whan y  
newe tyme shal be come: ye shal now  
come agayne to lay your syege afoze  
MOUNTAYNEFORDE. for I doo you to

vnderstand y Reynawde is not soze  
presed, but that he goeth in wodes &  
in riuers at all tymes that he wyl.  
And a man that may goe out and in  
at his wil: is not ouer soze besieged.  
And of the other parte Reynawde  
and his brethren are suche knygh-  
tes that they shal not be lyghtly o-  
uercome. This is my counsell sy: who  
knoweth a better: let hym tell.

**W**hen spake Hernier of Sauey  
ne, and to him said, sy: I shall  
gyue you a better counsell yf ye wil  
beleue me, gyue me the castell and al  
the hauoyze that is with in and the  
Lordshyp fyue myles aboute it: and  
I shall yelde to you Reynawde and  
al his brethren for pylsoners afoze a  
moneth cum to an ende. And thā that  
we goe into Fraunce for to see our  
wyues and chyldren. Hernier sayd y  
kyng, ye haue sayd well and wysely  
yf ye may doo thys that ye haue said.  
I graunt to you the castell and all y  
ye haue asked with y same. Syr said  
Hernier I thanke you for it an hy-  
dred thousand tymes. And I promyt  
you I shall delyuer vnto you Re-  
ynawde and his brethren as youre  
pylsoners or euer y a moneth be pas-  
sed. But knowe you that Hernier  
dyd myse of his enterpryse, for he  
kept not couenaunt to the kynge as  
he had promysed hym: for Reynawde  
tooke hym and made hym to be he-  
wen all in peces, and made all they  
that were with hym whan he made  
the treason to be hanged and slayne,  
as moze playnly ye shall vnderstand  
here after, yf that ye lyst to harken.

Hernier

**H**ernier of Saueyn made none other taryenge, but he sayd to kyng Charlemayne in this maner.

Syz comaunde ye Guyon of Bour gone that he doo put in array a thousand knyghtes well armed, and that to morow afoze the day he goe vpon the mountayne fayre and sofly with out noise, & I shall put hym within the castell shortly. Whan he had sayd this: he went to his tente, & made himselfe to be armed. And whan he was armed: he lyghted a horsbacke, and rode to the gate of the castell, & sayd to them that kepte warde. Alas for god saye lordes haue mercye of me if it please you let me in, or els I am but dead, for the Emperour Charlemayne maketh to folow and seke me all aboute, for to make me dye by cause I haue said to him much good of Reynawde, & also I tell you wel I shall shew to Reynawde a thing wherof he shall be ryght glad yf his pleasure is to heare me.

**W**han they were abone vpon yf gace heard his speak thus: they without log taryeng let goe downe the drawbridge and made him come in, & dysarmed him & did to him great honour, But the false traytour rewarded the full yll for it after that. This hangyng: Charlemayne commaunded Guyon to make him redy, & a thousand knyghtes with him, and sent them vpon the hylle, without makyng of anye buyre tyll that the day were come. And toft that Guyon had wyth hym of the best knyghtes of Charlemayne.

**N**ow is Harper yf traytour within the castell of Doun: rayntorde, vnto whome men made good cheere. And whan Reynawde wyfte that a knyght of Charlemayne was come: he sayde that he wolde speake wth hym. And so he was brought afoze hym. And whan he sawe him: he sayd to hi. What be you saye knyghte that are come hither? And he answered, syz my name is Hernier of Saueyne, & I haue angered kinge Charlemayne for the loue of you and for this cause I am com hit ther praying that ye haue me for recommaunded, for I wot not whether to goe now. Good freend sayd Reynawde, syth that ye say yf ye be our freend: ye be ryght welcome to me. For of suche goodes that God hath sent me ye shall not faile. Now tell me I pray you how doth the hoste of the Emperour? Haue they anye great plende of bytapes. Syz sayd Hernier they ben scarce wyth them. But I tell for very certayne yf they shall goe they wayes within these fourty dayes, for none of the barons wyll no longer abyde there. Wherfore the kyng Charlemayne is sore an angered with them. And I promit you yf the hoste wente awaye ye might hurte them ryght verye sore, and gette verye muche good, yf ye wyll sette them vpon the taye of them. Freende sayde Reynawde to hym, ye haue comforted me ryght well, yf it is so as ye say, for yf the king Charlemayne be once ouerthrowen: he shall not come a nocher tyme vpon vs wyth so good a wyll as he dooth now. And then Reynawde



## The booke of the four

na Wode had hym wyth hym to hys  
brethern, that made vnto hym good  
cheere. And whan the supper was  
redy: Reynawde and his bretherne  
set the downe vnto theyr meat and  
supped gladly. And in theyr compa-  
nye was the traytour Hernier, vnto  
whom they made good cheere. After  
supper all the knyghtes wente to  
sleepe. For they were wery of bearing  
of theyr harneys, and they had not  
ceased to fyght all that day. And wit-  
that Hernier was well and honest-  
ly brought to bed. For Reynawde  
had so commaunded. And whan all  
the knyghtes were fast asleep: Her-  
nier as the false Judas slepte not.  
But he rose and tooke hys harneys  
and armed hym selfe. And whan he  
was well armed at his easel: he came  
to the drawe bridge, and cut the cor-  
des that kept it vp, and let the draw  
bridge go downe, and than he went  
vpon the walles where he found him  
that made the watche and slew him.  
And whā he had doone this: he came  
to the gate and opened it. For he had  
taken the keyes from hym that he  
had slayne, wherby he had them in his  
keepng.

**T**han whan Guyon of Bour-  
goyne saw the gate open: he  
made no taryng, but came and en-  
tered into the castell, and al hys folke  
with hym. And began to kille and  
slea all the that they found. **N**ow  
shall ye heare of the fayre aduenture  
how that Reynawde & his brethern  
were saued from this mortall sla-  
ughter. Wyt that whan the pemen of  
the stable had supped: they were drōke

and went to theyr bed, & whan they  
were asleep: the horse of Alarde  
was somewhat proude began to make  
noyse agaynst the other. And Alarde  
and Richard heard the noyse of the  
horses, they rose vp and saw the doore  
of the halle open, and perceyued out  
of it the harneys & glistered agaynst  
the moone that shone full bryght.  
Than went they to the bedde where  
they had brought the false Hernier,  
wherby they found not there. Wherof  
they were ryght sore abashed. And  
than was Reynawde awaked, and  
asked who was there that maketh  
this noyse. Let our knyghtes take  
theyr rest, that haue so sore trauay-  
led all the day it is euyl doone for to  
go thus stampng at this houre, thā  
cryed Alarde to Reynawde and sayd.  
Fayre brother we ben betrayed, for  
Hernier that false knyght hath put  
the folke of Charlemayne within  
this castell, the whiche kyll and slea  
your folke and put them to a greate  
marter, whan Reynawde vnderstode  
this: he made no taryng, but he arose  
and armed hymself quickly, and cryed  
vnto his brethern and to his men,  
Now my frendes let vs beare our  
selfe worthly, we had neuer so greate  
need, and wyt that Reynawde had  
hym but .xxx. knyghtes within the  
dungeon of that fortreffe, for al the  
other were within the base courte whi-  
che was as it had ben a litle towne  
well peopled, where as Guyon of  
Bourgoyne & his folke slew them.  
This hanging: Reynawde & his bre-  
thern had armed themselves right wel  
hoppng for to defende theyrselfe  
well.

Than

**W**han came Hernper the tray-  
tour steryng about throughe  
the maystres strete & with him well  
an hundred knyghtes. **Th**ā sayd Re-  
ynawde to hys brethren, saye Loz-  
des come forth, for yf god helpe vs  
not: we are all lost, & than Reynawde  
and his brethren came to the gate, &  
defended so well yf none durst passe  
but he was slayne, what shall I tell  
you more: the base court began to  
be soze moued, and the crye was so  
great, for al them of the dongeon de-  
fended themselfe valpantlye. Whan  
the folke of the Emperour Charles  
maync sawe that they that were w-  
in the dongeon defended themselfe  
so well: they set yf base court in a fire  
and began to brenne, and pul down  
the houses and al that they founde.  
And yf fyze was soone so great that  
it tooke the dongeon of the castell.  
Whan Reynawde sawe that he was  
so taken wyth fyze: he was soze an-  
gred and sayd to hys brethren what  
shall we doo here: for yf we tary any  
lenger we shall all be hent or taken  
and yf it were not the fyze that thus  
warreth agaynst vs: I make myne a  
uowe to god that we should yet caste  
this folke out of thys castell, but syn  
that the fyze is in it: we cannot kepe  
it no lenger. And than he sayd to his  
bretherne, come all after me & they  
went to the faulchray that was all  
wayes open, and yssued out he & his  
brethern & his folke w-ith them, and  
whan they were out: than were they  
more abashed than they were afore  
for they wylt not whether to goe.  
Now heare how they dyd as wo-  
thy knyghtes. For whā they sawe the

castell brennet: they entred wythin a  
pyt that was there vnder the erthe,  
for feare of the fyze & set the doze vpon  
them, & there they began to defend  
themselfe so strongly: that none en-  
tered there in but he lost anon hys  
head. And whan Hernper the tray-  
tour was aware of yf same: he tooke  
his folke with him & came to yf pyt  
& began to assaile Reynawde shar-  
ply and his brethren, and al they that  
were therein with them, & wylt it that  
there at the centre of the sayd pyt were  
made great saytes of armes for they  
of within defended themselfe so wel:  
yf none myght come in but he were  
dead anon. ¶ Whyle that the four  
sonnes of Aymon were in yf pyt vnder  
therther: they heard the crye that  
his men made, the whiche Hernper  
made to be slayne. Than began Re-  
ynawde to sai to his brethren. Lords  
let vs go succour our folke, for and  
they should thus dye: it were to vs a  
great blame. **S**py sayd hys bretherne  
goe in goddes name whan it please  
you, and whan they were come out  
of the pitte: the batayle began to be  
there ful terrible, for ye should haue  
seen Reynawde & his brethren gyue  
there great strokes and manye. For  
Reynawde smote so mercycyllose  
strokes wyth hys sword flamberge  
the whiche did cut al that he rough-  
t. For Reynawde was all wrothe, and  
for great angre he habandoned and  
Jeoparded both lyfe and gooddes.  
And therefore he bare greete hurte  
and harme to hys enemyes, for  
he had cast hys Sheelde ouer hys  
backe, and helde his sword flam-  
berge wyth both his handes & made  
so



so great destruction of the folke of Charlemayne: that the place was all full of bloud. And whan Reynawde saw that theyr enemyes were soze abasshed, and that they durste not abyde him: he sayd to his brethern. It was to vs great cowardnes to hyde vs so. Syr sayd Marde ye say trouthe. Than sayd Reynawde. My Lordes my brethern let vs to doo well. For traitours ben good to ouercom they shall not now endure longe agaynst vs. And whan he had sayde these wordes: he came to þe gate of þe castel, and the fyre was a lytle quenched, and maugre al his enemyes he shet the gate of that doungeon, and had by the draw bridge of the sayde castel. And whā he had doone this: he came agayne to the batayle, & found his brethern that slewe and beate downe so many knyghes, and bare themselves so worthely: that it was maruayle for to see. For they smote no stroke, but they slew a man.

**W**han was Hernyet the traytour in the medle within the doungeon, wherof Reynawde had locked the gate, and drawn the bridge, and the good Reynawde saw that he was safe of the hoste of Charlemayne, and began to put hymselfe in the medle so sharpely that he dyd so muche he and hys brethern: that of þe folke of Charlemayne that were wythin the doungeon abode of the alīue but Hernyet and .xii. other, and whan Reynawde saw that they were all dead: he and hys bretherne and hys folke tooke Hernyet and the .xii

other. And than Reynawde did doo make agybet upon one of the hyghest towres, and there he made to be hanged the .xii. men. And made Herniet to be bound his foure membyres that is to wyte, feete and handes to foure horse tayles. And so he was drawn all quicke and quartered in foure peeces, as a traytour ought to be doone vnto. And whan Herniet was dead: Reynawde dyd make a great fyre, and made hym to be cast therein, and as he was al together bent: he made the allyes of hym to be cast in the ayre to the wynde.

¶ And heere ye may see how the traytours that wolde betraye Reynawde were dead and slayne. For they were punished as they had deserued.

**T**han whan king Charlemayne wyll that his folke were thus dead, and þe should not haue Reynawde nor his brethern: he was soze angry therfore, and sayd to himselfe. Ha good God lorde how am I euyl dealed wythall by this foure knyghes bretherne, I dyd my selfe great harme, whan euer I made the knyghes. And it is often sayd, that men make often a rod for them self. And that I may well now take to me. For theyr vncle slewe my sonne Lohyer, and Reynawde my newetoe Berthelot that I loued so deetelye, and yet now he hath hanged my men and many of them slayne. Well I myght call my selfe vnhappye, whan I that am the moste puyllastie of the worlde, cannot auenge me of the foure symple knyghes. I shall

neuer departe from heng till that I  
be auenged, or els they shal ouercom  
me, and all mine armie. Soþ sayde  
folques of Dozillō pe haue a good  
cause why, and Kepnawde is a foole  
that he fereth you not. For if he had  
doubted you he should not haue han  
ged your men, but he hath doone so  
in dyspyte of you. Thā sayd þ Duke  
Raymes of hauper, had ye beleued  
me: ye should not haue lost your men  
ye wolde beleue Hernier, it is hap  
ped of it as ye see. Now beholde your  
folke þ ben shakynge with the wynde.

**A**nd whan the peroure Char  
lemayne vnderstoode this þ  
the douse Raymes sayde to hym: he  
knew that he sayd trouth, and wyte  
not what he should say to it, but loo  
ked downe all a shamed. This han  
ging: Kepnawde & hys bryethern are  
gone vpon the walles, and looked a  
bout them and sawe that the base  
courte of the castell brenned there as  
their vitallies were. Then began kep  
nawde to say to his bryethern, sayte  
lordes the thynge goeth well, syth þ  
we ben scaped thanked be god from  
so perillous and harde auenture. It  
lacked lyrie but that we were al dead  
by false treason, but the worst that  
I see: is that we haue losse our stoz  
of vitayles so that we haue nothing  
to liue vpon, and me semeth that yf  
we dwell anye lenger heere within:  
we doone not wysely. But yf it seme  
you good, it is tyme that we departe  
hence. Brothyr said Alarde, ye speke  
well and wysely, and we shall doo  
as ye haue sayde. For as longe as

the lyfe is in our bodys: we shall  
not leue you. Whan þ four bryethern  
were together accorded for to departe  
thens: they trusted al they hatneys,  
and tarped tyl that it was night, and  
than they armed themself, & lyghted  
on horsebacke, And whan they were  
redy: Kepnawde sayde to them, Loꝝ  
des how many men ben twer we ben  
answered Alarde well. v. hundred.  
It is ynough sayd Kepnawde. But  
wot ye what we shal doo: let vs keep  
ourselues alwayes together without  
makynge of anye astraye and so go  
thorough the lande of Almayne, and  
yf the folke of Charlemayne hap to  
assayle vs: chynke to defende ourself  
well and symte harde vpon them so  
that we haue to our worschip the bet  
ter of them, Whan it was tyme to li  
ght on horse backe: Kepnawde mou  
ted vpon Bapatiz, and the other al  
so lyghted vpon they horses. And  
whan they were all horsed: they ope  
ned the gate, and wente out at they  
lester wythout makynge any noyse.  
And whan they were all yssued out:  
Kepnawde behelde and saw the cas  
tell þ brennte, wherof he tooke greute  
pittie, and sayd. O god good castel it  
is greute damage that ye be thus dis  
troied and wasted, goddes curse haue  
he that betrayed this good castel. It  
is a goe seuen yere that ye were made  
spite. Alas we haue had there in so  
muche good and so myghy worschipp:  
and now we leue you maugre vs.  
Certes ye were my truste after my  
bryethern. And whan I muste lese  
you: there is none so sorowful as I  
am. And as he spake these wordes:  
the teres fell downe from his eyen,



## The booke of the foure

and he was so taken With greate he-  
upnes that almoste he fell doſſone in  
a ſwonne ſo muche of ſorow he had  
in his herte.

**A**nd when Alarde ſawe Key-  
naſſe ſo full of ſorow he  
came to hym and ſayd. By my ſayth  
brother ye be to blame to ſay ſo, ye be  
not the man that ſhall come to miſ-  
chief. For all the knightes that ben  
a lyte are not worthe you, and there-  
fore I pray you that ye wyll comfort  
yourſelfe, for I ſwere you vpon all  
halowes that afore two yere be paſ-  
ſed: ye ſhall haue a Caſtell that ſhall  
be worthe ſuche foure as this is, but  
now let vs put our ſelfe to the waye  
for we haue no need to tary. Brother  
ſayd Keynaſſe I haue founde ener  
in you good counſell. Now goe we  
than our way, and take you & Guy-  
charde the forewarde, and I and Ry-  
charde ſhall come behinde. Syr ſayd  
Alarde all ſhall be doone as ye ſaye.  
And than tooke Alarde his brother  
Guycharde With him and wente a-  
foze with a. C. knightes with them  
and had forth the theyr carpage in the  
myddes of theim. And Keynaſſe &  
Rycharde came after With the reſy-  
due of theyr folke, but they could ne-  
uer make nor paſſe ſo ſoftly, but that  
the folke of the hoſte of Emperoure  
overtooke them.



**W**hen when Charlemayn kne-  
we that Keynaſſe came: he  
was muche worthe, & made his co-  
maundement that euery man ſhould  
be armed, & than the hoſte began to  
moue and wente incontinent and  
armed themſelfe. when Alarde and  
Guycharde that wente afore ſawe  
that they myght not paſſe, but that  
they muſte medle: they ſpurred their  
horses & ranne vpon Charlemayns  
folke ſo ſharpely that they were all  
an angred with it, for thei overthrew  
two knightes to the grounde, and in-  
continent was there greate a doo.  
And when Keynaſſe ſawe that the  
hoſte moued: he called to hym twen-  
ty knightes and bad them take and  
lede forth the carpage afore out  
of

of the hoste, & he should go helpe hys  
brytherne, s<sup>r</sup>z sayd they we shall doo  
your commaundement. And than  
Reynawode spurred Bayarde and en-  
tered amonge þe thickest, and began  
thereto make so great meruayles of  
armes that all the folke of Charle-  
maine wondred vpon, for he and his  
brytherne ouerthrew there dead so  
many knyghtes that none durst com-  
afoze them, but he was slayne.

**W**hat shall I tell you w<sup>ch</sup> it that  
the folke of king Charlemayne was  
so discōfited for bicause that it was  
w<sup>ch</sup>ght, and myght not well see what  
nomb<sup>r</sup>e of folke the foure brytherne  
were, that Reynawode and hys com-  
pany passed maugre them of þe hoste.  
And also I tel you for certayne that  
Reynawode and hys brytherne dyd so  
great harme to the folke of Charle-  
mayne: that he was soz for it many  
dayes after. Whan Reynawode was  
passed: he found his sommers and his  
caryage, and his knyghtes that con-  
duyte them, wherof he was glad.

**T**hā he sayde to his brytherne. S<sup>r</sup>z  
go on your waye. and they dyd hys  
commaundement, and Reynawode  
wyth his brother Rycharde abode  
behynde, and whan Charlemayne  
wyte that Reynawode went a way:  
he was glad by cause he had left the  
Castell of Mountaynforde, and in-  
continent he made hym to be solo-  
wed, and also the hoste was receyue  
armed, and whan they were well a-  
rayed: they tooke they<sup>r</sup> way after the  
four sonnes of Aymon.

**N**ow ben the foure knyghtes  
brytherne ryght soz of that

they haue thus left they<sup>r</sup> saye castel  
of Mountaynforde, and wit it that  
Charlemayne folowed them well of  
nyghe, and sayd that it should hurt  
him soze, but yf he might take them.  
But Reynawode the worthy knyght  
is not abashed, but he taketh all his  
folke and setteth them afoze hym, &  
sayde to hys brother Alarde, Good  
brother Alarde, take kepe of thys  
folke betwene you and Guicharde,  
and yf the folke of Charlemayne as-  
saille vs: we shall defend vs wel. S<sup>r</sup>z  
sayd Alarde as ye haue sayd: so shall  
it be doone. And than they saw come  
Charlemayne and Ogyer the Dane  
the Duke Raymes of bauiere, Fou-  
ques of Bozillon, and many other  
and whan Charlemayne that came  
afoze well horsed saw Reynawode &  
his folke: he cryed to them and sayde  
So helpe me god glotons ye be now  
dead, this is the day þe I shall make  
you all foure to be all hanged. S<sup>r</sup>z  
answered Reynawode it shall not be  
so as ye wene, and it please God, for  
yf god gyue me lyfe and health, and  
to my horse Bayarde, the pursucte  
shall soze dere be bought þe ye now  
doe. And whan he had sayd the same  
he turned Bayarde agaynst Charle-  
mayne for to smite him. For he wote  
well to haue slayne him wythout a  
ny faute. The kynge Charlemayne  
was in daunger to dye yf Reynawode  
had caught hym, but Dampye hughe  
wente betwene the kynge and Rey-  
nawode that came with hys speere in þe  
rest wylling for to doo great harme.  
And at this coming: he smote Dam-  
pye hughe thorough the sheelde so har-  
de that he perced his herte wyth the



Iron of his spere, and so he fell  
Downe dead afore the kynge. And  
Whan Reynawde had gyuen that  
stroke: he wente bys waye after bys  
brythern.

**W**han Charlemaigne saw hughe  
fall dead: he cryed whan highe  
voyce: Now after lordes after, for if  
these glotons scape vs: I shal neuer  
be mery, & Reynawde came agayne  
to bys folke and sayd to the. Lordes  
doubt you not as longe as I am a  
lyue, but be assured and so ryde on  
hardly and in good araye. ¶ What  
shal I tell you more? Wyt it þ. xxiij  
myle lasted the chase, and there was  
neuer a myle: but that they lusted to  
gether, & many knyghtes were there  
ouerthrowe & slayn. But Reynawde  
and his folke bare themself so maly  
that they lost, but thre of theyr fe-  
lawship at that tyme, but they rode  
so longe tyll that they came to the ri-  
uer. The kynge called to him his ba-  
rons and sayd to them: Lordes let a  
lone the chase, it were folp from hes  
forth on for to folow them, for I see  
in al our horses may no more let the  
goe to a hundred thousand deupls,  
for yf Reynawde wrought with wit-  
ch craft he could doo no more, than he  
doth. Let vs thinke for to lodge vs  
heere nyghe þ. ryuer. For the coustey  
is good and pleasaunt as me semeth  
Syr sayd the barons, let it be doone  
as ye haue commaunded. Than they  
vnladed theyr sommers, and pyght  
there their paupillions. And whan  
they were set vp: the king made him  
to be dysarmed. And in the meane

Whyle the supper was made redye  
lyghthe, for of all the daye the king  
had nother eatē nor drōkē, nor none  
of bys felowshyp. And Reynawde  
was passed ouer the riuer he and his  
brythern, and his folke safe & sound  
Whercas they wolde be by the grace  
of our Lord, and whan Reynawde  
and his brythern saw that the chase  
was ceassed and left: they went all  
softly, and whan they had gone ferre  
from the oste of king Charlemaigne:  
they found a fountayne fayre and  
cleare, and aboute that fountayne  
was muche fayre grasse and thicke.  
Whā Reynawde saw þ place was so  
pleasaunt: he sayd to bys folke. Here  
is a fayre ground for to lodge vs &  
for our hors. Sir said Harde, ye say  
trouth. And thā they vnladed theyr  
somers and theyr cartes, and wyt it  
the horse were wery, but the pooze  
knyghtes were euyl lodged, for they  
had there no meate nor drynke but  
cleare water. But wyt it that Rey-  
nawde nor none of his knyghtes dis-  
armed them not, but made good wat-  
che all the nyght one after another.  
And whan they saw the daye come:  
Reynawde made bys harneys to be  
trussed, and they lyghted on hors-  
backe, and tooke theyr way through  
the great foest of Ardeyne, and whā  
they had riden longe they lyghted do-  
wne afore another fountayne that  
theyr that had watched the nyght a-  
fore should rest themselfe there.

**N**ow myght well say Charles  
mayne þ he can neuer hurte  
the foure sonnes of Symon. And  
Wyt.

but that he was lodged vpon the ri-  
uer where he abode, whan he wolde  
no more folow after Reynawde, and  
whan the day was cler: he sayde to  
the duke Raymes. What thynke ye  
what we ought to doo: Syr sayd the  
duke Raymes yf ye wyl belue me:  
wee shall tourne barke agayne. For  
to goe any fether this way: it were  
but a foly, for thys wood is to thich  
and the riuer ouer muche perillous  
& also Reynawde & his bzyethern are  
suche knyghtes that they be not for  
to be lyghtly ouerchyd. And whyle  
the king and the duke spake together  
there came many knyghtes to hym,  
and whan Charlemayne saw them:  
he called Wydelon, Bernier, Ogier &  
dane and sayd to them. Lordes I will  
that ye come agayne to parys wyth  
me. And whan they vnderstode this:  
they were glad and sayd to the king,  
Sir it is the beste counsell that ye ca  
do, and after that they were so accor-  
ded: Charlemayne made to be cryed  
that euery man should retorne agayn  
into his countrey, & that they should  
kepe it well, & that he prayed them  
so to doo. Syr sayd the barons wee  
shal doo your commaundement, and  
whan all was sayde: they made the  
hoste to descende & take theyr way, &  
the king went streyght to paris and  
the barons in theyr countreys, and  
whan Charlemayne was come to  
Paris: he called afore him his barons  
& to them sayd, saye lordes I am y  
moste vnhappy kyng of the worlde,  
whan I haue no power to auenge  
my selfe of the foure sonnes of Ay-  
mon, and they led me as ye know. I  
wene they shall retorne into theyr

countrie or to theyr castell, and it be  
so: I wyl y we go there agayne for  
to ley spege there. Syr sayd the duke  
Raymes, that shal they not doo, for  
they are in Ardeyne, And ye knowe y  
the forest is so great that they shall  
fynde some cheyrsaunce. That might  
wel be sayd the kyng Charlemayne.  
But where some euer they go: euell  
way myght they fynde. And whan  
he had sayd this: he tourned to ward  
Ogier, and sayd to him. Take Ge-  
rarde, Foulques the Almayne, and  
Bion of Mondidier, and geue leaue  
to the frenche men and to the other.  
Syr sayd Ogier well shal be doone  
your commaundement. And then  
went Ogier to Foulques, to Gerard  
and vnto Bion, and tolde them that  
y Charlemayne had commaunded.  
And after came to the frenche men, &  
tolde to the other knyghtes, & geue  
them leue. And whan the kynges  
folke haue had leue: euery man went  
to his countrey, not the right way:  
But trauersynge the mountaynes.  
And thus as Aymon went trauer-  
synge the lande towarde hys coun-  
trie: It happed to him so that he  
came by the fountayne where hys  
sonnes dwelled. Whan Aymon saw  
hys chyldren: he was abashed and  
ryght soyr for it. And then he sayd to  
his barons. Lordes counsell me I  
praye you what I ought to doo a-  
gaynst my chyldre. For and I assaile  
them, and that they ben slayne or ta-  
ken: I shall neuer haue more. And  
if I let them goe: I shal be forsworne  
to Charlemayne. Whan his barons  
hearde him speake so: there was ne-  
uer one that answered anye worde:



## The booke of the four

And whā Aymon sawe that he was counsellid of no man: he sayd agayn to them. Syth it is so that ye wyl gyue me no counsell: I shall doo after myne owne wyll. For god forbid y it be layde to me, that I haue found the herre. And haue not fought with them. But well I tell you that it is for my synne that I haue founde them here. But fro hens forth it shal be doone therin as it pleaseth God & fortune. Syr sayd Esmenfraye yf ye assaile your children ye doo not as mylke for ye sware it to the kynge Charlemayne, kepe syr Aimon yf ye be not forsworne. For a man of your age should rather dye than he should doo any treason. Good freend ye say well sayd Aymon, and I shall so doo that I shal not be blamed, and than he called t wo of his knyghtes, and sayd to them. So toward Reynawde and his brethren and desyre them in my behalfe. Syr sayd the knyghtes it is a harde thinge for to be doone, but sythe it please you: We shall doo as ye haue commaunded, & than they wente to warde Reynawde that was sore abasshed, for he knew well that they were of his fathers folke, wher of he was full sore for it. And after he sayd vnto his bretherne. Lordes now arme your selfe. For a man y is well garnysshed is not of lyghte ouerthrowen, and of the other syde I know so muche the hardynes of my father: that he shall not feryne to be fyght vs. Brother sayd Richarde ye sa w trouth. Thys hangyng: came the t wo knyghtes afore him, and whan Reynawde sa we them come nyghe hym: he went agaynst them &

said to them. Lordes what be ye: and what winde driueth yon hycher thā spake one of the knyghtes, & sayd to Reynawde. Syr we ben knyghtes of my lord your father that sendeth to you by vs a desiaunce. Lordes sayd Reynawde I wyll it well as soone as I dyd see you of ferre. But go agayne & tel to our father that it wyl please hym to gyue vs trewece for he shall not doo wel for to be fight vs y are his naturall chyldre. Syr said the knight of the folpe ye speake, but thinke to defende your selues well, for he shall assaile you about doubt.

**A**nd whan they had sayd these wordes: they retourned agayne for to rcherse to Aymon theyr message, & how they had desyred hys children. Whan the olde Aymon vnderstode them: he made none other taryng but spurred his horse with the spurres, and ranne the formasse vpon hys sōne. And whan Reynawde sa we his father come: he came agaynst him and said. Ya father what doo you: we haue none so great a foe as ye be to vs, and I haue great meruayle that ye come alwayes vpon vs, ye doo yll & great synne for to doo so. At the least yf ye wyl by no wyse helpe vs: be not to vs contrary ne enemy yf it please you. Thou theefe said Aymon, ye shal neuer doo good syth that ye begyn to preche. Soe to the wood so shall ye become wyld beasts, euill day giue you god. For ye ben not worth an handful of strawe. Now thynke to. defende your selfe. For yf ye ben taken: ye shal be put to a great tourmente. Syr sayde Reynawde

was wepe doo vs wronge. I shal defende me syth that I mai none other wyse doo. For yf I holde let mi selfe to be slaine: mi soule shoulde be put to paine and tountment. Whan Aymon saw that: he brought his spere in the rest, and put himself among his children, lyke as they had ben straungers. And whan Reynawde saw that: he cryed to his men, and sayd, here is none other but doo wel now. Lordes thike to smite wel, for need copelleth vs therto. And whan he had sayd þis word: he spurred his horse with his spurres, and put hymself in the thickest. And began to make so great effortes of armes, that all the folke of his father meruailed of it greatlye. ¶ What shal I say: the batayle began so fel and so cruell: that pytie it was to see. For ye shoulde haue scene gyue and receyue great and horrible strokes of the one parte, and of the other, and many knyghtes and horses dye, many wheeles broken and many whyte barneys broken. So manye heades smitten of and so many legges and armes broke and sore hurt. And thinke that this batayle was sore stronge and well holden of the one syde and of the other. But to say the trouthe: Reynawde must lose at þis tyme. For his father had three tymes as many folke as he had. For of fyue hundred men that abode with Reynawde after his castel was take which were with him at this bataile: were left on lyue, what hurt & sound but fyfty persones. But I tell you well for verye certayne that Reynawde & his byetherne dyd so great

harne to the folke of theys father: that they slew well halfe of the men that he had. But at þlast Reynawde must lose and flee away towarde the mountaynes, and Aymon chased hym as well as he could, for he wold well for to haue taken theym. And whan Reynawde saw them self vpon the toppe of the mountayne: he sayde vnto his byethern. Let vs not departe fro hence. For this is a good place for to defende. Wyt that there was great scarmyschig and iustynge made and many a knyght dead and verye sore wounded. And there was layne vnder Alarde his good horse. And whan that Alarde sawe himselfe a ground: he lepte vpon his fette ryght quickli. And tooke his swerde in his hande, and began for to defende well his bones. And whan that Rycharde sawe his brother Alarde a foote: he turned towarde him for to helpe & succour hym, and Aymon and his folke came there for to take him. So began the batayle yet agayne moze cruel then it had be afore. And Wyt that Alarde shoulde haue ben taken there, yf it had not be the noble and worthy knyght Reynawde that came for to helpe him. And whan that he was come there: he smote Waparde woth his spurres, and wente into the greatest preste. So that he ouerchew the Duke Aymon his father doun vnto the grounde, and after he sayd vnto hym. Father ye haue pledged my brother Alarde for ye be now set a foote as he is. ¶ Than was Aymon verye sore angry that he loste almoste his wittes. And  
Rey.



## The booke of the four

Reynawde set his hand to his swerde and began for to departe the pise in suche a wise that he brought his brother Alarde out of the pise, and after sayd to hym. Fayre brother lepe behinde me vpon Bayarde. For to abyde here any lenger: it were folpe. Whā Alarde vnderstode his brother Reynawde: he was ryght glad for he was so wery þ he myght no more and so he mounted vpon Bayarde behynde his brother Reynawde. And whan Bayarde wyte him self lade wyth two knyghtes: he strenghted hymself so strongly: that it semed to Reynawde that he was more Joyous and more mery than he had be of al the daye. Now wit it that Reynawde made foure Houses vpo his horse Bayarde with his brother Alarde behinde hym. Wherof he slewe foure knyghtes of the folke of Charlemayne that were come with his father Hymon. And all thus Reynawde took Alarde out of his enemyes handes. Hawgre theyr teeth & bare hymself right worthely þ same day, as here after ye shal now more playnly vnderstande.

**N**ow ben the foure sonnes of Hymon recreant & almoste wery, but only Reynawde that neuer was the weker for nothing that he dyd in armes. For as he went: he turned himselfe at euery passe that he made, and rebuked and kept his enemyes a backe with his harde strokes that he gaue to them, so that his folke wente afore hym all at theyr ease and seylor. And whan he sawe that his folke were wel ferre from their

enemyes: he spurred Bayarde and came to his folke (his brother Alarde behinde hym) as lightly as bayarde had be without anye byddell and no saddle vpon him. For this horse was suche that he was neuer wery, and thus as Reynawde went away: than cam & folowed after him Esmentray þ was one of the moste worthy knyghtes of Charlemayne & was vpon a horse right good and blacke, that Charlemayne had geuen to hym. And whan he was nigh Reynawde he cried to them. So helpe me God glottons ye ben dead or taken sureli I shal bynge you to Charlemayne. And anon wet and smote Reynawde in his sheelde, wherof Reynawde was muche angry, and Reynawde smote him agayne in suche a wyse and wyth so great a strength: þ neyther for his sheelde nor for his good armures of stele he was not kepte, but that Reynawde ouerthrew hym sterke dead to the grounde. And whā this knight was dead: Reynawde tooke his horse by þ byddell and sayd to Alard his brother holde fayre brother, light vpon this Blacke Horse whiche is good. For I gyue him to you.

**A**nd whan that Alarde sawe the fayre present that his brother Reynawde had doone to hym: he was as glad of the same, as though he had wonne Parrys. And thā he made none other tarienge: but þ he lighted downe from Bayard and mounted vpon Esmentrays blacke horse that his brother had giue hym & smote him with the spures & went  
and

and Justed agaynst a knyght of his fathers folke that was called anfray so harde that he ouerthrew him dead to cherthe. And shortly to speake after that Marde was in this wise set agayne on horse backe: began the batayle of a freshe soze hard and fell, in so muche that at that houre were slayne. xx. of the best knyghtes that Aymon had with him. Whan Aymon saw this: he was soze angry for it, & cryed to hys folke. ha lordes yf they scape you I shal neuer haue toy, for they haue slayne Esmenfray y good knyght that king Charlemayne had geuen to me. Whan the folke of Aymon vnderstode these wordes, & the Wylle they Lordethan they dyd ten vpon Marde so much that they made hym to leue the place by force, and if it had not be the passage of a lytle riuer that eased and holpe them greatly: Reynawde and hys brethern had muche to doo, but I tell you without faute that Reynawde and hys brethern made so great occisyon of that folke of theyr father: that it was pitie for to beholde, for there dyed well of them. xxv. at the passage of the ryuer. and yf Reynawde had had wyth him a fyfty knyghtes moze then he had at y passage: he should haue dyscomfited his father and all hys folke but for faute of me: Reynawde must for sake the place and myght not saue with hym but. xiiii. knyghtes of hys owne. Nowe see how sorrowfull was the batayle, for of fyue hundred knyghtes that Reynawde had with hym there abode wyth him alque but. xiiii. and ye maye well wite that the olde Aymon had domma

ged his children right soze, but that they passed ouer the Riuer, for as it is sayde they had losse all theyr men wherof they were full soys and wrothe.

¶ Now hath Reynawde so felwe folke that he wot nomoze what to doo. but he might not doo therto, wherof the keres fell downe continually fro his eyen, and in lybewyse wept Aymon hys father at the other syde as the hystorie dooth tell, and whan he had wept ynough: he sayd in this maner. ha fayre Sonne prue and worthye howe soze am I: for I am the occasyon of your harine and domage, now shall ye all goe as exiled, for ye haue nought to lyue vpon & I cannot helpe you by anye wyse, wherof I ensure you I am greatlye displeased and soze for it. The deuill take his soule that fyrst bega y strife & so shal he. whan he had made hys mone and lamentacions longe ynough: he made incontinent all the dead bodyes to be taken for to be buryed. And they that were hurte: he made to be brought wyth hym as well as he coulde, And made the body of Esmenfray to be put vpon a litter, and tooke on his way towarde Ardeyne where he bode but a night, and in y mornynge he made the litter to be borne vpon two horses & went agayne to Paris and came afore Charlemayne and sayd to hym. Syr whan I went now last towarde my countrey, wyt that as I was on my way, I founde my children, and fyue hundred knyghtes wyth them in the forest of Ardeyne, & for thacquitaunce of myn othe: I dyd send to them in  
drff



diffiaunce, & wolde haue taken them  
for to haue brought them to you as  
prisoners, but I myght not, for they  
be soze doubted. And yf I assailed the  
it hath cost me soze dere, for they haue  
borne vnto me so great harme and  
domage that it can not be esteemed,  
and I slewe al theyr folke excepte, xii  
persones that ben scaped with them  
but they haue slayn your knyght Es-  
menfray, but at the last they went a  
way discomfited and ouerthrowen.  
And they should haue ben taken yf it  
had not be a ryuer that they passed o-  
uer, wherby they were saued. Whan  
Charlemayne vnderstode these wor-  
des: he was ryght soze an angred, so  
muche yf he loske almost his wytte.  
And than he sayd to olde Aymon in  
angre, by God Aymon ye excuse your  
selfe falsly, for neuer Rauen ate his  
ponge byrdes, to a nother ye shall  
make chys to beleue but not to me.  
Whan yf olde Aymon vnderstode the  
kyng that he spake thus: he sayd to  
hym. Syr Emperour wit that I doo  
tell you is trouthe, and I doo shewe  
it to the ende that my trouthe be kno-  
we, & for none other cause, doo bring  
afore me your reliques and halowes  
that I shall sweare vpon the sayntes  
that ben in heauen, that it was as I  
haue recounted & sayd to you, and  
yf it please you ye shall beleue me, &  
yf ye wyll not: ye may chuse therof.  
Aymon sayd Charlemayne I know  
well your herte, for yf it went all at  
your wil, your sonnes should be lor-  
des of all Fraunce, and of all my em-  
prie. Syr sayd Aymon ye be wrothe  
of some other thyng, wherof I may  
not doo therto, & yf ye haue any kni-

ght in your courte yf wyll make good  
this that it please you for to saye: I  
shall proue it on hym wyth my body  
that he lyeth falsely. But euermore  
ye haue be such that ye neuer loued  
a true knyght, but flateres and liers  
wherof mani euilles ben happed and  
shall happen. And than Aymon came  
downe from the Palays, and lygh-  
ted vpon hys horse and went agayn  
to his countrey without any leaue  
that he tooke of the kyng, & he rode  
so longe a day after another that he  
came to Ardeine, and there he found  
the Duchesse his wyfe, that came a-  
gaynst hym, and receiued hym wyth  
a glad chere, and asked hym, howe  
he had doone.

**T**han sayd the Duke Aymon, ful  
euyl haue I doone. For I found  
my fourte sonnes in the wood  
of Ardeyne, & so I assailed them cru-  
elly wenying to me for to haue take  
them, whiche I coude not doo, but I  
slewe & discomfited all theyr folke, &  
they haue doone me so great harme  
of my folke, and so many they haue  
slayne of them: that I know not the  
nombre. And I tell you for very cer-  
tayne, but yf it had ben the proues &  
great worthynes of our sonne Rey-  
nawde: I had taken Alarde, for my  
men had slayne his horse, and had  
brought hym so lowe that he myght  
no more goe, but Reynawde his bro-  
ther came vpon vs and brake vs so  
soze that he brought Alarde out of yf  
prie, ma wgre vs and ourte folke, &  
made hym lyt behinde hym vpon  
Bavarde. And I tell you that Rey-  
nawde fought so soze that neuer flow

nor no boze fought so strongly agaynst anye other beast, as he dyd fyght agaynst our men, at eueri pace that he made forwarde: he turned himself agaynst vs with Blarde behinde him that made vs so greatly abasshed & wee might not beate nor abyde his great strokes. & at this turnyng that he thus made: he slew Esmentraye a knight of Charlemaynes, which he loued muche, and whan he had slain hym: he tooke his horse & gaue him to Blarde, & made him to goe downe fro Bayarde, and lighted anon vpon the horse of Esmentray. And thus they went from vs wolde we or not. And I wente agayne to Barrys to Charlemayne, and shewed to hym how the thyng was come, and how Esmentray was slayne, wherof I tro wed not to haue had blame, but he blamed me ryght greatlye for it, but sith & he is my heauy lord with out a lawfull cause: I shall make hi wrothe and soze afoze syr monethes come at an ende.

**Y**e haue doone euill sayd & I sayd, that ye haue thus soze damaged our chyldren, ye should defend them agaynst all men, and ye doo to them the worst that ye can, be they not your sonnes naturell comen of your owne fleshe. For soothe my lord, ye ought wel to bear your self better to warre them than ye doo, for neuer so ryche a bourderne was boze in the wombe of a lady, blessed be & houre that they were begotten & nourished, & so helpe me god my Lord: as I wolde that your chyldren and

myne had taken you prisoner, to the ende that ye should yelde to them a gayne al that they haue losse by you, and I thanke god right hyghly that Charlemayne is wrothe with you, For euill to doo may no good come of, ye assayled your chyldren agaynst god, and agaynst ryghtwysenes, and yf harme is come to you therfore: thanked be God. Than sayd Aymon Lady ye say me right, for I haue doone one great wronge, and I promytte you that I neuer dyd thynge wherof I repent me so soze as I doo of this. But truste I shall keepe me another tyme to doo them any harme. ¶ But herre leaueth the history to speake of Charlemayne and of & Duke Aymon & of & Duchesse his wife: & returneth to speake of reynard and of his brethren & are in the wooddes of Ardeyn.

¶ How after that the olde Aymon had discōfited his chyldren they went and welled in the repest of the forest of Ardeyne so longe that they were all cossefayte blake & rough as beastes, for the great hungre that they had endured. After they wente to Ardeyne to see theyr mother that sealded & chered them greatly, & gaue to them so great good that they myght well enterreyne theyrselfe and theyr estate ther vpon agaynst Charlemayne. And how Hawgys theyr colin arriued whan they wolde departe, whiche went with them into the Realme of Escopyn wyth fyue hundred knyghtes. And of the sorow that theyr lady mother made at theyr departinge.

Capitulum. iiii.





**I**n this party the tale sayth,  
 y after that Reynawde had  
 slayne Elmentray and giue  
 his horse to his brother A-  
 larde: they passed ouer the ryuer and  
 went into the forest of Ardeyn soe  
 deep in it, by cause they wolde not be  
 aperceyued. And whan they had ben  
 there a lytle whyle: they bega to keep  
 the wayes, & all they that came for  
 by them and that bare any vytayles  
 they were distressed by them and ther  
 of they liued, for they durste not goe  
 to no towne nor to no Castelles for  
 to bre anye vytaylles, and there  
 fore they suffred great need & greute  
 dysleafe, for they had nother meate  
 nor drynke, but water. For the most  
 parte they eate fleshe without anye  
 breade. And knowe that for cause of

thys great suffraunce y they endured  
 thus, & also of the great colde y they  
 had, for by cause of the snowes that  
 were there: they folke began to dy.  
 And abode no mo liue but Reynawd  
 and his brethern. And thys was be-  
 cause of the great strength that was  
 in theyr bodies. For no trauayle mi-  
 ght not hinder them. And wit y they  
 had but eche of them foure an horse  
 that is to wit Bayarde and the thre  
 other, but they haue nother Dycs  
 nor other Lorne for to grue theym,  
 but they eat only such as they might  
 fynde in the forest of rootes and lea-  
 ues. And for this cause: theyr horses  
 were so leane that with peyne might  
 they stonde, saue Bayarde that was  
 fatte and in good plight, for he could  
 better seeke and lyue w rootes, than  
 the

the other shoulde haue doon with hey  
and oces. And wot it well that the  
fourte sonnes of Aymon lyued there  
this life so longe that every man that  
passed there as they were and kepte  
theim selfe, escaped not, but he was  
other slayne or distressed of such by-  
salties as he had, so that all the coun-  
tre aboute them was soze wasted by  
theim that it was meruaille. And at  
the laste the fourte knyghtes were so  
soze apayzed, that they that had seene  
them afoze: shoulde not haue knowen  
them, for their harnays was all rusty  
and their saddles and byddelles all  
rotten, so that they had made their rei-  
nes with cordes. And them selfe were  
become all blacke. And it was no  
meruaille, for they weared alwayes  
their cote of mayle all roustye vpon  
cheir doublettes, and hadde nother  
herre nor jacket but they were all  
rotten. What shal I tel you moze  
and wot that Reynard was douted  
and feared soze that it was meruail.  
For nigh there as Reynard had  
was no man that durst abide there,  
but onely within the forrestes. For  
whan Reynard was mouned by  
Barde, and his thre brethren by-  
on their other thre horses: all their  
rycheffe and power was with them,  
and yet they wasted and destroyed all  
the countrie all about theim. And so  
the fourte poore knyghtes were so soze  
disfigured, that who someuer had  
seene them: shoulde not haue knowen  
them. For they were as roughe as  
beres that been campshed and were  
ryght soze lene that every hodge had  
of it prye.

**A**nd whan Reynard sa we  
himselfe so poorely arayed: he  
called to him his brethren and sayde,  
Lordes I meruaille my selfe muche  
that we take not some good counsell  
what we haue to doo, and me semeth  
that we ben become yll, and that floure  
is amonge vs. For yf we were such  
as I throwed: we shoulde not suffre  
the martirdome that we endure and  
that we haue endured so longe a goe,  
no we knowe I that we ben but yrel  
worth to haue let reste our enemyes  
as we haue. But one thing I consi-  
der, we haue but fewe horses & litell  
harnais, & no money at al and yet we  
ben in such a plight that we ben moze  
like bestes than folke. So praye I  
you all in generall that ye wil tell me  
what we ought to doo for the best, for  
I tel you for very certaine that I had  
muche leuer die as a knyght than for  
to die here for hungere & for dysease.

**A**nd whan Barde hearde Rey-  
nard speake thus: he sayde,  
brother to helpe me god. It is longe  
sith I dyd take heede to that ye saye  
now, but I feared me full soze to telle  
you therof lest ye wolde haue be ty-  
pleased with me for it, but sith that ye  
haue opened the wordes, yf ye wyll  
beleue me: I shal grue you good coun-  
seyl as me semeth. Sir we haue suf-  
fred here great pouertie a longe tyme  
& we may not goe into no countie but  
we shal be take, for as ye knowe all  
the barons of fraunce, & namely our  
father, & al our kinsmen haeth vs  
deadlye, and if ye wyll beleue me: we  
shal goe threight to Ardeine to ward



our mother, for she shall not fayle vs  
and there we shall sojourn a lytell.  
And whan we shall haue sojourned:  
we shall take with vs some company  
and shall goe serue some great lord,  
where we shall get some good, for ye  
be not such a man but that ye shall per  
ones haue great plenty of goodes, for  
I know no man in erthe that of wor-  
thynges & of strength maye compare  
to you. Brother said Reynaude ye  
saye well and wysely, and I promyt  
you I shall doo so. Whā the two ocher  
knyghtes heard the counsell of Alarde  
their brother had gyue to Reynaude:  
they began to saye. Brother Alarde  
we know wel that ye gyue good coun-  
sell to our brother Reynaude. Than  
sayd Reynaude. Sith that this coun-  
sell seemeth to you good: we shall doo  
it to nighte, so muche as bode the four  
sonnes of Armon that the nyghte cam  
me, and whan it was come: they ligh-  
ted on horschacke and put thei selfe  
to the way so well clothed and armed  
as I haue tolde you aboue and in su-  
che wise that their flesch was seen na-  
ked in manye places of their bodies.  
And so longe they rode by nyghte and  
by daye that they came there as they  
were borne that was nigh the cite of  
Ardeyn, and whan they were sonigh  
the cite that they myghte well see it:  
they looked vpon it, and they remem-  
bred the greates riches wherfro they  
were cast and banysshed, and of the  
greates pouerthey that they had suffred  
longe. And as they approached nyghte  
the cytye. Reynaude sayde to his  
brethern we haue doone euyl that we  
haue not taken surerie of oure father,  
for ye knowe well that he is so

cruell that yf he may take vs: he shall  
peelde vs prisoners to Chatelemain.  
Brother said Wycharde, ye saye well  
but my herte gyueth me not that oure  
father wolde doo as ye haue said, and  
he so dyd: yet haue I leuer die afoze  
Ardeyne: than for greace of sease and  
hungre in the forst, let vs ryde sure-  
ly, for I telle you that no bodye shall  
know vs. And of chocher parte if we  
can see oure feet within Ardeyne: we  
shall be safe ynough, for we be wel be-  
loued, and my lady our mother should  
neuer suffre that men should doo to  
vs any harme ne dyspleasure.

**C**ertes sayd brother said Rey-  
naude, ye haue sayde ryght wel  
and wysely, and much ye haue recom-  
ford me. Nowe let vs ryde in a good  
houre. And whan he had sayd these  
wordes: they entred soone after with  
in Ardeyne, and they rode thorough  
the mapstres streets that they were  
not knowen of no bodye, & they towe  
streyght to the castel without any ta-  
ryinge. And wote that whan they pas-  
sed thorough the streets: the folke  
that behelde them, merueylled muche  
of them, for they wote not what fol-  
ke they were, and sayd the one to the  
other, see what folke ben these. I  
trowe that they ben not of oure lawe  
nor of our beleue. Than they asked  
theym, what ben ye lordes that are so  
countrefaire, are ye Daynemes, or of  
what countrey ben ye: whys answere  
d Reynaude ye enquire ouer much  
see ye not what folke we been. And  
whan they were come to the palays  
they lychted downe a foot, and tooke  
their horses to kepe to their kny-  
ghtes

ghtes that were come of late in their felawship, and thā the foure brethren wente vp to the halle, and met with no body. For the olde Aymon theyr father was a halwyng upon the river, & the duchesse their mother was in her chambze, where she was continually penuryful and sozr bycause y she might not heare no tidinges of her childre. Whan y foure brethren were entred wythin the halle: they fonde no man to whom they should speake, wherof they were soze meruayled and they set themselves downe, the one heere, and the other there, & abode th<sup>e</sup> a longe whyle that no body came there. And whan they had taried longe ynoughe: than came the duchesse theyr mother out of her chambze, and she looked a longe the hall, where she saw her sonnes thus counterfayte whiche she knew not but meruayled herself greatly what folke they were. And whan Alarde sawe hys lady mother come: he said to hys brother Reynawde and to his other brethren, yoder is our mother that we soze despyed for to see, let vs goe agaynst her yf it please you, and tell her our great penurye and oure need. Brother sayd Reynawde we shall doo so, but we shall tary tyl she speake to vs or not, and thus taried the foure brethren tyl that theyr mother was come to them. And whan she sawe them so blacke & so hidous, & principally Reynawde y was so great & so rough: she tooke so greate feare of them that she wolde haue gone agayn into her chambze, but anon she assured herselfe & said to the, God saue you Lordes. What be you

or of what nacion: are ye chrissten or paynimes, or folke y dooth penaunce wyl ye not haue some almeste or some clothyng for to couer your body with: for I see ye haue great need of it, and yf ye wyl haue it for gods sake I shall giue it you gladly, to thende he haue mercy on my chyldren, and that he wyl keep them fro ylle combzaunce and fro perill, for it is wel seuen yerres that I did not see them. And whan the Duchesse had sayd this: she tooke so great pttie to remembze her chyldren that she begā to weepe soze tenderlye. And whan she had wept a longe whyle: she sayd so hygh that her chyldren understode it. Ha good god whan shall the daye come that I shall see my chyldren: Alas good lord how sayne wolde I see them. Was there euer Ladye that bare so riche a bourden as I haue, and that were of it so discomforted as I am:

**A**nd whan Reynawde sawe his lady mother so sozowful & sozr: he had of it great pttie, and the teres began to come at his eyen, & wolde dyscouer himselfe. But whā the duchesse behelde well his visage and his behauour, and maner: her bloud ranne vp to her face, and heuered within her body, and began to shake full fast, so that almost she fel downe in a swoone to the erth and was a great whyle that she myght not speake her hert was so close and so soze pressed, & all her colour lost and gone, and whan she was come agayne to her selfe: she dyd caste het syght agayne vpon Reynawde, and

G. ii.

knew



knew him ryght well by a wounde that he had in his face, whiche was doone to hym of a fall, whan he was in his tender age. Thā she said to hi as glad as any mother may be, Reynawde my sonne, whose peere is not among al the knyghtes of the worlde. Howe see I you so soze appayred and chaunged; Where is gon your great beaultie; why my sonne doo ye hide you towarde me, y<sup>e</sup> loued you more than my selfe; And while that she said these wordes: she looked aboute her, and knew her chyldren, & anon she went towarde them w<sup>th</sup> her armes spred abrode, for to colle and kisse theym soze weepynge for great pittie that they were so soze appayred of theyr beaultie, and so long she kysed one and than another: that at last she fell do wne in a swoune. And Reynawde tooke her by in his armes, wher she abode a good while and Reynawde & his byethern ceased not from weeping, for great pitie that they had of theyr mother.

**A**D whan the duchesse was come agayne to herselfe: she tooke her chyldren & made them sitte do wne by her, and sayd to them how is it that I see you thus poore & dysfigured: why is it that ye haue with you no knyghtes nor none other company: where haue ye ben that haue endured so great pouertie, and so great disease: whan y<sup>e</sup> duchesse spake thus to her chyldren she dyd wepe wyl soze tenderly, and founde all in tere, holdynge her sonne Rey-

na wde betwene her armes, and kysed hym sweetly. Lady sayd Reynawde we haue with vs but thre knyghtes that keep our horses y<sup>e</sup>der without. For our father hath slayne all our knyghtes, & all our folke. And also he woulde haue slayne vs yf it had not be our lord y<sup>e</sup> kept vs ther fro throughe his pittie & mercy. Soze hard perentage dyd he she we to vs our naturall father. Whan the Duchesse vnderstoode these wordes: she was ryght soze for it. And called to her one of her seruauntes and laide to hym. Goe and make my sonnys horses to be had into a good stable, and that they ben well tended. And bynge hither y<sup>e</sup> thre knyghtes, that keep the horses without, for I wyl see them. Madame sayde her squire it shalbe doone incontinent. And then he went to the thre knyghtes and sayd to them, that the duchesse wolde see them. Whyche incontinent dyd as the lady had commaunded, and came to the Palays wher as Reynawde taried for them. Lordes said the duchesse to them, ye be right welcome. Madame sayd the knyghtes God gyue you good life & longe and Joye of your chyldren, for they ben the best and the moste worthy knyghtes of all the worlde. Thys hangynge: came there a yeman, that sayd to the duchesse. Madame, yf it please you to sit at y<sup>e</sup> table: y<sup>e</sup> meat is redy. Thā the lady tooke Reynawde and the other with her, & lede them to dinner and made them syt do wne all afoze her, and theyr thre knyghtes

tes at the left side of her. There ma-  
de good chere the touth sonnes of Ay-  
mon, and ere at theyr ease & at theyr  
owne wyll. For it was longe syth y  
they had ony good meate, where they  
myghte take theyr naturall food at  
theyr ease. And as they were at the  
table: Thenn came theyr father Ay-  
mon from hawkynge and huntynge  
whiche had taken foure hartes and  
two wylde boyes, and dyuerse per-  
tryches and felauntes. Whan Ay-  
mon sawe them: he knewe them not  
and he sayd vnto the duchesse. Lady  
what are these folke that ben thus  
couterfeyt? whan the duchesse vnder-  
stode her husbände she was sore a-  
gasse, and began for to wepe and  
sayde. Syr these ben your chyliden  
and myne, that ye haue trauaylled  
so moche, and soze hunted as wylde  
beastes. The which haue dwelled so ge-  
tyme in the forreste of Ardeyne where  
as they haue ben soze touned as ye  
now maye see. Now are they come  
vnto me by cause I am ryghte glad  
whan I see theyr. For to you they  
ben not come. For they knowe well  
that ye loue them not, But I praye  
you for god that for the loue of me  
ye wyll lodge them this night. For  
they shall departe to morow eue, &  
I wot not yf euere I shal see them.  
wherefore of this I beseeche you right  
humbly,

**W**han whan Aymon vnderstode  
these wordes: he shooke al for  
anger, and touned hym selfe toward  
his sonnes, and made to them cuill  
chere and said to them. Glos gods  
decs curse haue you, for ye ben not

worthe a strawe. For ye haue nother  
foike nor money, nor no prissoner y  
might pay to you a great hallopye.  
Father sayd Reynarde by the sayth  
that I owe to you, if your lande is  
in peace, the other ben not so. For ye  
might goe sixe scoze miles that ye  
should not finde nether riche man  
nor poore, but that they keepe them  
selues within fortresses and in Cas-  
telles. But ye doo great wronge  
for to doo vs the worst that ye can,  
ye rooke spylt from vs our good Ca-  
stell of Mountaynsorde. And after y  
ye had assayled vs in y wood of ar-  
deyne, and slew all our folke so that  
of fyue hundred knyghtes that I had  
ye left a lyue with me but enleuyne,  
wherof. viii. ben dead, and these. iiii.  
that ye see heere at abyde a lyue, now  
beholde well father, and thynke how  
ye hare your selfe to warde vs. But  
syth it is thus that ye ought to vs no  
good wyll, and that ye may not see  
vs: Make vs the heades to be smy-  
ten of, and so shall you be beloued of  
Charlemayne, and hated of god, and  
of all men.

**A**d whan y olde Aymon vn-  
derstode Reynarde th<sup>e</sup> speke  
he knewe well he sayde trouth, and  
began to fryght soze at his herte, and  
then he sayd to hys chyliden. My-  
chaunt your lidenes, & louth hath  
ouercome you. Ye were neuer my  
childecne: For yf ye were such as me  
were: ye should not haue suffred the  
great pouertie that ye haue endured  
so longe. But ye should haue gene  
win vpo your enemies, for to main-  
tein your selfe honestly, & make good



warre to Charlemaigne through all  
hys lande. But ye are become myf-  
chaunt, & therfore I tell you that ye  
get nothing of me. Now the boyde  
out soone of my Palace, and goe  
begge where ye wil at a nother place.  
So I sayd Reynawde say that an  
euill and an unkynde father ought  
to save. For I tell you for very cer-  
taine that we haue slayne so manye  
theues and byrgauntes: that I can  
not numbre them, wherof I fele my  
selfe in great synne. But for god we  
requyre you that ye wyll helpe vs  
to recouer our lades of Charlemaign  
and p' ye wyll not doo so: g'ue to  
vs of your godes, and we shall goe  
further from you. I wyll not sayd Iy-  
mon. Father sayd Reynawde here I  
se well your euill wyll. And my  
brethern haue doone so muche, & we  
ben comen into your place, that we  
should fare the better for it, but I se  
wel ye wyll cast vs therfro w' great  
astayce. And I swere to you by the  
fayth that I owe to my Lady mo-  
ther that yf I muste nedes departe  
from you in suche a maner: ye shall  
abye it full deere, yf ye caste vs thus  
out of your lande, for I haue leue  
die here by you, thā to die for hūge.  
Sith that it may be none otherwise.

**W**han whan Reynawde sawe  
that his father was so hard  
herred against him and his brethern:  
he wored red for angre, and began to  
change colour, & drew hys swerde  
half out of his sheathe. And whan  
Alard saw hys brother Reynawde  
change colour: he knewe well that  
he was wrothe, so ranne he & called

hym s'pence. Ya saye brother, for  
goddess loue angre not your selfe so  
fore to our father for he is our lord  
and therfore whether it is right or  
wronge he may say to vs as it pleas-  
eth hym, and we ought to doo hys  
commaundement. And if he is cruel  
to warde vs: we ought to be humbly  
& pleasaunt to warde hym. So kepe  
your selfe for goddess loue that ye  
set not hande vpon him. So it were  
agaynst the commaundement of god  
brother sayd Reynawde it lacketh but  
lytle that I were madal quicke w'ā  
I see afore me him that should helpe  
vs, defende & loue vs as his childre  
& gyue vs his good counsell to vs,  
and to warde all men: And he dooth  
all contrary the same. He hath made  
peace wyth Charlemaigne for to dys-  
troye and vndoo vs. I saw neuer so  
cruel a man agaynst his sonnes, for  
he chalet vs a waye from him full  
shamfull, as though we were straū-  
gers or sarayns. I should not can-  
tell the harme & great hurte that he  
hath doone to vs, nor the greates po-  
uerth that we haue suffered for hym.  
I wolde neuer haue doone so to him  
for rather I wolde haue let me ben  
slayne all quicke. But & yf I ca' euer  
go from hens: I certifie you that I  
shall angre him, and shall so wast his  
lande that it shall doo him but lytle  
profite so that it shall be spoken of  
perpetually.

**A**nd whan Iymon herad Rey-  
nawde speake thus: his herte  
wored soft & began to wepe full sore  
& sayd. Ya godhold I am soze y I  
may not enjoy the good y god hath  
g'uen

gyuen to me largely, there should be no man in the worlde so happy as I were, pt my chyldren had theyr peace with kyng Charlemayne. For I am sure that the kyng Priamus of troy had neuer better men to his chyldren nor more balyaunt nor prou, thā I haue. For I wyl here thou shouldest not take heed to none other agaynst thy chyldren, but shouldest help them & keep the agaynst al me, wherfore I ought wel to hate thee: euill here thou hast made me hate & I ought to loue as myne owne seife, & whan he had thus spoken to hym seife: he sayd to Reynaude. Fayre sonne ye are right worthy & sage: for neuer Hector of Troy was worthy you, nor in al the world is not founde your matche. And yett for Ioug it well to doo your wyl. Whan the duke Aymon had sayd this worde: he spake to his wyfe the duchesse & sayd, lady I go ponder with out, for I wyl not be forsworne agaynst the kyng Charlemayne: ye haue wythin golde & siluer ynough, & many horses & muche harnes, palfrayes & comimers. Now giue to my chyldren all that they wyl take. And whan he sayd thus: he tooke hys me with him, & went his waye.

**W**han sayd Reynaude we oughte to thanke you muche of that ye haue now sayd, and we shall go hence to morow early with goddes grace: to the ende & ye be not euill at ease, and if it please you we shall abyde for this night for to comforte our mother, & hath be so yll at ease for the loue of vs. And I promyt you father we should not haue comē

yet, but it had be for her sake, Reynaude fayre sonne sayd & duke ye are full of great witte. Wit that whan Berthelot was dead I durst not shewe me afore the kyng Charlemayne: bycause he sayde he had leuer haue losse the halfe of his Realme, & thertened me for to hange or byenne and distroye all my lande, and I dyd so muche by the counsell of my freendes that I made mine apoyntment and that I was out of al blame. And ye haue not considered the othes & Charlemayne made me doo agaynst you, as agaynst all other & helde w you, and I am soze dyspleased of & I found you in & woode of Ardeyne as I did. But I was forced of mine honour to doo as I dyd for to be in peace with kyng Charlemayne, your mother hath not forsworne you, and therfore she may giue you of our goodes at your wyl. And whan & duke had sayd these wordes: he pssued out of his palays, & went to the woode.

**A**fter whan the free duchesse heard that, that the duke Aymon gaue her leue for to doo w hys goddes at her wyl: she called her chyldren and sayde to theym. Fayre chyldren now be you sure that sythe your father is not within ye shal be well tended vpon, and shall haue al the chere that I can doo to you. And thā she did doo make & baynes redy & made them all to bayne honestly, & wylt & in theyr bayne were manye a swete herbe, & whan they were well clene: the good lady made bring linnen and other clothes for to chaunge, and to eche of them a mantel of fine scarlet



scarlet furred with hermyngs, & whā she had them well aparelled: she led them in a chambze where theyr fathers treasour was and shewed it to her children, whā Reynawde saw so riche a treasour: he began to laughe and said lady mocher gramercy of so fayre a gift as here is. For it mistreth me well, and thā he tooke of that treasoure at his Wyll. And incontynent he sent messangers thzough al the countrey for to get hym souldyours of the best men of warre, wherof many one came gladly to him, the which reynawde payed for an whole yere. What shall I tell you moze? Reynawde and his brethern lay that nyght within the Castel of their said father. And the next mornynge after it was day they departed and had with them fyue hundred men well horsed and well arayed. And whā Reynawde & his brethern had take leue of theyr lady mocher & duchesse she sayd to them fayre sonnes I wil that ye drawe towarde Spayne, for it is a plentious countrey. And as they wolde haue departed: than cam Walwys theyr colyn, that came out of Fraunce, where he had ben longe tyme,

**A**fter whā Walwys was lighted from hys horse: he rā to Reynawde, his armes spred abrode, & began to kisse him, & whā he had so done: he kissed his other three brethern, & than he sayd to them. Wa fayre colyns I am ryght glad to see you, & thanked be our Lorde that he hath brought me into this colte. Colyn sayd Reynawde where haue you

ben so longe & we had neuer rynges of you. Colyn sayd Walwys I come from the great Citie of Paris where I haue stolen three horses laden with golde, & here they ben, the whiche Charlemayne wende for to haue hid well, & I gyue you the half of it for I might not bestowe the better than to you. Colyn sayd Reynawde god thankeyou. And whā he had sayd: so he went out of Ardeyne with his brethern & his folke, & found his father & came fro the wood, & whā Reynawde saw his father: he made hym reuerence & bolned hymselfe to hym, & Symon sayde to them, fayre sonnes now ben ye well garnysshed & honestly arayed. I praye you that ye doo so in Fraunce, that men speke of your prowes, & ye my other children. I commaunde you that ye obey Reynawde and keep hym aboue all thing, for as longe as he shal lyue ye ought not to be aferde of no harme.

**W**hā sayd Alarde, for we shal doo your comaūment, and we pray you for gods loue, & ye will be euer moze our good father. I wyll be somy children sayd Symon, & thā Reynawde tooke leue of his father & of his mother & conueyed them out of the towne. But the good lady fel downe in a swoone whā she saw departe her children. And all the towne began to make such a sorowe that it was great pite, and Reynawde and his brethern went on theyr waye. And whā & duchesse came to her selfe and saw her children departe: she began to say. Wa poore herte myne, why breakest not thou, alas if I had dyed

Dyed longe a goe my soule were  
the better at eale, I am not a  
mother but a stepmother. Alas I se  
my ryche burden go to exile, and yet  
I cannot witholde them nor helpe  
them that they abyde with me, thus  
as the Duchesse made her mone to  
her Women: Aymon came and tooke  
her betwene hys armes and recom-  
forted her and sayd vnto her. Ladye  
of comfort not your self so muche,  
for my hert giueth me that we shall  
yet see them in great prosperite and  
honour and great Joy and gladnes  
ye shall once haue of them in shorte  
tyme. Shorthe to speake: the good  
Aymon recomforted so muche the  
Duchesse that she left her sorow &  
went agayne to the palays with the  
duke Aymon. I leue heare to speake

of the duke Aymon and of þe Duches  
hys wyfe: and retorne to speake of  
Reynawde and of his byethern.

¶ How after that Reynawd his bye  
thern and his cosyn Hawgys were  
departed out of Dozdone fro the  
mother for to seeke their aduentur:  
they rode so longe that they came in  
to the Realme of Gascogne. ¶ And  
how by the waye they made greates  
harme to the Realme of Fraunce.  
And how the kynge of Gascogne re-  
ceyved them in his seruys.

Capitulum. b.





**N**ow sayth the tale that after that Reynawde, Blarde, Guicharde & Richard, and Hawgys their cosyn were yllued out of Ardeith with all theyr scla wypp, that was wel of .vi. hundred men, well mounted & arayed: they passed thorough the Byheuse and wasted all Fraunce, and passed through the countrie of Gascopys, & so forth to Dyleaunce where they went ouer the riuier of Loyre, and wasted all the lande vnto Porters. And whan they were come to Porters: they hearde tidinges that the kinge Pon of Gascopn that was a puissaunt prynce was as sayled of the Sarasyns. And whan Hawgys heard these wordes: he ca to Reynawde & sayd to him. Cosin the kinge Pon of Gascopne is a prynce of great renome and of great power go we to hym and serue hym and suche seruyce we shall now do to hym: that Charlemayne shall not now hynder vs by no wayes. Cosin sayd Reynawde let vs than go there syn that it semeth to you good, and whā they were here to accorded they tooke theyr waye towarde Gascopn and rode so longe by their iourneys that they came to Burdeus a fayre citi, where they found king Pon with a great company of knyghtes, and whan they were do wne from theyr horses: Reynawde sayd to his folke, go we lodge vs. Cosyn sayde Hawgys we shall not doo so, but we shall speake streight with king Pon, & yf he reteryneth vs: in a goodhoure be it & yf he not doo so: we shall serue borgons the sarasin, whiche is ryghte pryue & sage, & hath al redy coquelled

almoste all the lande of kynge Pon, as Tholouse, Montpeller, Lictary & saynt Gyle, Carascun, & Arles, & yf we sayle heere: we shall not sayle there. Cosyn sayd Reynawde ye speke well and wysely, & we shall doo as ye haue sayd. And thā Reynawde tooke with him .l. knyghtes & hys three brethern & Hawgys, and tooke of his armes and clothed hymselfe honestly and rychele, and whan he was well arayed: he went to þ king Pongs court vpon a litle nagge, and whan he rode thorough Bourdeus: all the people ran for to see him, because he was so great & so wel made and so fayre with all, and also hys three brethern, but they were not al euin so great. And whan they were come to the gate of the kinges place Reynawde light on foote, & went vnto þ Palays, and founde þ king at þ counsell. And whan the steward saw Reynawde so fayre a man and so goodly, and so many folke wyth hym: he came him agaynst and sayd to hym. My lord ye be right welcō. And Reynawde answered to him god giue you good auenture now tel and please you where is þ kyng? My lord sayd the steward, the king holdeth no w his counsell, for Borgons the sarasin is entred in his lād and hath doone to hym great harme and domage. For he hath brente to wnes and castelles abbeys, hospitalles, Churches, and al other monasteries, and now he is parforce within Tholouse with a great puissance. Certes sayde Reynawde. This Borgons is of great power as me semeth and after that menne layen.

sayen. Thus as Reynard & the sta-  
ard spake together: came king yō out  
of the conseil chamber, & when Rey-  
nard saw him: he took his brethren  
& his cousin wawgis with him & went  
ayenst the king, which Reynard sa-  
luted right humbly & said to him. Sir  
I am come to you fro a ferre londe w-  
me three brethren & my cosyn that ye  
see heere for to doo you seruise & our  
folke if it please you, & we shal serue  
you in such a maner, & we will haue  
nothing of you, but & our seruise be a  
greable vnto you: ye shal promise me  
as a king if it be your pleasure, that  
ye shal be my warraunt & help ayenst  
al oher, good freend said yō king you  
ye be righte welcome to me, & where  
ye sape ye be come for to serue me: I  
thanke you for it with al my hert, but  
I will first know what folke ye ben,  
for ye might be such that I should de-  
fende you, or that I should be your  
enmy. Wy said Reynard sith that it  
please you to know what we ben: I  
shal telle it to you, wyte that my na-  
me is Reynard & am sonne eldest to  
the duke Simon of Ardeyn, and these  
three knyghtes ben my brethren, hee-  
re is Alard, Guichard, & Richard, &  
heere is wawgis our cosyn one of yō  
best knyghtes of the world & most wi-  
se. Charlemayne hath cast vs oute of  
Fraunce, & hath dysherpyed vs, & our  
facher hath disauowed vs for the lo-  
ue of him & for this cause sit we goe  
seeke a bout after a lord that is good  
and true that shoulde helpe vs to de-  
fende ayenst Charlemayne, and we  
shal serue him wel and truly.

**W**hen king yō hearde this that  
Reynard sayde: he was righte

gladde of it that they were the four  
sonnes of Aymon the best knyghtes  
of all the world and most doughty, &  
wawgis that was the moste subtyll  
of the world that were come for to  
serue him, he wolde not haue ben so  
glad yf men had gyuen to him al pa-  
rys. For he wyll well that yf euer he  
shoulde fynishe his warre: it shoulde  
be by their meane. Then he looked  
vp toward heauen, and thanked our  
lord of the comyng of these worthy  
knyghtes, & than he sayde to them.  
Lords ye are receyued of me for ye  
ben not the men that ought to be refu-  
sed. I promysse you truly and in fei-  
th of a kinge, that I shal defende you  
with all my power ayenst all men, ye  
are dysherpyed & I also, therfore it is  
well reason that we be togyther, and  
that the one helpe the other of all his  
power. Sir said Reynard we thanke  
you a thousande tymes & I promysse  
you that we shal die in your seruise  
or elles your londe shal be recouered  
again. The king called his stuarde &  
sayde to him and commaunded that  
Reynard & his felawshyp shoulde be  
well lodged. Incontinent the stuarde  
tooke Reynard by the hande, & ful-  
filled the commaundement of the  
king. Now are the four sonnes of  
Aymon acquynted with the kinge  
yon of Gascoyn, whiche went to ha-  
ue doo wel but he repented him soone  
after. ¶ But here we leaue to speake  
of king yō, and of the four sonnes  
of Aymon: & return to speake of our  
goyns that were at Tholouse, the  
whiche he had take by force of armes.  
¶ How Reynard, and his brethren  
and wawgis destroyed Bortong  
the



## The booke of the fourte

the Saracyns, that had destroyed the  
realme of Gascoigne and chased the  
kyng yon vnto Bourdeaux vpon Gy-  
ronde that durst not goe thence for fea-  
re of the Saracyns. And after howe

kyng yon gaue my ladye Clarys  
syster to Merynawde for to be his wi-  
fe, for the greaie seruyse that he had  
doone to him. And howe he made for  
hym the castell of Mounstowan.

Capitulum. vi.



**I**n this party sheweth the hyf-  
tozpe that after bourgons had  
saken tholouse: he made a great pas-  
lyamente to his folke. And sayde to  
them. Lordes ye knowe well, that  
whan the prync is well horsed: it wer-  
keth the better. This worde I haue  
sayde afore your lordshippes for to  
gryue you to knowe what we oughte  
to doo. And chetfoze me semeth that  
we oughte to ryde now towarde bour-  
deaux while the corne is in the ere.  
For our horses shal haue meat ynoughe.  
Sir sayde his folke, ye speake wel  
and wisely, let it be doone as ye haue  
devisid, & whan the morowe came:

Bourgons departed oute of Tho-  
louse with well. xx. thousand knygh-  
tes wel armed, and ceassed not for to  
ryde tyll that they came afore Bour-  
deaux in. ix. daies. And he set all his  
folke in a busshement within a greaie  
woode that was nygh, & abode there  
with them, excepte foure hundred  
men that wente to the cite waiking  
and byennynge all the counteile vnto  
the cite of Bourdeaux, and whan the  
daye was that was vpon the gate  
of the cite sawe the Saracyns come:  
he cried with an highte voyce, arme  
you knyghtes for heere ben the pay-  
nyngs that come for to hurte you.

Whan the Little understode this: he began to befoze moued.

**W**han whan Reynawde sawe that it was tyme to take hys harnes on he sayd to hys brethern: For make you all redye, and make our trompettes to be blowen that al our folke put them self in armes. In contynent made hys brethern his commaundement. And whan they were all armed: Reynawde mounted vpon Bayarde, and came to kinge Pon & sayd to hym. Syr be not abasshed of nothyng: but be sure that god helpe vs this daye. My self, my brethern and all our folke we goe afoze, and make your folke to be redi incontynēt for my hert giueth me that this cursed Sarasyn shal be this daye dyscōfited, and ouercomē wyth the helpe of god. Freende sayd the king, god be wyth you, and I shal doo that ye t. l me. And thus Reynawde went out of Bourdeux the forrest of all hys folke agaynst the Sarasyngs vpon hys horse Bayarde, the sheeld at his necke, and his swerde in hys hande and ranne fierdly vpon hys enemies and incontynent smote a Daynym throughe his sheelde so that he ouerthrew him dead to the grounde, and forth wyth he cast a nother, god wot he helde well his swerde, for he helde the Sarasyngs as they had ben without harnes. And shortly to speake after that Reynawde and hys folke were assembled: the Daynymes might not endure. For Reynawde and his brethern slewe them as beastes, so that they must nedes flee rowarde theyr bulshement. And whan bour-

gons sawe hys folke come thus: he issued out of the wood wyth hys company, and made busynesse & hounes to be blowen, & came for to succoure his men. And whan Reynawde sawe so great numbrye of folke coming out of the wood: he was sore meruayled, and turned hym self towarde his brethern and sayd to them. Lordes keep that ye be not dismayed, for we shall get a great worshyp this daye, and I praye you that euery man parforce hymselfe to doo well, brother sayd: Rycharde we shall neuer be dismayed as longe as ye be vpon Bayarde. Brother sayd Reynawde: doo as good men, for ye will parforce your selfe a lytle: These Daynems shal not hold afoze vs. Thus as Reynawde spake to his brethern: they sawe Bourgons come the spere in his rest and smote a man of Reynawde by such a strength that he shoued his spere throughe and throughe his body, so that he fell downe dead to the earth. Whan Marde sawe that: he was wrothe, & spurred his horse and ranne vpon a Daynym so hard that he felled hym deke dead afoze hym. And shortly to speke there was neuer seene suche a distresse of folke, as Reynawde, his brethern & many of hys cosyn made wyth so fewe folke as they were agaynst Bourgons the Sarasyn.

**W**han whan the king pon that came to the succours of Reynawde sawe the great faytes of armes that he and his brethern made, and how hardly they dyd set vpon and ouerthrew all that they recountred

D. l.

afoze



## The booke of the foure

afore them: he blessed hymself of the meruayle that he had of theym. And than he sayd to hys folke. go we succour these worthy knyghtes, for it is tyme longe ago, and whan the king yon had sayd these wordes: he spurred his horse & put hymself amonge the thickest & began to doo wel, and dyd so moche that he brake the great pyeces, and came where Reynawde was. And whan Reynawde saw the kynge yon he sayd to hym. Syr be sure and certayne that the Saracins are discomfited, than sayd the kyng. Reynawde I am well assured y god shall do me grace through your high prowesse, blessed be the houre that ye were bozne, & came into these marches. To speake shortly the batayles were assembled of one parte and of the other, but whan Borgong sawe the great harme that Reynawde bare to hym of his folke: he sayde to hys men, We ben ouercomen by the prowesse of these fyue knyghtes. Let vs go backe agayne, for it is tyme. And whan he had sayde these wordes: he and his folke begā to flee. And whā Reynawde saw Borgong that fled: he smote Bayarde with the spures and ranne after him and said to him self that Borgong should abide there or els it should coste hym his lyfe. Wythin a shorte whyle Reynawde was ferre from hys brethren, & ferre from his felawship so that they wist not whiche way he drowe. Whan y Alarde saw that, he wyl not where Reynawde was drawen: he sayd to hymselfe. Ya god whiche way is my brother drawen to y I am not wyth hym: than came there kyng yon y

sayd to them. Lordes and knyghtes wel ye know (graincey God) that it is not wysdome for to chase ouer moche his enemies for often tymes cometh there a great domage, let vs withdraw vs I pray you, syr sayd Alarde what say ye: we haue lost Reynawde our brother & wot not where he is, nor yf he is dead or taken, whā kyng yon vnderstode this worde: he was full sorow and wrothe, and they wente and sought amonge the dead men that lay vpon the feld. And whan Alarde sawe he coude not be found: he made great sorowe wyth Guycharde, Richarde and Hawgis also. And whan y folke of Reynawde saw that he was not found: they began to make so great sorowe that it was pitie for to see.

**A** Las sayd Alarde what shal I doo: I departed from my lande poore & cryed, but I dyd not care for it, for I wente with the best knyghte of the worlde and trowed by the prowesse of hym to haue recovered honour and hauour my selfe & my brethren, & now I haue lost him thorough my defaute. Alas my chaunce what shal we doo fro hens forthore for y erth shal nor now susteyne vs no more. But that it shal soude vnder our fete, & whan the kyng yon saw the great sorow that the poore knyghtes made for they brother: he sayde to them. Lordes and knyghtes what is this that ye doo: sith y he is not dead: it ought to suffyse you, for yf he be take ye shal haue him agayne & it should cost me al y I haue in the worlde. And also we haue so many of them

them prysoners, that Borgons shal not doo to hym no harme for no tyng. Syr sayd Alarde let vs go after for goddes sake, let vs wte where he is become. Freende sayde the kyng I wil doo so gladly. And thā they spur red theyr hoxles and went as fast as theyr hoxles might renne, & wit þ Alarde Guycharde Richarde & Warys rode a good pale so moche that it semed that the erthe shoulde haue clouen a sondre vnder them.

Now will I tel you of Reynawde that went after Borgons so fast as þe tempest had chased hym, and he was gone so ferre in a short while þ it is wonder for to hear tel, for there was no beast that went afoze Bayarde his hoxle. And whan Reynawde had overtaken Borgons he cryed vpon him as hys as he myght doo. Certes Borgons thy hoxle may no more I see it well, and therfore flee no ferther, but turne thy self towarde me, for yf thou dyed styng: þ shouldest be shamed. whā Borgons heard Reynawde speake thus to hym, he returned incontinente, and whan he saw Reynawde: he knew well that it was the good knyght that had dyscomfyted al his folke and sayd to hym. Syr knyght, go backe agayne and marre not your hoxle aboute nought, for if ye lese him: ye shal neuer recouer suche a nother, and this he said for to abasshe the good knyght Reynawde, for he durste not Joust with him bicause of the great proues that he had seen in him but Reynawde was not the man that shoulde be made aserde, wyth wordes and than Reynawde sayde agayne to him

Borgons this worde nedeth not to you for to say: for ye must nedes defende your selfe. And than he spurred incontpient bayarde, and whan Borgons saw that he myght not be deliuered of Reynawde but by Joustyng: he spurred his hoxle and ranne vpon Reynawde as harde as he myght, & smote Reynawde so sharply þ the spere wente in peces. Reynawde fell not, but smote Borgons suche a stroke that he ouerthre w both hoxle and man to the grounde and wounded borgons in his brest full sore.

And whan Borgon saw hymselfe at the grounde: he rose bp lyghtly and tooke hys swerde in hys hande, and caste his sheelde vpon his head. And whan Reynawde perceiued þ stroke that he had giuen hym in hys brest: he cryed to hym and sayd. Certes it shal not be reproched to me that ye fyght wyth me a fote and I on hoxle backe, and with this he lighted down fro bayarde & dre w out his swerde & went against Borgons, & Borgons agaynst hym, & there began a sharpe batayle and whan the hoxle of the payne felt him selfe fro his master: he begā to rene away ouer þ feeldes and whan Bayard sawe him renne away, he went after and ouertooke hym soone ynough, and thā he tooke hym by the mane with his teeth and dre w hym with so great myght that he brought him agayne to hys master in the same place where the two worthy knyghtes fought to gether, and Reynawde gaue a stroke to borgons with his swerde vpo his sheelde and all that the sworde roughte he cut throug to the fleshe, and well



## The booke of the foure

an hundred mayles of his flancar-  
des and made hym a great wounde  
into the haunce.

**W**han whā bozgons the sara-  
lyn saw that wonderful stre-  
gthe of Reynawde, & the great stro-  
kes that he gaue to him: he was soze  
afrayed and tered leaſt he ſhould die,  
and ſo he withdrew himſelfe abacke  
and ſayd to Reynawde. Ha gentyll  
knyght I pray thee for the loue that  
thou haſt to thy God that thou giue  
me truce, and I ſhall make the lorde  
a lye of all þ I haue in this worlde.  
Certes ſayd Reynawde I wyll not  
doo ſo, for I haue promyſed to kyng  
won that I ſhall helpe hym agaynſt  
all men, and he in lyk wyſe hath pro-  
myſed me, but and yf ye wyll make  
your ſelfe chryſten: I ſhal doo it glad-  
ly. Spz ſayd Bozgons I wyll yelde  
me to you, for to no better knyght  
than ye be I cannot yelde my ſelfe, if  
ye wyll ſaue my lyfe and my mem-  
bers. Bozgons ſaid Reynawde yf ye  
wyll yelde you to me ye ſhall haue  
no more harme thā I ſhall. Wyll ye  
promiſe me thys ſaid Bozgons: yea  
ſaid Reynawde. Now hold my ſwerd  
ſayd Bozgons & I put my ſelf al to-  
gether in your hand. And Reynawde  
tooke hys ſwerde and aſſured hym  
that he ſhould not dye and they two  
went together for to take theyz hor-  
ſes, and whan they had theym they  
lyghred bpon, and tooke theyz way  
toward Bozdewys, and as they cam  
againc: they met with kyng won that  
came and hys folke renning agaynſt  
hym as faſt as they myght. Whan  
Reynawde ſaw þ kyng: he thanked

hym muche that he was comyng af-  
ter hym, and preſented to hym Boz-  
gons that he had thus taken and co-  
queſted as I haue rcherſed to you, &  
ſayd to him. Noble king of Gaſcoyn  
I beſeeche you that Bozgons haue  
no harme, for I haue aſſured hym.  
Good freend ſayd kyng you, no more  
he ſhall, but all honour for the loue  
of you, and I praye to God that I  
may doo nothyng that is agaynſt  
your wyll. And whan Alarde Guy-  
charde, Rycharde, & Maſogys ſaw  
Reynawde that brought Bozgons  
pyſoner: they were neuer ſo glad, for  
they wend to haue loſt hym, ſo ranne  
they and kyſſed hym ful ſweetly and  
made hym great feaſt and great ho-  
nour. For they had ben in great ſo-  
row for the loue of hym.

**B**rother ſayd Alarde into a great  
ſorrow and heuines ye had brou-  
ght vs this day, for we wende that  
ye had betake, but ſith that ye haue  
taken Bozgons the warre is doone  
and bleſſed be the houre that ye were  
borne & the pappes that ye ſucked,  
and whan they were wel feaſted: they  
tooke on theyz way to warde Boz-  
dewys, wher they led Bozgons as a  
pyſoner. And whan the kyng won  
was at Bozdewys: he lyghred doone  
and tooke with him Reynawde and  
his brethren by the hande & Maſo-  
gys alſo & went bp to the palays, &  
ſoude his folke that made great feaſt  
and he called them to hym and ſayd  
Lordes bere honour and woꝝſhypp  
more to this knyght than to me, for  
I am king of Gaſcoyn by theyz woꝝ-  
thines

thynges and great prowes. For if thei had not ben I had ben dead and ouer throwen, blessed be that good lord & dyd put in thei myndes for to come into this coste, for they haue quyt my land & haue set all my realme in p'ace. To speake shortly the kynge made the buty to be dealed. Wherof the moſte party he made to be gyuen to Reynawde & hys bretherne. And Reynawde wolde take nothyng of it but gaue it all to his folke, and whā the kynge saw the great largenes of Reynawde: he loued hym more than he did afore, and than he ſayd that he wolde make Reynawde lord ouer hym, and of all his lande.

**T**he kynge yon had a ſyſter the which was a right ſpyc damoyſell. Whan ſhe heard ſpeake ſo moch good by Reynawde: ſhe called to her a knyght that was called water, and ſayd to hym, tell me by your ſayth who hath the pryce of the batayle. Madame ſayde water I ſhall tell it you with a good wyll. So we wyt þ Reynawde is the beſt knyght of all hys brethern & of al the world for he tooke Borgons the ſarlyn by force, wherby he hath brought the warre at an ende. whā the pucell vnderſtoode this worde: ſhe was ryght glad & dyd thanke our lord for it w al her hert. And þ king & his knyghtes ceaſed not to make ioye for the victory þ god had ſent to them thorough þ great proſeſſe of the valiaūt Reynawde. Whan borgons ſaw him ſelfe in pryſon: he ſent worde to hig yon þ he ſhould come ſpeake with hym. And as ſoone þ king yon wyſt

of it he went to hym. And whā borgons ſaw him, he ſalued hym & after ſayd to hym. Syr I am your pryſoner & alſo þ moſte party of my folke yf it pleaſe you þ ſhal put me to raſon ſonc and my men alſo, & I ſhal grue you .x. horſes laden with golde for me & for my folke. Borgons ſaid the kynge I ſhall doo with a good wyll, yf Reynawde counſel me ſo and no other wyſe I wyll not doo, and thā the kynge yon ſent for Reynawde & for his bretherne and all hys other barons. And whā they were come he helde his counſell howe he ſhould doo for the deliuerance of borgons, Reynawde & his barons counſelled the kynge that he ſhould put borgons to raſon, & whā the king ſaw þ his barons counſelled hym the ſame: he made borgons to be called, and made his deliuerance to be ſpynfyed vnto hym. And thus was borgons deliuered and went with his folke into his countrey, & yelided Tholouſe agayne to kynge yon & ſent to hym .x. ſommers all laſen with true golde as he had promyſed to hym. And in contyent that the kynge & on had receyued them: he gaue them to Reynawde and to his brethern, but Reynawde did as a worthy knyght. For not a peny he wolde take of it nor his bretherne alſo.

**I**t happened vpon a day þ Reynawde & his bretherne wente in a forreſt that was not ferre thens, & toke foure wilde beaſtes, & as they were comynge homwarde they found themſelf vpon the riuſer of Gironde, & as they wente, Marde looked oute the riuer and ſaw a hygge mauntain



and all hyghe on the toppe of it was  
a fayre roche. And whan Alarde saw  
so fayre a grounde and so stronge: he  
turned hymself towarde Reynawde  
and sayde to hym, Brothet yonder  
vpon that hyghe Mountayne is a  
fayre grounde and a strong, I beleue  
that there hath be sometime a castel.  
And yf we myght doo so muche to  
buplde there a stronge place for our  
selfe: Charlemayne should neuer ta-  
ke vs there. And ye wyll beleue me  
ye shal aske it of kyng Ron, and yf he  
gyueth it to you: let vs doo make  
there a stronge castell. Colyn sayde  
Hawgys (to Reynawde) Alarde gi-  
ueth you good counsell. And I pray  
you that ye wyll doo so as he hath  
sayd. Colyn sayd Reynawde I shal  
doo it sych that ye counsell me so.  
And whā they were accorded to the  
sante, they entred into a barge and  
wente ouer Gyrounde. & whan they  
came a lande: they ceassed neuer tyll  
that they came afoze the kyng, and  
presented hym the beastes that they  
had taken. And whan the kyng saw  
them: he receyued them curtoply, for  
he loued them moche. And than the  
kyng embraced Reynawde in hys  
armes.

**T**he morowe nexte after that  
the kyng had hearde masse:  
Reynawde tooke the kyng & dre w  
him a lytle at a syde, and sayd to him  
Syr we haue serued you longe well  
and truly. Certes sayd the kyng ye  
say trowth, and therfore I am bolde  
towarde you well for it, now looke  
yf I haue in al my lande cities tow-  
nes or castelles, or other thyng that

ye wyl haue, for ye shal haue it inco-  
rinct. Syr sayd Reynawde I thanke  
you muche of your good wyll. But  
heare my wordes yf it please you,  
say on hardly sayd the kyng. Syr  
sayd Reynawde I and my brethern  
were the other daye comyng fro the  
chase, and as we came alonge by the  
sydes of Gyrounde and of Dozdone  
and nanely betwene these two ry-  
uers: I saw a Mountayne soe hy-  
ghe, and yf it please you I wolde  
well buplde ther vpon a castell after  
my pleasure. Wherfore sayd it please  
you ye shal graunte to me thys gift  
for al the seruyce that euer I dyd to  
you. Whan the king vnderstode this  
worde: he was ryght glad of it, and  
sayd to Reynawde I ryght gadlye  
graunt this to you. And with the same  
ye shal haue of me .x. thousand mar-  
ke euery yere for to maynteyne your  
estate. Syr sayd Reynawde gramer-  
cie, and cast hymself to his secte. And  
the kyng you tooke hym vp anon  
curtoply and kyssed hym for greate  
loue and after he sayd vnto hym.  
Noble knight I promise you I shal  
make you a ryche man and yf God  
spare me lyfe. Syr sayd Reynawde  
god peldre you, and we shal serue you  
truly, & thus they departed eche fro  
other. The next day after whan the  
kyng was rylen out of hys bed: he  
made Reynawde to come afoze hym.  
And after he took .xx. knyghtes w  
hym and no more & tooke his barge  
vpon Gyround and passed ouer the ri-  
uer Reynawde and hys bretherne w  
hym, and they dyd so muche that they  
came vpon the roche, and whā they  
sawe the place so fayre and so plea-  
saunt

saunt: the kyng was meruayled of it and Reynawde was right glad, for the great strength that the place had, for if he might doo so muche to buylde there a castell: he should not doubt Charlemayne of a peny nor none other person of the worlde wha vitayles were in it. For vpon the highest of the mountayne sprong oute a fayre fountayne and plentcoufe ynoughe for .x. thousand persons.

Whan the knyghtes that were wyth the kyng saw the place so fayre and so pleasaunt and so stronge with all: they were greatly abashed, a knight than tooke the kyng and had hym a lytle a syde and tolde him. Syr what is this that ye wyl doo: wyl ye haue a lordc aboute you: Will ye doo make heere a fortreffe: I tell you vpon my faythe that yf Reynawde set heere a Castell, he shal feare you litle nother you nor all other barons of Gascoyn, for Reynawde is suche a knyght as ye knowe, and also hys brethren and theyr colyn barngys, and also they be straungers, a soone they shal beate you great harme yf they wyl doo to hi some other good yf ye wyl beleue me, and let thys alone, for ouer greate harme myght come to you therof.

**W**han whan kyng Ron vnderstode such wordes: he became all abashed of it, for he wylle well that the knight sayde trouthe, and yett ell it lacked that the werke of y Castell came not forth, he began to thiinke a lytle and after he sayde, that he had promysed it to Reynawde, and

thus he sayd to the knyght that the Castell should be made, so called he Reynawde and sayde to hym. My good frende where wyl ye that the castell be made? Syr sayd Reynawde, I wyl yf it please you that it be set here in the same place vpon this roche. Leeres sayde the kyng I gyue it to you. Now hast you to see that it be made and buylde as ye thynke best, and than ye shall doubt nother me nor my folke. Syr said Reynawde let be these wordes, for it is no need to speake therof. For I certeyne you as a true knyght that I had muche leuer to dye an euill deatch amonge the Turkes, than that I should thinke treason vpon you nor vpon no other. Syr I am and haue betake hereto and holde for a true knyght, god giue me grace that I doo not fro hens forthon wherby I should otherwise be taken: Syr thynke you by cause I am enemy to Charlemayne my Soueraigne lordc, that I should be therfore a traytout and that I haue doone agaynst hym some treason. Wyt that whan I slew Berthe lot his neww, alas I dyd it in my defence, for he dre w fyst bloud vpon me wythout reason or cause whye. But I swore to you vpon my fayth that yf any man doo any wrong vnto you: I shall auenge you therof after my power, but and yf ye haue any suspicion vpon me: gyue me it not. Good frende Reynawde sayde the kyng I dyd but iape with you. For I knowe well your trouthe and well ye haue shewed it vnto me, god thake you, And therfore I haue graunted it vnto you, and yet I doo  
And



## The booke of the four

And I wyll y pe be lord aboute me  
and of my lande.

**A**nd whan Reynawde under-  
stode the curtelpe & the good-  
nes of the kyng: he thāked him right  
muche, & he sent thorough all the lād  
and made come all the maysters ma-  
sons and carpēters and many other  
crafty men in suche worke, so muche  
that they were well two hundred be-  
syde the labourers, and whan al hys  
stufte was redye: he made theym to  
bylde there a stronge castell, wher-  
of the great hall was fyrst made and  
after many chambers and than the  
great towre. And whā the doungeō  
was wel closed: Reynawde made af-  
ter all the castell to be closed rounde  
aboute w double walles hie & thik  
of hard stones, & many toures vpon  
that it fered no sa wyng of no syde  
of it, & made to this castell four ga-  
tes and no mo, and also he made the  
portcollyffe fawsehayes & barbara-  
nes well defensible so that it myght  
be no better. Whan the castel was ac-  
complyshed: Reynawde and his bre-  
thern were therof ryght glad, for it  
semed them that they were assured  
from theyr enemyes. And whā king  
yon knew that the castell was ac-  
complyshed and full made: he went  
to see it. And whan Reynawde wist  
that y kyng came: he went agaynste  
hym and welcomed him full honest-  
ly & made him go vp to y great toure  
of the fortres, breause he should see  
the compass of the Castell rounde a-  
bout at his ease, for the great toure  
men myght se all. The kyng behelde  
well the saye worke y was so plea-  
saunt and so stronge wyth all and

the saye fountayne that was in the  
myddes of it. And thā he called Rey-  
nawde & sayd to hym. Good frende  
Reynawde how shall this castell be  
called: for me semeth it ought wel to  
haue a noble name, for y great brau-  
tie wherof it is garnysshed, for sayd  
Reynawde it hath no name yet, & yf  
it please you pe shall gyue it a name  
as it shall lyke you best. Certes sayd  
the kyng the place is pryty and saye  
I wyll that it be called Mountaw-  
ban, and than the kinge made to be  
knownen throughe all his lande, that  
who wolde come dwel and enhabite  
in the sayde castell, whych was as  
great as a towne, he should be free  
of all maner of dyptes the space of  
ten yeres.

**T**han whan the folke of y coun-  
trei knewe the freedome of the  
castell: pe should haue see come  
there knightes, gentylmen, burgeys  
yonge and olde, yeomen and folke of  
all maner of craftes so that this cas-  
tell was so peopled of all maner of  
folke that in all the cōtrei was no  
towne so wel peopled, for there dwel-  
led .v. hundred burgeys al riche men  
& there were wel .l. tauerners, and  
xv. c. men of crafte besyde all other  
folke, & shortly to speake Mountaw-  
ban was so well garnysshed and so  
riche wī a litle while y it was great  
meruayle for to see, and wot it that  
the kyng yon laued Reynawde with  
so good a loue, for breause of the  
greate worthynes of hym that he  
gane to hym valerey and all the  
lordeshipp that was worthe a thou-  
sande marke of good rente, moche  
well set, and whan the barons saw  
them

that the kynge loved Reynawde so wel: they were wroth for it and had enuie vpon hym, and they came to the kynge and sayd to hym, sye take wel good heed what ye doo, for mou-  
tawan is ryght stronge & so is Reynawde suche a knight that none better is not in all the remenaunt of the worlde, and yf it happe by any wise that he be an angred vpon you: he shall mo-  
u-lyghtly beare to you and to all your folke ouer greete damage. Lordes sayd the kyng ye saye trouthe, but Reynawde is so gentyl & so curtyous of himselfe that he shall neuer thynke vpon no trayson nor to no shame in no maner of wyse.  
Sye sayd than an olde knyght that stode before the kyng, yf ye wyll beleue me: I shall tell you how ye shall alwayes be lord and mayster aboue Reynawde al the tyme of your life. Freend sayd the kyng tell me thys I pray you. Sye sayd the knyght gyue him your spylter to his wyfe, so shall she be well maryed, for Reynawde is well a noble gentylman of al fourc spedes: and therby ye shall be assured that he shall neuer be angry ne wroth with you. Freend sayd kyng you ye gyue me good counsell, and I shall doo it as ye haue counsilled me, but I pray you that ye purchase this matter. Sye sayd the olde knyght syth I know your wyll in thys behalfe: I shall doo my best for to bynge the matter to a conclusyon effectuel. After these wordes thus sayd: the king returned agayne to Bourdeus with loye deuylyng with the olde knyght of the matter wherof they had spoken togither.

**T**he first dai of the moneth of May, Reynawde went from his castel of Mountauban to Bourdeus for to see kyng you & tooke a larde his bocher with hym. And whan the kyng you wyte of it: he came to hym agaynst, & receyued Reynawde with great loye and kyssed hym full sweetely. And after the kyng tooke hym by the hand and went by together to the hall of the palays and so forth to the chambre of parements whiche was hanged right ryche-ly. And than the kyng called for a chesse for to playe at it with Reynawde, And as they were playing together there came in the olde knyght that had charge of the kyng for to make the mariage of Reynawde, and of the kynges syster, whiche knyght was called Godscap of Molins, & whan he was come afore the kyng: he sayd. Heare lord what I wil tel you, to nyght as I was in my bed a slepe me semed that I saw Reynawde the sonne of Aymon & was set hygh in a chaire and all the people of thys Realme enclyned theymselfe before him. And the kyng gaue to hym a sper halwe me wed full fayre and good, and me semed also that than came a great boze out of the woodes & made an horrible noyse, so that no bodye durste not ap-  
roche nygher him thre men assayed him, but they coulde not hurte him and passed by theym. And whan Reynawde sawe that: he lighted vpon Bayarte and came agaynst him and faught with hym & hurted him sore, and than I woke out of my sleape, and whan the olde knyght hadde sayde so: then rose  
a doc



## The booke of the foure

a doctour that was called bernarde the which was ryght wise & a great clerke and sayd, saye Lordes yf ye lyst to herken: I shall expowne & declare vnto you the signyficacion of this dreame. Wyt it that the chaper where Reynawde sat betokeneth the castell that he hath buyded, and the people that bowed himself towarde hym signyfeth þ folke þ are come to dwell there. And the gyfte that the kyng gaue to hym: betokeneth that þ kyng & on shal gyue him his sister to wyfe, þ wilde boze signyfeth som great prince christe oꝝ Baynym that shal come to assaile kynges pon, and Reynawde shal defende hym by force of armes, and the same is the signyficacion of the dreame of Godfray & Indrygne for to speake should counsel that the mariage should be doon of Reynawde & of the syster of kyng pon. For they shalbe thus both right well and richely wedded, and than þ kyng answered thou haste spoken well and wysely. Whan the clerke had declared the betokenyng of the dreame of tholde knyght Godfray þ kyng pon sayd that touchyng this maryage the thinge was well agreeable vnto hym. And whan Reynawde vnderstode this worde: he sayd to þ kyng, Syr gramercy of the saye gift that ye doo to me, but and if it please you ye shal haue a lytle pacience vnto the tyme that I haue counselled with my brethern & my cosyn manwys. Brother sayde Alarde ye haue sayd yll. What refuse you of the kyng so great a gift as he giueth you now yf ye wyl beleue me ye shall fulfill the kynges will incontinent for to

me and to my bretherne it shall please well. And whan the kyng gaue you not his syster but a symple Damoyzell yet ought you to beleue him and doo after his wyl. Brother said Reynawde, it is not the syfte tyme that ye haue giuen to me good counsel and true, and I promyse you I shall doo it syth that ye doo counsel me so. And than Reynawde turned hymself to warde the kyng and said to hym. Syr I am all together redye to doo all that ye wyl, and than Reynawde rose vp and the kyng took hym by the hand and made his sister to be affianced vnto hym.

**W**han whā the maryage was made accorded, & made sure of the one parte & of thother: þ kyng pon came to the chāber of his sister, and found her hely aboute a penouncel of a spere, that she made ful saye for þ knight Reynawde but she durst not tell it. The kyng salued her as soone as he sawe her, and the noble mayde rose vp anon against her brother and made hym due reuerence ryght manerly. Saye syster sayd the kyng I haue doo marye you well and hyghlye. Whan the pucell vnderstode hym: she began to chaunge her colour and bowed her body to hym, and sayd no worde of a longe whyle. And whan she had the powder for to speake: she sayd to the kyng her brother, for to whome haue you giuen me. Saye syster sayd the kyng I haue giuen you vnto the best knight of the worlde, it is Reynawde the sonne of Armon the noble knyght & valyaunt. Whan the noble Damoyzell

tell vnderstode that it was to Reynawde to whome her brother had married her she was ryght glad of it, for she loued Reynawde of a great loue and sayd to the kynge. Syr I wyll doo withal my hert your commaundement and your wyll. Then the king tooke her by the hand & brought her to the palays, and said to Reynawde afore al his barons. Holde heere with thy knyght Reynawde I gyue you my syster to your wyfe and spouse.

Syr sayd Reynawde a thousand graunces of so fayre a gyft that ye giue to me presentlye, for it apperteyneth not so great a gyft to so pooore a knyght as I am, than tooke Reynawde the pucell and spauced her, and sware. And the kynge wolde make no tarpeng therat, but tooke the pucell by the hande, and brought her to the churche well honourably, and the byshop of Bourdeaux wedded the. And whan Reynawde had his wyfe espoused: he sente for his bretherne & for his cosyn Hawgys that were at Mountauban, the whiche made great Joye, and made all Mountauban for to be hanged with ryche tapissery. And than they mouited their horses all couered with sendall and wente to Bourdeaux, and met with Reynawde and his wyfe by the way wher as great Justinge was made afore the ladyes. And after the Justyng was doone: they came all to Mountauban, and whan they were come there: the Joye began for to be greete in the castell as god had descended there. For to say trouthe. viii. dayes lasted the feast, & many great gyftes were presented and gyuen to

the lady. And whan the feast had endured as longe as I tell you: The king yon went againe to Bourdeaux ryght glad of the marriage, that he had made of Reynawde and of his syster. For he thought wel that Reynawde should helpe hym agaynst al men, and he sayd trouthe. For after the mariage was ones made: there was no baron in all Gascorgne that durste looke by, and yet there were some that wolde not doo theyr deuoyre to the kynge, but Reynawde made them well come forth for to doo the kynges commaundement accordyng to theyr lygeaunce wolde they or not. For Reynawde was both loued and doubred through all the lande of Gascorgne. ¶ But now leueth heere the history to speke of Reynawde and of his bretherne and of Hawgys. And retourneth to speke of the king Charlemayne that went to saynt James in Calyce for to do penance for his synnes.

¶ How the king Charlemayne made a vyage to saynt James of Calyce. And how at his comyng agayne he knew how Reynawde and his bretherne were in the Realme of Gascorgne in a ryght stronge castell called Mountauban. And how the kinge Charlemayne sente worde to the kyng yon of Gascorgne that he should yelde to hym his enemyes, that is for to vnderstand. Reynawde Alart Gurcharde and Rycharde, whiche be the sonnes of Aymon and in case that he wolde not: he should com to spege him in his lande afore. x. monethes came at an ende. Wherof the kynge



The booke of the foure

kyngge Vonant Wered that he wolde  
doo nothyng for hym in this behalt  
And howe after that kyngge Charle-  
mayne was returned to Parys with  
his felowship. Roulande his neuwe  
arryued at Parys the whiche kyng  
made knyght, and after he sente him  
to reple a lyege afore Coleyne that a

Sarasyne had besyged that was cal-  
led Escoutrawode the which Rouland  
conquered. And after theweth how  
Reynawde Wanne the Crowne of  
kyng Charlemayne, for the good re-  
nyng that his horse Bayarde made  
at Parys.

. Capi. bii. fol.



**N**ow theweth the history that  
Charlemayne was at Parys  
and came to hym a deuocyon for to  
go in pylgrymage to saynte James  
in Galice. And so he departed out of  
Parys and toke in hys companye  
Ogier the dane and the duke Ray-  
mes of Baupere and many other ba-  
rons and great lordes. Whan they  
were vpon theyr waye: they dyd so  
muche by theyr Iurneyes y they cam  
to saynt James in Galice. And whā  
they were arryued there: The kyng

went streyght to the churche and of-  
fred afore the auter. x. marke of fyne  
Golde. And whan he had offred and  
doone his deuocyon: he toke on hys  
waye agayne and came with hys fe-  
lauship to Bordeus. And in his  
cominge thither: he looked ouer the  
riuer of gironde not ferre thence, and  
saw the castel of Mountauban that  
was vpon a roche so fayre & so wel  
made and so well shette with fayre  
walles and thycke in the forme as I  
haue tolde you afore. And whā that  
Charle-

Charlemayne sawe it, he behelde it well a longe whyle and than sayd. A good lord ponder is a fayre castell strong and wel set. I see well that the kyng Pon hath made it of lare, for it semeth yet to be all newe, and it can be none otherwysse syth that he hath buylded it in suche a strong place, but that he thynketh to make warre to some body. And than he called to hym a knight of the lond and sayd to hym tell me howe ye call that castel. Syr sayd the knyght the name is Mowntawoban. He had great lust to speake, for yf he had kept his peace: there had been none other thynge of it, but he had suche woordes that afterward bare great harme to hym selfe, and to manye other. For he tolde Thempour that Reynaude and his brethren the sonnes of Aymon had doo make the castell, & was called Mowntawoban. And how that the kyng Pon had geuen to Reynaude his syster to his wife.

**W**han Charlemayne vnderstode these wordes: he was ryght angry for it and worthe. And wyll not what he should saye, and heide hym self a great whyle that he spake not, and whan he had mused a lytle, he sayde to his folke, saye lordes I shall tell you a wonder. For I haue founde myne enemyes in this lond, that ben the four sonnes of Aymon. Now yf Ogger and you duke Raymes, lyght on horsebacke incontynent, and seke so muche kyng Pon that ye fynde hym, and tell hym in my behalfe that he yelde to me againe the four sonnes of Aymon that be mine

enemyes them whiche he hath wythdrawen and bozte out agaynst me. And that he fynde me knyghtes for to byrre them onely in to my lond for I am delibered syth that I haue founde them: for to hange them or slep them: quicke. And yf he wyll not doo so: desyre you hym on my behalfe. And tell hym that wythin this thre or four monethes I shall be with in his land of Gascoygne wyth all my hoste, and I shall distroy and ouerthrowe all his towncs and castelles, and yf I maye take hym: I shall punyshe hym wythout any mercy. Syr sayd Ogger we shall doo youre commaundement, but we shall take wylsh vs sances and hostes the whiche been prue and sage, and Charlemaine said that he was content and incontynent they went on theyr way. And wente aboute to vnderstande where kyng Pon was. And so long they asked after hym that they founde hym at Mowntawoban euen at the foote of the roche. For the kyng Pon went agayne to Bourdetos and Reynaude conueryed hym. Whan Ogger sawe Reynaude and the kyng Pon: he knewe them well. And incontynent he salued the kyng, and sayde to him. Syr god grue you good lyfe and longe. And the kyng rendred to hym his salute, and after sayde to him. Of whence be you: syr sayde Ogger. We been of the sweet Fraunce. And also we be sente vnto you. And we are of Charlemaynes folke, now heare vs if it please you. Syr said the kyng ye be ryght welcome. Nowe tell on what ye wyll saye. Syr sayd Ogger, Thempour Charlemayne

J. l. sendeth



he booke of the foure

sendeth to you worde by vs that ye  
yelde agayne vnto hym his enemyes  
the whiche ye haue withdrawn in to  
poure landes and ye sende to hym an  
hundrede of your men for to conduyte  
and byynge thern wch hym vnto  
fraunce. And yf ye refuse to doo this:  
We by his commaundement desyre  
you of his behalfe. And within these  
iii. monethes he shall be in Gascoigne  
and shall take all your landes and  
shall be syege you wch in the cite of  
Bordeux. And yf he take you: he shal  
punyshe you in your body. Now haue  
we sayde our message, and yf it please  
you ye shall gyue vs an answer.

**O** yet sayde the kynge, it is well  
trowche that I haue receyved  
the foure sonnes of Armon, whiche  
bene worthye knyghtes, and so haue  
I receyved theym because they bene  
prue and valiaunt in armes, and also  
that they haue holpe and socoured me  
at my great need. For I was disheri-  
ted and vndoone for euer, if they had  
not bene. And for the greete good that  
they haue done to me: I haue gyuen  
my syster Germaine to Reynaude  
for his wyfe. And therfore I shoulde  
be to cruell and eke well mischaunt if  
I shoulde now take them into the han-  
des of their enemyes mortall sych, that  
they haue doone to me so good scruple  
I haue leue to be dysherited and dye  
an euill deach than to yelde them or  
suffre that they haue anye harme nor  
shame to my power. For namely the  
kynge Charlemaigne shoulde than hol-  
de me for a foole & wel nyce. And ther-  
fore O yet yf it please you ye shall

tell the Emperoure from my behalfe  
that I shall for sake fyrst all my lon-  
de and my realme than I shoulde de-  
liuer them in his handes. And chys  
is my answer.

**T**han when the king had sayd  
thus: Reynaude spake afeer  
and sayde. O gret I meruayll greatly  
of the kynge Charlemaigne that will  
not leaue vs in peace. He cast vs out  
of fraunce poore & disherited wherof  
I am ashamed, & as ye knowe I wol-  
de be reformed wch reason to the say-  
enge of his barons, but it pleaseth hym  
not. And so he casted vs out of Moun-  
tainforde shamefully, so that we wist  
not where we shoulde goe. And yet is  
suffyseth hym not, but he wyll caste  
vs out of p londe of Gascoigne wher-  
of he dooth great synne. For yet am  
I redy for to doo his wyll in reason &  
ryght. And I tell you well that yf he  
refuse this by his pryde: I wyll well  
that he knowe that I and my byethens  
are not suche that shall be taken as  
lyghtly as he weeneth. And I promys-  
se you that or euer he hath vs: I shall  
make hym more than .x. tymes angrie  
and wroth. For this that he dothe,  
he dothe it but of pryde. O yet I wyll  
well that kynge Charlemaigne knowe  
p the king yon of Gascoigne hath gy-  
uen to vs leue to bulde a Castel that  
hath to name. Mouncauban, the whi-  
che is strong and imprenable, & yet I  
haue knyghtes wch me that shall not  
fayle me at my need, and tell so kinge  
Charlemaigne that sych I cannot haue  
no peace nor accorde wch hi: p I shal  
doo to hym all the domage and harme  
that shal be to me possyble for to doo.

Reinaud

**B**eynawde (said Ogier) ye speake not wysely, weene ye to abashe vs with wordes: ye shal not so, but whā ye shall see the hoste and the great power of Charlemayne together ye shal be soze abashed, and at the ende ye shall be full worthe and soze, ye knowe well that the Emperour Charlemayne made you knight, and ye slewe his freewe Berthelot, and therfore think not to finde peace toward him, and ye weene to be assured bycause the kyng yon hath made you to close a Castell, but well I wil that he knowe that he shall repence for it full soze. For afoze two monethes be past: we shall be in the middes of his lande, and shall destroy all his Realme, and we shall byenne bothe Castellles and towncs. Ogier saide Beynawde I swore to you vpon my fayth that whan king Charlemayne shall be with his hoste in to this land: he shall wil the hym selfe soone againe in France with his folke. And whan he shall see the hard Justyng and Harpe warre that I and my brethren shall make against him: he and ye shall be soze abashed of it, and some of you speaketh nowe hye, that whan the deed shall come to pofe: he shall be full lowe. Beynawde (sayde than Ogier) I will hyde nothyng from you. The kyng Charlemayne hath so great a power and is delibered for to besiege Bordewes, and if he maye take you he shall punyshe you cruelly, nowe doo as ye will. I haue tolde you al my message, and I goo againe to kyng Charlemayne. Whan he had sayde these wordes: he returned toward king Charlemayne and shewed

unto hym what kinge yon and Beynawde had saide. And whan the king vnderstoode the same: heooke all for anger & saide, now shall it be seen how king yon and Beynawde shall defende Gascoigne against me, & than went forth Charlemayne and passed the ryuer of Gyzonde, & rode so longe that he came to Barys, and the daye after he called al his barons that thei should come to him. And whan thei were all come: the kyng helde his counsell and saide to them. Lordes I haue sent for you to tell you the grea shame that the kinge yon of Gascoigne doeth to me. For he holdeth the foure sonnes of Aymon my mortall enemies in dispyre of me, & ye knowe what damage they haue doone to me. For they slewe my newew Berthelot. I dyd banishe them out of France, than made thei the castell of Mountcaynforde within my land, and I chased them out of it. Howe been they in Gascoigne with the kyng yon that saith he shall defend them against me, and he hath geuen his sister to Beynawde, wherefore I praye you all that ye will helpe me that I be auenged.

**A**nd whā Charlemayne had said this: there was none of the barons that answered to him any worde, for they were wery of the warre that they had made so long against Beynawde. And Charlemayne sawe that no bodye answered to him nothyng: he called to him the Duke Raimes and Ogier the Dane and the Erle Guydellon, and saide to them. Lordes what counsell doo you geue



The booke of the foure

goue to me in this matter. Syr sayde the Duke Raymes, yf ye Wyl beleue me I shall goue you good counseyl. Suffre your hoste to restechys spue peres, bycause that your folke is wery of the warre, so shall they reste them selfe a lyell. And whan they shall be fressher than shal ye now make warre at your Wyl, for euery manne shall than come to it with good wyl. And whan the Emperoure vnderstoode this counseyl: he was sore an angred for it that he wente almoste oure of hys witte, and as he wold haue sayde a peny the duke Raymes: there came a ponge genyelman of greare beautye, and brought in his company xxx. faire squiers well arrayed, this pongelynge came to the palays and went vp, and whan he came afore the Emperour he made hys obaysaunce to hym full curtesye, freend sayde the kynge ye be ryght welcome, what wynde brought you hither and what be you? syr sayde the squier. I am called Rowlande of brerayne and I am the sonne of your sister and of the duke of Wyllon.

**T**han whan Charlemayne vnderstoode Rowlande speake thus: he was right glad of him and tooke him by the hand and kissed him many times, & sayd to him, ye be right welcome. I wil that ye be made a knyghte to morowe in the mornynge & ye shall assaye your selfe vpon Reynaude the sonne of Armon. Syr sayde Rowland I shall do your commaundement and I promysse you Reynaude shall not be spared of me, and he shal not bere awaye nethinge of yours. He slewe my cosyn Berthelot wherof I am ryghte

sory, and therefore I shall auenge hys deach yf I may by any maner, o: elles Reynaude shall slea me. And in the mornynge the kynge Charlemayne dowbed hys neuwe Rowlande to a knyghte with muche Joye and with great honour, & as the feast was a dawninge: there came a messenger that said to the Emperoure. Moste hye & moste pynsaunce prince, your menne of Coloyne recomende them righte humbly to your good grace, & they doo you to wote that the Sarasens haue besyged them, and haue hurtte them ryghte sore. For they haue brent and destroyed all the country. Wherefore they beseeche you ryghte humbly that ye come for to helpe & socoure them if it be your pleasure, o: elles they are but dead, and utterly destroyed.

**A**nd whan the Emperoure vnderstood these rydynge: he bowed his head toward the erth, and beganne to thinke a lyell. And whan Rowlande saw his vncle that mused thus in him selfe: he said to him, wherof be ye so dismayed. Geue me some parte of your menne. And I shall goe reyle the spege of Colcyne. And whan the Emperour heard Rowland speake soo: he was ryghte gladde of it, and embraced and kyssed hym full sweetlye and sayde to him, saye neuwe blessed bee the houre that euer ye were borne. For I knowe for certayne that ye shall keep me from payne and trauayle, and in you shall be my reste and my comforte. And I Wyl that ye goe there. And than he gaue hym twenty thousand men of armes well horsed and well arrayed. And whan they

they were wel apparelled, Rowland  
lyghed vpon his horse and sayde to  
hys vncle the kinge. Sir I comende  
you to god. Fayre newe said Char-  
lemaigne I haue taken to you my me  
in your keeping, I praye you that ye  
will keep them well, & do so muche  
that ye get worship, & god be with  
you. Sir said Rowlande be not dis-  
maied, for at my retourne (if it please  
god) ye shal know how that we haue  
doe. And whan he had saide this  
worde: he tooke leaue of his vncle &  
went on his waye with his folke, &  
they rode so longe by their iourneys  
that they came to Coloune all by ni-  
ghte, & put their busshement nyghe  
their hoste, & as they were nyghe the  
hoste: they met with certeine sarasins  
that came againe with a great prae  
of oxen and sheep and of men & wo-  
men that were their prysoners, and  
made them suffre great hartynesse

**W**han the frenshemen sawe their  
enemies: they saide in this ma-  
ner, lordes oure lord hath sente vs  
hyder. Heere bene the traytours sa-  
rasyns, that so sore we haue desired  
for to fight with them. Now shall  
it be seene what we shal do with the:  
put vs amonge the, for at this hou-  
re they shall be ouerthrowen, whan  
they had spoken ynough: they made  
none other tarynge, but spurred  
their horses and ran vpon the sa-  
rasyns by great strengthe, so that in a  
lyle whyle they had them dyscomfi-  
ted so sharpe that they slew them  
all, and recovered all the prysoners  
& the bestes. ¶ And shortly to speake  
whan the hoste of the painimes hea-

rdethenise of the frenshemen: they  
moued theim selfe, & lyghed vpon  
their horses, & vpon the frenshemen  
And whan the frenshemen sawe the  
come: they went agayne to their bus-  
shement as well as they could, and  
beganne to chase them.

**A**nd whan Rowlande sawe  
that it was time to set vpon:  
he pursued once of his embusshment  
with his folke, and went and smore  
vpon the sarasyns so harde that he  
casted to the earthe a grete part of  
theim. And to speake shortly: the ba-  
tyle began so cruell & so fell that it  
was pitie to see. For ye shoulde haue  
seene so many speares broken, & so  
many sheldes in two, & so many sa-  
rasyns lying dead on the ground: so  
that with paine men might goe by  
for the deade men that laye so thicke  
one vpon thother, & Rowlande spur-  
red his horse with the spurres & tooke  
& smore a sarasin that was a kynge  
& the chiefe of the sarasyns hoste with  
so great mighte that he ouerthrewe  
him to the erthe, but he slew hym not  
of that stroke, but carped vpon hym  
and gaue to him suche a stroke with  
his swearde vpon his helme that he  
made him all astonied. And whan  
Rowlande sawe hym also cURLARAD-  
ed: he bowd hymselfe & tooke hym  
for his prysoner, and dyssette hym  
againe vpon his horse & brought him  
with hym. And whan the sarasyns  
sawe their lord taken and sawe the  
woundes of armes that Rowland  
made and of the frenshemenne: they  
put theimselfe to flyghe full shame-  
fully. And whan Rowlande sawe the



## The booke of the foure

Saralins fleethus: he cried wpeha  
hyghe voice. Lordes goe after cheym  
for they flee al, and if they scape vs: it  
shal be to vs a greace blame towarde  
myne vncle the kyng Charlemaigne,  
and we shal be holden for cowardes,  
wherfore I pray you lette not one es-  
cape, for ye shal haue cheym lgh-  
lye spech that I holde in my hande  
they kyng. Whan the frenshemenne  
heard Rowland speke thus: they said  
free knight be not dysmaied of no-  
thyng, for we make no doubte that  
none of cheym shal scape, but they  
shal be taken or slayne. Lordes sayde  
than the king Saralyn that Rowland  
had taken that had to name Escor-  
fawde. They bene all mine, I praye  
you that ye kille cheym not, for they  
ben all ynough dyscomfyred, sith that  
ye haue taken me, but grue cheym  
truce, and haue me to kyng Char-  
lemayne if it please you. And if ye  
may doo so much that Charlemaigne  
pardon me the great offence that I  
haue done to him: I shal holde fro  
hence forth all myne heritage of him  
& yett all my lghnage shal be obey-  
saunce vnto his will, and of this ye  
may beleue me. By my heade sayde  
Rowlande ye speake curteously, & by  
my faith saide Raynes Escorfaude  
sayth well, and we shal doo so, they  
gaue truce to the Saralins and tooke  
their waie againe to Charlemaigne  
& brought Escorfaude with cheym  
and so long they rode that they came  
to Paris. And whan the king Char-  
lemayne knewe that his neuewe  
Rowlande was come againe to Pa-  
rys, and that he had dyscomfyred  
the Saralins and brought prisoner

with him kyng Escorfaude: he was  
right glad of it, and anon he moun-  
ted on horssebacke, and came apent  
his neuewe Rowlande. And whan  
Rowlande saw him: he lighen doun  
from his horsse, and went and kist  
hym selfe to the feet of kyng Char-  
lemayne his vncle. And anon he  
made him to rise vp, and kysed him  
sweetly: And than Rowlande said  
to him. Sir here I deliuer vnto  
you the king Escorfaude, that we  
haue taken. He hath tolde vs that  
he shal make him selfe a christen mā  
and that he & his lignage shal holde  
their landes of you, if ye will par-  
done him your pille well. Neuewe  
sayde the king Charlemaigne there  
is no trust in him, and therfore I wil  
keepe me from hym. Than com-  
maunded the emperoure that Escor-  
faude shoulde be brought to prison,  
and that he shoulde be wel kept and  
that he shoulde haue all his will of  
meate & drinke. And after whan Es-  
corfaude was put in prison: the king  
Charlemaigne byd calle to him the  
Duke Raynes and sayde to him  
whac thinke you by my neuewe Row-  
lande, what byd he whan the barayl  
was assembled. Sir sayde the Duke  
Raynes, of Rowlande nedeth not  
to speke, for neuer sith that god was  
borne, of the vyrgin Marie: suche a  
knight was not seen. For he alone  
hath ouercome the Saralins by his  
great prowes. And if he had a horsse  
that might beare him whan he were  
armed: I sweare by my faith that ye  
shoulde neuer haue enmye, but that  
he shoulde bring him to your mercy  
by force of armes. So much he

is prue and valpaunte. The kyng Charlemayn swoze by his head that he was right glad therof. But tell me sayde he to the duke Raymes: Where might menne fynde suche a good horse as ye speake of? Sir sayd the duke Raymes yf ye will beleue me: I shal geue you good counsell. Make to be cryed with a trompet vpon Mounte marty: that ye wyl see renne al the horses of your hoste, And he that shal renne best: shal win your crowne of golde, and fyue hundred marke of fine syluer, and a hundred rolles of spike. And all thus ye shal moue knowe the best horse of your realme. And whan ye shal haue seen him: by hym, and geue hym to your newewe Rowlande, and after geue leue to all your barons vnto the feast of saynt John the baptyst next commyng. Duke Raymes (said the Emperoure Charlemaine) ye geue me good counsell, & I shal doo thus as ye haue deuised. Than the kyng Charlemayne made to be cryed vpon Mounte marty: cun thus as the duke Raymes had deuised, and did make the listes for the horses to renne in. And whan this was done: he made his crowne to be sette at the ende of the listes, and also the fyue hundred marke of syluer and the hundred rolles of spike, and this hanging: a peman went to his countrey in Gascoine, and as he passed thorough Mountebat: he recomited to Reynawde and to Hawgis all the thyng that menne wolde doo at Paris. And how Rowlande was come to the court. And how he had byscomfited Escorfaude the kyng

scarsyn, and howe the kyng Charlemayne wolde haue the best horse of all his realme, for to geue hym to Rowlande, and shewed the sayd yoman the price that the kyng had set. And also howe the Emperour Charlemayne gathered his hoste for to come to Mountebat. And howe the course of þ horses shoulde be made at saint Johns time next commyng.

**A** whan whan Reynawd vnderstode this worde: he began to laugh and after he said to Hawgis, Cosyn by all halowes of god, Charlemaine shal see the best turne of the worlde, but he shal not knowe that I shal haue his crowne. For I wyl goe there vpon Baparde to see how he shal proue himselfe at this time. Sir sayd Hawgis ye shal not doo so yet, but and if ye wyl goe there suffice that I bere you companye, so shal you be more sure, & haue with vs knightes well armed. Gladly sayde Reynawde sith that ye wyl doo so whan it was time for to meue toward Paris: Reynawde called to him Blarde Gupharde, and Rycharde his bretheren and Hawgis his Cosyn and sayd vnto cheym. It is time that we goe to Paris. Take knightes chosen and put oure selfe in the waye. Sir sayde his bretheren your commaundement shall be done. And whan they were all appareyled: Reynawd came to his wyfe and sayde to her. Lady I praye you that ye doo keep wel my castel, and I shal come sone againe. Sir sayde she commaunde your knightes that they ben not oute of the waye, and I praye my selfe



## The booke of the foure

myse you if the king yon my brother came himself: he should not come in nor none other vnto the time that ye be come again. Now go god be with you. Than rooke Reynawode leue of his wife, & sette himselfe toward the maye and his folke & went to Paris. And whan they were come to Orleans, & had passed the riuer of Loire menne asaed theym of whens they were: And Watogis that spake for them all answered. Lordes we bene Bournoys that goe to Paris for to assaye our hoxses for to win the price that the kinge hath set vpon. If god Will so consente. Than by sayre wordes they passed forche & so long they rode that they came to Melyn but they entered not within the towne but lodged theym selfe in a great valley, and there they sojourned theym selfe and their hoxses foure dayes.

**T**han whan came the euen of sainte Johan: Reynawode called Watogis & saide to him. What shall we do: to morowe shall be the courttes of the hoxses wherfore I say that it is couenable that we goe lye to night at paris, cosin saide Watogis ye say wel & wisely. Nowe lette me do a litill and please you. Than rooke Watogis an herbe & stamped it wth a stone with the pomel of hys swerde, and tempered it with water and rubbed bayarde therwith so that anon he became all white in suche wise that they that had sen him before: knew him not, & after he enointed Reynawode with an oymymente that he bare alwaies with him & in continence he became to the age of

xx. yeres. And whā he had thus attuned Reynawode & his hoxse: he rooke hym & brought him afore his brethren & afore the other knightes & said to them. Lordes tel me how then ke you haue I nor wel trasfigured him: shall not they maye come againe and nor be knowen: Behold bayard how he is wexen white he shall lese the price for age.

**T**han whan the barons sawe Reynawode & bayarde so cured: they begā to laugh & were greatly merueilled how Watogys hadde thus disfigured them. Whan Watogys had trasfigured Reynawode & bayarde and himselfe also: Reynawode mounted vpon bayarde and Watogys vpon mozel, & rooke leue of thes folke. But Reynawode at his departinge sayd to his brethren, haue no fere for me. for I shall not be knowen if god will. Than wente Reynawode on his way, & his folke wepe for him, for Reynawode went in such a place where he hadde many enemies. for if Charlemayne had conne take him: al the golde of the world had not saued him, but he should haue caused him to be hanged. And whan they departed: Alarde sayd to Watogis I pray you for god that ye haue my brother Reynawode for recommeded, for if it were not for the trust that I haue to you, I should not suffer that he should go to parys for al the golde of spaine. And whan Reynawode and Watogys went on theyr waye. Now shall I leue a litill to speke of them. And shall retourne to the kyng Charlemayne that was as the

Darys With his folke.

**C**harlemaine sawe his barons  
that were all come, and than he  
called the Duke Raymes, Ogger the  
Dane, and Foulques of Nozillon  
and said to them. Lordes I praye you  
that ye take an hundred knyghtes wel  
armed and goe towarde the waye of  
Oyleaunce and beware that none goe  
by but ye knowe their names & that  
they bene well aduised, for I doubte  
me sore of Reynawde, that he shall  
come, for he wenech well him selfe to  
be ouer subtyll, and yf it came in his  
head: he should come sone hytherward  
Syr sayde the barons we shall doo  
gladly your commaundement, and if  
Reynawde be so folishe that he come  
hytherwarde: he shall not escape vs,  
but he shall be deade or taken and  
brought afoze you. And thā they rooke  
leue of Charlemayne and wente to  
make them ready nere their horyses, &  
after mounted on horsebacke With an  
hundred knyghtes well armed and  
rode the waye towarde Oyleaunce,  
and arested themselves in the myddes  
of the waye, foure myles out of Pa-  
rys (and there they were a longe while  
that no bodye passed by) and endured  
great hunger and thurst. And whan  
the duke Raymes sawe that they were  
there for nought: he sayde to Ogger.  
Syr Ogger by my saye the kynge  
Charlemayne maketh vs lyke fooles  
and holderch vs for nice and musardes  
that he maketh vs to tary heere about  
nought. Syr sayde Ogger ye saye  
trough, and God confounde me yf I  
tary any lenger. And whan they wol-  
de haue comen agayne abacke: the duke

Raymes sawe come a fatte Rey-  
nawd and Hawgys. Thā said Ray-  
mes to foulques of Nozillon, yonder  
I see comynge two menne on horse-  
backe. And whan that foulques saw  
them: he cried with an hyghe voyce,  
by my faith heere cometh Reynawd  
Nowe can he not escape by no maner,  
but he shall be hanged. By my saye  
said the Duke Raymes ye saye trough,  
for the horse y cometh afoze: is much  
lyke Baiarde the horse of Beinaude,  
yf he were of a nother coloure. Whan  
that foulques vnderstode these wo-  
des: he sette handes to his swerde and  
came a peny Reynawde ryghte nere,  
and when he was well nyghe them:  
he behelde them. And whan he sawe  
that it was not Reynawde: he was all  
abasshed and drew hym selfe abacke,  
and Reynawde and Hawgys rode  
furthe theyr wayes. And whan  
the Duke Raymes sawe that they  
came furthe he went a peny them and  
called Hawgys and sayde to hym,  
what ben ye and whether go ye? Sir  
saide Hawgys I am borne of Peron  
and my name is Jousset. Freend said  
the duke Raymes canne not tell me  
nothyng of Beinaude the sonne of  
Aymon the worthy knyght: yea saide  
Hawgis by my faith he hath ridden  
with vs two dayes, and he is not pas-  
sed two miles behind vs. At that ho-  
re Beinaude spake not, thā said Ray-  
mes what is he that is with you that  
holderch him too still and that saith  
no worde? I beleue that he hath so-  
me cull thought, sir saide Hawgis  
it is my sonne, and he can not speake  
no tressh. For he hath bene nourished  
in the greate Bzeraine. Whan the  
duke



The booke of the foure

duke Raymes vnderstoode this: he sayde to Reynawode tell me vassell knowest thou no rydynges of Reynawode the sonne of Iymon: and Reynawode answered to him in this wise. By my fayth no popur frenche graunt Bretaine horse a Paris cloyth gane rami. And counterfettered thus his language, bicause the duke Raymes should not knowe him.

**T**han whan the duke Raymes heard Reynawode speake thus encl: he began to laugh. And after saide to him againe, a hundred deuyls haue well caught thee to speake so good frenche, vassell I were not what thou sayest thou arte more lyke a foole than a bisshop. And so Raymes let him in peace. And than Reynawode and Hawgys rode so longe that they came to Parrys tyme ynough for to doo theyr enterpryse. And at the entre of the towne: they mette with an euill rybaude, vnto whome **G O D** geue yll aduerture. For he knewe Reynawode. And as soone as he sawe him: he beganne to cry with an high voice, heere commeth Reynawode the sonne of Iymon. Whan the folke vnderstoode the cry: they wente that way. And whan they rybaude sawe com so many folke: he was yet more hardye than he was afore, and wente afore the other, and tooke Reynawode by the bydle of Batarde. And whan Batarde sawe that: he listred his forefoote and smote the ribaude vpon the brest, that he brast the herte in his belly, & casted him all dead to the erthe. And whan the people sawe the stroke: they began all to laugh, and Batarde

went forth, & Hawgis after that they were not knowne: & passed through the towne to the marker. And whan they were comen there afore the lodges: they founde all the tymes full. Wherof Reynawode was maruailed. And so they lighted at a cordeners house, that was of the deuyls side. For by him was almoste Reynawode and Hawgys taken, and deluered to Charlemaine that his bretherne should not haue holpen hym of no chynge. Whan they were lyghed and lodged where it is sayde, & that their horses were well drested: Hawgys dyd doo make a bedde for Reynawode and toke a chere of folke, and sered it well and came to Batarde, and bounde hym the moles of the feet there withail well strepte. And the hoste behelde well this, and after said to him. Why haue you thus bounde this horse: he shall not conne well goe. But tel me what knyghte is he that oweth the horse: for if he had of agemoze than he hath: I should wene to knowe him. For he is muche lyke Reynawode the sonne of Iymon. Syr saide Hawgis I haue bounde this horse thus because he wyll fyght, and the pman that rydeth vpon him is my sonne. Now haue I telled you that, that ye haue asked me. Lettes answered the hoste youre sonne is a fayre schalwe, but I beleue ye mocke me. ¶ Nowe shall ye heare a greace misadventure that happed to Reynawode and also vnto Hawgys. For thus as Hawgys spake with his hoste: he named Reynawode. Whan syr sayde the hoste ye haue sayde ynough, ye need not for to hyde it any more. For it is Reynawode

uawode without any doubte that letwe  
Berthelot the newwe of the kynge  
with a chesse boorde. I shal tell it to þ  
kinge afoze that I slepe.

**A**nd whan Reynawode vnder-  
stood this: he shooke al for an-  
gre. And rose fro his place and tooke  
his swerde & saide, holte ye haue mis-  
saide. For I neuer sawe Reynawode,  
nor I wor not what he is, holde your  
peace said the hoste I knowe you well  
By my head ye are Reynawode the so-  
ne of Aymon. And whan he had saide  
these wordes: he wente oute of his  
house. And whan Reynawode saw þ:  
he wente a good pace after his hoste  
and smote him so greates a stroke with  
his swerde vpon his head that he clo-  
ue him vnto the reeth. And whan  
Hawgis sawe this, he was ryghte  
sory for it, and saide to Reynawode.  
What haue you doone: haue you losse  
your wytte: but if God thinke vpon  
vs we bene lost and shamed. I can not  
doo thet to sayd Reynawode. But how  
somewer it gothe he hath his rewar-  
de. And than Hawgis came forth-  
with to the stable and sadled Bayar-  
de. And made Reynawode to mounte  
vpon him, and after himselfe lyghted  
vpon Hozell, and went oute of the lod-  
ges. And whan the wyfe and the chil-  
dren of the hoste sawe this that Rey-  
nawode had doone: they began to crye,  
But Reynawode and Hawgis were  
soone oute of their waye, so that none  
wyste where that they were become  
and wente and put them selfe amon-  
ge the other in the pzele, and they  
were neuer knowen. But Balarde  
wente halcyng, and wente to the gate

of saynt Martyne, and there they a-  
bode all the nyght. And whan it was  
day: they wente with the other to the  
chyrche where the kinge hearde his  
masse. And whan the scruple was  
done: the kinge came oure of the chur-  
che, & mounted vpon his horse, & all  
the other barons with him and came  
vpon the riuer of Sayne in to the me-  
dowe, and Reynawode and Hawgis  
wente with them, but Bayarde went  
ryghte soze halcyng. And whan the  
kinge was come there: he comman-  
ded that his crowne shoulde be sette at  
the ende of the lyfles, and the fyue  
hundred marke of syluer, and also  
the hundred clothes of sylke, and in-  
continente the Duke Raymes and  
Ogier did as the kinge had com-  
maunded. And whan all was appa-  
railled: Thenne shoulde ye haue sene  
knyghtes leape on horsebacke. For e-  
uerie man rowed to haue gotten the  
prize, and the kinge commaunded to  
the duke Raymes and to Ogier, vnto  
Guydellon of Burgoyne and to Ry-  
charde of Normandy, that they shoulde  
take a hundred knyghtes well armed  
and that they shoulde keep well the  
feaste, that no nyse nor no stryfe  
wote there made, and that none shoulde  
wonge the other, and they byd his  
commaundement. And thenne the  
knyghtes that shoulde renue: begane  
for to beholde Reynawode that was  
mounted vpon halcyng Bayarde,  
and so they beganne for to laughe and  
scoyne with him. And sayde in Jape  
the one vnto the other, this felawe  
shal winne the prize. And the crow-  
ne of fine golde, and saide beware  
that his fore smite you not, and than  
the



the other sayde he shall wyinne the de-  
uill, and an other knyght sayd to Rey-  
nawde, ye haue wel doone. Wether kni-  
ght for to haue brought your horse  
heere, and if god destinech him: ye shal  
wyinne the pryse this day. Reynawde  
vnderstoode full well the grete wor-  
des that men said to him wherof his  
hert welled high, that if it had not  
be for doubt to haue lost the pryce: he  
wolde haue begon the strife, and ther-  
fore he helde his peace, and made no  
ther noise nor worde against it.

**W**han whan thempetoure un-  
derstoode the great wordes of  
the knyghtes sayde to Reynawde: he  
was wrothe for it, and he said so high  
that it was well heard of all. I com-  
maunde you vpon paine of my grace  
that ye saye no shame nor yll worde  
to no maner of knyght. For yf ye  
doo ye shal anger me sore. But Rey-  
nawde cared not much of that it was  
said to him. Whan the Duke Ray-  
mes and Ogger sawe that it was ty-  
me for to renne: they made to forone  
the trompettes. Then euerye man  
putted hym selfe for to renne. And  
whan Hawgis sawe that euery man  
ran: he lighed on foote and vnboun-  
de the foote of Baparde. But o: euer  
he was vnbounde: the other were wel  
sette, and whan Reynawde sawe that  
it was tyme for to renne after the o-  
ther: he spured his horse, and said to ba-  
parde, we been sette behynde ye my-  
ght wel abide. For if ye be not soone  
afoze: ye shal be blamed, whan Bap-  
arde heard his maister speake thus: he  
vnderstoode him as well as thoughe  
he had been a man. Than he grylled

his nosethiels and bare his head up  
and made a long necke, and tooke his  
course so fast that it semed the erthe  
should haue sonken vnder hym, and  
within a whyle he was passed all the  
other horses a fette wyse so that men  
coude not see him for dust that he re-  
sed. And whan thei thatooke heed to  
the courses sawe Baparde ren thus:  
they were greatly abashed with all, and  
sayde the one to the other beholde that  
wyse horse: renneth fast and lycht,  
and but late he halted soze, he is the  
best of all thother that been beere.

**A**nd whan thempetour sawe  
this: he called to him Richard  
of Rozmande, and sayde to hym,  
sawe ye euer so many good horses to-  
gether as beere ben now: but I wyse  
passeth them all, God howis he well  
like Baparde the horse of Reynawde:  
yf he had the heares of Baparde: I  
should saye that it were he hym selfe,  
and he that syteth vpon hym is also  
light and prue. Thus wyse it was  
Reynawde hath doo so muche that  
Baparde hath ouertome all the other  
horses. And whan he was at the end  
of the lyfles: he tooke the crowne and  
put it on his arme, and the spluer and  
the cloche he left alone, for he day-  
ned not to take them. And whan he  
hadde taken the crowne: he returned  
agayne towarde the kyng Charles  
maine all faire and a soft pace, whan  
the kyng sawe hym come towarde  
hym, he sayde to hym all laughyng.  
Freend abyde a lytle I praye you, for  
yf ye wyll haue my crowne ye shal  
haue it, and I shal geue you for your  
horse so grete hauoyr: that ye shal  
haue

neuer be pooze. By God sayde Reynawode these wordes shall nought auayle you, now haue I well begyled you, for I go doo marchaundise els where and I holde you for a chyld. I haue so often angred you & of youre men I haue so many slayne. I am Reynawode that beareth away your crowne, seke els where for a nother horse that ye shall giue to Rowland for to ouercome Baiard, for ye shall not haue bayarde nor also your crowne. And as soone þ he had said this he spurred bayarde wyth hys spurres and went so fast a way that it seemed that the tempest had chased hi. And whan the kynge Charlemayne vnderstode thys þ Reynawode had sayd to hym: he was wode angry for it that he wylte not what he should doo so that he myght not of a greete whyle speake a worde. And whan he had recouered his speche: he began to crye with a hye voyce, nowe after lordes after. for it is myne enemye Reynawode the sonne of Aymon. And whan the knyghtes heard thus crye the kynge Charlemayne: they spurred theyr horses with þ spurres and went after Reynawode, but their goynge auayled them nought. For Baiard was ferre from them with in a whyle so þ they wylt not where he was become, and Reynawode cam to Sayne and passed ouer it al at his ease with swymynge, for Baiarde was well wonte therto, and also he had passed it afore with moze great haste. And whā that Reynawode was thus passed the ryuer of Sayne: he lyghed from Baiarde at the banke of it. Thus hanging: the king Char

lemayne and his knyghtes that folowed after hym, came to the ryuers syde, and began to call Reynawode & sayd to hym. O a true man, soone yelde me my crowne agayne and I shall gyue thee .x. tymes as muche as it is worthe, and I shall gyue thee truste two yerres, so that thy selfe and thy brethren shall mow go in ardeyne to see your mother the which desireth sore to see you, and there is no knyght in my lande that shall say contrary to it, by god sayd Reynawode as for these wordes auayle you nothig, for ye shall neuer haue agayne your crowne. I shall sell it and shall pay my knyghtes withall, and the charboncle that thus shyneth shall be set hye vpon my pauplyon to the ende that they þ shall go to saynt James in Calyce may see it the better, and ye shall be blamed of your knyghtes that ye haue losse your crowne by the horse Baiarde, whan Charlemayn heard hym speake thus: he wylt not what he should say for angre, & kept himselfe styll like as he had ben dead. And whan Reynawode had sayde so: he mounted agayne vpon Baiarde and put hymself to the way, but not the ryght way: but rode throughe a lytle pache whiche he had passed afore tyme.

**N**ow shall I tell you of Baiards how he dyd for to come out of Barres þ was mounted vpon his horse morell. whan he wylt that Reynawode was passed Sayne: he issued out of Barres and passed the ryuer ouer the byrdege as soone as he might. And whan he was without:

k.l.

he



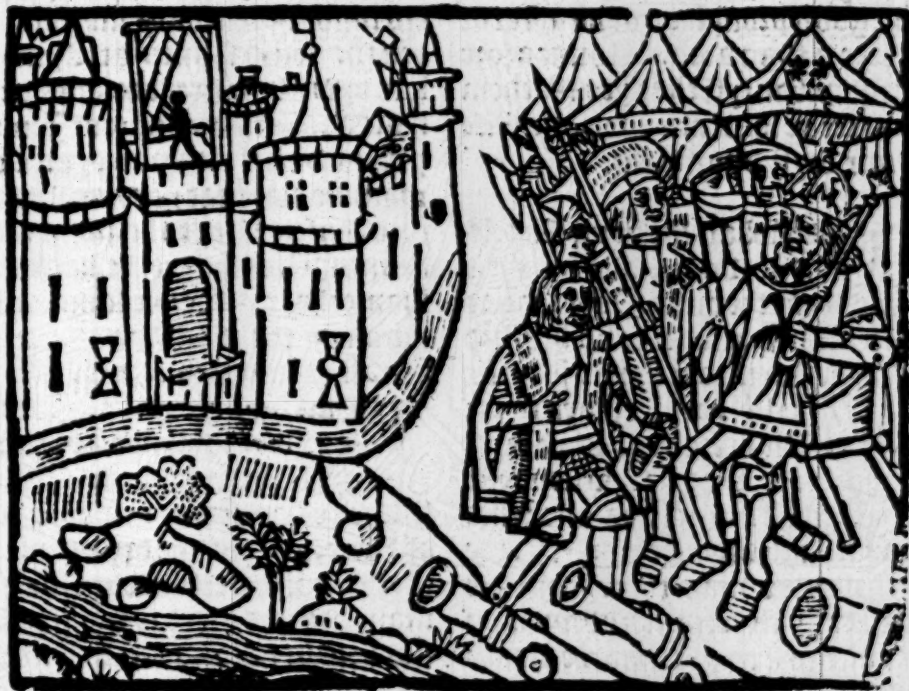
he began to looke after Reynawde & as he rode he looked a traucte and saw Reynawde, so called he after hym as hie as he could, cosyn thinke to ryde fast, for to tary heere no good shall come to vs, cosyn sayde Reynawde ye saye well and we shall doo so. And so they tooke theyr waye towarde Myllon. And whan Alarde saw his brother come and Hawgis: he sayd to his folke. Lordes we may well come out of our busshement, for I se come my brother Reynawde & Hawgis. Alas sayd Richard I see them come wyth greute haste. I fere me muche that men chace them. Now light we al on horse backe and yf they haue mytre of vs: let vs go helpe and succour them. And they answered all we ben all redy, & whan they came out of theyr busshement: there came Reynawde and Hawgis that sayd to them lordes thynke to make haste. For the longe taryenge might doo to vs harme because that I bynge wyth me the crowne of Charlemayne, the whiche Bayarde hath made me wyne by his pryde. And whan Alarde vnderstode his brother speake thus: he was so greatly in Joye that he wyte not what he should say but colled & kyssed his brother Reynawde w greute Joye. And than thicontinēt they put themselves to the waye and so longe they rode yf they came to Pleaunce and passed the ryuer of Loyze wyth all diligence, and after they made so muche by theyr Journeys: yf they came to Mouna whan whole and glad, thanked be god.

**W**han whan they were at mouna whan: the lady came thern agayn & receyued them right gladly, and made them ryght great chere and all the folke of the Castell were ryght glad of the comynge of Reynawde and of hys bytherne, and also ked him how he had doone in his viage, lordes sayd Reynawde wel god gramercy. I was knowen of myne hoste yf whych wolde have betrayed and accused me, but I solde it to him ful decre, I cloue his head to yf teth and went out of hys house by night and put vs in the pryse of the other, but ye wyll neuer folke so wel scorned as we were, for the folke of Charlemayne mocked me and Bayarde, wherof the king was angry, & thus they left me in peace. And whan the trompettes began to blowe for to be gynn yf court: they that should renne departed incontinent, and I boode behinde well the shotte of a bowe, and I tell you well for certayne, there were well twenty thousande horses. And whan I saw me behynde: I said to Bayarde that it should be great shame to hym yf he abode behynde, but god gramercy and Bayarde I ouer rann them al. And bare awaye the pryce, and of it I haue brought wyth me the crowne of yf kyng Charlemayne wherof he is ful soyy. Whan thei of Mouna whan vnderstode these wordes: they were ryght glad. But here I leaue for to speake of Reynawde and of his bytherne and retorne to speake of the king Charlemayne that was at parrys ryght soyye for hys crowne that he had losse.

**C**how

How the kyng Charlemayne woe  
into Gascoyn with his hoste. And  
how he besteged Reynawde and hys  
betherne within þe Castell of Bost-  
cawban. And how Reynawde wan

the first batayle of the king, the wher  
the Roland conuoyted a Diquet  
and the bylshop Turpin.  
Capitulum. viii.



**I**n this party sheweth þe hy-  
story that whan Reynawde  
had wonne the crowne of  
kyng Charlemayne: The  
kyng abode all wrothe and soze an-  
gred, and he called all his barons  
& sayde to them Lordes I pray you  
that ye counsell me how I shall may  
auenge me of Reynawde þe sonne of  
Aymon. For ye know how he hath  
angred me. I promise you but that I  
may haue my crowne agayne: I shall  
wer mad al quike. For my courage  
telleth me that he shall doo byke it &  
he shall put the carbuncle þis theron  
vpon his paupylon, bycause þe folke  
that goe to saynt James shall see it

to my great bytupere & shame. For  
sayd Roland þe ye wil auenge you  
well of Reynawde: go we vpon him  
and we shall exyle and destore hym  
and his lande, and þe kyng & on  
of Gascoyn may be taken: so make  
iustice of hym in suche wyse that it  
may be remembred perpetualle. Re-  
uew sayd the kyng ye saye well and  
wysely & it shall be doone as ye haue  
aduyced me. & I promise you that I  
shall neuer haue Joye till þe I be a-  
uenged at my wyll. For sayd þe duke  
Raimon leue this angre in pease, ye  
know how Reynawde is your en-  
mye & prayseth you nothings, but &  
ye wyll I shall gyde you suche cou-  
sel



The booke of the foure

Tell that Reynaude shalbe brought to destruction and his brethren and Maugys also. Syr doo that your barons be redy at candelmas nexte comyng and that eury one of them make good prouysyon of vitayle for vii. yerre, & than abyde so longe afoze mounta whan tyll that ye take them and after ye shall auenge your selfe at your wyll vpon them.

**W**han whan the kyng Charlemayne vnderstode the good counsell that the duke Raymes had gyuen vnto hym: he lyft vp his hed and sayd. Raymes it is not yf fyrste good counsell yf ye haue giuen to me and I wyll it bee doone as ye saye. And than the kyng Charlemayne byd doo make his letters and sence them thzough all his empyre. In the whiche letters was conteyned that eury man that was accustomed to beare armes & to go to warre shoulde come to hym at the feast of Candelmasse nexte folowynge well garnished of vitayle for the space of vii. yerres, for to abyde at spege afoze mounta whan. Whan yf barons knewe yf kynges wil: eury mā made him selfe redy as well as he coulde and came to Parys, and presented them to kyng Charlemayne & to hys newes Rowlande, and by cause of the great numbre of folke that were com there, they myght not lodge al with in Parys: but they lodged wythout the towne vpon the riuer of Saine. Whan the kyng saw that all his barons were come: he made them al to come before hym & sayd to them, loz des ye all knowe right well (at the

lest the mooste party of you howe I haue ouercome & subdued xi. kynges in my dayes, the whyche are all to me obeyssaunt, excepte yf kynges son of Gascoyn that hath withdraue in his lande my enemies mortall, that ben the foure sonnes of Iymon, ye know well the great dishonour thei haue doone to me, wherof I me complayne vnto you & praye you & comaunde you that ye come wyth me into Gascoyn for to helpe me that I be auenged of the greate harme and shame that these foure sonnes of Iymon doo to me, for by your othe ye ben all beholden ther vnto.

**T**han sayd the erle of Antuel, Syr we shall not goe there at this tyme. Ye know well that that we ben come out of Spayne but late, wherof we ben yet all weare. And also in this felawshyp ben many princes and barons that haue not ben yet in theyr countrey nor seen theyr wiues and children, and ye wil yf, that we go into Gascoyn vpon the kyngs son, & vpon the foure sonnes of Iymon: And I tell you that the two woundes yf I receyued in Spayne be not yet whole, and therfore we may not goe into Gascoyn at this tyme. But yf it please you ye shall doo as a good kyng and a sage, and shall shewe that ye loue your folke, for ye ought to kepe them as your selfe. Wythdraue your hoste vnto whytsonday next comyng and grue leaue to all your barons to goe to their places for to rest them a while, And whan the tyme shall be come & that your pleasure is to call theym: they shall than be all freshe and redye

dye to fulfyll your commaundement  
w<sup>th</sup> all diligence. Whan the kynge  
vnderstode these wordes: he was wro  
the and sware by saynte Denys of  
Fraunce, saying in thys maner, if I  
should be dyssheryted I shall goe  
now into Gascoyn, and I shall take  
w<sup>th</sup> me all the younge folke of my  
holste: the whiche I shall put in good  
arape honestly, and I shall gyue the  
all that they shall need, thoughe ye  
should abyde behynde as weke men  
and feynthe. So sayd the duke Ray  
mes ye say well, for thys yonge men  
shal be ryght glad for to assaye them  
selfe. Therfore wyl I doo it sayde  
kyng Charlemayne and so shall the  
kyng yon be destroyed, and whan I  
shall haue Reynawde and hys bre  
thern, and Hawgys the theete take:  
I shall departe y<sup>e</sup> lande of Gascoyne  
to these yonge knyghtes for they<sup>r</sup> he  
rytage. Whis hangyng that the king  
Charlemayne sayd these wordes: a  
tyme that longed to Reynawde was  
in thys companye that vnderstode  
all that sayde is. And whan the spy  
had heard all together well: he put  
hymself to the way, and dyt so much  
by his Journeys, y<sup>e</sup> he came to mou  
tauban, where he founde Reynawde  
hys brethern, and Hawgys. And in  
contynent that Reynawde saw him  
he demaunded of hys what rydyn  
ges byng you fro Darys and from  
the courte of kynge Charlemayne:  
My Lorde sayd the spy, w<sup>th</sup> it that  
kyng Charlemayne is greatly wro  
the w<sup>th</sup> kynge yon and agaynst you  
and agaynst your brethern, & agaynst  
Hawgys. He hath sente for all his  
subiectes in his Emppre, but none

woulde haue comen w<sup>th</sup> him into Gas  
cogne. And then he sware Saynte  
Denys y<sup>e</sup> he should come into these  
partyes, and should bynge w<sup>th</sup>  
hym none other but al yonge knygh  
tes. To the which he shall gyue all  
Gascoyne, And sayth that he shall  
besyege Moustauban, and shall doo  
to be cast downe the great towre, and  
shall set al Gascoyne in a fyre and  
flame. Than sayd Reynawde to his  
folke, be not discouraged of nothing  
for I shall see how howlande and  
Oliuer shall beare themself agaynst  
me and my brethern. And than went  
Reynawde into the halle. And found  
his brethern and Hawgys w<sup>th</sup> his  
knyghtes, and sayd to them. Lordes  
I bynge you rydynge. Now w<sup>th</sup>  
that the kyng Charlemayne cometh  
to besyege vs, and byngeth w<sup>th</sup> him  
all the p<sup>er</sup>ssaunce of Fraunce.  
Nowe let vs thynke to receyue him  
well, for he shall haue moze to doo  
than he w<sup>th</sup>eneth, brother sayd Alarde  
haue no doubte, for they shal be well  
receyued, for as longe that we shall  
lyue and shal see you ryde vpon bay  
arde: we shall not fayle yon, nor wee  
shal not be a ferde to be taken nor ill  
handed. for no man aloue is w<sup>or</sup>th  
yon, nother of goodnes nor of p<sup>ro</sup>  
wes.

**T**hys hangyng: Charlemayn  
was aduysed and thoughte  
vpon the counsell that the Duke of  
Rantuel had gyuen to him. And af  
ter he called his folke & sayd to the.  
Lordes I gyue you leue, and let you  
w<sup>th</sup> that at Easter I shall holde my  
counsell generall, and it please you.



## The booke of the foure

Now keep that ye faile not to come than well apparellid and redy, for I wolde not leaue for nothyng, but I wold goe see the kyng yon. And yf he yelde me not the foure sonnes of Aunon: I shall doo to hym with out doubt somuch shame that I shall make his berde to be cut of harde by the chynne. And also I shall take the crowne of Gascopgne from his hed and I shall make hym come a foote after me begginge his bread. And whan he had sayde these wordes: The barons tooke leaue of Charlemaigne, and wente into thei countreyes, but at thei departing: Charlemaigne sayd to them. Lordes remembre well your selfe that ye come at y terme y I haue set. For I swore vnto you that those that shall not come, a yf I euer come agayne from Gascopgne: they shall repent it full soze. Shortly to speake: Rycharde wente into his duchy of Normandye salamon into Bretayne. Godfrey into a uinion, hughe the otoc and Dyllyers into spayne, and Bretons into Aunayne. And all the other eueriche into hys owne countrey.

**W**han it was time for to come agayne to the courtte at the terme that the kyng Charlemaigne had set: euery man made hym selfe redy as well as he coulde for to come to the courtte as they were expressely charged they wold doo, fyrst came thre Rycharde of Normandye and brought wth hym manye a noble knyght, and presented hym selfe tofore the kyng Charlemaigne cun at saynt Denys. After came Sala-

mon of Bretayne, and brought wth him of hys barons a fayre company and presented hymselfe to the kyng at saynt Denys. After came Dyllyers of Spayne which brought with him well .x. thousand knyghtes wel armed, and well garnysshed of byrtales. For in all the hoste of Charlemaigne was none so well arayed as they were of all thynges. And presented hym self in this maner at saynt Denys vnto the kyng Charlemaigne. Than came Godfrey the Erie of Aunyon and brought with him all his power and a fayre company and foysen of byrtaile. And presented him and his folke to the king Charlemaigne. And after came Donthus out of Aunayne, a brought wth hym a fayre companye of men of armes. For he had wth him the of Jslande and of Armony, and wel thre thousand archers, the whych for no doubt of death wolde neuer flee fro batayle. And presented hym selfe and hys fetawship to the kyng Charlemaigne, the whiche he receyued ryght honourably. Than after came the good bylshop Turpin, and brought wth hym a fayre company and well enewred to the warre, and presented hymselfe to the kyng Charlemaigne, that was ryght glad of hys comyng, for the bylshop was a good true man. And y king Charlemaigne trusted muche to hym for his great fydeltie, and also for the great prowess that was in hym.

**A**L the great Lordes that helde thei landes of the kyng Char-

Charlemayne came to Parys & presented himselfe and they men to the kynge Charlemayne that receyued them with great Joye and was glad to see aboute hym so fayre a companye of good men of Warre, but I tel you that whan the hoste was assembled at Parys: there was so great a derty that it was great pitie, for the rasour of whete was solde for fourty shelynges and twenty pence and yf the kynge had taried there any longer, there should haue ben so greete a derty that all the small people had ben all dead for hūgre. But the king Charlemayne began for to make hys mustres, for to know how much people that he had. And whan the the mustres were made: they found that they were well xxx. thousande knyghtes that had theyr fyrst berdes besyde the olde knyghtes that were well an hundred thousand. And whā that this was doone: the Emperour Charlemayne called Rowland his neuerw afoze him and sayde to hym. Fayre neuerw I recomende to you myne hoste, and I pray you that ye wyl conduyte it by good maner. Syr sayd Rowland I shal doo therein my deuoyze after my power. Thā made to be take to hym the oryflambe, and departed out of Parys, and they did so muche by smal Journeis that they came to Blore, and than Charlemayne made to be cryed that all the bytalyers of the land should goe wyth vitayle after the hoste. And yf that they brought that were worth a peny: they should haue two for it. And whan that thys greate armye was come to Blore they passed ouer

Gyronde and wente afoze the great castell of Mounta whan. And they lodged themselves there rounde about the place. And then the frenche men began to say the one to the other, by myne othe there is a fayre castell and a storenge and but yf wee get some other parte, heere shal we wyne but a lytle.

**A**nd whan the batayles were ordeyned rounde about mounta whan: Rowland began for to say to the kynge Charlemayne. Syr me semeth that wee should nowe gyue a sawte to Mounta whan. And the kynge answered, I wyl not that my folke haue any dommage, but fyrste I wyl knowe yf the castell wil holde or yelde vp. For yf he wyl be gyuen vp: I wolde not that anye batayle should be doone to it. And than incontinent he sent a knyght mounted vpon a mewe all vnarmed, the whiche came vnto the gate of the castell, and whan they kept the gate sawe that it was a messenger: they opened to hym the gate, and the knyght entred into the castell. And as he was come in, he found the steward with an hundred men that wente aboute visitynge the watches and the wardes. Incontinent the knyght salued hym, and the steward rendred hym agayne hys salute and sayd to him. What be ye Gentyll man, and what seke you heere wythin? I pray you tell me what folke are yonder wythout so fayre a company. Syr sayde the knyght they ben the folke of the Emperour Charlemayne that is come for to besyge the Castell of Mounta whan.



## The booke of the four

Mounta Wban, and I am one of his knyghtes that am come heere for to speake with Reynawde from þe king Charlemayne. Than the steward tooke the knyght by the hande and led him before Reynawde the sonne of Irmou. And whan þe knyght saw Reynawde: he made reuerence to him and after sayd to hym, Reynawde þe Emperour Charlemayne sendeth to you worde by me, that yf you wyl yelde your selfe to hys mercy, & giue to hym your brother Richard to doo his wyll of hym: he shall haue mercy of you. And yf ye wyl not doo so: he shall doo sawte your Castell, and yf he maye take you by force: he shall make you for to be hanged, or dye a cruell death.

**W**han whā Reynawde vnder-  
stode these tydyngeþ þe Char-  
lemayne sente to hym: he began for  
to smile and sayd. Freende go tel the  
kyng that I am not the man þe shall  
doo any treaso. For if I should doo  
it, he him self should blame me for it.  
But and yf it please hym, my bre-  
therne. Ma Wgys and my self ben at  
his commaundement, and we shall  
gyue our selfe to hym as to our so-  
uerayne Lorde, our lyues saue and  
our membres, and we shall yelde to  
hym the Castell at at hys wyll. And  
tell the kyng that he shall doo well  
and wyllyngly to take such fyue knygh-  
tes as we ben. And yf Charlemayne  
refuseth this: I haue myne hope so  
fast to our Lorde god that wee shall  
not let moche by the kyng, nor of  
his great hoste. The messenger vn-  
derstode well the answer that Rey-

naude had doone to hym: and in con-  
tynent he resourued to Charlemayne  
and shewed to hym all þe Reynawde  
had sayd worde by worde. Whan the  
Emperour vnderstode the wordes  
of Reynawde: he began for to thynke  
a good wyse, for he knew that Rey-  
naude sayde out wyll. And than he  
sent for the Duke Raymes and O-  
gier the Dine and sayd vnto them.  
Lordes, Reynawde sedeth me worde  
that he shall doo nothyng after my  
wyll. And for this cause I wyl that  
the castell be assayled forthwith. Sir  
sayd the duke Raymes me semeth  
as I haue vnderstande þe Reynawde  
offreth to you saye, and yf ye wyl  
beloue me: ye shall take hym to mer-  
cy wryth hys brethren. For ye knowe  
well that they be folke that may doo  
to you good seruyce. And yf Rey-  
naude be once in peace with you: ye  
shall be the better beloued and more  
died therfore. But sith that your wil  
cannot accorde to the same: we maye  
not doo therto. To assaile the castell  
I counsel it not. For ye see that the  
Castell is fayre and ryght stronge,  
and Reynawde hath whym a good  
company of good men, and he and  
his brethren, & Ma Wgys ben suche  
knyghtes as ye knowe, yf ye doo  
assayle the castell: they shall yssue out  
at the fauce posternes, and shall doo  
to you so great a domage of your  
folke þe ye shall be wrothe for it, but  
and yf ye wyl beleue my counsell: ye  
shall besyge the Castell so nyghe  
that no man shal not come out nor  
entre in but he shal be take, and thus  
ye shall now haue the Castell by fa-  
mishyng. For by no sawte ye shall  
not

not haue it.

**C**harlemayne vnderstode well these wordes and knew well that the duke Raymes spake wel & wysely and sayd to hym. I wil that it be doonethus as ye haue deuysed it. And thā he made crye through his hoste þe euery man should lodge hymself euyn nyght by the Castell, and he himselfe commaunded that his pavillion should be pight as nyght the gate as coude be doone. After thys was cryed ye should haue seen wyth in a litle whyle moe than ten thousand pavillions rounde aboute the Castell of Mountauban. Whan the hoste was al lodged: Rowlande departed out of the hoste well with two thousand knyghtes wel armed & wel horsed and all yonge men of prymerberde, whiche were very frenshe born of the douce fraunce, and went at þe other side of Mountauban, in a place whiche is called Balancon where was a riuer great and deape, in the whych was fishe ynough, and there he dyd pytche his pavillion. And so full he was of great pryde: that he had set the dragon aboue vpon hys pavillion, and did doo make the lordis of his felawes rōde about him. And they were in suche a grounde where as they myght see from thens the Woodes and the Ryuers and all the countrey, and Mountauban that was vpon the great roche well closed, & behelde the two great ryuers, that is to witte Gyrond and Dordone, that enuyronned Mountauban.

**R**owlande sawe the place so stronge that he meruaylled greatly, & sayd to hys folke. Lordes I meruayle me soze of thys castell, & I meruayle not yf the four sonnes of Iymō make warre agaynst mine vncle Charlemayne sythe that they haue so good and so stronge a place, for to withdrow theym selfe. For I promyse you that Mountauban shal neuer be taken of vs, ye say not well sayd Dlyuer. For we tooke well by force Lesonne, & also we ouerthrew downe the great towre and the dungeon of Sernoble, wherof I saye þe we shall well haue Mountauban, And yf Reynaude and his brytherne come not and yelde them selfe: they shalbe in daunger of death. I promyse you sayde Rowlande that they shall doo nothyng of that ye saye. For I promyse you that the gentil Reynaude shall make vs so soze & ferde that the moste hardy wolde be at Barrys. Reynaude is prue and coragious, and his bryther in lyke wise, and also they haue within þe castell many noble and worthy knyghtes. wherfore I say and I am of opinion, that as lōge as they haue vntayle they shall neuer be taken. Whā þe pavillion of Rowlande was dycted and pight by: Rowlande behelde the riuer and saw that it was full of byrdes, than he sayd to the Byschop Turpyn and to the other Barons, See howe we are lodged in a good place. Let vs goe in these Ryuers to let flee our fawcons. Syr sayde the Byschoppe Turpin, goe in the name of God. Then lyghted Rowlande on horsebacke and tooke with him



## The booke of the four

hym wel. xxx. knightes, and no mo.  
And they tooke their hawkes, & rode  
the moſte parte of them vpon mu-  
les all vnarmed ſaue they: ſwerdes  
and came and ſpoiled them alonge  
the ryuer ſpde, & tooke many byrdes  
vpon the water, in ſo great quantitie  
that they laded a hoſe wythall, the  
biſſhop Turpyn and Ogger, wente  
not there but abode behynde for to  
keepe the hoſte, and they were before ſ-  
tentres where they made two auncient  
knightes to recoſute and tel how  
the great Troy was taken and de-  
ſtroyed, this hangyng was a ſpye in  
the hoſte of king Charlemaine, that  
longed vnto reynawde, the whyche  
he had ſent there for to know what  
they wrought, and howe they dyd &  
all the fayte of Rowlande, and inco-  
rincit the ſpye departed out of the  
hoſte and wente to Reynawde, and  
ſhewed to hym how Rowlande and  
Olyuer were gone to ſportynge w-  
they: hawkes vpon the ryuer, and  
wyth them thyrtye of the beſt of the  
hoſte.

**W**han the ſpye had recoun-  
ted theſe thynges to Rey-  
nawde, he was of it ryght  
glad. Than he called his brethern &  
Hawgys his colyn, & tolde them  
how Rowlande and Olyuer and. xxx.  
of the beſte barons of Charlemayne  
were gone to hawking vpon the ry-  
uers in the plaine of Balancō. what  
oug- it we to doo ſayd Reynawde:  
Colyn ſayd Hawgys we may well  
kill the if we wyll, for they ben well  
proude & colyde, remēbre ye not wel  
that a meſſager tolde you a moneth

a goe that Charlemayne had left all  
olde knightes of his Realme, & had  
taken of the yonge, & that he had de-  
parted all Gaſcopne to the yonge bi-  
chellers of Fraunce: And by this bo-  
tan Rowlande & Olyuer ben moun-  
ted into ſo great pyrde that they trou-  
in al the worlde is no man that dare  
aſſaile them nor looke vpon them an-  
grely. But and yf ye wyl beleue me:  
I ſhall tell you ſuche a thyng, that  
ſhal make them wrothe & ſozy. And  
thā reynawde made ſo wne his hoſne  
ſ which mē neuer herde ſoloned but  
ſ it was need, ſo: whan men hearde  
it: euery man ran to his armes for  
to arme hym. And incontynent Rey-  
nawde and his bretherne, and Haw-  
gys made themſelfe to be armed.  
And whan they were al armed and  
well apparellled: Reynawde lyghted  
vpon Baparde his good hoſe, and  
ſpurred hym wyth hys ſpurrer, ſo  
that he made hym to lepe wel thyrty  
foote of length. Ha good hoſe ſayd  
Reynawde: how ye make your ſelfe  
to be beloued. And how wel I miſtre  
you this dai. Let vs go aſſaile theſe  
vnhappy folke of the kyng Charle-  
mayne of Fraunce, and make we by  
ſuche a maner that we need not re-  
tourne t wyle, and therof I praye  
you all.

**A**nd whan Reynawde ſayde  
that his folke was wel appa-  
relled, he wente out with his men at  
a falle poſterne, that they of the  
hoſte coulde not ſee them. And they  
were wel in his cōpany about foure  
thouſand well hoſed and well ar-  
med, And a foſter conduyted them  
through

throughe the thickest of the forest, & Reynaude sayd to the foster, byng me thou into the hoste of Rowland Without fayle, the foster answered to hym that he wolde doo it gladly. Than brought he them streyght to Balancon. And whan Reynaude sawe the pauplyons: he shewed them to his folke, to whome he sayde, be holde what fayre gayne wee haue founde herre yf wee dare set vpon them. Syr sayd his men, let vs goe to it hardelye, for we durste well as sayle the deuyll, whan ye be with vs. **N**ow we shall I tell you of the byshop Turpin that was abid to keep the hoste, wherof he had great feare bycause he wylt well agaynst whome he had a doo, and had a great suspicion and heaued vp hys head, & saw the Bauens & the Barres flee about vpon the forestesse. And from thens they tooke theyr flyght ouer Rowlandes paullion. And made great noise. And so was he aferde, for he wende that it had be some euill token, and he behelde towarde the woodes that were great, and saw anon hys enemyes, wherof he was sore afrayde yf almoste he was besyde hymselfe. Than he called Ogier the Dane and sayd to hym, free knyght for goddes loue goe arme your selfe, and let our folke be armed, for herre comen our enemyes. Now ben well Rowlande and Olyuer gone for nought that are gone to the chase and haue left the hoste thus in great daunger. I beleue that thei shal not fayle but they shal repente it sore. Whan Ogier hearde Turpyn speake in thys maner: he was very sore anged, so went he

in his pauplyon and made hym to be armed incontynent for to moue the hoste. And whan that the frenche men hearde the trumpettes blowes: they put themself in ordenaunce nobly. Thys hanging: Ogier was armed and mounted vpon hys horse Bayforde, and founde that a great parte of them was armed and al readye. Than Ogier said to them Lordes thynke to defende you well, for we ben assayled.

**R**eynaude was abashed whan he sawe the hoste that moued so: and sayde vnto hys folke, Lordes we ben dyscouered, but yet neuertheless let vs go to it and assaile them: they answered that they were all ready for to doo so. And whan that Reynaude vnderstode these wordes: he sayde vnto Hawgys. Fayre Colyn take a thousande knyghtes, and abide herre within this wood. And if yce see that we need of moze helpe: come than and succoure vs. Gladly sayde Hawgys your commaundement shalbe doone. And whan that Reynaude had sayde so: he spurred Bayarde with his spurres, & wente into the hoste, & passed the playne of Balancon, & the fyrst that he recoiured it was Emery the erle of Picol, and smote hym so that he shoued his speare throughe the bodye of him and fell dead to the erth. Then sayd Reynaude ye shal abyde yf bargayne. false Glotton, ye dyd a grete folye whan ye came cuer into Gascoygne. And whan that he had sayde thus: he set hys hande to his swerde. And began for to make so great occyspon  
of



## The booke of the foure

of knightes that none can tel it. And whan Reynawde saw his enemyes so strongly abashed: he began for to say, where is Rowlande and Oliver that so sore hath threatened me and my folke, and saying that we be traytours: But and they saye so afore me: I should shew to them that they say not well nor trowth. Whan the bisshop Turpyn vnderstode this that Reynawde sayde: he sayde to Reynawde, ye nother saye well nor trowth, and thā he spurred his horse with the spures, and went agaynst Reynawde, and gaue eche other so great strokes throughe theyr sheeldes that they brake bothe theyr spers all in peces. But neyther of them fell downe. And whan Reynawde had broken his spere: he set his hande to his swerde and gaue so great a stroke with it to the Bisshop Turpyn vpon his helme that he made bothe the mā and the horse to relesore. And whan Reynawde saw þe bisshop in þe plight he sayd to him, father be ye the same Turpyn that prayseth your selfe so sore: By my faith we semeth it were better for you to be in some churche to synge some masse then for to be heere, wening to greue me.

**W**han whan the bisshop Turpyn vnderstode the reproche that Reynawde made to hym: he troved well to haue gone oute of his mynde for it. And set handes to his swerde, and went vpon Reynawde. And then was the holte moued of one partye and of the other. Shortly to speke: there were so many spers broken, so many a knyght ouerthrowen

and so many horses dead: that it was great pitie for to see. There was Ogier the Dane that had his shield afore his breast, and his swerde in his hand and sat vpon Bayforde the which smote Rycharde the brother of Reynawde so great a stroke: that his horse fell downe to the erth. Whā Rycharde sawe hym selfe a ground: he rose vp agayne quickly as a knyght prue and valyaunt. And tooke his swerde in his hande, and Ogier passed beyonde for to follow his course and began to crye the baner saynt Denis. Whā Reynawde saw his brother Rycharde cast on ground: he was wrothe for it. So spurred he his horse Bayarde, and went agayne Ogier the Dane, and Ogier agaynst him. And gaue eche other great strokes vpon theyr sheeldes. Reynawde smore Ogier by so great force that the horses gyth nor þe peytrell myght not help. But that Ogier muste falle downe saddle and all to the grounde.

**W**han Reynawde saw Ogier at the erth: he tooke Bayforde by the bydle, and sayde to Ogier, ye haue doone euill for to haue caste downe my brother afore me, ye knowe that ye be of my lignage and my cosyn nygh, ye should helpe and defende vs agaynst all men. And ye doo worse than the other, wherof I say it is no dede of a cosyn but of an enemy, neuer thelesse take your horse agayne vpon suche condicion that ye shall doo to me a pleasure at a nother time if I haue need, the which thinge God forbede, cosyn sayde Ogier ye speake as a good mā, and promise

promise you that ye shalpe of this, that ye saye: punysshme for it, Reynawode peclved him agayne hys horse, and helde the styrop to Ogier. Whan he lyghted agayne vpon hys horse Brayford. And wyte it that Ogier sich dyd muche for Reynawode and peclved hym again vpon his reward at the roche mounthyon, wher of he was rebuked of Charlemaine shamefully. Whan Ogier was sette on his horse again: he set hand to hys swerde & entred amonge the thickest of the gascoines, & began to hew the so soze that he made them all to flee afoze him. Whan Hawgis saw that all the battaylles were thus medled togither: he cam out of the wood, and came to Balancon and put himselfe & his folke among the greatest pree and began to cleave and hew so hard heades legges and armes, that none durste abyde longe afoze him. And than the frenshmen were so soze and werpe that they myghte no more and were all dyscomfited at the passage of the ryuer, than they dyd puttherin selfe to flight, and the gascoines chased them all beating a longe mile, & after returned to the hoste, and tooke al the hauoyr that they founde there, and Hawgis came to the pavillion of Rowland and tooke the dragon of golde that was set vpon the said pavillion, and they passed through Balancon, and so returned to Mountraban with greace ioye. And whā they were come: there they disarmed them selfe & eate right wel. For they had well misther therof. Whan they hadde eaten at their ease: Reynawode made bynyng the body afoze him. And after

dealed it among his folke. And keepe to him no: one peny. Whan Reynawode had thus departed all this goodes: Hawgis went vpon the great towre of Mountraban. And dyd set the dragon of Rowland vpon the same, so that the folke of thoste of bothe sides of the castell myghte see it. And whan Charlemaine saw the dragon vpon the towre of Mountraban: he wende that Rowland his newew had taken Mountraban by force, but the thinge went wel other wise. For Reynawode and his byetherne had dyscomfited al the folke of Rowland and had broughte with them al theyr hauoyr and the dragon of the sayde Rowland they had set vpon the towre of Mountraban.

How Reynawode and his byetherne were betrayed and solde to the kinge Charlemayn by the king yon of gascon that sent them in the playne of Alcoloures all without armes but their swerdes, and were mouled vpon mules, and were cloched with mantelles of scarlet furred with ermine. Fro the whiche they escaped by the wyll of god, but they suffered muche payne and great trauayle, for they were greatly hurt and soze wounded, but of þ king Charlemains party abode there dead felques of Mountrillon and manye other barons and worthy knyghtes, wherof the kinge Charlemayn was wrothe and soyy.

Capitulum. ix.

L. i. Aoto



of knightes that none can tel it. And whan Reynawde saw his enemyes so stronglye abashed: he began for to say, where is Rowlande and Guyer that so fore hath thretened me and my folke, and saying that we be traytours: But and they saye so afore me: I should shew to them that they say not well nor trowth. Whan the bisshop Turpyn vnderstode this that Reynawde sayde: he sayde to Reynawde, ye nother saye well nor trowth, and thā he spurred his horse with the spures, and went agaynst Reynawde, and gaue eche other so great strokes throughe theyr sheeldes that they brake bothe theyr speres all in peces. But neyther of them fell downe. And whan Reynawde had broken his spere: he set his hande to his swerd and gaue so great a stroke with it to the Bisshop Turpyn vpon his helme that he made bothe the mā and the horse to rele sore. And whan Reynawde saw þe bisshop in þe plight he sayd to him, fater be ye the same Turpyn that prayseth your selfe so sore: By my faith we semeth it were better for you to be in some church to synge some masse then for to be heere, wenting to greue me.

**W**han whan the bisshop Turpyn vnderstode the reproche that Reynawde made to hym: he trowed well to haue gone oute of his mynde for it. And set handes to his swerde, and went vpon Reynawde. And then was the hoste moued of one partye and of the other. Shortly to speke: there were so many speres broken, so many a knyght ouerthrowen

and so many horses dead: that it was great pitie for to see. There was Guyer the Dane that had his merd afore his brest, and his swerde in his hand and sat vpon Bayforde the which smote Rycharde the brother of Reynawde so great a stroke: that his horse fell downe to the erth. Whā Rycharde sawe hym selfe a ground: he rose vp agayne quickly as a knyght prue and valpant. And tooke his swerde in his hande, and Ogier passed beyonde for to folow his course and began to crye the baner saynt Denis. Whā Reynawde saw his brother Rycharde cast on ground: he was wrothe for it. So spurred he his horse Bayarde, and went agayne agyer the Dane, and Ogier agaynst him. And gaue eche other great strokes vpon theyr sheeldes. Reynawde smore Ogier by so great force that the horses gyth nor þe peytrell myght not help. But that Ogier muste falle downe saddle and all to the grounde.

**W**han Reynawde saw Ogier at the erth: he tooke Bayforde by the bydle, and sayde to Ogier, ye haue doone cupill for to haue caste downe my brother afore me, ye knowe that ye be of my lignage and my cosyn myghte, ye should helpe and defende vs agaynst all men. And ye doo worse than the other, wherof I say it is no dede of a cosyn but of an enemy, neuer thelesse take your horse agayne vpon suche condicion that ye shall doo to me a pleasure at a nother tyme if I haue need, the which thinge God forbide, cosyn sayde Ogier ye speake as a good mā, and promise

promise you that ye I sayle of this, that ye saye: punysshme for it, Reynawde peclved him agayne hys horse, and helde the styrop to Ogger. Whan he lyghted agayne vpon hys horse Brayforde. And wyt it that Ogger sich dyd muche for Reynawd and peclved hym again vpon his reward at the roche mounthion, wher of he was rebuked of Charlemaine shamefully. Whan Ogger was sette on his horse again: he set hand to hys swerde & entred amonge the thickest of the gascoines, & began to hew the so sore that he made them all to flee afore him. Whan Hawgis saw that all the bartaylles were thus medled togither: he cam out of the wood, and came to Balancon and put himselfe & his folke among the greatest preece and began to cleave and hew so hard heades legges and armes, that none durste abyde longe afore him. And than the frenshmen were so sore and werpe that they myghte no more and were all dyscomfited at the passage of the ryuer, than they dyd puttherm selfe to flight, and the gascoines chased them all beating a longe mile, & after returned to the hoste, and tooke al the hauoyr that they founde there, and Hawgis came to the pavillion of Rowland and rooke the dragon of golde that was set vpon the said pavillion, and they passed through Balancon, and so returned to Mountawban with greace ioye. And whā they were come: there they disarmed them selfe & eate right wel. For they had well miste therof. Whan they hadde eaten at their ease: Reynawde made byrge the boyr afore him. And after

dealed it among his folke. And keepe to him no: one peny. Whan Reynawd had thus departed all this goodes: Hawgis went vpon the great towre of Mountawban. And dyd set the dragon of Rowland vpon the same, so that the folke of thoste of bothe sides of the castell myghte see it. And whan Charlemaine saw the dragon vpon the towre of Mountawban: he wende that Rowland his neuwe had taken Mountawban by force, but the thinge went wel other wise. For Reynawde and his byetheme had dyscomfited al the folke of Rowland and had brought with them al theyr hauoyr and the dragon of the sayde Rowland they had set vpon the towre of Mountawban.

How Reynawd and his byethern were betrayed and solde to the kinge Charlemayn by the king von of gascon that sent them in the playne of Gascoloures all without armes but their swerdes, and were moored vpon mules, and were clothed with mantelleg of scarlet furred with ermine. Fro the whiche they escaped by the wyll of god, but they suffered muche payne and great trauayle, for they were greatly hurt and sore wounded, but of þe king Charlemaings party abode there dead felquys of Moryllon and manye other barons and worthy knyghtes, wherof the kinge Charlemayn was wrothe and soyy.

Capitulum. ix.

L. i. Aoto





**N**ow must we tel of Rotoland  
and of Oliuet, that came a-  
gaine fro hawking vpon evertuers  
wyth chey felowes, and besmyng  
they were tyghte gladd that they  
hadde so well chased and taken a  
grete quantite of byrdes, and thus  
as they came againe: they met wyth  
damp Rambaule the free knyght that  
tolde them by a great angre, ye haue  
taken manye byrdes see that ye be  
good marchauntes & selle your prap  
weil. For a promyse you ye shall ne-  
uet selle your chase and hawking so  
deare as it hath coue you. And yf ye  
haue taken byrdes: I let you wote  
that Keina was a bis byrchen haue  
taken knyghtes, and hores, and  
whan ye see your dragon vpon the  
grete towre of Agnuncatwan, ye

oughte wel to be than glad & thanke  
muche therof the foure sonnes of Al-  
mon. For all tho that seen it set there  
of an heyght: they woen that ye haue  
gotten the castell by force. Whan  
Rotoland vnderstood these wordes:  
it lacked litell that he went oute of  
hys mynde, he lyghed downe from  
hys mule, and sette hymselfe vpon  
a stone, and bega to thinke and muse  
soze, and so dyd Oliuet in lyke wise,  
and whan Rotolande had thoughte  
proughe: he called to him the byshop  
Turpyn, Ogier the dane, & Richard  
of Normandye and sayd to theym.  
For god saye lordes what counsell  
goue you me vpon this deed: For I  
dare neuer more finde my selfe before  
my vnckle the kyng Charlemyne,  
for I feare me to soze of euill repoynte

And

and that menne tell of me otherwyse  
than the trouch. And he said to the  
bpyhop Turpyn. For goddes loue  
good father in god geue me leaue to  
departe, for I wolde goe into the holy  
londe to see the sepulture of our lord  
for to warre there a peny the saralins  
for sich this myshappe is thus come  
come: I wol no more beate armes a  
peny chrissten men. Syr sayde the by  
shop Turpyn, be not dysmayed for  
noching, for this is but an vsc of  
warre, suche a thyng befaller often  
to manye one, I promise you that ye  
shall haue oꝝ thre dayes been past:  
as many of the folke of Reyna Wde  
as he hath of yours. Sir said Row  
lande ye geue me good courage and  
I promise you that to your prudence  
I shall arrest my selfe. Whan Row  
lande had said these wordes: the by  
shop Turpyn & Ogier dyd so muche  
that they made him light a horseback  
and they went together all to Warde  
Charlemayn, & wit that after Row  
lande came mo than a hundred yonge  
gentilmen all a foote by cause they  
had lost their horses, and whan they  
were come to thoste of Charlemain:  
they went streyght to the paullion  
of the duke Raynes, and whan Row  
lande entred within he was ashamed  
and abode there two dayes that he  
came not out, & durste not goe to the  
courte nor loke no mā in the face but  
helde himselfe in the saide paullion  
as a man all abashed of the great so  
rowe that he had at his heart. Whan  
Rowlande & Olyuer was thus abide  
in the duke Raynes tent, this han  
gynge Turpyn came to Warde kinge  
Charlemayne in hys tente. Where

he entred within & saluted the kyng  
right honourably, and the emperour  
rendred to him his saure, and after  
sayd to him. Damp byshop ye be  
welcome. Syr said Turpyn god be  
your keeper, & I beseeche you to pardō  
me, yf I tell you any thing that shal  
displease you. Now wel harte, y said  
the king what ye wyll. For nothing  
that ye can tell, canne no: dysplease  
me. Syr sayde the byshop Turpyn,  
wyte that the foure sonnes of Aymon  
haue discomfyred vs. And haue takē  
with them al that we had in our ten  
tes, bothe horses and harneys and al  
our paullions and namely the dra  
gon of Rowlande beside a greare ma  
ny prisoners, and they haue slain the  
moste party of our folke.

**W**han whā the emperour vn  
derstode this that Turpyn  
had tolde him: he was a long while  
as a man all forcenēd. And than he  
swore saint Denys by greate angre,  
and said. Now haue ye found that ye  
went telling & the great pride that ye  
had ye haue wel found. At this hou  
re he did send through al his hoste by  
expresse wordes: that euery lord and  
baron should come incontinent afore  
him in his tence for he wolde keep  
patyament with them. Whan the  
prynces knew that commaundemēt  
of the king: ye should haue seen them  
come with greate haste to Ward the  
king, and whan they were all assem  
bled within the kinges paullion: he  
stode vpon his feete & said to theim  
in this maner. Lordes I haue sent  
for you for to the Wd vnto you that  
to vs is happed of newe. Now wit  
L.ii. that



## The booke of the four

that the four sonnes of Aymon haue discomfited all your knightes that Rowlande my neuw had with him at Balancon, wherof I am ryghte wroch and sorre, for I wolde I had lost a greater thinge, and that thys were not happed, but a thing that can not be amended: must be suffred and borne as well as men may, I requite and beseeche you all my lordes and freendes vpon the othe that ye haue made to me: that ye will counsell me truely howe I shall be ruled in thys matter, and howe I myghte haue thys Castell of Mountauban, whan the kinge had thus spoken: there was none so hardye that euer durste saye one worde but onely the Duke Raymes of Bauger the prync and wyle knyght. Syr said the Duke Raymes, ye aske counsell for to besyge Mountauban, but no manne that hath any reason in his heade: oughte not to counsell you the same, for whye the daunger is there greate because that Guynard the lord of Berne knoweth of it, and so dooth Godfrey the Lord of Dorcy that are good knightes and sore dread for theyr worthynes, and also the kinge you that is at tholouse, the whiche shall come all to helpe and succour Reinald: by cause they be of his alliance, and also they knowe that he is one of the best knightes of the worlde. And they knowe well also that Reynald gyue thes muche to doone, and so I tell you if they see themselves togyther: they shall gyue you ynoughe to doo, and shall maye beate to you a great domage. But and ye wil haue good counsell, and

beleue me: I shall gyue it to you truely. Syr sende worde to kyng you, that he withdraw not nor keep your ennemes within hys lond, but that he peeld them in to your handes for to doo with them your pleasure and your commaundement. And yf he wyll not doo so: ye shall destroye all his lond and no metey ye shall haue vpon him. Raymes saide the kyng, no we gyue you me good counsell, and I wyll that ye haue saide: be doone inconyente. Than the kyng made come an Hetaude of hys, and sayde to hym. Nowe goe lyghely to Tholouse, and tell kyng you on my behaulfe that I am entred in to Gasconne accompanied of the twelue peeres of Fraunce with an hundred thousand ryghting menne, and with Rowlande, and Olyuer, and telle hym that by saynt Denys of fraunce yf he peeld me not my ennemes, that been the four sonnes of Aymon: that I shall waste and destroye all hys lond, nor to hym shall abyde nother cytie nor Castell, but it shall be ouerthrowen to the earth. And yf I canne take hym: I shall take from him hys crowne, so shall he be called kyng ouerthrowen. Syr sayde the Hetaude your commaundement I shall doo without varyng of one word, euen as your good grace pleaseth to commaunde me, and thus departed the Hetaude from the hoste of Charlemayne, and tooke hys way towarde Tholouse, there he founde the king you of Gasconne in his palays with a right fayre company, & as sone that he sawe the king: he knewe hym well, so made he than to hym  
the

the reuerence, and said to him in the Emperours behalfe the thing worde by worde wherof he was sent there.

**A**nd whan the kyng pon vnder-  
stode the heraude that spake  
so: he bowed hys head towarde the  
earche, and began to thinke a longe  
whille, and said nor a word. And whā  
he had thus longe mused ynough:  
he said to the messāger. Goodfreend  
pe mustertay heere a scuen nyghte I  
praye you, and than I shall tell you  
my wyl, and what I purpose to doo.  
Syr: saide the heraude I shall abyde  
with a good will sych that it please  
you. Than wente the king pon in to  
hys chambze and cyght earles with  
him, and cōmaunded that the doozes  
should be well shette, and than they  
set cheimall vpon a benche. And  
whan they were al set: the kyng pon  
tooke the worde and said in this ma-  
ner. Lordes I beseeche and requyre v-  
pon the faith that ye owe to me that  
ye geue me good counsell to the ho-  
noure of me, nor as my will: but by  
reason. Nowe witte it that the kyng  
Charlemain is entred within my lōd  
with the ruelue peetes of fraunce,  
and Rowlande and Oliuet, with an  
hundred thousande men. And he sen-  
derth to me word, but if I deliuer him  
to him the four sonnes of Aimon: he  
shall not leaue me nother cite nor  
to vne, but he shall cast all to the earth  
and shall take the crown fro my head,  
and so shall I be called a kinge over-  
throwen. My father helde neuer no-  
thing of him and no more shall I, it is  
better to die with great worth: than  
to liue in great shame.

**T**han whan the king pon had  
thus spoken: there rose vp a  
knight named Godfray that was  
newe to king pon and sayd to him,  
sir I mēteyll me that ye aske coun-  
seyll for to betray suche knightes as  
ben the four sonnes of Aimon, Kei-  
nawode is your man and your carnall  
freend, ye know what good he hath  
doone to you and to your londe. It is  
not longe a goe that he dyscomfited  
Harcel the pupsaunt Sarasin and  
chased him well four mile, and smot  
of his heade and presented it to you,  
and ye haue promysed and swozne to  
him that ye shall defend and keep him  
him ayenst all menne. Mine vncle if  
ye thynke to fayle him and wil not  
holde that ye haue promised to him:  
let him and his bretherne goe out of  
your londe in to some other countrie  
to seeke theyr aduēture. And hapely  
they shall serue some lord that shall  
doo to them more good then ye wyl  
doo, and also I praye you my deare  
lord and vncle as much as I can: that  
ye wil doo nothing that turneth you  
to blame, nor to dyshonour, nor that  
can be caste by manner of reproche to-  
ward your freendes. Than spake the  
olde earle of Ansom and said. Sir ye  
wil that we giue you counsell, yf ye  
wil doo that we shall counsell you: ye  
shall doo wel for your selfe. Nowe say  
on hardely said the king that semeth  
you best to be doo, for I wyl doo as  
ye shall counsell me. Syr: sayde the  
earle ye haue wel heard saye, and so  
it was trowth, that Venesle the  
earle Lohier, wherfore Charlemaine  
sente for him and made hys head to  
be smyten of at Darys, and at that



## The booke of the four

time Reynawd and his brethren were berre yonge, and of them was no name mencyon made. And afterwarde whan they were great: the kyng wold amende it to them. For the thyng toucheth them, but they had the herte so fell that they wolde take none amendes, and lasted they hate longe, wherof euer syth hath come greace haringes and euylles. For Reynawd slewe Berthelot the neuwe of the kyng with a chesse horde, sir I know not why I shoulde hyde any thyng fro your knowlledge, ye knowe well that Charlemaine is so myghty a kyng that he neuer undertooke war, but he came to his aboue of it. Wherfore I doo geue you counseill that ye peeble Reynawd and his brethren and Hawgis to the kyng Charlemaine, and thus shall ye be deliuered of a greace thoughte, and of a greace daunger. And after this: spake the erle of Gobandes and sayde, syt ye wil doo this that the erle of Ansom counseilleth you: pee and we shall be craptours. For Reynawd is your man, and so muche ye haue loued him that ye haue giuen hym your sister to his wife. And whan he came in these marches, he came not lyke a knaue: but he came to you as a noble knyghte prue and worthye. For he brought in his felauship foute thousande men well armed and well horsed, and said to you afore vs all ozeuer he tooke of his spottes, that he had warre with the kyng Charlemaine. Neuerthelesse ye receiued him with good herte, and after made of him at your wil. And for you he conquered many batailles, & did so much

that he deliuered you from the handes of your enemyes. And therfore syt I tell you that ye be not worthye to calle your self, ne to bere the crowne vpon your herte: if for feare of deatch ye betray such knyghtes as are the four sonnes of Symon. For ye haue not yett losse nocher Castell nor town, & if ye doo it otherwise: ye shall be taken and holden for a craptoure. After spake Anthonny the olde earle & sayde to the kyng. Syt beleue not this counseill, for suche counseill he gyueth you now wherof ye shall be betrayed at the last. For I know better chentent of Reynawd than any man that is heere, ye must vnderstande sir that Reynawd was sonne to a man that had but one town, and was so proude that he dayned to serue nor obeye his lord the kyng of Fraunce but slewe Berthelot by his greace pride and outrage. Wherfore the kyng Charlemaine chased hym out of the realme of Fraunce. Nowe it is hap- ped so that he is in Gascoigne, and ye haue giuen to hym greace landes, and because he hath your syster to wife: he is become so proude that none maye dure afore hym. And he settech not a peny nocher by you nor by your courte. Wherfore I sweare to you by god head that I beare, if he may by any wise he shall take the life from you for to haue all the realme to himselfe. Wherfore I aduyse to you by rightwise counsell: that ye peeble him and his brethren to Charlemaine. And ye shall doo as a wise king, and so shall you please the greace wyche of the kyng Charlemaine of Fraunce. After spake the duke Guymarde of  
Bapon

Rayon and sayd to the kynge. Syr I tell you that the earle Anthoni lyeth falsly, and giueth you cull counseil, for Reynawde is sonne to the duke Aimon of Ardeine, which is of ryght great lygnage. And Charlemayne made to slea the duke Benes of Aygremoune their vncle by great wronge, and Reynawd tooke therof vengeance vpon Berthelot by good reason, and that more is: it was his body defendinge. Wherof I tell you that no kinge is nor woorth to beare any crowne nor to haue honour that wil do treason for chereking of a nother lord. And after spake Guyard an olde knyghte and sayde. By god Guyard I beseue that ye haue lost your wit, to counseil the kinge you for to beare our Reinaud, agens the great king Charlemain, for to make al the lond of Gascoigne for to be destroyed, wherof ye shoulde care but litell, if the realme were wasted and the king broughte to shame, so that ye had laude and praisynge. Than said Guyard thou liest falsly, and if we two were in an other place than here: I shoulde shew thee that thou were an olde doterd and a foole. For I wolde not counseil the kinge you, but al thing that concerneth his honour, and profite also of his realme.

**A**fter spake one named Sir Becot, an auncient earle & said to the king. Sir ye aske counseil of suche that can not counsell theim selfe. For it is all other wyse thanne Guymarde saith. And I ensure you that if ye lose in this matter: he shal

lese therby nothyng. Syr ye knowe that Reynawde is a knyghte good ynough. But by his greete pyde: he hath made warre with Charlemain for he slewe Berthelot his neuewe by his outrage. Now he is come in Gascoigne, and ye haue gyuen him your suster in marriage, wherof ye byd great folp, and ye made hym the castel of Mouncauban vpon the strongest grounde that is within your realme. Now is come the king Charlemain that hath besieged him, wherfore I counseil you that ye accorde with the kynge Charlemain, and deliuer your selfe of Reynawd as soone as ye may. For it is better that ye lese four knyghtes, than al your realme, take from hym your suster and giue her to another that is a greater gentilman than is Reinaud, and that haue no suche enemyes as is Charlemaine, and fynde some meanes to peelde Reynawde and his brethren to the king Charlemain. And this ye shall well may doo without blame yf ye wil doo that I shal counseil you. Freend said the kinge you. I am ready to doo that whiche ye shall counseil me aboue al other yf ben here

**T**han when the kinge you of Gascoigne saw that yf mooste party of his counseil accorded to that he shoulde peelde Reinaud and his brethren to king Charlemayne he began to weep right tenderly, and said in him self that no body could here it, by god Reinaud I am soze charged for you, nowre shall departe my loue fro you, for ye shall lese the body, & I shal lese therby yf loue of god & of his mo,



rather, for I shal neuer fynde mercy  
in hym, for to be tray suche a knyght  
as ye be. But I tell you that GOD  
shewed that day for Reinawde a fayr  
re miracle, for the chambze where the  
cousteil was kept that was al whiter:  
ch yunged colour & became al blacke  
as a cole. Lordes sayde the kynge  
yon, I see well that I muste peebe  
the four sonnes of Aymon, syth that  
the most partre of you accordeth ther-  
to, and I shal doo it, sith that that ye  
counseyl me so. But I wot wel that  
my soule shal neuer haue therof no  
pardon. And shal be therfore taken  
all my life as a Judas, and than they  
left the counseyl, and went oure of  
the chambze. And whan the kynge  
was come oure of the chambze: he set  
him downe vpon a benche, and be-  
gan to thinke soze. And as he was  
in this thoubte: he began for to weep  
soze for greate pittie that he had. And  
whan he hadde thoughte and wepre  
ynough: he called his secretary, and  
saide to him. Come forth the spy: Peter  
and write a letter fro me to the big  
Charlemaine, as I shal tell you. It  
is that I sende him saluacion with  
good loue. And yf he wyll leaue me  
my londe in peace: I promyse hym  
that afore ten dayes been passed. I  
shal deliuer vnto him the four son-  
nes of Aymon and he shal fynd them  
in the playne of Malcolours, clothed  
with scarlet, furred with ermyne,  
and rydunge vpon mules, betrynge  
in their handes floures, and roses  
for a token, for because that menne  
shal better knowe them. And I shal  
make them for to be accompanied  
of eyght earles of my realme, and if

they scape from him: that he blame  
me not for it. Than sayde the secre-  
tary, spy: your commaundement shal  
be doone, the whicheooke anon pen  
and ynke and wrote the letters word  
for word as the king had deuised to  
hym. And when they were wyrtten  
and sealed: the kynge called hys stu-  
arde and sayde to hym. Now make  
you ready on horsebacke, and goe to  
the syege of Mowntauban, and re-  
comende me vnto the kinge Charle-  
mayne, and gyue hym these letters.  
And tell him yf he wyl quire my lon-  
de: I shal doo this that is of reason,  
and none other wyse. Spy: sayde the  
stuarde I shal gladly doo your com-  
maundement, doubte not for it, than  
went the stuarde in his house, and  
made him ready on horsebacke, and  
rode oure of Choulose, and rooke the  
heraude of the kinge Charlemaine  
with him. And whan they were come  
vnto Mowntauban: they founde the  
Emperoure Charlemaine in his pa-  
uyllion, where the stuarde lyghed  
down, and went within and saluted  
the king Charlemayne fro the kynge  
yon of Gascoyn, and presented him  
the letters fro his behalfe, and sayde  
vnto hym. Right myghty Emperour  
the kinge yon sendeth you worde by  
me that yf ye wil ensure his lond: he  
shal fulfil the renour of this letre,  
and other wyse he wyl not.

**W**han Charlemayne vnderstood  
these rydynge: he was ryght  
gladde, he rooke the letre of  
the messenger, and called Rowlande  
to him a Olyuet, the byshop Tur-  
pyn, the duke Raymes. Ogier the  
dane

dane, and the .xii. peeres of Fraunce, and said to them. Saye lordes be not displeased, goe out of this pauillon, for I wil talke with this messenger priuely. Syr said they al with a good will. And than they went all out of the pauillon, and whan they were all gone: Charlemayne opened the lettres and red them all alonge. And he found therein that whiche he most despyed in this worlde, that was the treason as it was ordeyned, whan Charlemaine had red the lettre: he myghte be no gladder than he was. And of the great Joye that he hadde of it he began to smyle. Syr sayd the stuarde yf ye see oughte in the lettre that pleaseh you nor: blame not me for it. For I know not yet what it is. Than sayde Charlemaine to the stuarde. Your lord the kinge yon spekerh ful curteously, and if he doo that he dooth me to Wyt: he shall be well my good freend. And so shall I doo to hym great worship, and shall make hym a great man, and also I shall defende him ayenst all men. Syr sayde the stuarde of this that ye say: ye shall giue me surerries yf it please you. Than said Charlemayne, I wyl doo so gladly. This I swore vpon the soune of the vyrgyn Mary and also vpon saint Denis of Fraunce whose man I am. Syr ye haue said all ynough answered the messenger of king yon, and none other surery I aske of you.

**T**han Charlemain called his chamberlayne & said to hym make a lettre to king yon of gascogne in my behalfe, as I shall deuyse

it vnto you. Wyt that I sende him salutation and good loue, and that if he dooth for me as he sayth I shall encrease hys realme with fourtene good castelles and therof I giue him for surerie our lord and saint denys of Fraunce, and that I send him four manceles of scarlette furred with ermines, for to clothe withall the traytours, whan they shall goe to the playne of Calcolours, and there they shall be hanged if god wil, and I wil not that any other haue harme, but only the four sonnes of Aimon. Syr said the chambrelain, your commaundement shall be wel doone, and than he made the lettres, as the peeroute had deuised him. And whan he had made them: the emperour Charlemayn sealed them, and after he called the messenger afore his presence, and saide to him. Holde these lettres and take them to king yon from me, and recommend me to him. And than he dyd gyue hym .x. marke of golde and a Byng that he tooke of his synger. Wherof the messenger thankeed him much humbly, and incontynence lighted on horsebacke, and whan he was aryued: he salued the kyng yon of Gascogne from king Charlemaines behalfe and tooke hym the lettres and the mancelles as Charlemayne had commaunded him.

**T**han whan the messenger of the king yon was gone: Charlemaine made come afore hym Foulques of Horryllon, and Ogier the dane, and sayd to them. Lordes I haue sente for you. For I wil that ye knowe a litill of my secretes, Bus



## The booke of the four

But I tell you vpon your faith that none other shall knowe the same but onely we vs three vnto the time that the dede be accomplished. Syr sayd Ogier yf ye thinke that we shoulde discouer your secrete: tell it vs not. And if ye truste vs: declare hardelye your pleasure. Certes said the emperoure to Ogier, ye be well worthy to knowe al, for I know you for a good and a trusty knight. Sir saide Ogier your good gramercy. But I tell you that I wyll not knowe nothyng thereof, but that ye take fyrste mine othe therupon. Lordes said Charlemaigne I take it. Nowe shall ye goe to the plaine of Malcolours with three hundred knyghtes wel armed, and whan ye shall come there: ye shall finde the foure sonnes of Aimon. And thus I commaunde you that ye bynge them to me other dead or quicke, Syr saide Ogier I saw them neuer but armed, howe shall we knowe them? Ogier saide Charlemaigne ye shall well may knowe them. For eche of theym shall be clothed wyth a mantell of scarlette furred wyth ermynes and shall beare roses in thei handes. Syr saide Ogier that is a good token, and we shall doo your commaundemente. They made none other taryinge but departed from the hoste of the kinge Charlemaigne as pryuelye as they myght doo. And rode to the plaine of Malcolours, and put them selfe in a bushement wythin a woode all of serpyn trees, vnto the tyme that the foure sonnes of Aimon came to the playne of Malcolours. Ha god whye knewe not Reynaude

and hys brotherne this mo: all treason: for they wolde not haue come there vpon mules: But they shoulde haue come there vpon good horses, and well armed, as prue and worthy knyghtes that they were. But a god had not remedied it: thes Reynaude and his brotherne shoulde haue been soone taken in a litill space, for they were in daunger of deach. Whan Ogier ydane & Fouques of Morylls were in their bushement: Fouques called his folke and sayde to theym. Fayre lordes Ioughte well to hate Reynaude, for he slewe myne vncle by great wronge. Nowe am I come to the poynt that I shall be auenged on hym, and I shall tell you howe. Nowe wyte it that the kynge yon of Gascoyn hath betrayed the and they shall come hyther anon all vnarmed sauf their swerdes. And therefore I praye you all that ye thynke to smite well vpon them, then shall I knowe who loueth me best. Doo so that none of theim scape, and ye shall be well my good frendes, and I shall loue you well.

**N**ow shall we telle you of the kynge yon that was at Thelouise. Whan he had receyued the letters of the kinge Charlemaigne: he called to hym his secretary Godras and said to him. Look what this letter sayeth. And the clerke brake incontinent the seale, and beheld the noure of the lettre, and founde howe Reynaude and hys brotherne shoulde be betrayed and liuited to the deach, & whan

Whan the clerke had redden the lettre: he began to weep soze tenderly, and if it had not be for doubt of the king: he wolde gladly haue vttered it, and whan kinge yon saw his secretarpe weep: he saide thus to him, keep wel vpon your lyfe that ye hide nothinge frome, but tell me all that the lettre containeth and what the kyng Charlemayne wyrteth to me. By my fath said Godys. It is a soze thing for to reherce. Nowe lightlye sayde the kyng yon, tell me what the kyng Charlemayne sendeth me, sp. sayde Godys, I shall tell it you gladly. And than he beganne to shewe to kyng yon howe Charlemayne sente him worde, that if he wolde doo as he had wyrtten vnto him: he shoulde encrease his power of fourtene good castelles more than he had. For the suretie wherof: he swereth it vnto you vpon our lord god, and saint denys of Fraunce his patron. And he sendeth you fourte mancelles of scarlete furred with ermines, that ye shall geue to the fourte sonnes of Aymon, for to were them, & thus they shall be knowen. For Charlemayne will not that none take any harme, but only the fourte sonnes of Aymon. And he dooth you wyrt that his folke are with in a bushment within a woode by the plaine of Malcolours, that is to wyrt Fouques of Oryllon and Ogier the dane, with thre hundred men wel horsed and well armed that abiden there fourte sonnes of Aymon, the which ye should deliuer in to their handes. Whan the kinge yon vnderstoode the renours of the lettre: he

made haste for to fulfil his promise. And incontynent he lyghed on horse backe, and tooke in his company a hundred men wel arraied, and tooke his waye to warde Mounteban. And as soone as he might: he came & entered with in at the gate fletcher. And whan he was within: he made his folke to lodge them in the borow. And he went vp to the palays as he was wont to doo whan he came there. The whan his sister the wyfe of Renard wist of the coming of the king yon her brother: she came ayenst him and tooke him by the hand, & wolde haue kissed him as she was accustomed to doo whan he came there, but the king full of euell treason turned hys face a syde, and sayde he had the tooth ache, and wolde not speake with her but sicill. But he sayde that men should make him a bedde ready. For he wolde rest him selfe a lytell. And whan he was layde: he began soze to thinke, and saide to him selfe. O good lord, what haue I wroughte ayenst the best knyghtes of the world that I haue betrayed so falsly. Now shall they be hanged to morow without faure. I pray god to haue mercy and pite vpon them. Now maye I well saye that I shall be lykened to Judas from hence forth, and I shall haue losse the loue of god and of hys mother, and also myne honour. But I must needes doo it sith I haue promysed it so, and the wyll of my barons is such, for thus they haue counselled and haue made me do it. Wherof I am ful soze displeased.



## The booke of the foure

**A**l thus as the king yon thow-  
gher in the greace treason that  
was thus machyned vpon the  
foure sommes of Armon: there came  
in Reynawde from hunting. & al his  
bryetherne with him, and had taken  
four wild bores soze great, and whan  
Reynawde was within Mountraw-  
ban: he hearde the noyse of the horses  
and wende that it had been straunge  
knyghtes that were come vnto him  
to take wagis. And than he asked of  
a yema what folke were these straun-  
geres that were come in withou leue:  
Sp? said the yeman they ben the fol-  
ke of king yon that is come within  
for to speake with you of some ma-  
ters. But me semeth by his folke y  
he is not well at ease of his persone.

**T**han said the good Reynawd.  
Ha God why hach my lorde  
traueylled himselfe so muche for to  
come hither: For I wold with a good  
will haue gone to him. And after  
whan he had that saide: he called to  
him a seruaunte of his and sayde to  
him, goe fet me my horne Boudiere.  
For I wyl make feast and Joye for  
the coming of my souerain lorde, and  
incontinent it was brought to him,  
and Reynawde tooke it and sayde  
to his bryetherne, Now take eche of  
you his owne and let vs make feast  
for the loue of king yon. Than they  
tooke eche of them his horne and be-  
gan to sowne all foure at ones right  
high, and made so greace noyse that  
the castel sowned of it. For they ma-  
de so great Joye for the loue of kinge  
yon that it was merueyll. Whan

the kyng yon heard the trumpettes  
that thus sowned so soze that the chā-  
ber where as he laye shooke of it: he  
arose vp from the bed and cam to the  
wyndow, and said to him selfe. Ha  
What euill haue I brought ayeint  
these knyghtes? Alas howe make ye  
Joye ayeint so greace a combzaunce  
the which I haue purchasid to you:  
I haue betrayed you right falsely, as  
a wycked and vntrue kyng that  
I am. For a man that betrayed bys  
freend: oughe neuer to haue honoure  
nother in this world nor in the other  
but oughe to be lost bothe body and  
soule. For he hach forsaken god: and  
hache gauen himselfe to the deuill.  
And whan he had saide that: he retur-  
ned agayne vpon his bed soze bered  
at the hearte and euell at ease moze  
than any man might be. Than Rey-  
nawde and his bryetherne came vp to  
the palace, where they found the king  
yon, and whan he sawe them come:  
he rose ayeint them, and tooke them  
by the hande and saide to Reynawd.  
Be not merueyllid that I haue now  
embraced nor kyssed you: for I am  
soze laden with great euill. And it is  
wel fourtene daies gone that I could  
nother eate nor drinke aye ryng  
that dyd me good. Than saide Rey-  
nawd sit ye be in a good place where  
ye shall be tended vpon ryght well  
with goddes grace. And I and my  
bryetherne shall serue you to oure po-  
were, gramercy saide the kinge yon.  
Than called he his stuarde and sayd  
to him. Go and bring me the mantel-  
les of scarlet furred wyth ermynes  
that I haue doone make for my dere  
freendes. Incontinent the stuarde  
dyd

ord the commaundement of kynge  
yon. And as sone that he was come  
agayn: the king made the four bre-  
thern to put the four mantelles vpon  
them, and praised them to were  
them for his loue. Sir saide Alarde  
this is a gladd present and we shal  
were them for the loue of you with  
very good will. Alas if they hadde  
known: how the thing was brought  
about, they shoulde not haue bozned  
them, but they shoulde haue doone al  
otherwise. Alas and what sorowful  
harme they hadde of this, that they  
were thus clothed. For that werethe  
tokens and recognyssaunce wherof  
they were in daunger of death, if god  
had not holpen them of his pite and  
mercy. And whan the four sonnes  
of Alard had their mantelles on: the  
kynge yon behelde them, and had of  
them great pite, and began to weep.  
There was his steward that the  
trayson well wist, that saide not one  
word for fere of king yon. And whan  
the mere was redy: Reynarde pra-  
yed muche the king that he woulde  
eate. For he made him to be serued  
ryght wel. Whan they had eaten: the  
kynge yon rose vpon his feet, and to-  
ke Reynarde by the hande, and said  
to him. My faste brother & my frend.  
I wil tell a counseyll that ye know  
not. Nowe wyte that I haue been at  
Ghent, and I haue spoken  
with king Charlemayne the which  
charged me of treason, by cause that  
I keep you in my realme, wherof  
I haue presented my gage afore all  
his company, and nowa trax there  
so hardy that durste speake agynste  
that, that I sayd. After this we had

many wordes togither, among whiche  
we spake of good accord and of  
peace, wherof at the laste the kynge  
Charlemayne was content for my  
loue for to make peace with you, in  
the maner that foloweth. That is to  
were that to morow erly ye shal goe  
to the playne of Malcolours ye and  
your brethren al unarmed but of your  
swerdes mounted vpon your mu-  
les, and clothed with the mantelles  
that I haue geuen to you, and that  
ye shal beate in your handes Roses  
and floures, and I shal sende with  
you eight of myne earles for to goe  
more honourably, the which ben al of  
my lygnage. And there ye shal finde  
the king Charlemayne, and the duke  
Raymes of bayere, and Ogier the  
Dane, and all the twelve Peeres of  
fraunce, and there Charlemayne  
shal gyue you succour. And ye shal  
doo to him reuerence in such maner  
that ye shal cast your seife to his feet  
and there he shal pardon you, and  
he shal gyue you agayne all your  
londres entierly.

**T**han sayde Reynarde, for  
gods mercy. For I haue great  
doubt of the king Charlemayne  
by cause he hateth vs to death as ye  
know. And I promyse you if he hol-  
dethe vs he shal make vs to die a  
shamefull death. Good frend saide  
the traytoure kynge yon, haue ye no  
doubt at al. For he hath thowght  
to me vpon his faith afore all his ba-  
ronye. Sir answered Reynarde we  
shal doo your commaundments.  
Ha God sayde Alarde. What saye  
you my brother: ye knowe well that  
p.i. kynge



The booke of the foure

kyng Charlemayne hath made his  
oth many times that if he may take  
ys ouer by any maner of meane: he  
shall bringe ys to a shameful dethe.  
Now I meruaile me greatly of you  
faire brother, how ye wil accorde for  
to goe put your selfe and ys in to his  
handes, al vnarmed as a pooze mis-  
chaunce. Neuer haue god mercy bi-  
po my soule, yf I goe there wihout  
mine armes, nor wihout to be as it  
appeteyneth, brother said Reynard  
ye saye not well. God forbed that  
I should mistrust my lord the kyng  
yon of any thing that he telleth me.  
And than he turned hym towarde  
the kyng yon and sayde to hym. Sit  
wihout any faute we shall be there  
to morowe earlye in the mornynge,  
whatsoeuer happeth of it. Saye  
lordes said Reynard god hath hol-  
pen ys wel that we haue peace wih  
the kyng Charlemayne to whome  
we haue made so longe tyme so mor-  
tall a warre, but sith that my Lord  
the kyng yon hath made this peace:  
I am content to doo to him as much  
reuerence as to me is possyble. For  
I am delpyered to goe naked in my  
small linnen clothes to the Mounce  
saynt Michael. And whā Reynard  
had sayd this word: he toke leaue of  
kyng yon and went in to the cham-  
ber of the faire lady his wife, & found  
there his other two brethren that  
were wih her, & whā the lady saw  
her husbonde come: she came apenst  
hym and toke him betwen both her  
armes by great loue and kissed hym  
Lady sayd Reynard I ought wel  
to loue you by great reason. For your  
brother the kyng yon hath trauailed

hym selfe righte soze for me, and hath  
be soze blamed at the court of Char-  
lemayne for me, but he hath doone so  
muche blessed be god that he hath  
made my peace wih the kyng Char-  
lemayne. And that so stand and O-  
liuer. Now all the twelve Peeres of  
fraunce might neuer make: he hath  
graunted ys agayne all our landes.  
And all thus we shall be riche, and  
shal liue al our life in rest & peace, &  
so shall we now helpe, and gyue the  
hauoyze that we haue vnto the pooze  
knightes that haue serued all chey-  
lyfe truly and wel.

**T**han sayd the lady. I thanke god  
greatly therof wih al my bert.  
But tell me where the con-  
daunce shall be made, and hyde it not  
from me yf it please you. Lady sayde  
Reynard I shal tell se you wihout  
any faute. Wit that to moro we we  
muste ryde to the playne of Alcolours,  
& there the peace shal be made  
but I and my brethren must goe thi-  
ther wihout armes but onely oure  
swardes, and vpon mules, berynge  
rotes in oure handes. And there we  
shal fynde the duke Raynys of bar-  
myere & Oger the Dane & al the xii  
Peeres of fraunce, that shal receiue  
othes, whā the lady vnderstod these  
wordes: she was so soze an angred  
thereof that almost she had lost her  
witte, and saide to Reynard. Saye  
yf ye wyl beleue me, ye shall not goe  
one fore there. For the plaine of Al-  
colours are so daungerous, for there  
is a roch ryght hyghe, and there ben  
foure grete woodes rounde aboute,  
yf ye wyl beleue me ye shall take a  
daye

day for to speake with Charlemaine  
heere in the medowes of Moutaw-  
ban, & ye shall goe there mouned vp  
on bayarde and your brethren with  
you, & there ye may conferme your  
peace, or elles continue your warre  
& take two thousand knyghtes and  
give them to Mawgis your cosyn  
whiche shall keep them in a bussh-  
ment upon the ryuage, if it happe  
you to haue need, for I doubt me sore  
of treason, wherfore I pray you that  
ye keep your selfe well sure. For I  
dyd dreame to nyght a dreame that  
was fereful & merueilous, for me se-  
med that I was at the windowes of  
the great palace, and sawe come out  
of the grece wood of Arden well a  
thousand wilde bores, that hadde  
grete and horrible reer, the which  
flewe you and rentred your body al in  
peeces, and also I saw that the grece  
towre of Moutawban fel downe to  
grounde, & mozeouer I saw a shre  
of aduerture, that smot your brother  
Blarde so harde that it perced his  
body throughe and throughe, and that  
the chapel of Saint Nicolas which  
is within this castel fell downe to  
the earth, and all the ymages that  
been in it wepte for grece pitie. And  
the two aungelles came downe from  
heauen that haged your brother Ri-  
charde at an apple tree, and then the  
saide Richard cried with an hyghe  
voice. faye brother Reynard come  
and helpe me, and Incontinence ye  
wene there upon your horse bay-  
arde, but he fell downe by the waye  
vnder you, wherfore ye might not  
come tyme ynough, wherof ye were  
ful sorow. & therfore good sy? I coun-

seyle you that ye go not there.

**L**adye sayde Reynard holde  
your peace, for who that beleuech  
ouet muche in dreames: he dooth a-  
penst the commaundement of God.  
Than said Blarde by the saythe that  
I owe to god. I shall neuer sette foot  
there, nor I nother saide Rycharde,  
Blas saide than Guycharde, yf we  
must goe there: lette vs not departe  
thitherwarde as men of counceylle:  
but let vs goe there lyke as yue and  
worthy knyghtes, hauing eche of vs  
his armes vpon him & wel a horse  
backe & not vpon mules: on that our  
brother Reynard be well mounted  
vpon baiarde, which shall may beare  
vs al foure at a need, by god sayde  
Reynard ye shall say what ye wil,  
but I shall goe there as I haue saide  
what so euer happeth, and than he  
went out of his chambze & came to  
king pon, and said to him. By god I  
merueill me muche of my brethren,  
that wil not goe with me, because they  
haue no horses with them, and yf it  
please you ye shall giue vs leaue to  
take eche of vs a horse & ye shall keep  
til your eyght earles with you, and  
we shall goe there as ye haue commaū-  
ded vs, I wil not doo it said the kyng  
pon, for the kyng Charlemaine dou-  
teth you to soze and your brethren  
and your horses, & also I haue giuen  
hostages & sureties that ye shall beare  
no maner of harmes with you, but  
onely your swordes as I haue tolde  
you afore, and that ye shall ride vpon  
mules, & not vpon horses. And yf  
ye goe there otherwile arayed: Char-  
lemayne shall thinke that I wyll be  
M.ii. traye



trape hym, and so shall he destroye al my lande, that shall be the paymente that I shall haue for you, I haue traualled my selfe full soze for to bring you and your bretherne at one with Charlemaigne, & therfore go there if ye will, and if ye will not: leaue it.

**W**han said Reynard, sir sych that it is so: we shall go there. And than he wente from kynge pon in to his chambze again, and founde his wife that noble lady, Alard and Richard that asked him how he had doone, & if they should haue his good horse bayarde with theym: By God said Reynard I can not haue leaue to doo so, but my bretherne doubt you not, for the kynge pon is a true prince, and if he should betray vs: he should be soze blamed for it, for he shall make vs to be conduyted by eyght of the moste great erles of his realme, & god confounde me if I sawe euer any euil doone by him. Sir said his bretherne we shall goe gladly w you, sych tharpe wyl haue vs needes to doo so. Whan they were thus accorded herto: they wente to bed & slept vnto the daye appeared, and whan Reynard sawe the daye: he rose by and saide to his bretherne. Arise sir and make vs redy for to goe there as we should goe, for if Charlemaigne be sooner to y plaines of valcolours than we: he shall hapely be angry for it. Sir sayde his bretherne, we shall soone be redy, & whan they were all redy, they went to the churche of saint Nicolas for to heare masse, & whan it came to the offryng: Reynard & his bretherne offered many ryche gyf-

tes. And after the masse was done: they asked after they mules & inclement they mounted vpon, & in their felowship were eyght earles, y whiche knewe all the maner of treason. & Whan they were all mounted they tooke on they way but the fourte sonnes of Maymon were good to knowe by the ocher, for they had on greace mantelles of scarlet turred with ermynes, & bare in their handes roses in token of peace & also their swordes for they wold not gyde theim. Now god be with them, for if he keep them nor: they bene in waye of perdyceyon & neuer to come againe to Douarban. whan the king pon sawe them thus go: he fell downe in a swoone more then fourte times, for the great sorowe that he had at his heart, for how be it that he had betrayed them so: yet had he great pittie of them, but this that he had doone. euyl counseyl had made him doo it. And than he began to make the greacest sorow in the worlde, & said, ha good lord what haue I doone: byd euer man so great treason as I haue doone: nay verely for I haue betrayed the best knyghts of the worlde, and the moste worthye and true.

**W**han sayde his folke. Sir ye doo not wel to make suche a sorowe, for Reynard is very wise & he shall it perceiue ryght soone. Ha god sayd the king pon, were it as ye saye, for I shoulde be more gladde than if I had wonne tenne of the best cyties of fraunce, for Reynard is my freend and my brother. Ha shal wys ho w shall ye be soze wha

ye shal know this matter. Reynawde did great colp, whan he rooke not your aduise in this thyng, for yf he had knowen of it: ye shoud not haue suffred him to go there. Lordes sayd the kyng yon I pooze wretche, whether shal I become, yf the fourte sonnes of Aymon di: & for Watogis shal slea me without mercy, and also it is well reason, for who that betrayeth a nother and princypally his freend carnall: oughr not to lyue nor haue euer any wooship, but his folke rooke hym vp incontynente and began to recomforze him by many grete reasons that they layed afoze him.

**N**ow begynneth the piteous hy story of the fourte sonnes of Aymon that wente to thei deathe by the meanes of the traytour kyng yon. And bycause of the treason that he comited agens the fourte sonnes of Aymon: he losse the realme of Gascoygne the name & the drygnpte thereof, for neuer sith that tyme was no kyng crowned in Gascoygne. Now shal I tell you of Reynawde and of his brythren, than rode Reynawde and his brythren towarde the plaine of Alcolours, and as they roode thitherward Alarde began to syng ryghte sweetly and Joyfull a newe songe, and Guycharde and Rycharde dyd in lykewise, but I tell you that no instrument of musike sounde neuer so melodyously as the three brythren dyd syngyng to githet, alas what pery was it of so noble and so woorthy knyghtes that wente singing and makyng Joy to thei deathe, they were as the Swanne that synger

that yete that she shall die, Reynawde went behynde them fore thynkyng, hys head bowed down towarde the earth, and behelde hys brythern that rode forth makyng grete Joye, and he sayd, o god what knyghtes be my brythene that there been none suche in all the world, nother so gracyous: And whan he had saide this: he sette his handys togethet and heued them vp towarde heauen all wepyng, and saide in this maner, good lord by thy glorpyous and blessed name that diddest cast daniel out fro the lyons, & deliuered Jonas fro the fyshes bely and saued saynt Peter whan he cast himselfe from the sea for to come to the & pardoned Mary magdalene, & made the blinde to see, & suffred passion & deathe vpon the crosse for our synnes, & pardoned Longyns that smot thee with a spere in to thy blessed side, wherfro thy blessed bloud fel in to his eyen, and incontynente he recovered his syght therby, and by thy resurreccion, keep this day my body if it please the fro deeth and from prison, and also my brythren for I wote not whete that we goe, but me seemeth that we go in grete peryl. And whan he had synnyshed his oryson: his eyne wered wete agayne for pite that he had, lest his brythren shoud haue any harme for loue of him. For it pleased him not wel, that they were so bare of thei armes.

**W**hen whan Alarde saw his brother Reynawde that had his eyne ful of teres, he sayed to him Ma brother what ayleth you I haue sen you in tigher grete peryl & aboute



The booke of the four

a harde werke, but I sawe you neuer make so y cheere as ye doo now, for I haue seen you weep at this houre. wher of I meruail me greatly, for I woe wel for certayne þe ye weep not without some great occasion. Than sayd Reynawde. saye brother me apleth nothings. By þe faiche that I owe to you sayd Alarde ye weep not for nothyng. This is the daie þe we sholde be at one with kyng Charle- mayne, so pray I you for god my de- ce brother that ye leue this sorowe, & let vs go forth mereli and bere out a good face as longe as we ben alpye, for after that a mā is ones deceasted it is no moze spoke of him. And this I praye you bretherne that ye syng with vs. for ye haue so saye a voice that it is a great pleasure for to heare pou syng, whan ye be wyllinge to it. Brother said Reynawde with a good wyll, syth that it pleaseth you. And than began Reynawde for to syng so melodiously: þe it was a great plea- sure for to here hym. So longe rode the four sonnes of Aymon the lytell pace of cheir mules, syngyng and deuysyng amonge themselfe: that they came to the playne of Walco- lours. Now wyl I tel you of the facion of the valey, for wye that if I telled you not: ye shoulde nor maye knowe it. There is a roch right hie & nopous to goe by, & it is enuironned rounde aboute with four great fore- stes ryght great & thicke, for the cast is there a dayes Journey to ryde thurgh it, & ther be four great riuers all aboute it soze deep, wherof þe gre- test is named Gyzonde, the other is called Bozdon, the thyrde is named

Roze, & the other Balancon, & there is nother castell nor to wne by. xx. mile nighe about it. And therfore the treason was there deuyled, for thys playne of Walcolours was sette fro all folke, & there was a way crossed in four, the one waye was towarde Fraunce, the other in to Spaine, the other in to Galysce, and the fourth in to Gascoygne. And at euery one of these four wayes: was layde a bus- shement of. v. hundred men wel hor- sed and armed for to take Reynawde and his brethzen quicke or deade, for thus had they swozne it, & promised to kyng Charlemayne. Than come there Reynawd & his bretheren with theyr felatowshyp of eyght etles, that the kyng yon of Gascoygne had take to them, the whiche wist well al the mistery of this treason. And incont- nent Ogier the dane sawe theym fyrste of all, the which was all aba- shed, and sayd to his folke, saye loz- des ye ben my men my subiects and my frends, ye knowe that Reynawd is my cosyn, & I ought not to see his death nor his damage. Wherfore I pray you all that ye wyl doo him no harme at all, nor to none of his bre- therne my cosyns. They answered al, that they shoulde doo his commaū- dement with a good Will. This hā- gyng: Reynawde and his brethrene passed by & wente in to the myddes of the playne.

**T**han whā Reynawd and his brethre were come there, and found no body: they were of it soze a bashed. And after whan Alarde sawe this: he called his brother Rychar- and

and sayd to him. what is this fayre  
brother I se well that we ben betrai-  
ed, for I se you chaunge your colour,  
how think ye? Brother said Richard  
I doubt me soze for Reynawde, haue  
no doubt said Alarde. For we shall  
haue nothyng but good. My brother  
sayd Richard I promyse you all my  
heart shaketh, nor neuer in my daies  
I had not so great feare, for al my he-  
res tye vp, wherof I doute me soze  
that we ben betrayed, & that moze is:  
I should not be aferde of Reynawde  
were armed & set vpon bayarde, and  
we also, for thus as ben now we be  
halfe discomfited. And whan he had  
said thus: he spake to Reynawde &  
said, Brother why doo we raty here  
sith that we haue found no body with  
whome we shoulde speake: for if. xx.  
knyghts wer here armed: thei shoulde  
haue vs where they wolde maugre  
our teeth as bestes, seing þ we haue  
so many enemies in France, ye wold  
not beleue this that we told you, and  
also youre wife at Mounta whan,  
wherof I feare me soze that ye shall  
haue no leiser for to repent you of it.  
For if our cosyn Hawgis had be heer  
with vs & that ye had your good hors  
baird: we shoulde not doubt Charle-  
maine with al his puissaunce of a  
straw. I pray you let vs go hence, for  
I promise you it is foly for to abide  
heere long, for I know wel þ Char-  
lemaine hath made vs to come here  
as bestes clothed with scarlet, nor I  
can not beleue none other, but that þ  
kinge yon hath falsly betrayed vs.

**C**ertes fayre brother ye saye  
touch sayde Reynawde, and

I perceue me well of it now let vs  
goe backe againe all fayre & softe, &  
as they wolde haue returned: Rey-  
na wde behelde a side & sawe well a  
thoulande knyghtes armed comyng  
a grete pace apenst them, & foul-  
ques of Morillon came afore al the  
other, wel horsed his shelde afore his  
brest & his spere alowe in the rest the  
grete wallop apenst Reynawde for he  
was the man in the worlde that he  
most hated. whan Reynawde sawe  
com foulques of Morillon: he knew  
him wel at his shelde, & was so an-  
gred for: it þ he wist not what to doo.  
A god what shal we pooze siners doo  
I se wel þ we must die this day with-  
out doubte. Brother said Alard what  
saie ye: by my faiche said Reynawde  
I se heere great sorow. Heere cometh  
foulques of Morillon for to slea vs,  
& whan Alard had sen them comyng:  
it lacked litell that he wored madde  
& fell do wne almost for grete angre  
that he had of the same, & whan Guy-  
charde & Richard sawe this: they be-  
gan to make grete sorowe. For they  
scratched thet visages and pulled  
theit heares. And whan Alarde was  
a litell assured: he sayd. Ha fayre bre-  
therne Guycharde & Richard, now  
is the day come that we shall die al  
throughe mortal treason, for I know  
wel that Reynawde hath betrayed  
vs; and certes I wolde neuer haue  
thought that any treaso shoulde haue  
entred with in so noble a man as he  
is, he made vs come here a yent our  
willes and maugre vs, by cause he  
knoweth well the treason. Ha Rey-  
na wde the sonne of Aimon of Ar-  
deine, and who shal euer truste anye  
man



The booke of the four

man, whan ye chat are our brother,  
and that we take for our lord, haue  
brought vs hither maugre vs to our  
death, and haue betrayed vs so falsly  
¶ Richard said Alarde oꝛ we ouce  
poure swerde, by god the traytoure  
shall die with vs. For wel ought the  
traytoure to die whas hache procured  
so mortall a treason, whan Alarde  
had sayde this: they all chȝe dyd set  
hande to their swerdes and came to  
Reina wde, for to slea him pꝛesulpe  
& soȝean angred as lyons, for they  
crowded for verȝe certayne that Rey-  
nawde had betrayed them, whan  
Reynawde saue them come thus: he  
made semblaunce to defend him self,  
but lough at them by grece lous, as  
las said richard what had I thought.  
I woulde not slea my brother for all  
the good in the worlde, and so sayde  
Alarde and Guphard, for they were  
soȝe repented of this that they had en-  
terpꝛysed for to doo, and they began  
all for to weep for pitie and cast their  
swerdes do wne to the earth and  
kissed Reynawde soȝe weeping. And  
Alard sayd. Ha good Reynawd whȝ  
haue you betrayed vs so? we be no-  
cher nor manes nor Engliſhe nor al-  
maines, but we be byrthen of one  
father and of one mocher, & we holde  
you for our lord. For god brother  
Reynawde tel vs of whence cometh  
this treason, we ben com of so noble  
kinne of Gerarde of Roussillon and  
of Dion of Pantuell and of the duke  
Benes of Apytemouir, & neuer none  
of our lignage thought no treason, &  
how haue ye doon so that haue procu-  
red it now apenst your naturall bye-  
them, certes it is a great fault to you

**B**rother said Reynawd I haue  
more grece pitie of you than  
I haue of mine owne selfe, for I haue  
brought you heere apenst your wyll  
and if I had beleued you this mise-  
happe had not come to vs. I haue  
brought you heere, & I promise you  
I shall brynge you againe from hens  
with gods grace. Recomende our  
selfe to our lord, and thinke for to  
defende vs wel, & feare not the death  
for our worſhip. For ones we muste  
die withoure fayle. But it is good  
to get worſhip. Brother said richard,  
shall ye helpe vs: yea said Reynawd  
doubt not therof. And whan he had  
chat sayd, he turned to ward the ear-  
les and sayde to them, saye lordes  
the kynge yon hath sence you with  
vs: for to conduyte vs, & vnder the  
suertie of you we be com heere to lese  
our liues. And therfore I pray you  
ȝe will helpe vs, Reynawde (sayde  
the earle of Anſom) It is not for vs  
to bargaïne heere long, but let vs all  
flee for to saue our selfe and we may,  
chan saide Reynawde by my head ye  
be all traytours, and I shall smite of  
all your heades. Brother said Alard  
whac carȝ ye so longe, for they bene  
well worthy for to die, sith that they  
ben traitours. And whā Reynawde  
vnderstood that word of his brother:  
he sette hande to his swerde & smote  
the earle of Anſom so great a stroke  
vpon the head that he cloued hym to  
the harde teeth, and it was well rea-  
son, for it was he that couſepled this  
treason to the kynge yon, that was  
the rewarde that he had for the first,  
whan the earle of Anſom was thus  
slaine: the other seven began to flee,  
and

and Reynaude ran after, but he could not renne fast: for his mule was to soze lade of the weyghthe of his body, so that the beast fel dootoun vnder him. For Reynaude to say the trowth was so bygge made and so greate that no horse might beare him but onely balarde. For as it is said Reynaude had xvi. feete of length & was wel shape of body after the greatnes.

the deuill. freend said Reynaude pe say well and wisely, and they dyd as Alarde had deuised. And whan they wer confessed thone to thother: Reynaude said to his byrther. Lordes let vs doo suche a thing, wherof we shall get worshippe, sith it is so that we may not scape: lette vs kille the that come first vpon vs, and we shall haue auantage vpon thother, & goddes curse haue him that shall feyne himselfe.

**T**han whan Reynaude saw him self a grounde: he stood vp lighte lyke with his mule and sayd, ha balard my good horse that I am not on your backe armed of al peces, for o: euer that I shoulde be ouercome: I shoulde sell my death ful dere. Alas none ought not to cōplaine my death sith that I haue purchased it myself. Brother said Guychard what shall we doo: heere be our enemies euen by vs, if ye thinke it good: let vs aduerture to passe ouer this riuier and goe vpon that highe roch, and so we shall may saue our self. Goe foole goe said Reynaude what saye ye: ye wor wel that our mules myght not renne before the horses, what shoulde auayle vs for to flee sith that we might not saue our selfe: Lette I shoulde not flee for all the worlde. I haue leuer die with my worship: than I shoulde liue with great shame, for he that dieth in fleeing: his soule shall neuer be saued. Thus as Reynaude spake to his brother Alarde: Alarde saide to hym brother Reynaude lette vs lyghthe from oure mules a foote and shypue our selfe the one to thother to thende that we be not ouercome by

**T**han whan Alarde hearde Reynaude speake thus: he colled him with his armes and kissed him al weyge & said to him. Brothes we be two & two, I pray you & thone fail not to help & other as longe that life is in oure bodies. Brother saide thother we shall help you with al our might & than thei went & kissed Reynaude by great loue, & after whā they had kissed eche other: they tooke of their mancelles & wrapped them aboute thei left armes, & tooke they swerdes in they hādes & begā to cry & called they badges & tokens. Reynaude cried moit a tot ā. Alarde sayne nicolas, guychard, balardon. & p gētil Rychard, Ardeyn, which was & badage o: tokē of their father aymō. whā foulques of morillon saw the foure sonnes of Aymō cōming toward hi al vnarmed & vpon mules so boldly: he was all abashed of it. Than he began to cry & sayd Reynaude Reynaude ye are come to your death, and I promise you he & moste loueth you hath betrayed you, that is the kynge pon, but haue pacēce, for I shall see to



The booke of the four

to your necke an halter. Now haue you not your horse Bayard, the which ye haue ryden vpon wrongfully, now shall you be auenged the deache of Berchelot that ye slew. Reynaudo what shall ye doo: will ye defende or yelde you: but your defence shall be not worth to you. And yf ye make any semblaunt to defende your selfe: I shall slea you incontinent.

**E**oulques sayde Reynaudo ye speke well lyke a beast, and crow you that I shall yelde me quicke to Charlemayne or to you: I shall first smite of your heade & the helme withal if I can reach to you, ye know well howe my swerde curreth. By god foulques sayd Reynaudo ye are greatly to be blamed for to haue gyuen the counseill for to make vs to be betrayed by the kynge you, for it is the foulest crafte that a knyght may for to doo treasoun. But doo as a gentelman ought to doo, to the ende that men say not that it is treason, yf ye will lette vs goe: we shall be all four ready to become liegemen of the king Charlemayne, and I shall gyue you my horse Bayarde, the which I gaue not for all the golde in the world, and also I shall gyue you the strong castel Montauban, and if the king Charlemayne maketh warre against you for loue of vs: We shall serue you with fye hundred knyghtes well armed and well horsed euer more, and if it please you ye shall saue vs our liues. And yf ye will not doo this: doo another thyng that I shall tell you for to keep you to bee not called a traypoure. These .xx. knygh-

tes of the best that ye haue, and put theym in a feild well armed, vpon good horses, & we four shall fyghte with them vnarmed as we ben vpon our mules, and yf your .xx. knyghtes well armed and well horsed may ouercome me and my brethren though we haue no harnais vpon vs: we pardone them our deache, and yf god wyll that we should ouercome them: that ye should than lette vs goe free where we wolde, it is that I requyre you for goddes loue and for your worshippe and no more, and yf ye doo not so: ye shall be taken for an yll knyght all dayes of your lyfe. By god Reynaudo. saide foulques your preaching shall not auayle you no thyng, for I haue leuer to haue fofid you now in this araye, than that I had wonne an hundred thousande marke of fyne golde. Nowe is your tyme to syn the wyse Patrysch sette from you, he can not giue you no counseyle at this houre, and also all your folke be well sette fro you, they shall not giue you socoures, and also I knowe the goodnes of my me and that they haue promysed the king Charlemain that they shall not sayle to assaile you with help, by my saych sayd Reynaudo and we shall defende our selfe also to our power. Than saide Bayarde to Reynaudo, brother what ordeinaunce shall we keep: brother (saide Reynaudo) we shall keep foote two and two: ye and Guycharde shall be behynde, and I and Rycharde shall make the forewarde, and lette vs smite well harde I pray you, for the time is now com that we must needs doo so, and make we that thyng that shall

shalbe leste in perpetuall memoꝝ to  
them that shalbe after vs, sith that  
by no wyse we may not scape. Faire  
brother saide Alarde to Guycharde,  
ye were wel deceiued for that ye tro-  
wed that Reynawd had betrayed vs.  
I promise you he wold not doo it for  
all the golde of the worlde. By my  
fayth saide chan Guycharde to Alard  
I am now well whole, sith that our  
deare brother Reynawd shal be to  
our helpe, for as longe as he shal be  
a liue: we shal defende our selfe, but  
not after, for though he I might chose  
I wolde not liue after he were dead.  
And whan he had sayed thys: they  
medled themselves amonge theyr ene-  
mies. Shortly to speake of the foure  
sonnes of Aymon assembled wel a-  
penk thre hundred good knyghtes,  
but their courage were neuer thelesse  
therfoze as longe as they had lyfe in  
the body: but that they shewed vnto  
their enemies a knyghtes face, whan  
Foulques of Boryllon saide Rey-  
nawde come: he spurred his horse  
with the spurres & bare his speare a  
lowe, & went & smot Reynawd by the  
mantell of scarlet that was aboute  
his arme so great a stroke that his  
spere entered throught his chygh and  
ouerthrewe bothe hym and his mule  
to the earthe. Whan Alarde saw the  
stroke: he cried soze and sayde. Was  
we haue lost Reynawde our brother  
that was al our hope and our secour  
now may we not escape, but that  
we shal be dead or taken, and it is  
better that we seide be prysoners at  
this time: than to defende vs anye  
moze. For sith it is so: oure defence  
shal helpe vs nothyng agens to

many folke. And whan Reynawde  
vnderstod the wordes of his brother,  
he cryed to him with a loude voyce  
and sayd. Fie vpon you giueth what  
is that ye say? I haue no harme yet,  
but I am al whole as ye be, chaked  
be god, and yet shal I lelle me full  
dete or I die. And whan Reynawde  
had saide this: he rose vp quickely  
and toke the spere with both his ha-  
des, and pulled it oute of his chygh  
with great greef, and after set bande  
to his swerde. And sayde to Foul-  
ques of Boryllon, knyght if ye will  
doo like a good man: lichte a foote as  
I am. And ye shal knowe what I  
can doo. Whan Foulques of Boryl-  
lon vnderstode him: he turned vpon  
him soze an angred, and thought for  
to haue smitten him on hys heade,  
but Reynawde drewe a litell asyde,  
and wente and gaue vnto Foulques  
suche a stroke vpon hys helme: that  
noether yron nor stele myght nor saue  
hym, but that Reynawde cloued hym  
in to the harde ceeth and felled him  
deade to the earthe. And whan he  
sawe him falle: he sayde vnto hym,  
Nowe unhappy Traytoure that thy  
soule may haue no pardene, but goe  
to the pye of heile. And whan he had  
saide that: he toke the horse of Foul-  
ques of Boryllon the whiche was  
right good, & lichte vpon it in contri-  
nence and toke his weild & his spere  
that Foulques of Boryllon had shou-  
ued throught and throught his chygh  
& than he sayd to his brethren. Be ye  
al sure that as longe as I am a lyue:  
ye shal haue no harme, but the fien-  
demen shal saye that they haue an  
ylle neyghboure of me. And wyte  
Whan



## The booke of the four

Whan he was on horsbacke: he was not well at ease, because that the styppes were so shyfte for him. But he had other thinges to doo, than for to make them lenger. And whan he was thus set on horsbacke: he made his horse to renne and held his spere alo we, and went and mette with the earle Angenon by suche maner that he put both prion and wood throughe the brest of him so that he must fall down dead fro the horse to the ground afore his foote. And after Reynawd set hande to his swerde, and smote a knyghte suche a stroke that his helme might not saue him, but cleued hym to the teeth. What shall I tell you moze? Nowe Witte it that at that tyme Reynawd slewe totych his owne handes foure earles, thye dukes and sixe knyghtes, and after he bega to crye Mounce whan with a hye voice. And after his crye: he went & smote Roberte the lord of Bygeon that was sonne to the duke of Burgoine so that the head with the helme he made it lepe to the grounde, & after he slewe a norther sterke dead, that came to rescue the said lord.

**A**d whan Reynawd hadde doone this noble promesse: he behelde about him, and crowed to haue seen his brethren than, but he saw none of them, wherof he was sore abashed. O god sayd he where are my brethren gone? now be they well sette from me, we shall neuer come togither again. And then came there Alarde that in likewyse had wonne a horse, the sheeld and the spere, for he had slaine a knyght, and

had taken his horse, but he was sore hurte. Neuerthelesse he came & held side with his brother, and Rycharde and Guycharde came soone at the other side. Than Alarde saide to Reynawd. Brother be al sure that we shall neuer faile you to the deeth. And whan the foure brethren were assembled togither againe: they began to make so great distrucion of frenshemen, that none durste abyde theym. For all they that they hytte: scaped not the death. whan the frenshemen sawe this: they were meruailed, and said the one to the other. By my soule this passeth all order wonder. I trow that they ben no knyghtes: but that they be deuils, now let vs make to thea salwe both behinde and before, for if they liue long: they shall do vs greate hurte. And whan they were hereto, accorded: they ranne all vpon the foure sonnes of Hymon so harde that they parted them woulde they or not. But Reynawd passed throughe them al and brought him selfe out of the presse, and Alarde after hym. And Rycharde returned fleeing toward the roche Mounce, and Guycharde abode there on foote, for the frenshemen had slayne his mule vnder him, and had wounded him with two speres well deep into the flesch and was taken for prisoner and they bounde him bothe hande and foote, and layed him vpon a litel horse ouerthwart, like as a sacke of coynes so wounded as he was, and I promyse you men might wel folowe him by the trace, because of the blood that came oute of his bodye, and so leed him so shamefullye as that is may

had be a theef and Went all betynge  
vpon hym, saying to hym that they  
led hym to Charlemayne, the which  
shoulde make him to be haged for to  
aunge the death of his deere newe  
Berthelot that he loued so muche, &  
whyche Reynawde slewe so shame-  
fully playinge at the Chesse.

**A**nd whan Reynawde saw þ  
hys enemyes led his brother  
Guycharde so shamefully: he wexed  
almoste madde for angre, and called  
his brother Alarde to him and said,  
fayre brother what shal we doo? see  
how shamefully they fare with our  
brother Guycharde, yf we suffre the  
to bynge hym forth of this facyon:  
we shall neuer haue worshyp in our  
dayes. Brother sayd Alarde I wote  
not what we may best doo for to a-  
byde or for to goe to them. For I tel  
you that we be no mo but t wo, and  
they be so great nombre of folke that  
wee can doo nothing agaynst them.  
O god (sayd Reynawde) what shall  
I doo if the king Charlemayne make  
my brother to be hanged: I shall ne-  
uer be at my hertes ease, nor I shall  
neuer come to no courte, but men  
shal poynte me with the fynger, and  
shall saye see yonder is the sonne of  
Aymon that let his brother to be ha-  
ged to the pye tree of Bouitfaucou,  
& he durst not succour hym. Certes  
sayd Reynawde to Alarde, brother I  
had leuer dy fynt, but if I should res-  
cue our brother fro deathe. Brother  
sayd Alarde now set your selfe afore  
& I shal folow you & after my power  
I wyl helpe you to rescue hym. And  
whan Reynawde heard þ: he cast his

sheeld behinde him, and habandon-  
ned his body all boldly as a Lyon,  
and cared not how the game shoulde  
go, for ye saw neuer wood men helde  
in a forest, nor make so great noyle  
as Reynawde made with his swerde  
amonge his enemyes for he cutted &  
hewed legges and armes by suche  
wyse that no man shoulde belue it,  
but they that see it. Thus made Rey-  
nawde at that time y the frenchemē  
must needes make him way to passe  
whether they wolde or no. And many  
made hym way for the loue of Ogier  
for they knewe well that the foure  
sonnes of Aymon were his cosyns.  
And whan Reynawde was passed:  
he sayd to them that led his brother  
Guycharde. Let goe the knyghte ye  
yil folkes, for ye be not worthe to  
touche hym, and whan they that led  
Guycharde sawe come Reynawde:  
they were soze afrayed that they put  
them selfe to flight & left Guycharde  
free and sayde the one to the other.  
here cometh the ende of the worlde.  
And whā Reynawde saw that they  
fled: he sayd to Alarde. Goe ye fayre  
brother and vnbnde Guycharde our  
brother and set him vpon this horse  
and gyue him a spere in his hande, &  
come after me, for the knyghtours ben  
dyscomfyted. Brother sayd Alarde.  
I shall goe where it please you, but  
I tell you yf we parte one from the  
other: we shall neuer come togethe  
agayne scyng that we be so feib & so  
yil armed, but let vs keep together, &  
helpe thone thother. Brother sayde  
Reynawde ye say well & wissly, and  
we shal doo it. And than they wente  
bothe together to Guycharde, & vn-

A. l.

bounde



## The booke of the four

bounde hym, and made him mounte on horsbacke & sheelde at the necke, and the spere in the hande. Now goe there the thre brethern together, and the fourth fighteth agaynst a grete nombre of folke, that was the balysant Richard, that was the moste worthy of all after his brother Reynawde. But men had slaine his mule vnder hym, and was wounded ryght sore. But he had slayne five erles, and well. xiii. knyghtes, wherof he was so sore trauayled and so weary, that he might not all moste defende himselfe no more, but went rounde aboute the roche. And than came Gerard of Valcome that was cosyn to Fouques of Hozyllon the whyche he had founde dead, wherof he made great sorow, & sayd. A gentyl knyght it is great damage of your deth. Certes he that hath brought you to this death he is not my freend. Now shal I avenge me if I maye, & than he came to the roche. And whan he saw Reynawde in so great greefe: he spurred his horse with his spurs & bare his spere also & intote Richard through the mantell of scarlet, that he wrapped aboute his lifte arme so harde that the spere entred ferre in his bodye so muche that he brought hym to the erth, and as he drew his spere agayne: the guttes of Richard came out of his body into his lappe, & the wounde was so great that the lyver and the louniges appeared. Than began Gerard to crye. Now are dyscoupled the four sonnes of Symon, for I haue slayne Richard the hardy fighter, all the other shall soone be slayne or taken, yf god giue

me helth. And I shall bynge them vnto the kynge Charlemyne, that shal make the to be hanged at Doue sawcon as soone as he hath them.

**T**han whan Richard was come a lytle to his ese: he rose vp quickly vpon his feete, &ooke his bowelles with bothe his handes and put them agayne into his belye and after set hande to his swerde, & came to Gerard and sayd to hym in great angre. Thou cursed man thou shalt haue thy rewarde anon for that ye haue doon to me, for certes it shal not be vmbayed to Reynawde that ye haue slayne his brother, and whan he had sayde thus: he smote Gerard through the quyras, and through the sheelde so great a stroke, that he welded the shouldre and the arme with all from the body & felled hym downe dead to the erth at his feete, and than sayd to him. Certes Gerard it had be better for you that ye had not come hytherwarde, for to the kynge Charlemyne now shal ye not beate your bolte that ye haue slayne one of the four sonnes of Symon. And whan he had sayd that: he fel downe in a swoone, and whan he was come agayne to hymselfe: he began for to wissh after his brethern, and complained them sore, sayinge. O Reynawde my brother this daye shall departe our companie. For I shal neuer see you, nother ye me. O Castell of Mounta whan I comende thee to god that he wil by his mercy & pitie bringe agayne your lordes saufe and sounde of his body. A king you of Gascoigne, wyte haue ye betrayed  
b32

ys and taken ys to the kynge Char-  
lemayne: certes ye dyd therein greate  
syn, and a shamyfull fault, and after  
he sayd all weeping. O father king  
of gloire, and lord of al the worlde,  
succoure this day my poore bryther-  
ne. For I woot not where they ben,  
nor of me they may neyther haue he-  
lpe nor succours, for I am all redy  
for to dye.

**N**owe shall I tell you of Rey-  
nawde of Alarde, and of Gui-  
charde that fought strongly agaynst  
theyr enemies, as worthy knyghtes  
that they were. But all theyr great  
faytes of armes shoulde auayle the  
nothyng if they had not come to a  
narrowe way of the Roche, where  
men myght not come to them but a  
foze. And whan they had be longe  
there: Reynawde began to say to his  
brother Alarde, Brother where is be-  
come our brother Richard that we  
saw not of a good whyle ago: now  
thinke none other but that we shall  
neuer see him, for I left him heere bi-  
thys lappyn tree, whan ye and I had  
so much to doo. I praye god if he be  
dead that he haue his soule. Now I  
wyl wit tidinges of him if it be pos-  
sible. Brother sayd Alarde if ye wyl  
beleue me ye shall abyde heere, God  
pardon him if he be dead, for we mai-  
not helpe him the perill is to greate  
and I beleue that we shoulde dye afoze  
that euere were come. His brother sayd  
Reynawde shall we sayle to our bro-  
ther Richard the good knight and  
worthy: Than sayde Alarde, what  
will ye that we shall doo therto: for  
as to me I knowe no remedy to it.

Alas sayde Reynawde ye speake fo-  
lyshly, for I shoulde not doubt for fe-  
re of death to wit where he is becom:  
And if I shoulde goe alone, yet shall  
I vnderstand some tidinges of him.  
Brother said Alarde I promise you  
if we depart the one from the other:  
we shall neuer see ys agayne toge-  
ther. Brother sayd Reynawde other  
dead or all quicke, I shall finde him  
where so euer he be it maye none o-  
ther be, and whan Reynawde had  
sayde these wordes: he spurred his  
horse wyth his spurs, and cam at  
the other side of the roche. And whā  
they that had chased Richard there  
for to slea him saw Reynawde come:  
they smote hemselfe to flight, & than  
Reynawde wente a lytle more by-  
warde vpon the roche, and founde  
there his brother Richard that laye  
nyghe dead vpon the ground, & helde  
his bowelles betwene his handes,  
and about him were a great numb-  
re of folke which he had slayne. Whan  
Reynawde saw him dead and so sore  
wounded: he had of it so great sorow  
at his hert that almoste he fell down  
dead to the ground but he took co-  
rage and cam nyghe his brother and  
lyghted downe from his horse & kis-  
sed him sore weeping and sayd. Ha  
fayre brother it is great pite & dom-  
mage of you and of your death for  
certes neuer man was worthe you,  
for if ye had come to mans age ne-  
uer Rowlande nor Olyuer were so  
proue in knighthode as ye shuld haue  
be. Alas now is lost our beauty and  
our yowthe thorough greate synne.  
O good lord who shoulde euer haue  
thought if any treason shoulde haue



## The booke of the foure

entred into the hert of the king pons:  
 Alas my brother Rycharde Woe is  
 me for your death, for I am cause of  
 it. Alas thys daye in the moynynge  
 whan wee departed out of Dun-  
 stowen we were foure betherne al  
 good knightes, now are we but. iii.  
 that ben perillousli wounded and al  
 unarmed. Nowe God forbed that I  
 should scape lythe that ye be dead v-  
 pon the traytours. But I pray god  
 that I may venge your death vpon  
 them or euer I deccasse. For I shall  
 see therto my good will, & if god will  
 it shall be so. Euen thus as Reynawde  
 made mone ouer hys brother: he be-  
 helde behynde hym and sawe come  
 his brethern Alarde and Guycharde  
 all discomfyted, that cryed vpo Reyn-  
 nawde. Brother what doo you: com  
 anon and help vs for we haue great  
 need. And whan Richarde heard the  
 voyce of Alarde: he opened his eyen,  
 and whan he sawe his brother Rey-  
 nawde afore hym: he sayd to hym. O  
 brother Reynawde and what doo you  
 heere: see ye ponder that roche which  
 is so hyghe and so stronge, where as  
 ben manye small stoness aboue, yf  
 we myght doo so muche that we cli-  
 med vp there: I beleue that we shold  
 be safe from our enemies, for it can-  
 not be but our colyn. Hawgys know-  
 weth our diseale by thys: and he shal  
 come to succour vs. Brother sayde  
 Reynawde wolde god we were there  
 now tell me my sayre brother howe  
 feeles ye your selfe & thinke ye that ye  
 maye recouer health: yea sayde Ry-  
 charde yf ye scape and els not, for w-  
 the force that I haue, I myght well

dye for sorowe.

**A** And whan Reynawde heard  
 Richarde speake thys: he was  
 ryght glad of it. So called he Alarde  
 to hym and sayde. Brother take Ry-  
 charde vpon your sheelde, and lede  
 hym vpon the roche, and Guycharde  
 and I shall rowme the waye afore  
 you, brother sayde Alarde, doubt not  
 I shall doo my power. And than he  
 lighted downe and rooke by Richard  
 and layde hym vpon hys sheeld, and  
 after he lighted againe on horsebacke  
 and Reynawde and Guycharde leyd  
 hym with his brother vpon the horse  
 necke, and after put them selfe afore  
 to breake the pyere of the frenches  
 me. And they did so muche that they  
 came to the roche. But wote it well  
 that Reynawde made there so great  
 saytes armes, that all hys enemyes  
 were inuaylled with all. For he  
 slewe at that tyme wel thyrty knigh-  
 tes, that neuer wylde Boxe, nor ty-  
 gre, nor Lyon, nor were dyd by Rey-  
 nawde made there of his body. But  
 for to say the rrouthe: Reynawde set-  
 ted nought by his lyfe, and icoparde  
 himselfe al together, for he was as a  
 man desperate. And whan they were  
 come to the roche, Alarde set downe  
 his brother Rycharde to the erth. And  
 began to defende quychly, but I wote  
 not how they might endure, for they  
 had nother Castell nor fortresse, but  
 onely the roche.

**A**l thus as the three brethern  
 defended theymselfe wyth  
 greate woe. Than came there Ogier  
 the

the dane and hys folke, and had in his company Wagon of frise with well a thousande knyghtes, & ctyed vpon Reynawde. Certes knyght ye shalbe dead wee haue swoyne your death. This day is the departyng y pe & your byethern shal suffice death ye did as fooles whan ye beleued the kyngge yon, for he hath put you all to death. Whan Alarde saw so great folke come: he was soze an angered, and sayd to Guycharde. See howe great a sorow is heere afoze vs, and the great nombze of folke that be re dy for to slea vs foure knyghtes. cer tes yf we were fyue hundred wel ar med yet should not we scape, for they ben wel armed and a great quantiti of knyghtes. Surcly sayd Guycharde heere is a meruaylouse companye, but yf God helpe vs now: wee ben com to yende of our dayes. It is no great dommage of me nother of Ri charde, but the great dommage is of Reynawde that is the best knyghte of the Worlde. And whan Alarde and Guycharde had spoken cogyder: they wente to Reynawde and kyssed him full soze wepyng. and sayde vnto hym. O brother Reynawde giue vs a gyfte yf it please you for the loue of oure lord God. Lordes sayde Rey nawde what thyng aske you of me: ye know wel ynough that I can not helpe you of no thing, and thys day muste I needes see you dye before min eyen.

**B**rother said Alarde, Hethe what we wyll tell you, and yf it please you ye shall doo it. Say on hardely sayde Reynawde. Brother sayde A

larde men sayen comenly that it is better to doone one harme than two I say thys bycause y if ye dye heere: it shalbe great dommage, & the losse shal neuer be recouered agayne, for none shall auenge your death, but though we dye heere and not you: it shalbe no great domage, for ye shal auenge vs wel, and therfore we pray you sweet brother for al the pleasu res that ye wolde doo euer to vs, y ye wyll goe your wayes, and wee shall abyde heere. And whan y death shal come: we shall take it a woorthy. This that we say ye may well doo: for ye be well hoysed, and ye shal wel saue your selfe maugre the frenche men, yf they goe to Mountawban, & whan ye be at Mountawban: lyght vpon Bayarde well armed, & bringe anon wyth you our colyn Waggys for to succour vs. Brother sayd Rei nawde, ye speake to colyshpe. Cer tes I wolde not doo so for all the golde of the worlde. I should be soze bad and full vnkynde yf I dyd so, for I coulde not spyll my selfe souer than for to leaue you in so great pe ryll. Other we shall all scape: or els we shal all dye together, for the one shall not farle the other as longe as we may lyue, no w God that suffred death and passion saue vs. Thus as Reynawde spake to hys byethern: came the erle Guymarde to whome God gyue curi aduenture, and sayd to Reynawde, knyght ye be take and ye must dye wyth shame vpon thys roche. whan ye beleued the kyngge yon ye dyd great foly. he wrought great treason whan he dyd sell you to the kyngge Charlemyne that ha



## The booke of the four

teth you so muche, for ye loued hym more, than ye dyd your cosin Hawgys. He hath well rewarded you for the great loue that ye ought to him, tell me Reynawde whether ye wyll yeeld you or defende you: Certes sayd Reynawde now speke ye for nought, I shall neuer yeeld me as longe as I am a liue. Reynawde sayd than, Ogger what wyll ye doo: Wee cannot helpe you of nothyng, other gyue your selfe vp: or defende your selfe, Ogger sayd Reynawde, by hym that made the worlde I shall neuer yeeld me. I was neuer no theefe and therefore wyl I not be hanged, I haue leuer dye like a knyght than to hange lyke a theefe. Lordes sayd Guinard let vs sawte them, for they shall not may kepe longe agaynst vs. Lordes sayd Ogger ye maye well sawte the if ye wil, but bi my soule I shal doo the nothyng, for they ben my cosins nor I shall not helpe theym. For ye shall take them well wythout me. Certes sayd y frenche men, we shall than assaile them worthely. Than Ogger dye we hymselfe and all hys folke a syde, wel the length of a bow shot, and began to make so great sorowe as though all the worlde had finished afore hys eyen, and all hys sorow was for Reynawde hys cosyn and for hys bzerhern, and thus as he made his mone: he began for to saue. Ha saye cosin Reynawde it is great pitie of your death. And I unhappy mā that am of your kynne suffre you to dye afore myne eyen, & yet I cannot helpe you, for I haue it promysed to Charlemayne, nor I ought not for to breake myne othe.

But the hystorie telleth that Ogger duaange himselfe greatly that day, And through his purchase the four sonnes of Iymon scaped. For yf he wolde haue put payne to it: they should not haue scaped by no maner but as men sayd. True blood maye not lye.

**B**Efore the roche were four Castles, for to sawte the four Sonnes of Iymon, and made them moche a doo. For they folke sawted the in four parties. Wherof Reynawde kepte the two partes: and Marde & Guycharde kepte the other twyne. For Richarde lay downe vpon the erth sore wounded, as I tolde you afore. And yet was Guycharde wounded sore throughe the thye wherof he had bled so longe yf ye was seynt and fell downe to the erth. And whā he saue that he myght no more defende: he began to cal vpo Reynawde and sayde. Ha Reynawde saye brother, let vs yeeld vs I pray you, for I nor Richarde maye no more helpe you. Brother sayd Reynawde what say you: now shewe wel that ye be ferdfull, but I let you wye that yf I trowed to scape other for Golde, or for Syluer or for Citie or for Castles, or my horse Bayarde that I loue so muche: I should haue yeeld me prisoner to daye in y moynynge. For ye wot well that yf we ben take that all the golde that is in all the worlde saue vs not fro hangynge, or some other shamefull death, and therefore I wyll not yeeld me by no maner of wyse. A man that wyl be valyaunte ought

ought to defende hymselfe for to be whole. Ha Richard succour vs for the loue of Iesus, for we haue well mistre: we ben nother Rozmās nor Bictors, but we ben all of one father and of one mother. Now ought we well to helpe eche other with all our power for our worship, for other wyse men should say that we ben bastardes, and of an ill father. Ye saye trouthe sayde Guicharde. But ye wolde not beleue how feble I am, for I am wounded to the death. Certes sayde Reynawde, I am sorry for it, but I shall defende you as longe as life is in my bodi. Who had seen than the noble knight Reinsawd take vp the great stones, and cast the vpon hys enemyes: ye wolde not haue sayd that he had not be wounded nor trauayled of nothing. Whan Richard (that lay a ground thus wounded as I haue tolde you aboue) saw and heard the great noyse that they that sawted the roche made: he tooke vp his head and sayd to Reynawde. Brother I shall helpe you. But cut me some of my herte, & I shall binde my syde and wounde so that my bowelles may not yssue out of my belly and than I shall set me to my defence and shall helpe you with al my hert. Than sayd Reynawde, now we art þ well worthe a true man. And whan Guicharde vnderstoode hym: he was a shamed and tooke agayne strength in him beyonde hys power and came to the defence and sayde w a high voice Ogier saye cousin what doo you to your lynage? Certes it shalbe a great shame to you yf ye suc-

cour vs not, for the faulte that ye doo to vs: shall be layde vnto you in every place where ye goe, to let vs dye thus. We that ben your kynnesmen, the best of all the worlde, saue Reynawde & ye shall doo like a true man, and as for vs other: it maketh nother lesse nother more. Whan Ogier vnderstode these wordes: he was sorry for it, that no man might more, and wolde haue giue a great thing for to haue deliuered them. And said that he wolde doo wyth all his herte all that he might doo for them. And thā Ogier spurred Brayforde with his spurres and came to the roche w a staffe in his hande, and sayde to the that sawted the roche: wythdraw your selfe a litle tyll I haue spoken wyth them a litle, for to wyt whether they wyll giue them selfe vp or no. For it is better that we haue the quicke than dead. Sir sayd the frenche men We shal doo your commaundement. But wee leaue them wyth you to keep in the name of the kynge Charlemayne. Ha god sayd Ogier I neuer thought treaso, nor I shal not begyn yet. And than he came moze nigh the roche than he had be, and called to hym the foure Sonnes of Aymon, and sayd to theym. Saye cousin rest you, and take agayne your brethren, and yf ye be hurt: wrappe vp your woundes, & make good garnishinge of stones, & so defende your selfe nobly of al your power, for if þ king Charlemayne may haue you: ye shall neuer haue pardonne, but he shal make you to be hanged & strangled, and therfore ye muste needes

kepe



## The booke of the foure

kepe your selfe well. For I promise you if Malugis know of it: he shall come to soccoure you, thus shall ye scape. & other wyse not. Cosen sayd Alarde, ye shall haue of it a good rewarde if euer we may scape, ye saye true sayde Reynawde. For if I may scape by god that suffred death & passion for vs upon the Crosse, all the golde of the world shal not saue him but I shall slea hym wch myne own handes, for I hate hym much more than I doo a straunger. For he that should helpe and defende me agaynst all men: it is he that doth me harme Cosen sayd Ogier I maye not doo thereto, so helpe god my soule. For þe kyng Charlemaigne made me swere afore all hys barons that I should not helpe you in no maner of wyse. And of this that I doo, I am sure þe kyng Charlemaigne shall conne me no thanke. Brother sayd Alarde Ogier telleth you trouth. And also it was well trouth that Ogier was repreued therof for treason, for Charlemaigne called him traitour afore al his barons. Than Reynawde boorie the woundes of his bretherne as wel as he could. But the wounde of rycharde was so gretefully so that it was pitie to beholde, for all the entayles appered oute of hys bodye. And whan he had lapped theym al: Alarde wrapped the wounde that Reynawde had in the thyghe, and whan they had rested them selfe a litle Reynawde stode by and went vpon the roche for to gather stones to defende them selfe. And garnysshed ther wch defence where his bretherne should stande. Whan the frenchem

saw þe Ogier the Dane made there to longe a solournynge: they began all to call and crye. Ogier ye make there to longe a Sermon, tell vs if they wyll yeelde them or no, or if they shall defende them selfe. Hays sayde Ogier as longe as they haue lyfe in theyr bodyes. By my soule sayde the frenche men than go we sawe them este agayne. Than sayde Ogier I promise you I shall helpe them with all my power. Whan the Erle Guymarde hearde Ogier speake so: he wente to hym & sayd. We commaunde you in the kinges name of Fraunce that ye come to the batayle wch vs agaynst the foure sonnes of Symon as ye haue promised and sworne, & for doubt of you many a lord is here in your company that wyll not fyght. Lordes sayd Ogier for god mercy, ye know wel al redy they ben my colyns germane. I pray you let vs withdraue our selfe abacke, and let them be in peace, and I shall gyue eche of you large goodes, Ogier said the frenche men we shall not doo so, but we shall bynge them prysoners to the kyng Charlemaigne that shal doo with them hys pleasure, and also we shall tell him what ye haue done. Wherof he shall conne you lytle thanke all his life. And after whan Ogier vnderstode these wordes: he was soze an angred & sayde by great wyathe. By the fapth that I owe to al my freendes if there be any of you so hardy that take Reynawde or any of this brethern for to deliuer them to king Charlemaigne I shall smyte of his head, what some euer come after it. Ogier sayd þe Erle Guymarde

we

we shal not leue therfore for to take  
them ryght shortly. And whan we  
haue them: we shal see who shal take  
them from vs, for we shal well can  
sewe this to the king Charlemain.  
And than they began to sawt the ro-  
che agayne. Wit it that Reynawde &  
hys byethern defended themself full  
nobly. But whan Reynawde sawe  
this great multytude of folke that  
came for to sawte them: he began to  
saye. Ha Ha wgis my fayre cosyn  
where are ye now that ye knowe not  
thys my shap: for ye wolde come a-  
non to helpe vs: but ye know it not,  
wherof I am euill contente. For I  
was a foole and ouer hasty that I  
spake not to you of thys matter a-  
fore that I came heere. Ha Baparde  
yf I were vpon your backe I should  
neuer entre wthin this roche for feare  
of the frenchemen, but þ king Char-  
lemayne should lese heere of the best  
knyghtes of his company, & whan  
he had sayde this: he began to wepe  
full tenderly for the loue of his bye-  
thern, þ he saw so soze wounded and  
a so werpe. Than the frenchemen  
sawted them este as stronge agayne  
& I promise you if it had not be the  
greate prowes of Reynawde: they  
should haue ben take at that time by  
fine force. Whan the sawtinge was  
finisshed: Reynawde set himself vpon  
his defence, for he was so wery that  
if he had gone he should haue fallen  
do wne to the erthe, so weke he was  
and that was no meruayle: for they  
had so soze trauayled him, & had suf-  
fered so many tormentes and terrible  
sawtes that it was wonder þ they  
coude endure so longe.

**A**nd whan Ogier the Dane  
saw his Cousin so soze tormen-  
ted: heooke himself to wepe tender-  
ly. And thus as he wept: he bethoug-  
ht him selfe of a great wysedome &  
called to hym a knyght of hys that  
was named Gerarde & sayd to hym,  
haue for god mercy of me, and but yf  
ye doo that I shal tel you: I am dis-  
honoured for euer more. Syr sayde  
Gerarde tell me what it please you for  
it shal be doo though I should lose  
my life. Gramercy sayd Ogier, now  
shal I tell you what I wyll that ye  
doo, take wyth you .xl. knyghtes of  
the best of my felawship, & go iyght-  
ly to þ mount Holsy, & kepe your selfe  
ther vpon, & beholde towarde Moun-  
ta whan all þ right way that no bo-  
dy come but ye see hym, for yf Baw-  
gis may wit by any way the misfor-  
tune of his cosyns: I promise you þ  
he wyll come to succoure them, and  
shal grue vs muche a doo, so that þ  
moste hardy shal be soze afrayed, syr  
sayd gerarde this þ ye haue said: shal  
be well doone, and than he took .xl.  
of þ best knyghtes of his company &  
wet to the mount Holsy, where they  
made not well they: Wathe for the  
profite of the frenchemen. We ought  
here to wit þ Ogier found this maner  
to send his me forth, but only þ Rey-  
nawde and his byethern should not  
haue a doo with so many folke, and  
thought not of that that happed.

**B**ut now leueth heere the hystory  
to speake of the foure sonnes of Ay-  
mon that were in the roche mouth: &  
And also leueth to speake of Ogier  
the Dane, and of thother folke that  
Charlemayne had sent, & returneth  
to



## The booke of the foure

to speake of Godarde the secretary of the king Ron that had red the letters where the treason was conteyned al playntly.

al the treason of Watogis, that the kyng Ron had doone to hys colins. Watogis broughte suche a succoures to Reynawde and to his brethren, þ he saued them fro death bi his great wysdome.

**C**how after that Godarde the secre-  
tary of the kyng Ron had reherled

**C**apitulum. x.



**N**ow sheweth the hystory that whan Godarde saw Reynawde and his brethren go to theyr death thorough so false a treason: he had of it great sorow and pitie. and he was ryght sorowful for it, for two principal causes, wherof thone was for his mayster the kyng Ron, that had wrought that shamefull treason: and the other was for the great pitie and damage þ it was for to make die so pitiously suche worthy knyghtes as the foure sonnes of Aymon were.

So began he to weep pitiously, and thus as he wept, came there Watogis the colyn of the foure sonnes of Aymon that went to the kychyn for to haue the meate, for the kyng Ron wolde eate, to the whiche men made good chere, by cause they knew not the treason that he had doone. Whan the clerke sawe Watogis: he called hym, and sayd to hym. Ha Watogis how it is yll with you: for if god put no remedy in you ye haue losse thar things

thyng þe moſte loue in thys worlde  
that is Reynawde and hys brethren  
for the kyng & on hath betrayed the  
ſhamfully. And than he ſhewed to  
hym all the treaſon, whan Maugys  
vnderſtoode theſe wordes: he was all  
out of his wittes & ſayd to the clerke  
Godarde for god go a waye from me,  
for all my limmes ſhaken for angre  
nor I cannot ſtande vpon my feete,  
for mi hert telleth me that Reynawde  
and hys brethren ben dead. Certes  
ſayd Godarde ye ſai trouth. For the  
lettre ſheweth that Ogier the dane  
and Fouques of Moillon are ſet  
in a buſſhemēt with a great numbꝛe  
of folke in the plaine of Malcolours  
and Reynawde and hys brethren are  
gone thither al vnarmed by the coun-  
ſell of kyng & on, and thus they can-  
not defende, but they muſte be dead  
or take. Whā Maugys vnderſtoode  
thys: he was ſorꝛe for it that he fell  
downe in a ſwoune to therth, and at  
the falling that he made he brake all  
hys browes. And whan he was com-  
agayne to himſelfe, he was ſo ſorꝛy þ  
he wyll not what he ſhould doo. So  
tooke he a knife and wolde haue ſho-  
ued it in hys bꝛeſte, but he myght not  
for Godarde tooke hym by the hand  
and ſayd to hym. Ha gentyll knyght  
haue mercey vpon you, kyll not  
your ſelfe, for your ſoule ſhal be dā-  
ned for it, but light a horſebacke and  
take wyth you all the men of armes  
that ben within and the good horſe  
baparde that renneth ſo faſt, and goe  
there as your colons ben gone as  
ſoone as ye may. And whan ye com  
there, ye ſhal ſee anon yf ye can helpe  
them or not, for yf they ben alyue: ye

ſhall ſuccour them ryght wel. So-  
darde ſayd Maugys your counſel is  
right good, and thā he began to weep  
and ſaid. Ha noble knyght Reynawde  
it is gꝛeat domage yf ye be dead,  
but I make my bowe to God that if  
ye and your brethren be dead: I ſhall  
neuer liue two dayes after you. And  
than Maugys without any noiſe  
or ony worde to be made of this to  
kyng & on nor to his ſyſter the Wiſe  
of Reynawde: commaunde all the ſol-  
diours of the caſtell to be redy in ar-  
mes lightly, and whan the knyghtes  
vnderſtoode hym: they tooke theyꝛ har-  
neys on in contynent as they were  
wot to doo. And whan they were all  
armed they came al to the loweſt part  
of the palays and preſented themſelfe,  
and whan Maugys ſaw them: he  
ſhewed to them all the treaſon that  
the kyng & on had doone to Reynawde  
and to hys brethren.

**W**hen whan the knyghtes of  
Reynawde vnderſtoode thys:  
they begā to make ſuche ſorow that  
it was pity for to ſee, & wiſhed after  
the noble knyghtes that were gone to  
theyꝛ death, & were ſore deſperat that  
they wolde almoſt haue killed them-  
ſelfe. For the one wiſhed after Rey-  
nawde & the other after Warde the  
other after Guycharde & the other af-  
ter Richarde, & ſayd. Ha valiant &  
pꝛue knyghtes it is gꝛeat domage of  
your death, for certaynly al þ world  
ſhal be þ woꝛſe therfoꝛe. Alas & who  
ſhall giue vs now theſe armes &  
the good horſes þ ye were wonte to  
giue vs, thus as they were: making  
this gꝛeat ſorow: maugys ſayd to þ  
palfray



## The booke of the four

palfrainier y kept Bayarde, freende  
goe and set the saddle vpon Bayarde  
and I shall byng hym to Reynawde,  
for sayd the palfrainier. I maye not  
doe it, for Reynawde my mayster co  
maunded me whan he went that I  
should not suffre nobody to lyght v  
pon it till he were come agayne, whā  
Hawgys understode the answer of  
the palfrainier: he was wroth, and  
smote hym wyth hys fylle so greute  
a stroke that he cast him at his foote  
afore hym and after went hymselfe  
to the stable where Bayarde was.  
Whan Bayarde saw Hawgis: he be  
gan to shrinke hys eares and smote  
with his forfeete so stronge that no  
body durst go nigh him, but the pal  
frainier that tended vpon him, and  
whan Hawgys saw that Bayarde  
played so he tooke a staffe and smote  
bayarde vpon the head so y he made  
him kneele to y erth. And whan bay  
arde sawe he was so curthly dealed w  
all: he was aserde least he should be  
yet more shrewdely handled and so  
he helde hymselfe still, & Hawgys  
cast the saddle vpon hym and bydded  
hym. And wyt it that whan Haw  
gys was vpon bayardes backe: he  
was wel lyke a valyaunt man and  
a hardy knyght, for he was one of  
y fayrest knyghtes of the worlde and  
one of the best, and the moste subtyll  
of the worlde. And whan Hawgys  
and al his folke were al redy a horse  
backe well armed: they went out at  
the gate salween. And they myght  
well be aboute fyue thousande men  
well horsed and well armed, and. vii  
hondred good archers y neuer wold  
go backe for no doubte of death by

any maner, and they set themselfe to  
the way, not by the ryght waye: but  
wente throughe y wood al a couerte  
wyth great diligence, and alwayes  
Hawgys went wyllhyng after rey  
nawde and after hys bytherne, for  
he wylte not yf they were dead or a  
lyue, and sayd to hymselfe. Ha Rey  
nawde God be thyng day wyth you, &  
keep you & your bytherne fro death  
and fro pylson. But now yf the frē  
che men keep not themselfe wel: they  
shall haue suche a neyghbour and  
so cruell that they shalbe soone wery  
of it and shall sore repente. ¶ Now  
shall wee leaue to speake of Haw  
gis y brought succours to Reynaw  
de to the playne of Walcolours: and  
we shall thewe of Reynawde and of  
hys bytherne y were at roche Mount  
yon full of wo & sorow, for they sawe  
themselfe in great perill. Al thus as  
Reynawde dyd tette hymselfe vpon  
the defence of the roche and thought  
in hymselfe what he myght doo: he  
turned his sight towarde the wood  
and saw come Hawgis w his folke  
the sheelde at the necke the swerde in  
the hande and mounted vpon Bay  
arde, wyt it that bayarde wente not  
the lytle pale but wente lyke a swa  
lowe, for at euery lepe that he made  
he lepte thirti foote of grounde. And  
whan Reynawde sawe Hawgys  
come with so great folke & so fayre  
a company: all his body sheucted all  
sodeynlye for great ioye, and forgat  
all the great sorow & torment that  
he had suffered all the daye and sayde  
to his bytherne. Bytherne be metye  
and be not dysmayed of nothyng,  
for here cometh Hawgis to succour

us with great nombze of folke, now  
he sheweth well that he is our kyns-  
man and a good freend, blessed be he  
of god that hath tolde him the daun-  
ger that we were in. Brother said Al-  
larde is it trowth that we shall haue  
helpe auone? yea said Reina Wde by  
the faith that I owe to you. Lettes  
said Alarde wolbe complaine I nor.  
And whan Richarde that lape wyth  
his bowelles betwen his handes vn-  
der stooðe this word: him semed that  
he dzeamed this that he heard which  
his b:ethern said, for he was al rea-  
die brought as one that had lost hys  
braine, by cause of the great soze that  
he felte and forced himselfe so that he  
tyghed himselfe vpon his buttocke  
but it was with great paine, & sayde  
to his brother Reina Wde me semeth  
that I haue hearde named Marogis  
or elles it is come to me by a visyon,  
brother said Reina Wde by my faythe  
we haue socours of Marogis that  
bringeth to vs at the power of Moū-  
ta Whan. Brother said Richarde for  
god the we me hym. And than Re-  
nawd rooke him betwene his armes  
and shewed him Marogis that came  
tydyng vpon Bararde as faste as  
tempest, whan Richarde sawe maro-  
gys: he was so gladd that he fell in  
a swoone betwene his brothers ar-  
mes. And whan he was come againe  
to himselfe: he said. Now am I whole  
for I fele nother pll norher soze, bro-  
ther Reina Wd said Alard, what shall  
we doo: for if the frenshme perceiue  
the comyng of Marogis: they shall  
flee, and I wolde for no good that  
they should doo so, for I wolde that  
we were firste auenged vpon theym

for the great hurt that thei haue doon  
to us, but let us doo one thyng that  
I shall tel you. Let us goe downe to  
the foote of the roche and begyne the  
battayle, & while that they shall fight  
with us: Marogis shall be come, and  
by all thys they shall not scape us,  
brother said Reina Wde ye say Well  
and we shall doo so, & than Reina Wd,  
Alard and Guicharde wente downe  
to the foote of the roche, and the litell  
Richarde bod aboute vpon the roche  
for he coulde not moue norher helpe  
himselfe.

**R**eina Wde came downe from  
the roche with his two b:eth-  
ren, And whan the frenshemen sawe  
them: they began to late rhone to rho-  
ther. Here cometh the sonnes of Aimo  
that will yeeld themselves prisoners,  
now let us not kille them but take  
we theym for to bringe theim alyue  
to thempetour Charlemayne. And  
whan they had sayd this: they began  
to cry. Reina Wde but ye ye wyl die  
shortly: yeeld your selfe and if ye doo  
it with good will: we shall all praye  
Charlemain that he haue mercy vpon  
you. Whan Ogier heard theim  
speake thus: he wend it had be trowth  
that Reina Wde & his b:ethren wold  
haue giuen themselves by as pryso-  
ners. So was he full soze for it, and  
spurred brayforde with the spurres  
& came ayeust Reina Wd and his b:eth-  
terne and laide to them: knyghtes  
I holde you now for fooles that ye  
haue left your roche that was the sa-  
uing of your life, this day shall ye be  
hanged with great shame, and yet I  
can not help you, for I should be bla-



The booke of the foure

med of Charlemain. Ogier said Rei-  
nawde we ben not such fooles as ye  
wene, but I will that ye flee. For by  
the faith that I owe to the olde Ap-  
mon my father yf ye carpe any whyle  
heere ye shall not be wise, for if I can  
teche vnto you. I shall shewe what  
I can doo.

**A** his hanging: that Reinawd  
spake to Ogier: Ogier be-  
helde to warde the ryghte waye that  
came to the wood & sawe folke come  
to Reinawd that Hawgis brought,  
and was all afore mounted vpon  
Bayard that came fast. And whan  
Ogier sawe come thus the folke of  
Reinawd in great numbꝛe: he knewe  
them well, & was righte glad of it, &  
his herte roied in his bely for hope,  
and righted himselfe vp in his saddle  
wel halfe a foote & sayd to his folke.  
Fayre lordes what shal we doo: the  
deuyl hath tolde Hawgis that we  
be heere, he cometh ryding vpon bai-  
arde & byngeth wyth hym a fayre  
company, certes if we were .xx. thou-  
sande yet were we not able to fyghte  
wyth them, and ye shall see this day  
that the lord we shall retorne vpon  
vs. This hangyng came Hawgis  
wyth al his felowship, & there wher  
he saw Ogier: he came to him and  
sayde. Ogier I holde you for a foole  
because that ye came heere to werke  
treason. I chalenge of you Reinawd  
and his brethren, and am come heere  
to be theyr suretie. By god Ogier it  
longeth not to you for to betray thus  
Reinawd & his brethren, for ye be  
of his lignage but ye haue yf shewed  
it to him, your father wought neuer  
treason, & I meruayll me soze howe

ye wold graunt to it, your father left  
you in fraunce for a pledge at saynt  
Omers to Charlemain, whose man  
ye are, payng to him euery yere foure  
peny weyght of golde. Ogier ye be  
defended of damp Richard, of Rou-  
illon, of Bron of Rancuel, of the du-  
ke Benes of Aygremonce, al these  
were brethren & good true men and  
faithful knyghtes, and Aimō of dor-  
don was theyr brother and is father  
to Reinawd, this knowe ye well and  
ye will be other than was your lyg-  
nage wherof I desy you to the deach  
for I haue you betrecly. Whan Haw-  
gis had sayd this worde: he spurred  
bayard wyth his spurres & smot O-  
gier in the shelde so harde that the  
sheld nor his harnays could not saue  
him but that he made him a greete  
wound in his brest, and of that stroke  
fough the spere in peces, whan O-  
gier sawe that he was so soze an an-  
gred for it that he wexed almost mad,  
& wold haue gon vpon Hawgis but  
he might not. For whā bayard smel-  
led his lord: he ran mightely toward  
him, wold be or no, & whan he was  
comte before Reinawd: he kneeled be-  
fore him, & Hawgis lighted fro him  
& came to Reinawde & kissed him ful  
sweetly, & after he kissed Alarde, and  
Guicharde, & than said, where is the  
lycel Richard: For men helde hym  
for one of the most hardy of the world.  
Cosyn sayd Reinawde he is chere &  
boue soze wounded that I wote not  
whether he be dead or aloue, cosyn  
sayd Hawgis can not he moue him  
selfe: it is not tyme to speake so long  
said Reinawd, but let vs se who shal  
doo best, & gyue me mine armes, wyth

a good will sayde Maugys, & than Reynawde armed hym and lyghed vpon bayarde the sheide at the necke and the spere in the hande, and whā he had sayd this: he spurred Baiard with his spurre, & lept at euerie yme .xxx. foote of length. Whan Reynawde sawe hym selfe vpon bayard: he was ryght gladde, for he trowed neuer to haue set vpon his backe a gayne, and whan he sawe himselfe thus horsed & armed with his owne armures: so heid himselfe moze sure, than that he hadde be in the mayster towre of Mounta whan, and than he made a course and ranne vpon Ogier and smore hym so harde that he made hym lyght fro the saddle, and bare hym fyerlye to the grounde. And whan Reynawde saue Ogier a ground: he lyghed a foote and tooke the horse of Ogier and brought it to him agayne, and heide the styroppe and made Ogier to lyght vpon bzaiford agayne, and than Reynawd said to hym, Cosyn Ogier now haue ye the rewarde of the goodnes that ye did vnto vs, but certes this that ye haue don ye did it as a traytoure and an ill kynsmanne, therfore keep you from me for I desie you, and by him that made the worlde I shall spare you no moze, for ye are laundzed.

**C**osyn Reynawde sayde Ogier and we shall keep vs fro you double ye nor. Who than hadde be in that place: he shoulde haue seen howe Reynawde had medied hym selfe bygoriously among the frenshemenne, and myght well saye that he was a

knight prync and valyaunt. And thā came Maugys vpon a nother horse that he had recouered and spurred hym with his spurres, and came to ycarle Guyward and smore him thorough the sheeld so that he shoued his speare through and through his bodie, and seid hiu doune deade to the earth. And whan he had gyuen that stroke: he cryed Mounta whan cleere mount, and after he said in this maner, free knyghtes smite vpon this frenshemen that wolde flea the best knyghtes of the worlde, they haue wel shewed great worthines whan they be com hither in great numbze for to fight ayenst fourte knyghtes vnarmed, but they shall repente theym of theyr bargane right soze or that two howres been a goe, and therfore leye strongly vpon theym and as harde as ye can, for if Ogier scape vs: we be dishonoured, and than began the styffe fell and cruell & many a frensh man was cast down to the earth. For they might not endure the great metueilles of armes that Reynawd and his brethren made. And whan the frenshmen sawe that they could not withstande no lenger: and saue the great domage and hurte that Reynawd, his brethren and Maugys bare to theym: they put theymselfe to flight & Ogier with them towarde the riuer of Dozdonne, and Ogier passed it ouer vpon his horse bzaiford, and whan he was come at the other syde of the ryuer: he lyghted a foote, and Reynawd called in a scoone and sayde to hym. Ogier I trowe ye be become a fysshier, haue ye eyles or sawms? I gyue you leue to chuse  
D.ii. Whe



## The booke of the foure

Whether ye Wyl come again at this  
syde: or that I goe to you at that sy-  
de, and yf ye come agayne at this  
syde: I shall keep you safe from all  
men but of me onelye, or elles make  
me sure from Charlemaynes folke  
and I shall iuste with you, and after  
said to him. Ye whose son false knaue  
ye haue falsed your sayth to Charle-  
mayne, for ye be my cosyn germaine  
And howe had ye the herte for to see  
ys be murdered in youre ptesence  
and that ye defended ys nor ayenste  
all men, and ye come your selfe for to  
flea ys by treason. Lettys Ogier ye  
haue doon amys greatly. But chan-  
ked be god ye leaue with ys behynde  
you a good pledge. for heere abyderh  
with ys fowles of mozellon, and  
the erle Gutmard, the which shal ne-  
uer make ys no warre and more thā  
vi. hundred of your frensh knightes,  
euill tidinges ye shal heare of theim  
to Charlemaine and to Rowlande,  
and ye shal giue them an ill retoning  
of your men. And goddes curse haue  
they if they make nor you to be han-  
ged as a theef by the necke.

**W**henne Were the frenshemen  
soze abashed whan they heard  
Kernawde reprocue Ogier so, wherof  
they were gladde and saide togither  
wel finde ye now the reward of your  
goodnes, if ye wold haue doone your  
deuoure: the foure sonnes of Hymon  
had be taken. And whan Ogier saw  
himself thus reprocued of the one part  
and of the other: he was ryghte  
sory for it. And than they left him  
vpon the ryuer syde of Dordon,

and abode with hym but .x. meene.  
And whan Ogier sawe that all his  
compane had left hym: he knewe  
wel that they dyd so for dispice, than  
sayde he all by hymselfe. Fayre God  
of heaue I am wel worthy to be ser-  
ued thus. And the prouerbe maye  
Well be reherfed for a trowche, that  
sayth. Ofren happed enyl for a good  
turne. Whan Ogier had sayd this: he  
cryed & saide to Kernawde. I mad  
beste ye blame me wrongefully and  
without a cause, for ye and your bre-  
thern shoulde haue be hanged by this  
without any pardonne, nor I shoulde  
gyss hadde neuer come heere tyme y-  
noughe, wherof ye haue called me  
traytoure, but ye lye falslye. For I  
neuer dyd treason nor neuer shall yf  
God wyll. ye haue also called me fis-  
sher, nowe oughte I well to Were  
mad all quicke whan such a glurton  
dooth to me so great outeage, but  
by the saythe that I owe to all my  
freendes, but if I feared other than  
you: I shoulde goe gyue you suche  
a stroke thoroughe the sheeld that ye  
shoulde saye it is a stroke of a may-  
ster. Than sayd Kernawde, Ogier  
ye speake wel at your ease, for ye shal  
doo nothyng at ail of that ye saye  
least your lymmes shoulde be hurt, by  
my berde sayde Ogier I shall. And  
than he broched brayforde with the  
spurres and put hymselfe to swyme  
ouer the ryuer. And whan he was  
come to the playne grounde: he made  
hym ready for to iouste as were as he  
was. And whan Kernawde saw Ogier  
so yll arayed for to fyght: he had  
pyte therof, and sayde to hym. Cousin  
I haue at this houre no Wyl for to  
figh:

fyghe, and therfore goe your wayes  
again, for this date ye shall not be  
deforled by me, now knowe I well y  
ye haue holpen me. Reynaude (sayde  
Ogier) mocke not with me, ye haue  
called me traitour befoze many knigh  
tes, if I went my way again: menne  
might say to Charlemain that I had  
betrated him falslye. My spere is yet  
al whole, it were a great shame to me  
but I brake it vpon you or vpon one  
of your brethren. For Fouques and  
the earle Guimard shoulde complain  
in helle vpon me, and of the other part  
I shoulde haue none excuse toward  
the king Charlemain if I went thus  
awaye, for ye haue well slaine foure  
hundred knyghtes of ours, wherfore  
I say for a conclusion that I shal not  
goe my waye, but that I medle first  
with you, for ye wote well that yf I  
went thus my way: the king Char  
lemaine shoulde beate me some disho  
noure for it, and he shoulde haue rea  
sone & also he shoulde make me to be  
beaded, and therfore I wil fyghe with  
you, for certes I haue leuer die than  
to returne thus to him, and yf God  
hath ordeined that ye shall smite of  
my heade: I pardone you my deach.  
for if I canne ouercome you: I shall  
bringe you to the king Charlemaine  
What someuer come of it.

**A**nd whan Reynaude hearde  
Ogier speake so: he wored all  
mad for angre and saide by wyche  
Ogier I desyre you to the deach & keep  
you fro me, & you of me said Ogier.  
And whan they had defied eche other  
so Reynaude spurred Bayarde and

Ogier brayforde their good hozes  
and ranne the one vpon the other so  
strongly that the earth trembled vn  
der their feet. And whan came for to  
late the speres also we: they hytte eche  
other so harde that they brake theyr  
speres, and after their speres were  
broken: they recoured eche other with  
their sheeldes and gaue eche other so  
great strokes that they both fel down  
to the earth ouer their croper of theyr  
hozses and were sore wounded. And  
Whan the two good knyghtes sawe  
themselves at the ground: they rose  
vp quickly and sette hande to theyr  
swerdes and began to make so harde  
medling that it was metuaple. But  
herke of their hozses. Wit that whan  
Bayarde and brayforde sawe theyr  
maisters at the ground: incontynent  
they wet the one to the other, and be  
gan to hytte eche other and cast theyr  
feet the one vpon the other. Whan  
Ogier sawe that: he was ful soze for  
it, for he knewe wel that Bayard was  
the stronger, so ranne Ogier thy  
cher the sheelde at his necke and hyt  
his good hozse Brayford, for he was  
afearde that Bayarde shoulde haue  
kylled hym. Whan Reynaude sawe  
this: he cryed and sayde, What is it  
Ogier that ye wyll doo: it is not the  
werke of a knyghte to smite a braste,  
and well me semeth that ye haue y  
noughe to doo of me wythout ye bete  
not my hozs: Than Reynaude smot  
Ogier so greete a stroke vpon his  
helme: that he fel hym downe vnto  
the grounde, but the stroke stydded a  
spere & kyd asunder al that it tounge  
well an hundred mayles of hors



The booke of the foure

flankarde, and Wounded hym soze  
vpon his hypppe, and yf the swerde  
had not courned within Reinarodes  
hande: Ogier shoulde neuer haue ea-  
ten breade, and Whan Reinarod had  
giuen to him that stroke: he saide to  
him. Ogier let alone Bayarde: for  
ye haue ynough a doo with me. I be-  
leue that I haue appaired youre hel-  
me, for I se your visage that is soze  
pale. And Whan Ogier felte himself  
hurte: he wered almost Wood for an-  
gry, and retourned to Reinarod with  
his swerde Corryne and sayde. A  
cortine that so muche I haue loued  
thee and certes it is well reason, for  
ye be a good swerde and in manye  
places ye haue well holpen me & ma-  
ny a proude man ouerthrowen. And  
whan I went with y king Charle-  
maine at Estbroughe in Almayne,  
Rowlande, and Oliuer dyd assaye  
they swerdes at Perro, and I smot  
after for to assaye you. And ye kuc-  
ted therof wel half a foote and chere  
I brake you wherof I was ryghte  
soyze. But for the goodnes that I  
know in you, for to amende again &  
therfore ye be called corryne, and but  
if ye auenge me now of this glutton:  
I shall neuer haue no trust to you.  
And thā he smot Reinarod wth hys  
helme so hard that he made him tee-  
le. And whan Ogier sawe Reinarod  
thus arayed: he sayde to him, by god  
Reinarode I haue peeld you againe  
that ye had geuen me, We be no we  
quite, well ye begyn a freshe: by my  
saye the salde Reinarod yea, for I be-  
sie moze to fyght than I doo any o-  
ther thyng. And than they went and  
camme the one vpon the other and be

gan an nother medlynge, but than  
came there, Harde, Hawgys, and  
Guycharde and all they folke. And  
whan Ogier sawe theim come: he  
was worthe and soze for it, and so  
went he againe into brayforde hys  
good horse and lighced vpon him,  
libymmed agayn ouer Dordoun and  
whan he was ouer: he abode styll at  
the riuer side and lyghced downe to  
the earthe, but he had no sadle vpon  
hys horse, for the girtches brake whā  
he Iousted wth Reinarode. Whan  
Reinarode sawe Bayforde saddel-  
lesse: he called to Ogier, and sayde  
Ogier come fetch the youre sadle, for it  
shall be to you a greate shame yf ye  
ride thus, and thanke our lord that  
ye be thus departed from me withoute  
any moze harme, for yf we had car-  
yed a licell lenger togither. I wolde  
haue brought you into suche a place  
whete ye were neuer, for the kynge  
Charlemaine your lord shoulde neuer  
haue rescued you in tyme. Reinaro-  
de said Ogier, ye threten me of feare,  
it longeth not to a good knyghte to  
threten one so, but I wor well that  
yf it had not be your folke that haue  
succoured you: I wolde haue brought  
you to kynge Charlemaine or eyn.  
Ogier saide reinarode ye haue well  
shewed that ye be a good knyghte  
that passed the riuer of Dordoun, for  
to come fight with me: but shall ye  
cary thete for me tell I passe ouer at  
the other syde vpon my horse bay-  
arde, yea vpon my soule said Ogier,  
and yf ye doo it: I shall saye that ye  
be the best knyghte of the worlde.  
Whan Reinarode vnderstoode that  
wynde: he spurred bayarde with the  
spyr.

spurred & wold haue passed ouer doz-  
don, but Marogis, Alard, and Sut-  
charde letted him, and wolden not suf-  
fre hym to goe, but tooke hym by the  
byddell, and Alarde saide to hym  
Ha saye brother & what is this that  
ye wil doo: ye be ouer hasty, for who  
that dooth you good: he leseth well  
his time, ye knowe well and Ogier  
had not be: we should haue been dead  
this date, and the succours of Maro-  
gis had helped vs but litell. Lette  
Ogier be in peace I praye you, for  
there is not abetter knyghte in the  
worlde than he is one, and than cri-  
ed Alarde to Ogier. Faire colyn goe  
to god, for ye haue well holpen vs,  
whan Alarde had spoken to Ogier:  
he returned him to his brother Rey-  
nawde and saide to him. Faire bro-  
ther me semeth it were good that we  
should turne backe againe for to wit-  
howe oure brother Richard doothe  
that abideh vpon the roche Mount-  
byon so wounded as ye knowe. Let  
goe our enemies with shame ynough  
for we haue domaged them righte  
so. Then called Ogier to Reynaw-  
de, and said, ye haue discomfited vs,  
but by my fathers soule, we shal com-  
againe so greate folke vpon you that  
we shal beate to you greate harme  
and so shal we take the prync, the  
whiche ye shal not dare defende.  
So wher en al saye said Reynaw-  
de, for we haue suche a castell where  
we dare well abide the kinge Char-  
lemaine, and you at anye houre that  
ye come, and also I tell you for cer-  
tain that oʒ euer thre dates be passed  
ye shal neuer take vs for all that  
ye can doo. And how someuer the ga-

me goeth, the losse hath euer be vpon  
you vnto this time. And also ye  
shall beate no good tidings to the  
king Charlemaine. And whan O-  
gier had spoken ynough vnto Rei-  
nawde: he spurred his foʒ and went  
after his folke that hadde lefte him  
and he rode so longe that he came to  
Mountbandell and lighted doʒne  
before the tente of the kinge Charle-  
maine. And whan Rowland and O-  
liuer sawe come Ogier thus wound-  
ded and making so euill chere: they  
trowed that there hadde be a barraile  
and that Ogier had taken Reynawd  
and his brethrene, and so they dyd  
calle the Duke Raimes, Salomon  
of Breten, Richard of Normandy  
and the earle Guidellon. And whan  
they were all assembled: they saide  
the one to the other. Poore unhapp  
and what shal we doo: this day shal  
we see hanged the foure sonnes of  
Aymon, they be cosins to vs al, and  
if the king Charlemaine maketh the  
to be hanged: we be dishonoured for  
euer. And whan the king Charle-  
maine sawe come Ogier: he said to  
him, Ogier where ben the foure son-  
nes of Aymon: haue ye taken them,  
oʒ slaine them, oʒ remysed them for  
prisoners: Sic saide Ogier all saye  
and fofte, Wit it that they been no  
chilidren: but they are the best knygh-  
tes of the worlde, and they be alyue.  
I tell you sic that we founde them in  
the plaine of Galcolours, all foure  
clothed in scarlet furred with ermine  
and vpon mules, and bare in  
cheir handes floures, and roses, Wel  
hath the king of Gascoygne kepte  
his couenaunt to you, for he hath see  
them



The booke of the four

cheym forth in such maner as he promised to you, but the Worthynes and the prowess was such: that they chaunged theyr mules to good horses and recovered both heelde and spere. And whan Keinaude had gotten a horse: he slew foulques of Babilon first of all, and mounted vpon his horse, but at the last they found a roche couen after the maner of a caue that is a strong place, where they defended themselves a longe while, and Richard one of their bretherne had ben slaine, and the other three should haue ben either taken or slaine, and if Hawgis had not come there to succoure them mounted vpon bayard and broughte with him. v. thousande knyghtes which haue discomfited vs and haue slaine the Erle Guymarde.

**H** I said themperaur Charlemaigne is it true that they been so escaped: sir said Ogier, yea verelye, whan the king vnderstoode that Keinaud and his bretherne were escaped: he was right wroth & ful angry for it and said. A good lord of glo: ye, how am I shamed for foure gluttons: certes this weries me soze, but no force let them doo the worst that they can for if they haue escaped me now they shal not scape me another time, syr said Ogier wot it, but if Hawgis had not be: they coude not haue escaped, Goddes curse haue he for it said Charlemaigne and an euill pere, for often hath he holpen them a penynt me, and so I wore well that yf I helde Keinaude and hys bretherne within my pryson. Hawgis should deliuer them oure, and therfore I

hate him to deach, wherof I pray our lord that I die not till I be fynt auenged of it, syr saide Ogier by the satch that I owe to you. Keinaude gaue me so greete a stroke that the corner of my helme fel downe with all to the earthe, and I promyse you I was wel glad whā I was escaped from his handes, for of thre thousand that we broughte with vs: there are come againe but thre hundred, & the surples is all slaine other taken. Whan Rowland vnderstoode cheyse wordes: he shooke al for angre & said by great wrothe. By god syr Ogier, ye were soze hardy ye had not felowes that dyd so well as ye dyd, but by saint Peter the apostle I sawe neuer so strong a cowarde as ye be, nor neuer came oure of Denmarke a good knight. Ha whozelou coward karyst howe haue ye anye open that dare behold vpon a man: but another thing there is, for ye haue spared them, for they ben your cosins and your freendes. Now be the king blamed, but yf he maketh you to be he wen al to pecces, for they should haue ben take yf ye had not be.

**W**han whan Ogier sawe hym selfe so repzeued: he wored al mad of the great iniury that Rowland hadde saide to him so, and answered boldye and saide. Damp Rowlande ye lye falsly of that ye say. For I am not sucbe as ye tell. And heere is my pledge for to defende me this quarell a penynt body to bodye, for I nor none of my kinne dyd neuer amys a penynt Charlemaigne, but of all fraunce I am oure of the best and truest knyghtes

that be in it, and of a better kinne I  
am come than ye be Rowlande, Ge-  
tarde of coussillon was mine vncle  
he kept me of a litell childe, & Dion  
of Hancuill and the duke Venes of  
Aygremon these thre were brethren  
the whiche were all myne vncles.  
And Huncus of aygremon was  
my father, and also the bishop Tur-  
ppin and Richard of normandye ben  
my kinsmen, and thus are they foure  
sones of Aymon of my lignage, now  
good s<sup>r</sup> Rowland tell me your lyg-  
nage for I knowe youre hyghnes.  
For by sainte Denis of fraunce, I  
shall defende me ayenst you with my  
swerde, and so shall I shewe to you  
yf I be true or no. Rowlande was  
than wonderful woth whā he heard  
Ogyer speake so: and vaunced him  
selfe ayenst him and wold haue smi-  
ten him. And whan Ogyer sawe him  
come: he set hande to his swerde cor-  
eyne, and said to Rowland. Be ware  
ye be not so hardy for to set hande vpon  
me, for by the saythe that I owe  
to hym that begate me I shall make  
thy heade to flee fro thy bodye, yf ye  
come anye neter. Whan Charles  
mayne sawe these two barons moue  
themselve so soze the one ayenst the  
other: he was ryght soz for it. And  
than toke the duke Raymes of baut-  
ere & the earle Aymerpe, and sayde.  
S<sup>r</sup> Rowland what wyll ye doo: by  
my heade the thyng shall not goe as  
ye trowe, for Ogyer is not suche as  
ye make him, and yf the kynge were  
not: the thyng shoulde goe oherwise  
than ye ween, Ogyer is suche a kni-  
ght as al the world knoweth, nor in  
his lignage was neuer no man boz-

ne that made treason, but he is the  
best knyght in all fraunce of all sy-  
des. But we merueile howe Charles  
mayne suffereth you to take so grete  
a pryde vpon you, and if he suffereth  
it: we will not doo so for no chynge  
that can come of it. Whan Charles  
maine sawe this great noyse betwene  
hys barons: he was ryght wrothe &  
sayde to Rowland. Faire newe we lee  
this alone, for it longeth not to you  
to saye so, and betwene thys and to  
morrowe I shall enquire of thys ma-  
tere. And yf Ogyer hath doo amys  
in any thing ayenst me I shall make  
hym abyde it full deare, for all they  
in the worlde shall not keep him but  
shall make him be headed for it. Sir  
said Ogyer I wyll well, but there is  
in fraunce no man so pryde ne so har-  
dy, that shall say that I haue doone  
treason ayenst you nor ayenst anye  
other, but that I shall fyghte ayenst  
hym in the quarell, and shall shewe  
to him that he lieth falsly, but and it  
please you to heare me: I shall tell you  
the trouthe of the matter, wyte it s<sup>r</sup>  
that whan I came to the roche Hous-  
bron where the foure sonnes of Ay-  
mon were, and sawe that we were so  
great numbre of folke ayenst foure  
knyghtes all vnarmed: I promysse  
you that I holp them not, nor I was  
not ayenst theym, but wythdore we  
me a syde and lette the other stryfe  
with them, and I stode still and be-  
helde vpon the grete sorowe. For  
I sawe dye my fleshe and my bloud,  
and I myghte not helpe them of no  
thyng, nowe haue I tolde you all the  
trouthe and all that I dyd. And yf ye  
fynde oherwyse than that I tell  
you



you afoze all this noble barons: I  
 Wyl be soze punyshed. But by the  
 sayth that I owe to god, yf euer I  
 fynde me in any place where I maye  
 helpe them: I shall helpe them with al  
 my power, yf I should lose my heade  
 for it. For all the world ought to hate  
 me by cause I sayled them at their  
 need, for they be my cosyns, and ye  
 say haue doone so muche to them that  
 it shoulde suffice you, for they be not  
 so muche gyltye of that they be char-  
 ged of, as men make semblaunt: but  
 by the virgin Marye as longe as I  
 shall lyue I shall not sayle them of  
 that I may doo, ouer half was Row-  
 land for to haue smitren me wrong-  
 fully, and without anye cause, but I  
 will well that he knowe that yf he,  
 sawe Reynawde mouned vpon his  
 horse bayard: he should not take him  
 for a rybar, nor he should not dare  
 abyde him bodye to bodye for all the  
 golde of spayne. Whan Rowlande  
 hearde Ogier speake thus: he sayd to  
 him, by god Ogier ye haue prayled  
 him muche, and ye make hym wun-  
 derfull hardye, but I praye god that  
 I maye once fynde him vpon bayard  
 bys good horse all armed fro heade  
 to toe, for to knowe yf he be so val-  
 aunt as ye make him. Wit that god  
 hearde the prayer of Rowlande, for  
 Rowland not long after that: found  
 Reynawde vpon bayarde, and I  
 tell you that Rowlande helde hym  
 not sych for no rybar nor for knaue  
 but tooke him for the best knyght of  
 the worlde. But the history leueth  
 nowe to tell of the kynge Charle-  
 mayne of fraunce, of Rowland and  
 of Ogier the dane, and of the. xli. pe-

res of fraunce that been at the siege  
 afoze Mouna Whan, and retourneth  
 to speake of Reynawde, that was yll  
 at ease for the loue of Richarde his  
 brother that was wounded to deatch  
 in the roche Montbrun.

**N**ow sheweth the history that  
 after Reynawde had discom-  
 fytred the frenshemen: he returned a-  
 gain toward roche Montbrun where  
 he had left his brother Richard thus  
 wounded as ye haue heard. And whan  
 he was come there and sawe his  
 brother so horrible wounded: he could  
 not keep hym from weping, and said  
 Alas what shall I doo whan I haue  
 lost my deare brother the best frend  
 that I haue in the worlde: And after  
 he had sayde that worde: he fel to the  
 grounde from Bayarde in a swoon.  
 And whan Alarde, and Guicharde,  
 sawe theyr brother that was falle:  
 they beganne to make theyr mone of  
 Richarde pitteously. And whan Rei-  
 nawde was come agayne to himself:  
 he made great sorowe with his two  
 bretheren Alarde, and Guichard, vpon  
 Richarde their brother that laye  
 vpon the earthe with his bowelles  
 betwene his handes. And this han-  
 gng: came Hawgis vpon broykard:  
 re his good horse the best that meine  
 worste after bayarde, and held a peece  
 of a spere in his hande. And whan  
 he sawe Reynawde make suche a so-  
 rowe: he was right sorre for it. And  
 whan he sawe Richarde thus soze  
 wounded: he was worthe and hadde  
 great pyrie for to see the wound that  
 was so greare, for men sawe the luer  
 within his body. Thenne sayd he to  
 Rey:

Reynawode, saye Cosyn take heed  
what I shall saye and leaue this so-  
rowe, ye knowe well that ye beall  
my cosyns and therfore we ought to  
perforce oure selfe for to socoure the  
one the other whan it is need. I ha-  
ue socoured you manye tymes, and  
wite it that all the harme that Char-  
lemaine bereth to me, it is al through  
your occasion, he slew my facher but  
late, wherof I beare yet at my hert  
greate heaumpnes, that was your vn-  
cle that died for your loue that know  
ye well. But yf ye will promise me  
afore all your batons for to come  
with me in to the tente of the kynge  
Charlemayne and helpe me to saue  
hym for to auenge vpon hym the  
death of my saide facher yf we can:  
I shall deliuer to you Richard sup-  
now whole and sound without any  
soze. And whan Reynawode under-  
stode these wordes: he came vnto  
Mawgis, & kissed him in the brest  
all weeping and said to hym. Aghte  
sweet and saye cosyn for god mercy  
help me to me again my brother Ry-  
chard whole yf it please you. And yf  
ye will that I doo any thyng for you:  
comaund me, and I shall doo it with  
right good hert. For ye wot wel that  
I dyd neuer any thyng that was a-  
penst your will, nor there is no man  
in the worlde, for whome I wolde,  
doo so much as I wolde doo for you.  
whan Mawgis sawe Reynawode  
weep so tenderly: he had greate pite  
of it and sayde to him. Nowe be not  
dismayed of no thyng saye cosyne,  
for ye shall haue Richard whole  
and sounde incontynence. And than  
lyghed downe from his horse, and

toke a bottell with white wine and  
washed þe wounde of Richard ther-  
withall ryght well, and had away  
all the blood: that was about. And  
be not meruaylled whete he gat all  
suche thynges as apperteyned vnto  
this cure: for he was the subtileste  
nygromancer that euer was in the  
worlde. And whan he had doone soo:  
he toke his bowelles and put them  
agayne in to his bodye, and than he  
toke a nedell and a chede, and sewed  
vp the wounde full maysterly & hur-  
red not Richard, and after he tooke  
a salve. wherof he anoynted all the  
wounde, and as soon as the wound  
was thus anoynted: it was as whol  
as though he had neuer be hurt in  
that place of his body. And whan he  
had doone al this: he took a drinke &  
gaue it to Richard for to drinke, &  
whan Richard had dronken it he ro-  
se lyghtly vpon his feete al deliuered  
and quyre fro his disease, and sayde  
to his bytherne, whete is Ogier go-  
ne and his folke, are they scaped fro  
vs? brother answered Reynawode we  
haue dyscomfyted them, God gra-  
mercy and Mawgis that came for  
to succoure vs, for other wyse we  
shuld haue ben al dead, & so he hath  
sawed vs and our lyues at this tyme  
now ought we well to loue him more  
than our selfe, brother sayde Richard  
de ye saye it touch, and after Alarde  
sayde to Mawgis, saye cosyn heale  
me I pray you, for I haue a greate  
wounde in the thie. And I also sayd  
Reynawode for I am hurt right soze,  
and I also sayde Guychard, for god-  
des loue grue vs heath vnto al vs,  
than sayde Mawgis vnto them,



The booke of the four

be not dismayed my sayre colynes, for I shal helpe you all anon. Then rooke Hawgis of the white wyne, wherof he had washed the wounde of Richard, and washed their woundes of them all and after anoynted them sweetly and anon they were all whole. And whan they were all gathered: they made Richard to light vpon a horse, and put them self to the way for to returne againe to Mountauban. And thus they went on their way: a spye departed fro the felowship of Reinarwode and came to Mountauban, to the king you and sayde to him. Sir I bringe you tydynges. Now wit that Reinarwode and his brethren been scaped fro the plaine of Galcolours where that ye had sente them, and they haue dyscomfited Ogier the dane & al the folke of Charlemaine, and also they haue slaine Fouques of Morillon and the earle Guimard, & so many of other knightes that I ca not tel you the nombre.

**A**nd whan the king you vnderstoode these tidings: he was sore abashed of it that he wold not what he should saye, and after he said. Alas how goeth this: here ben euil tydynges, how may this be? yd they fynde the busshement of the kynge Charlemaine: Syr sayde the spye, yea certaynly and shoulde haue been cursedly handled if their cosyne Hawgis had not socoured them, & for þat socours that Hawgis brought with him: Ogier was dyscomfited & all his folke of Charlemaine, so that fewe of them scaped. For Hawgis

brought to Reinarwode Bayarde his good horse, that was cause of all the harme that was doon there of the other parte. Alas unhappy myschance said than the king you and what shal I doo: if I abide Reinarwode, Hawgis Alard, Guycharde and Richard: I am deade without doubte, for all the worlde canne not defende me therfro. And also it were well tyght, no Reinarwode shoulde doo but well yf he slewe me cruelly. For I haue wel deserved death, for neuer Judas ne the Emperour Heron of Rome made so great a treason as I haue doone that wolde haue brought to a cruel death the best knightes of the worlde, that been the four sonnes of Aimon for the cheryng of a pryncce. And whan he had said these wordes: he bega for to make great sorowe, and saide. My sayre sister Clare, this daye shal departe our loue, ye shal neuer see me more. This day shal I forsake Gascoigne, for I shal neuer come againe therin. And than he cried with an high voice. Now go hence faire lordes for goddes sake, be lyghly ready for the need of it is now come, and lette vs goe bringe with vs the best knyghtes that I & ye haue and if we may doo so much to get the woode of þat serpent whiche is a great forrest: we shal be safe ynough, & we shal maye scape at our ease. For we shal lodge our self within an abbay of saint Lazare, and we shal take such habyte as the monkes there haue. And by all thus shal we may be saued. For I know so much goodnes in Reinarwode that whan he shal fynde vs thorne as Monkes: he shal doo vs no harme

harme. Than was there a spye that was called Pygwade that was so great that he had well .xv. fote of length, and went as fast as anye horse coulde trot. This Pygwade had wol heard all that the kyng yon had sayd, & wrote it in a skinne of Parchement, and wrote lightye ought of Mounta Whan at the gate called the gate sawcon, and passed throughe the wood of the serpent in a litle while and met With Reynawde, his brethren & Hawgis that came agayne to Mounta whan, that brought with them a great multitude of prysoners and Pigwade that great theefe watched upon them. And anon he ranne as fast as he might to Mountbendell and went into the pavilion of Charlemayne and called Rowlande and sayde to hym. Syr I shall tell you suche tydynge, wherby ye shall get good ynoughe, yf ye wyll beleue me, and I shall tell you a thyng wherof ye shal be ryght glad. Good frende sayde than Rowlande, thou art welcom to me, & what tidinges bringest thou tel me I praye thee. Syr sayde Pygwade, wyl it that the kyng yon fleeth a way all unarmed, he and all his folke and hath wyth theym nother somer nor wyle, but onelye theyr best horses, and they go into the wood of the serpent into a house of religion, whiche is named saint Lazare, & he himselfe is delibered for to take the habite and to be come a monk. By my fayth sayd tha Rowlande I shal go meet with them anon with foure thousande knyghtes, and I shall auenge Reynawde & his brethren vpon them, and I shal make

them to be hanged as traytours. For I neuer loued traytours nor neuer shall and God wyll. Syr sayde pigwade yet is there moze, for I haue found Reynawde, his brethren and Hawgis that came ouer the ryuer of balancon, that bringerth with the many prysoners of your folke. And yf ye wyll fynde theym: ye muste go that waye. frende sayd Rowlande ye haue deserued a great reward, for ye haue brought to vs good tydynge. Than Rowlande called to hym Olyuer, and sayd. Olyuer my good & true felaw, lyght vpon your horse quickly, and bring wyth you Guiddellon and Richard of Normandy & ye syr Ogger of Denmarke ye shall come with me, if it please you, and ye shall see the great promesse of Reynawde the sonne of Aymon, and we shal take with vs but foure thousand men, and yet Reynawde is fine thousand well horsed and well arayed. And thus we shal mowe fyght with them wout any auantage. Certes sayde Ogger I shall goe there to see how ye shall haue hym. And whan ye haue taken hym: I promyse you to lend you a rope yf ye haue need of it. And whan they had al deuised they mounted on horsebacke, and toke theyr waye. And the greater sbawde guided them stright to the riuer of Balancon, and the king of Gascoyn rode than throughe the woodes of the serpent wyth his folke, and he rode so longe that he arriued at the monastery of saint Lazare. And they prayed the abbot of the place so muche that he made them monkes in the deuils name. This hangynge came there



## The booke of the foure

Roland and Olyner with theyr folke that entred anon into the abbay. And whan the abbot saw them he came them agaynst, and all the couent singyng *Te deum laudamus*. And whan they had songe: þe abbot sayd to Roland. Syr ye be ryght welcome, wyll ye haue any thyng þe we may doo: lord abbot sayd Rolande we thanke you with all our harte. But wyt that we seeke heere the falsest traytour of the worlde, þe men call the kynges son of Gascon the which is heere within, for I wil hange hym lyke a theefe.

**T**han answered the abbot, ye shall not syr and please you, for he is become our monke, and also he hath taken the habite, and therefore we shall defende hym agaynst all men. Whan Rolande heard the abbot speake so: he tooke hym by the hood. And Olyner tooke the priour that was nyghe and they shoued the so pyetely agaynst a pillar of marble stone that theyr eyen lept out of their heads. And than Rolande sayd to þe abbot. Now mayster monke deliuer to me lyghtly that deuyl the king son whyche is the brother of Judas, or els I shall make an ende of you, for I haue sworne that he shal neuer doo treason moze. Whā the abbot vnderstoode this that Rolande sayde to him: he and all his monkes fled awai from him. And whan Rolande saw this: he set hande at his good swerde Durandall, and entred into the cloyster, where he founde the kynges son kneeling befoze an Image of our la-

die, and was clad with the habite of religion, and the hode vpon his head. And whan Rolande sawe hym: he knew him well. For he had seen him with his vncle Charlemayne. Than he tooke him and sayde to hym, syr monke in the Devils name conne ye well your lesson, arysle vp with sorowe and come with me for to see the kyng Charlemayne. For he shal make you to be hāged as a traytour proued euill king and a felon. Where be the foure sonnes of Jymon that ye should haue deliuered vnto Charlemayne: ye shalbe paid for the treason that ye haue doone, and I with mine handes shal auenge Reynawde and hys brethren vpon you, & whan he had sayd this: he made the kynges son to be set vpon a horse, and blinded his eyen with a cloute that he myght not see nothyng. And than gaue him the monkes hode vpon his head. And thus sat in the saddle the face towarde the horse taylor, and the backe forwarde. The king son made none other thinge but that he wysshed styll after Reynawde and hys brethren and sayd. Alas and that I dyd greāt harme, whan that I confessed to this mortall treason, now ought I well to dye ten tymes if it might be so. For I haue wel deserued death. Whan the king son had sayde this: he sayd to one of his priuy counsell þe he herd nyghe him, how wel he saw not. Freend go to Mountaubā and tell Reynawde that he come to succoure me, for he is my man, and that he take no heede to nī trespass and euil dede, but to his fraunchise, for

For a he let me dye so: he shal be ther-  
of rep:ued & blamed euermore, a hys  
pylme shalbe dyshonoured by it. And  
yf he can recouer me: I wyll that he  
make my tonge to be cut of wherby  
I dyd consent to the treason, or elles  
my heade, yf it semeth him good for  
I haue well deserued it ayenst hym.  
Sp: sayde the knyght I shal not goe  
there, for I wot well that Reynawd  
wyll not let one foot out to saue you,  
bycause of the greace harme that ye  
wolde haue doon to hym, he shal sayd  
the kynge yon, for I knowe so much  
by hym that he shal not late there a-  
yent. Sp: I wyll than goe to hym  
With a good wyll sych that it please  
you, and god grue that Reynawd his  
bretherne and Hawgys wyll come  
and helpe you, for I knowe wel that  
ye haue greace neede of it but yf god  
helpe you. Thys hangyng: Olyuet  
sayde to Rowlande, Rowlande good  
fela W myne, what shal we doo with  
this vnuappy kynges frende sayde  
Rowland we shal lede hym to moult-  
fawcon, and we shal leue Balancon  
at the ryght hand. And this they did  
for to fynde Reynawd and his bre-  
therne, for Rowlande was soze Will-  
lynge to fynde Reynawd, his breth-  
ren and Hawgys they: cosyn, good  
lorde sayde Ogyet the Dane by thy  
pyrie and mysetyrod graunt to Row-  
lande his prayer and his wyll, that  
is that we may fynde Reynawd and  
Hawgys, for to see how Rowland  
shal bete himselfe, and yf he shoulde  
take them or no, for I knowe well  
that none shal put downe hys pyrde  
but onely Reynawd. But heere

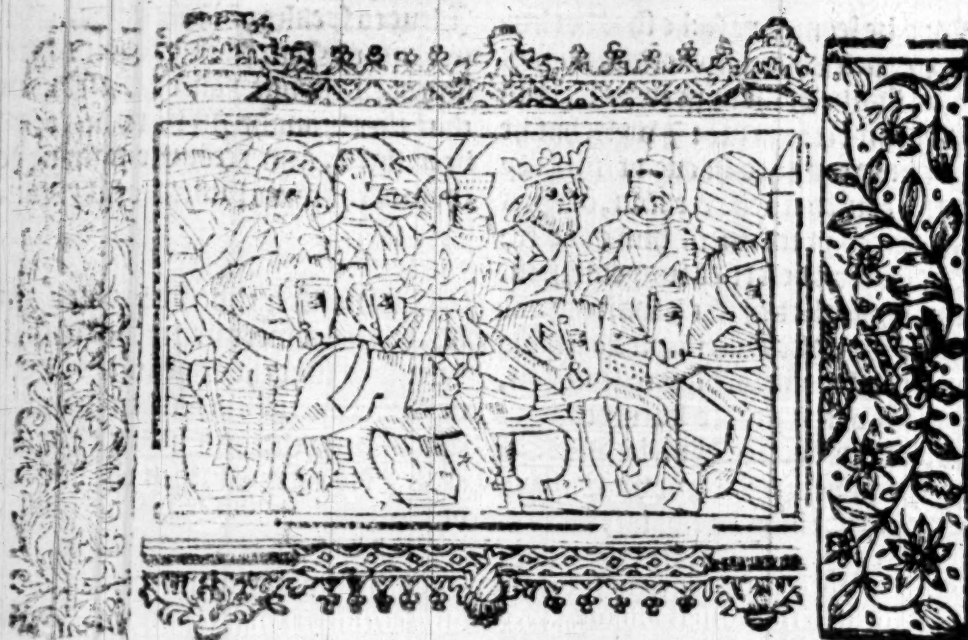
I leue to speake of Rowlande, Oly-  
uet, and of Ogyet, and of their folke,  
and of the kynge yon of Gascoyne  
that they brought wyth them for to  
be hanged, and retourne agayne to  
shew of the foure sonnes of Aymon.

Howe after that Reynawd and  
his brethern were garnished of their  
woundes that they had in the plaine  
of Walcoloures: they went agayne to  
Mouncauban. And howe they res-  
cued the kynge yon from the handes  
of Rowlande.

Capitulum. ff.



# The booke of the foure



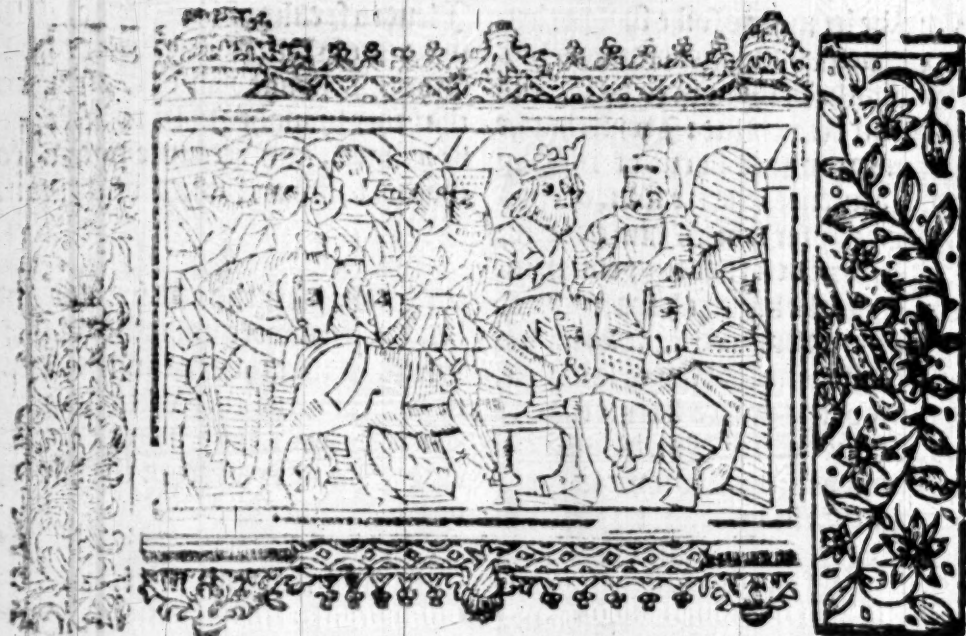
**I**n this paterne sheweth the he-  
 story, that whan Reynard and  
 his brethren were wel whole of their  
 woundes by the helpe of Hawogys  
 that had healed them: they put them  
 selfe into the waye againe toward  
 Mounteban. And whan they were  
 come there: my lady Clare went a-  
 yent thē, and broughte with her two  
 chyldren, yonger and yonger, that  
 had wept and scratched they: sweet  
 bysages so sore that there appered  
 of them nother eye nor mouthes,  
 alwayes they wist not wherfore they  
 dyd so, for they were verre ponge.  
 And she also was all dysfigured for  
 weeping, and of great lamentacions  
 that she made, for she wist well how  
 her brother the kynge yon had be-  
 trayed Reynard her husband and his  
 brethren, and wende that they had  
 been dead. But whan she sawe them  
 come: she was neuer so gladd. And

the two chyldren ran at their fathers  
 feete, & wolde haue kyssed them. And  
 whan Reynard sawe that: he shewed  
 them a way with his feete so strō-  
 ly that he had almoste broste them.  
 And the lady wolde haue taken him  
 in her armes and kyssed hym: but he  
 wold not suffre her, and sayde to her.  
 Ladye goe oute of my syght to your  
 brother that fellon cruel and false  
 traytoure, for ye shall neuer haue my  
 loue again, for it hath not holden in  
 him, but that we shoulde haue be-  
 deade by this tyme yf God and oure  
 colpn Hawogys had not succoured  
 vs, now goe after hym all a foote  
 and without companye, for ye shall  
 not take norhyng of myne and as  
 an euill woman ye shall goe your  
 wayes for ye be the syster of the king  
 yon, the greatest traytoure and the  
 viciouest king of the worlde, and I  
 shall angre your chyldren, for I feare  
 me

me lest they should be traytours as  
they? uncle. Sir for god mercy sayd  
the lady, I shal swere to you vpon al  
halowes that I had doubt of your  
gynge, and many times I dyd tell  
you of it, through the occasion of the  
dreme that I dreamed that night, and  
I tolde you that ye should not beleue  
the king my brother. And not with-  
standyng that he was my brother: I  
doubted this & is be fallen syth. Sir  
for God I cry you mercy, for in this  
I am nothinge giltye, and so God  
haue mercy of my soule. For I loue  
moche better & least roe of your foo-  
te, than al king yon my brother, nor  
all the lande of Gascoyn. And whan  
she had sayd this: she fel do wne in a  
swoune vpon the feete of Reynawde.  
And whā Guicharde saw the Ladye  
in a swoune: he tooke her vp & sayde  
to her. Madame discomfote nor your  
selfe so sore, let Reynawde saye hys  
wyl. for ye be our owne Ladye and  
our syster, now be of good cheere, as  
long as we be aliue we shal not fayle  
you and thoughe our brother Rey-  
nawde saye you we shal not doo so,  
but we shal serue you wyth all our  
hert. Brother sayd Rycharde let vs  
doo one thyng, go we pray our bro-  
ther Reynawde that he pardon my la-  
dy our syster hys euill wyl, for she  
is not gilty in the mater. And yf we  
wolde haue beleued her: we should  
not haue gone one foote out of thys  
place, and now we ought to shewe  
the green and the russet Mantelles  
of cymynes the good hoxles and pal-  
freys that mi lady did giue vs more  
oftener than did Reynawde, now let  
vs rewarde her for it for she hath

my lre of it, and ac pende: the freen-  
de is knowen. By my sayth sayd Al-  
larde ye saye well. And than wente  
the thre brethren vnto Reynawde  
and drew hym a syde, and after Al-  
larde sayd to hym. Forre brother for  
goddes loue be not thus angrey, for  
ye knowe & my Ladye hath no culpe  
at all the reason that her brother &  
king yon hath doone to vs. For if ye  
wolde haue beleued her: we should  
not haue gone thither. Wherfore we  
praye you that ye wyl pardon her.  
Than sayd Reynawde, my brethren  
for the loue of you I graunt & same  
and I pardon her myne euill wyl  
presently. Whan the brethren vnder-  
stode him: they were ryght glad, and  
came to the Ladye Clare, and sayd to  
her. Madame be of good cheere and  
make ioye, for we haue made your  
peace. And than Alarde and Guy-  
charde tooke her by the handes, and  
brought her to her husband Reynawde  
& whan Reynawde saw her: he went  
and tooke her by the chyn and kissed  
her. And than began the ioy and the  
feast ryght great at Mountaiban.  
And they washed their handes and  
went to theyr meate. And thus as  
they sat at the table: there came in &  
messenger of the king yon, that cam  
to Reynawde, and whā he was afoze  
Reynawde: he sayd to hym. Syr the  
kyng yon sendeth you word by me  
that ye com to succour him, for other-  
wyse he cannot scape the death. For  
Rowland and Plyner ledeth him for  
to be hanged at Mountaiban, and  
doo thys sye yf it please you for god  
and beholde not his euill wyl, but  
take heed to your goodnes, for oure





**I**n this picture sheweth the hi-  
story, that whan Reinard and  
his brethren were wel whole of their  
woundes by the helpe of Hawgys  
that had healed them: they put them  
selve into the waye againe towarde  
Moutawba. And whan they were  
come there: my ladye Clare went a-  
rent the, and broughte with her two  
chylidren, yonnet and Anonnet, that  
had weot and scratched they: sweet  
disfiges so sore that there appered  
of them nother eye nor mouthes,  
alwayes they wist not whatfoze they  
dyd so, for they were verry ponge.  
And she also was all dysfigured for  
weepynge, and of great lamentacions  
that she made, for she wist well how  
her brother the kynge yon had be-  
trayed Reinard her housbond and his  
brotherne, and wende that they had  
been dead. But whan she sawe them  
come: she was neuer so gladder. And

the two chylidren ran at their fathers  
feete, & wolde haue kyssed them. And  
whan Reinard sawe that: he shoued  
them a way with his feete so strö-  
lye that he had almoste broste them.  
And the lady wolde haue taken him  
in her armes and kyssed hym: but he  
wold not suffre her, and sayde to her.  
Ladye goe oute of my sighte to your  
brother that fellon cruel and false  
traytoure, for ye shall neuer haue my  
loue again, for it hath not holden in  
him, but that we shoulde haue be-  
deade by this tyme yf God and oure  
cousyn Hawgys had not succoured  
vs, now we goe after hym all a foote  
and without companye, for ye shall  
not take nothyng of myne and as  
an euill woman ye shall goe your  
wayes for ye be the syder of the king  
yon, the greatest traytoure and the  
vneruest kinge of the woerde, and I  
shall angre your chylidren, for I feare  
me

me lest they should be traytours as  
theyr vncle. Sir for god mercy sayd  
the lady, I shal sweare to you vpon al  
halowes that I had doubte of your  
gorgne, and many times I dyd tell  
you of it, throught the occasion of the  
dreme that I dreamed that night, and  
I tolde you that ye should not beleue  
the king my brother. And not with-  
standyng that he was my brother: I  
doubted this & is be fallen syth. Sir  
for God I cry you mercy, for in this  
I am nothinge guiltye, and so God  
haue mercy of my soule. For I loue  
moche better & least to be of your foo-  
te, than al king yon my brother, nor  
all the lande of Gascoyn. And whan  
she had sayd this: she fel do wne in a  
swoune vpon the feete of Reynawde.  
And whā Gylcharde saw the Ladye  
in a swoune: he tooke her vp & sayde  
to her. Madame discomfote not your  
selfe so sore, let Reynawde saye hys  
Wyll, for ye be our owne Ladye and  
our syster, now be of good cheere, as  
long as we be aliue we shal not faile  
you and thoughe our brother Rey-  
nawde saye you we shal not doo so,  
but we shal serue you wyth all our  
hert. Brother sayd Rycharde let vs  
doo one thyng, go we pray our bro-  
ther Reynawde that he pardon my la-  
dy our syster hys euill wyll, for she  
is not guilty in the mater. And yf we  
wolde haue beleued her: we should  
not haue gone one foote out of thys  
place, and now we ought to shewe  
the green and the russet Mantelles  
of ermynes the good horses and pal-  
freys that mi lady did giue vs moze  
oftener than did Reynawde, now let  
vs rewarde her for it for she hath

mystre of it, and at yende: the treene  
be is knowen. By my faith sayd A-  
larde ye saye well. And than wente  
the thre brethren vnto Reynawde  
and drewe hym a syde, and after A-  
larde sayd to hym. Fafre brother for  
goddes loue be not thus angrey, for  
ye knowe & my Lady hath no culpe  
at all the treason that her brother &  
king yon hath doone to vs. For if ye  
wolde haue beleued her: we should  
not haue gone thether. Wherfore we  
praye you that ye wyll pardon her.  
Then sayd Reynawde, my brethren  
for the loue of you I graunt & same  
and I pardon her myne euill wyll  
presently. Whan the brethren vnder-  
stode him: they were ryght glad, and  
came to the Lady Clare, and sayd to  
her. Madame be of good cheere and  
make ioye, for we haue made your  
peace. And than Alarde and Guy-  
charde tooke her by the handes, and  
brought her to her husband Reynawde  
& whan Reynawde saw her: he went  
and tooke her by the chyn and kissed  
her. And than began the ioy and the  
feast ryght great at Mountauban.  
And they wasshed their handes and  
went to theyr meate. And thus as  
they sat at the table: there came in &  
messenger of the king yon, that cam  
to Reynawde, and whā he was afoze  
Reynawde: he sayd to hym. Syr the  
kyng yon sendeth you word by me  
that ye com to succour him, for other-  
wyse he cannot scape the death. For  
Rowland and Olyuer ledeth him for  
to be hanged at Mountawdon, and  
doo thys sy: yf it please you for god  
and beholde not his euill wyll, but  
take heed to your goodnes, for our



Lordes pardonned Mary Magdalen and longis of their sinnes. He knoweth well þ he hath deserued death for the great faute that he hath doon to you, and yf ye slea him: he pardoneth to you his death.

**O**ddes curse haue he sayd I larde that shall set hys foore thitherwarde, noz that shal bye him agayne though he might be had for a strawe, but goddes curse haue Rowland yf he hageth him not as a traytour approued. Whā Reynawde had heard this that the messenger sayd: he looked downwarde and studied a good while that he sayd no worde, & whan he had thought long ynough: he begā to wepe beholding his brethren, for a good herte can not lye whā it cometh to a need. Than sayd he a good reason as a noble knight. Lordes sayd Reynawde to hys brethren & to his knyghtes, Now heare what I wyll say to you. Ye knowe how I was disherited at paris wyngfully vpon a feast of Penthecoste that Charlemaine helde open court and full in hys palays, where was a compani of great lordes. For there were. vii. hundred knyghtes all gentylmen bothe of name and of armes and a hondred what of Dukes and of Erles, and more than foure scoze byshopes, and many barons, & that tyme was slayne the duke Benes of Hygremount myne vncl that was so good a knyght as men knew wel. I dyd aske right for him to Charlemaine afore all hys courte: wherof the kynge rebuked me and called me

all to nought, and greate insurpe he sayd to me. And whan I sawe that þ kyng repzeued me thus: I was wrothe and right angry for it, & I beheld vpon my brethren and knewe theyr stomackes, and saw myne enemyes befoze me, so neded not that I should haue sought them els where. And it suffised them not of that I had be outraged by Charlemaine: but that Berthelot outraged me of newe, he and I playinge at the Chesses, wherof I tooke þ chesse boorde and smote hym with it so greata stroke vpon hys head that I slew hym afore my feet. And Leues a nother neuw of Charlemaine wolde haue slayne my brother Richard and had hurte hym all redy full soze. But I smote hym in such wise with my fist þ I feld him do wne dead afore me to therth, & whan Charlemaine wyll of it: he wolde haue made me to be killed & helld into peeces, but my kynsmen wolde not suffre it, for there was gerat medlyng so that many strokes were gauen. And whan the medlyng was ended: I mounted vpon Bayarde & my brethren I made to moue also thone befoze & the two other behynde me, and thus rode we al foure vpon my horse bayarde, & so came to Trepyne, where I dyd buylde a castell. And there Charlemaine came and beseged me, and made sweare my good father Aimon þ he should neuer helpe vs wyth none of all his goods, and that he should be vnterly apenste vs and in lyke wise he forclosed me fro all my kynsmen þ none of them was not so hardy for to haue shewed to vs þ least fauour of

of þ world. Fayre bretherne ye knowe wel the great pouertie that we haue endured so longe time. And whan I sawe that I wylt not where to go I came into this lande wylth suche a felawship as ye knowe, & I spake to the kynge Pon and shewed hym howe I had watre agaynst Charlemayne, and he shewed me great loue and made me great honour so that he gaue me his systerto my wyfe, and with her a duchy, & builded a house for me. And of the other parte my chyldren are hys newes, where of thone beareth his name, þ is pount, and ye see them here, and I haue saued hym hys Reame and all hys lande, and all his rebelles I haue made come to seeke mercy of hym, & I found him neuer in faute, but Charlemayne is so great and so myghty a kynge, and also ye knowe well that he hath ouercome and dysshonoured many good me, and for fere of him: the kynge Pon betrayed vs, wherof he is not to be blamed ouermuche, seynge that agaynst Charlemayne no thinge hath power. And therfore þe the kynge Pon deliuered me to Charlemayne: it was by euill counsell þ some of hys barons gaue hym. For god made neuer so good a man, but that, that he misdoeth by euill counsell somtyme. And how can I leaue hym whan I haue not mystrusted him afore tyme: me semeth that I ought to shew hym goodnes agaynst felonye. Therfore I pray you all that ye wyl make you redy, for I wyl goe succour him. For it were great reproche to my chyldren that theyr vncle should be hanged as a theefe, and it

were to vs a great dishonour, for he is our lord, and if he had doone cull: we ought to doo well agaynst it, and also we ought not to forget the bene faytes that the kynge pon hath doone to vs, and I promise you that the faute and the treason that he hath doone is not come through his malice, but through euill counsell. For yf it had be onely by hys moeyon: I wolde see the hert from the bodye of hym, but I wor wel nay, for Charlemayne is of so great power that euery man feareth him. And therfore I tell you that I wil goe rescue him from Rowlande if I can wylth all my power. By my sayth sayd Alard ye shall than goe wythout me, for I shall not put my feet there, for a traitour ought neuer to be holpe nor succoured. For I sayde Guycharde I shall not goe there. & e shall sayd Rycharde and it please you, syth þ Reynawde wyl haue vs to doo so, for he is our Lord and our wel, & therfore I pray you fayre bretherne that ye wyl obey him. Whan Reynawde had concluded that he should goe for to rescue the kynge Pon agaynst the wyl of Alard and of Guycharde: all the Gascoynes that were there began to crye and sayde, blessed be the houre that euer Reynawde was bozne. For no man erthely is worthe hym of goodnes and of prowes, and than they sayde to Reynawde. Syr we shall giue vp to you all the lande of Gascoyne, and shall make you the Lord of it. For there shall be neuer none other lord in Gascoyne but you as longe as ye shall lyue so that for god ryght sweet syr that



ye suffre not the kynges yon to behaue  
a waye to Charlemayne, for it were  
a great shame to all them of the rea-  
me of Goscoryn that men had hanged  
theyr kyng. By my soule sayd Keina-  
wode ye say crouch. And than he tooke  
his hounet and blew it thre tymes so  
stronglye that he made all Moun-  
tawban to sowne with it. And inco-  
tynent without abydinge thei of the  
countrie wente and armed them and  
came before Keinawode, and whā thei  
were all redy: Keinawode lighted vpon  
bayarde, the helde at the necke  
and the spere in the hande, and they  
were well in hys felowship for thou-  
sande men on horsebacke, and well  
a thousande a foote. And whan thei  
were out of Mowntawban: Keina-  
wode spake to his folke and sayd to them,  
Lordez remembre you that your lord  
is in great daunger and in perill of  
death, and but if we fight stronglye  
he is dead without remedye, wherfore  
I pray you all that ye doo this daye  
that, that shall turne to our wo-  
lupp. And whan Keinawode had said  
these wordes: he wente agayne to-  
warde hys brethren and sayd to the,  
fayre brethren ye know that Row-  
land hateth me to death & not thou-  
gh my defaute: but only through en-  
uye. Wherfore I pray you that ye at-  
tende vpon me this day: and ye shall  
see me doo as a good knight, & this  
day the pryde of Rowlande must be  
lepde or els mine a downe. Whan A-  
larde hearde his brother Keinawode  
speake so: he sayde to hym. And wher-  
of care you be sure and certayn that  
as longe that lyfe is in our bodies:  
we shall not fayle you, and with this

word they put them to the waye.  
And Keinawode tooke two thousand  
knyghtes and gaue them to Alarde  
and Guichard & sayd to them. Fayre  
brethren ye shall make the forwarde &  
keep your men in good ordinaunce, &  
I & my brother Richard shall make  
the reregarde, for sayde Alarde we  
shall doo it well yf god will, and thā  
they rode forth so longe y they sawe  
the folke of Rowland nygh them, &  
whan Alarde aperceyued theym: he  
made hys mete tary and sent worde  
to Keinawode that he shoulde make  
haste to come, for they had founde  
theyr enemies. And whan Keina-  
wode wiste of these rydings: he made hys  
folke to ryde hastily and came anon  
to Alarde his brother, and whan he  
saw his enemies: he put his folke in  
arraye, & deuised his batayles honest-  
ly as a good capitayne of warre.

**W**han whan Rowland saw so  
great folke: he called to hym  
the bysshop Turpin & Guydellon of  
baupert & sayd to the. Lordez now be  
holde, I se ponder many folke armed  
might y be Keinawode and his bre-  
therne wherof the renome is so great  
and of theyr colin Hawgys the sub-  
till knyght: for sayde the bysshop  
Turpin, yea they be tho verely, and  
also I tell you they make themselte  
to be well knowe whersoever they  
goe and I tell you that wee cannot  
saue vs, but that we muste medle w  
the. Whan Ogier sawe Keinawode:  
he joynd & heued his handes toward  
heauen and sayd. O god blessed thou  
be that haste suffred Rowlande to  
fynde Keinawode his brethren and  
Hawgys, certes who that gaue me

athousande marke of golde I shoulde  
not be so glad, for Rowlande hath  
nowe all his desyre, and certayne I  
am ryght glad that we haue founde  
them. Nowe shall I see how he shal  
beate himselfe apent this balliaunce  
Reynard his byerherne and Ma-  
wys, a whan he had said this: he tur-  
ned him selfe to warde Rowlande and  
said to him. Rowlande nowe haue ye  
that ye haue desired so longe, and I  
am glad that it is come so, for nowe  
shal I see how ye shal take the. For  
it ye can take them a liue & byng the  
to Charlemain: he shal con you great  
thanke for it, and so shall bayard be  
pout owne that ye haue so sope desi-  
red, and the warre shal be thus finy-  
shed. Ogier Ogier saide than Row-  
lande, these ben reproches that ye tel  
me. But by sapint Derys of fraunce  
ye shal see or eurn: who shal be mar-  
ster of vs two. Rowlande said Ogier,  
no w shall it be seen what ye can doo.  
Whan Rowlande knew that he muste  
haue medling with his enemyes: he  
ordained all his battaille as he coulde  
wel doo, and after he let his folke in  
ordenaunce or battaille the best that he  
myght. And whan Reynard sawe  
that Rowlande ordeyned his battail-  
les: he called his byerherne and saide  
to thim. Lordes heere come the fren-  
shemen, yonder is Rowlande, Oly-  
uer, and the Duke narries of Baul-  
et, and Ogier the dane, ye shal abyde  
heere for to make the tregarde and if  
we haue mystre of helpe: come and  
helpe vs. Syr sayd Maugis ye ma-  
ke to longe sermon, delpyer you for  
we tary to longe fro sawynge vpon  
our enemyes. Colyn sayde Reynard

ye say wel, and ye speake lyke a good  
knyght. For ye haue I nor better  
knyghte than ye be one whan I see  
you armed bi me. Nowe thinke to doo  
wel, for I goe fyrst of all for to ouer-  
thowe the pryde of Rowlande that is  
so grete as euery man knoweth, &  
I pray you al that euery man doo his  
part with all his power.

**A**nd whan the byerherne vnder-  
stood that Reynard wolde goe  
proue himselfe vpon Rowlande: they  
began al thre to weepe & said. A by-  
ther, & will ye that ye and we be deade  
all at ones: for ye can slea your selfe  
no better than to proue yourselfe vpon  
Rowlande. For he is ouermyche  
prue and balliaunt, & also he can not  
be hurte with yron, but we pray you  
that ye will assay your selfe vpon the  
other and let rowlande alone. Lordes  
sayde Reynard: ye haue spoken ful  
wel, I know wel that Rowlande is  
baroye & prue, and that his marche is  
not in the world of knyghthode, but I  
am in the ryght, & he is in the wrong  
whiche shall nowe turne hym to a  
great harme, and therefore I will not  
refuse, but that I shal goe apent him  
but and if he will peace: he shal ha-  
ue it, and if he wil haue warre: he shal  
fynde me redye to receyue hym ther-  
to. For I haue leuer dye than be long  
sycke. Nowe I praye you speake  
no more of fe, but see if ye beate your  
selfe well apent our enemyes. for we  
haue to doo apent many a noble kni-  
ght. Colyn saide Maugis: thynke to  
assayle well. For ye shal be succou-  
red ryght wel. Than the worthy and  
balliaunt knyght Reynard went  
also



afore all the other With his shield at  
the necke, and his spere in his hande  
sprynge vpon baiard. Whan row-  
lande sawe reynard come With his  
folke Well ordeyed: he shewed it to  
Dipuer and said. fela we What thinke  
you of this folke: see how they come  
towards vs in good arape. Lettes  
rowlande sayde Dipuer, reynard  
knoweth more of warre than any o-  
ther knyghte that liues, and the most  
gracious. For there is none so pooze  
a knyght in the worlde if he come to  
him, but he shall be ryghte Welcome  
to him, and yf he come a foore: he shal  
set him anon on horsebacke. And yf  
he be yll appointed: he shall anon a-  
rape him after his estate. Is not this  
a great goodnes of him: ye be my sou-  
le saide to rowlande, and he dothe wel,  
For if he did otherwyse: he myghte  
not abide longe ayenst myne vncle  
Charlemayne. And me semeth sayde  
ayen Dipuer, that he hath well thre  
tymes mo folke than we haue, wher-  
of he myghte Well get vpon vs, but  
yf we take better heede, for they been  
Well subtyll folke. Dipuer sayd row-  
lande ye saye trouche, but ye knowe  
well the Gasconnes ben cowardes  
of very kynde, and can not abyde no  
stroke of swerde, but that they wyll  
flee byghte away, that is true sayde  
the byshop Turpyn, but they haue  
with them a good gurdy as any is  
in all the worlde. And wit it sy row-  
lande, that the valyaunte man: cau-  
seth his folke to abide nyghte hym.  
For a worthy captaine is the myz-  
trous & ensaumple to the other for to  
doe well. whan rowlande heard this.  
he wered almost mad, because men

prayed Reynard and his folke so  
much, and With this: he spurred his  
horse and went befoze all his folke  
well the shoc of a bowe sette, and ca-  
me ayenst Reynard. And whan Rei-  
nard sawe Rowlande come alone:  
he saide to Baiard. faye brother be-  
ware vpon as muche as ye loue me:  
that ye moue not, nor your folke, but  
abyde styl heere till that I haue foun-  
ded with Rowlande that cometh a-  
lone, and therfore I wyll no man helpe  
me ayenst him. Whan Reynard had  
sayd this: he spurred baiard with the  
spurres and came ayenst Rowlande  
so fast that they that saw it wend  
Baiard had sloughe in the ayer. For  
the smallest lepe that he lepe was of  
xxx. foot sette or more. And whan he  
was come nigh Rowlande as for to  
haue fouted: Reynard lighted downe  
a foore, and pyght his spere in the  
erthe. And bound baiarde therat, by-  
cause he should haue byde there styl.  
And vngyre flamberge his swerde  
and came befoze Rowlande & presen-  
ted it to him & kneeled afore him and  
killed his foot, & said al wepig, damp  
Rowlande I cry you mercy for the pi-  
tie that our lord had on the crosse vpon  
his mocher whan he comended her  
to saynt John that ye will haue pitie  
vpon me, ye knowe wel that I am your  
kinsman & how be it I am pooze: yet  
shal I be & my brethern your me. And  
also I shal giue you baiard & shal ma-  
ke you lord of Bounta whan, so yf it  
will please you to purchase our peace  
with the king Charlemayne your vn-  
cle, and if it please you for to doo so: I  
shal make al my brethern to graunte  
the same, and I shal forsake fraunce  
all

at my lyte. And I promise you that I shall goe into the holpe lande wyth Hawgys and my bretherne, for to make warre agaynst the Sarasyns, & yf ye thinke that I say wel: brynge it aboute yf ye canne. For yf ye doo it: ye shall haue a felow and a seruaunt of me.

**R**owland had great pitie whā he heard Reynawde speake in this maner, and began to weeperful tenderly: and after sayd to hym. By god Reynawde I dare not speake of it, but if so be that ye wyll deliuer vnto him Hawgys. Alas sayd Reynawde, I should neuer doo y for to dys for it. For Hawgys is no man for to be giue away for to haue peace. And thā he rose vp & toke his swerde and hys weelde. And came to Bayarde and mounted vpon hym wythout stirpe, & than he tooke his spere in his hand. And whan he was wel apparelled: he went agayne to Rowland and sayd to him. Rowland wit that I shall neuer more cry you mercy for fere that I haue of you, but I haue cry you mercy for to beare you worship bicause that ye be of my kin, but sith that I see y ye be so proude that ye will doo nothyng for me nor for my prayer: I shall now deale resonably with you, so the ende that ye shall not now repute nor sape to the other Barons and knightes of Fraunce, that Reynawde the sonne of Aymon hath cryed you mercy for fere. The cause is suche, ye haue wyth you a great company of folke, and also I haue of my syde men ynough thanked be god, and if our folke assēble together: it cannot be other wise,

but that great harme shall fall of both sides. But and ye will: we shall fyght we two together for them all without any helpe of other, and if ye ouercome me: ye shall brynge me to Charlemayne, y shall doo hys pleasure of me, & if I can conquere you ye shall come wyth me to Housatubā vnder condicion y ye shall haue nother euill nor shame, nomore thā shall my owne person.

**S**hall ye doo this that ye haue sayde: sayd Rowlande: ye withoute fault sayd Reynawde. By my hed sayd Rowlande ye shall make me sure therof fynde. Certes sayd Reynawde wyth a good wyll. And thā Reynawde sware it vnto him vpon his parte of paradysse. Reynawde sayd Rowlande I wyl goe take leue of my felaw Oliuer, for I haue promised him that at the batayles y I shall undertake: he shall mo w make them himselfe if it please him. Goe thā sayd Reynawde & make it shorte. And than Rowlande wente agayne to hys felawes. And whan he was come to thē: Hector the sonne of Hector, Oliuer and Ogier the dane asked of him sayinge. Sir Rowlande what saith Reynawde, haue ye spoke with him: yea sayd Rowlande, and what thinke you bi him. Certes said Rowland, Reynawde is a sage knight & well taught, for he hath tequyred me to fyght with him body to body, and that our folke be strill of the one syde and of the other. Rowland sayd Oliuer. ye shall doo in this your pleasure, for other pee or I must fight with him, but I counseil that



## The booke of the fourē

that ye goe there, for as longe as I  
shall lyue I shall not be enemy to Rey-  
nald de ony for his worthynes. For  
Reynald is a knight of great ho-  
nour. Whan the bysshop Turpyn,  
Hector the sonne of Dedon and the  
other Prelles heard this: they began  
to say, Rowland what is that ye wil  
doo: for gods mercy doo it not, for  
Reynald is of your lynage and of  
ours, and if ye bringe him to death:  
we shall neuer loue you after. Syr le-  
ue that offere that Reynald giueth  
to you and make your folke to assem-  
ble with the folke of Reynald, for  
it is better that they be take of youre  
folke, than that the one of your wo-  
were dead: wyl ye that it be so sayde  
Rowland: yea syr yf it please you.

Certes said Rowland it pleaseth me  
ryght well and than he sayd to al his  
folke, Lordes thinke to defende you  
well, for it is now need therof. Syr  
sayd the other haue no doubte of no-  
thyng, for we shall doo wel your co-  
maundement, and than they put the  
selfe in ordinaunce. And Rowland  
began to crye mount ioye saynt De-  
nys, and whan came to settinge on  
with spere: ye should haue seen tha-  
many a knight brought to grounde &  
manye horse that ranne maysterles  
thorough the felde so much that it  
was great pitie for to see so greate a  
destructio of knyghtes as was made  
there. Whan Reynald saw the two  
hostes muste assemble together: he  
spurred Bayarde with the spurres &  
put himself amonge the thickest of  
the frenche men, and smote a knight so  
harde in the breste yf he ouerthrewe  
bothe horse and man to the grounde.

and after smote another so soe that  
neither for sheelde nor for quyras of  
stele he let not but that he thowd the  
pen of his spere thorough and tho-  
rough his bodi, and fell dead to the  
erth, and wit at that stroke he brake  
his spere and Reynald set hande  
lightly to his swerde, and began to  
crye Hountraban as lowde as he  
coude. And than he made so greate  
laughter of frenchemen: that none  
durst abide afoze hym, but fled from  
him as fro death. Shortly to speake  
Reynald did so much thorough his  
strength, & thorough the highe knight  
hode of his byetbern: that he brake  
the fyrste batayle of the frenche men,  
wolde they or no.



**W**han the litell Richard, the brother of Reynawde saw þe frenshemen were put a backe: he beganne to crye on heichte Ardeyne, as much: as he mighte, and put him selfe in to the greatest pike amonge his enemies, and beganne to make so great helwing of folke that it was wunderfull to see. For Ricinawde fought not, for to loke the better vpon him. And thenne Rycharde that thought hym selfe neuer wery of geuyng of strokes: began to calle vpon his brother, and saide. Reynawde faire brother where ben youre greace strokes gone that ye were wune for to gyue vpon youre enemyes. Was smite now vpon them, for they been almost ouercome, make that the frenshemen full of pride mocke not with you, and so make we suche a thinge that it be spoken of it vnto Marys. Whan Reynawde hearde Rycharde speake thus: he beganne to smile, and after he smote bayard with the spures & began to smite better thenne he dyd afore. Who that had seen than his greace strokes departe: he mighte wel haue said that no carpenter smot neuer so wel in wood: as Reynawde did vpon the helmes of Steele, and vpon the sheeldes of the frenshemen. And whan the frenshemen saw that the discomfiture tourned vpon them: they began to call Rowlande, and sayd to him. O Rowland what doo ye: Why come ye not and helpe youre folke: for they be dead, but if ye succoure them. Whan Rowland vnderstood that word, wherof he was wrothe, and right so. And whā he saw his folke so sore handled: he began

to cry Hourioupe sayne Denys. And after spurred his horse, and entered in to the medle. And went heere & there crying Ricinawde where be you gone: see me heere I am all ready for to doo the battraile of my body ayenst you: & that ye aske of me. Whan Reynawde hearde Rowlande that called thus after him he put flamberge into his sheeth. And took a spear in his hand and came there as Rowland was & said to him, Where are ye Rowlande be ye a fearde of me that ye haue carried so longer for beware youre selfe from me, and you of me saide Rowlande. And thenne they spurred their horses and dyd Joust the one ayenst the other. And whan the frenshemen and the Gascoignes sawe that: they withdrew themselves fro eche other, for to behold the Jousting of the two worthy knightes, for to say the trouthe: there were not two other such in all the world.

**A**nd whan Salamon of Breteayne, and Hector the sonne of Odon saw that the Jousting of Reynawde and of Rowlande was begon: they set themselves to weep full tenderly, & came to the Duke Raimes, to the byshop Turpin and to Olyner, and sayd to them, Howe lordes may ye suffre þe one of the best knightes of the worlde, and him that we ought to loue best be slayne and dead before you: Certes said þe duke Raimes that shall be great sorowe to vs for to see. And than he came to Olyner & saide to him. I praye you that ye goe to Rowland, and tel him from vs al, that he ought not to fight with

R. I.

Reynawde



The booke of the foure

Reynawde with the swerde. But let him take a speere and breake it vpon Reynawde for to acquite his faythe. For yf he slea Reynawde: We shal neuer loue him a frey. Lordes sayd then Ogier let them alone, ye knowe not Reynawde so well as I doo. Reynawde is no childe to be made a feto so lyghlye as ye trowe. Lette them myfte hardely they two togither. For by the fath that I owe to you. Rowlande shall be all Werye or euer he retorne agayne. And he shall be as fayne to leaue the barayle as shall Reynawd. And ye shal see that Rowland wolde he had not gone there for the best cite that the imperoure Charlemaigne hath. Ogier saide Ector ye speake of it as for enye, certes yf he shoulde figher with Rowlande: ye shoulde well saye otherwile. And than he saide to Olyuer. Good syr lette thys barayle be defferred yf ye may by anye wile. Lordes saide Olyuer with a good wyll syth that ye will haue it so. And than he went to Rowlande & sayd to him al that the barons hadde sayde. Feia W myn answered Rowland, god confounde them, for they take away this day the desyre of my vncle Charlemaign. And than he turned him toward Reynawd, and sayd to hym. Syr Reynawde ye haue assayed of my swerde: and not of my speere. Rowlande sayde Reynawde if ye leaue youre swerde I shall conne you no thanke nor gramercy for it. For I feare you not of nothyng, but let vs make an ende of our barayle. And to whome god gruethe the victorie: let him haue it. Rowland wolde not doo so, but dyd lyke a curteous

knighte, and he dyd as the barons had sente him worde. For he tooke a speere and ranne vpon Reynawde as much as he myght. And whan Reynawde sawe he wold none otherwile doo: he ranne also with a speere vpon Rowlande, and tought eche other so wonderful hard that they made theyr speeres to flice all in pecces, and whan they had broken their speeres: they recounered eche other with theyr sheeldes so stronglye that both theyr horses, that is to witte Bayard and Melantes stakered, and were all astonied therewithal. But with that stroke Rowland and Melantes were both felled to the grounde on a heape, and Reynawd passed forth by the cryinge with an high voyce Mountraban. Wherby I tell you for certayne that Rowlande neuer felle done for no stroke of speere: but onely that tyme, but it was no meruaile. For he could not holde hym selfe by the cloudes whan his horse had failled hym.

**T**han whan Rowlande sawe hymselfe thus ouerthrowen: he was not wel conceite and rose in continence and toke his swerde in hys hand, and came to Melantes for to cutte of his head, and began to say euyll courser who keepeth me that I kille the not: not sich that thou hast let falle thy selfe throughe the stroke of a childe, I shall neuer trust thee. So helpe me god Rowlande sayde Reynawd ye doo to Melantes great wronge. For it is longe sich that he eat any meat, and therfore he can not trauayll lyke bayarde for he is more strong

stronger than is your horse, and than Reynawde lyghted downe fro bayard by cause that Rowlande was a foote. And whan bayarde sawe hys maister a foote: he ran vpon Helantis the horse of Rowlande & smot him with his hinder feet so great strokes that he hadde almost broken his chyn. Whan Rowlande sawe that he was wythe for it and came towarde bayarde, for to haue smyte of hys heade. And whan Reynawde sawe that: he sayd to Rowlande. What wyl ye doo: it is no worschyppe to you to smyte a beast, and yf ye wyl doo any fayte of armes: come to me & not to my horse for: I shall grue you strokes ynough so muche that ye shall be wery of it or we departe, but keep wel that I dea not you & leue Bayard in peace. For there is not in all the worlde another so good a beast. For he did shewe it well whan he won the crowne of Charlemayne your vncle in youre presence, and yf he doth helpe me: he doth but his deuoyze that a good horse ought to doo, but turne your whele towarde me and ye shall see howe Flamberge curteth. Reynawde & Reynawde sayd Rowlande, cheten not so much. For before this day be come at an ende: ye shall see a chynge that shall not please you ouer much.

**R**eynawde was not contented whan he vnderstoode the pille wordes of Rowlande, and shooke al for angre, and incontinent ranne vpon Rowlande and gaue him suche a stroke vpon his helme: that he all to brused it, and the stroke slidid vpon the sheelde so that he cut of it a great

quarter, and of the courset of Steele al so, but he cut nothynge of the fleshe. And whan Reynawde hadde gyuen Rowlande that stroke: he sayde in manet of a mocke to Rowlande, What saye ye by my swerde, doo it cut well or no: for I haue not miste at that stroke, now keep you well fro me, for I am not suche a childe as ye take me for. Whan Rowlande felte that great stroke that Reynawde had gyuen to hym: he was all meruayled of it, and wythdreyte hymselfe a backe for he wold not that Reynawd should haue recouered a nother stroke vpon hym sodenly, and sette hande to Durandall his good swerde and ranne vpon Reynawde, and Reynawd helde his sheelde apenst it, and Rowlande smot in to the sheelde so great a stroke that he cloue it by the middes throughe and throughe, & the stroke descended vpon the helme and dyd it no harme. And whan Rowlande had made that stroke: he said to Reynawd. Vassail ye be now quite, for I haue yelded you agayne that ye lended me ryghte nowe. Nowe shall I see who shall begynne agayne. By my soule sayd Reynawde tobole fall haue I now yf I seyne me nowe. For I dyd but playe afore, now your fraunchyse shall neuer auayle you apenst me but that I shall bynge youre pryde all do wne to the erthe. Reynawde said Rowlande yf ye doo this that ye say: ye shall werke merueilles. And all thus as they wold haue begon again the bataylle: so came there Daugis & al his company, & said to Reynawd. Cosyn mounce vpon bayarde, for it were to great a losse yf you or Row-



# The booke of the foure

lande were deade, & there came Ogier & Dipuer and made Rowland to light agayne vpon his horse. But witte well that Ogier had not be so gladd yf one had giue to him a great cytie: as he was be cause that Reynawode had cast do wne Rowland & his horse. And whan they had recouered Rowland: they began a soze batayle and a cruell, and so fell that it was pytie for to see, for the one betwix the other without anye mercey. And whan Rowland sawe that the batayle was begon, again his hert dyd swell for angre by cause that Reynawode had ouerthynnen him to the ground, so beganne he to cal as hyghe as he myght. Where are ye gone Reynawode the sonne of Armon, goe a side and lette vs parfoynyshe our batayle for men knowe not yet whiche is the best knyghte of vs two. So sayde Reynawode ye haue the courage of a knyghte that wyll conquere honour, but and we fyght heere together our folke shall not suffre it. But lette vs doo one thyng that I shall tell you. ye be well horsed and I am also, let vs bothe swyme ouer the ryuer and goe to the wood of serpente. For ye canne not wythe no better place for to fyght, and we shal not be there departed thone fro the other of our folke, but we shall make fyghte there together tyll the one of vs two be discomfited & ouercome. Lettes sayde Rowlande ye haue well spoken and I graunt it as ye haue said, and then they spurred their horses for to goe to the wood of the serpent, but Dipuer took heed to them, & took Rowland by the byddell, and withhelde hym

wolde he or no, and Reynawode went for to haue passed ouer the ryuer vpon bayarde that ran as the winde, and walloped so harde that he made al the erthe where he passed to shake vnder him, & as he ran in this maner: he looked afoze him & saw the king vpon that was arrayned with well foure scoze knyghtes that kept hym for feare of Reynawode, lest he and his byetherne shoulde haue rescued hym, these knyghtes ledde hym shamefullye as ye haue hearde afoze. And whan Reynawode sawe the kyng: he was gladd of it and sayd. Ha good lord blessed be thy name, whan ye haue graunted me so fayre aduencure, and with this: he set hande to his sword and spurred bayard with the spurres and cried as highe as he could, lette goe the kyng vpon euell folke that ye be. For ye be not worthy to ley hande vpon him. And then he entred wyth in them and smote a knyght vpon his helme so rudely that he cloue his head to the harde teeth, and ouerthrewe him dead to the earth. And whan the other sawe Reynawode amonge them: they put themselves to flyght, and said the one to the other. The deuill hath brought this cruell man heere now, lette vs flee, goddes curse haue he & shall abyde him, for the soule of hym that wilfully suffreth him selfe to be slaine: shall neuer come to the metepe of god. And then they put themselves into the thickest of the forest, and lette behynde them the kyng vpon that they lodged as a prysoner. And Reynawode came streyght to hym and vnbounde hym and unstopped his eyes, and after sayde to hym

Ha euell kynge, how haue ye the hert  
for to betray vs so falslye as ye haue  
doone me and my brethern: dyd we  
euer any thing that was in your dis-  
pleasure: It is not longe on you, but  
that we should haue been all hanged  
by this, but I shal smite of your head  
euen anon, and shall auenge me and  
my bretherne vpon your body. Whā  
the kynge yon sawe Reynawde that  
hadde deliuered hym: he kneeled a  
downe before hym and sayde to him.  
Certes noble knyghte it is well rea-  
son that men slea me. Wherof I pray  
you for god that your selfe will take  
the lyfe from me, and cut of my heade,  
and lette it be doone by none oether,  
and pulle out my tonge wherwytch  
I spake that treason. For I haue  
well deserued greater martyrdom,  
and all this made me doo the erle of  
Ansom, and the erle Anthonny. Now  
slea me for god, for such an euill man  
as I am oughe not to liue longe. I  
haue much leuer that ye kill me with  
your sword than that cruell kynge  
Charlemayne should make me to be  
hanged. Now lyghthe hy sayde Rey-  
nawde, for ye shal be well payed as  
ye haue deserued. But here leaue  
I to speake of the kynge yon of Gas-  
coyne and of Reynawde that been in  
the wood of the serpente, where that  
he carped after Rowland for to fight  
with him, as he had promysed vnto  
hym: and shal retourne for to spende  
of Rowland and of Oliver that spa-  
ke vnto their folke for to tell theym  
a parte of their belines, & howe they  
had be dyscomfyted.

**I**n this parte sheweth the his-  
tory that after Reynawde was

departed from the bataylle for to goe  
fright body to booye apenst Rowlande  
the newe we of the king Charlemain  
in the wood of the serpente: Row-  
land, Oliver and Ogier the Dane,  
fought apenst Blarde, Gupharde,  
and the litell Rycharde, apenst Haw-  
gys and apenst theyr folke, and the  
bataylle was there so sharpe and so  
fell of one parte and of the other, so  
that greace hurte and scathe was  
there made of both parties, but at the  
laste the dyscomfyture turned vpon  
Rowlande, and vpon his folke. In  
so muche that Rowlande and Oli-  
uer were constrayned by force for to  
goe backe againe all dyscomfyred,  
for the thre bretherne and Hawgis  
made apenst them so greace efforde of  
armes that they gave the pyce that  
dape. And thus as Rowlande wen-  
te backe againe all dyscomfyred: he  
bare his head low, for he was a sha-  
med that he had be so rebuked. And  
than Ogier saide to him, Lord Row-  
lande who hath a rayed your shelde  
of this facion: I see your horse hurte  
in the thyghe and vnder the croper,  
he was felled vpon the righte syde &  
you also, it is wel seen on your syde,  
I trowe that ye haue founde Rey-  
nawde the sonne of Aymon, haue ye  
brought him with you: Where haue  
ye put him: When Rowland vnder-  
stood the reproche that Ogier made  
vnto him: he wexed almost madde  
for angre. So tooke he hys sword  
and ranne vpon Ogier for to haue  
smitten him vpon the head. But whā  
that Oliver saw this: he tooke Row-  
land by the byrdell, and the erle Guis-  
dellon tooke Ogier, and thus they



## The booke of the four

There departed, and thus as they were departed, & that Rowland went on his waye, came there after hym the litell Richard the brother of Reynawde, that began to calle as he as he might damp Rowlande ye goe to toredely a waye, retorne agayne that I may see your Wheelde, and lette vs haue a course we two together. Knight and wered Rowland. I graunte thereto by my faith. And than they spurred their horses with their spurs, and Rowland came ayenst Rycharde so harde that he ouerthrewe hym and his horse with all in a hepe to the grounde. And whan Richard sawe himseife thus a grounde: he rose by quickely and came to his horse and lighted by agayne without anye styrop. And whan he was on horse backe he set hande on his sword and defended him selfe nobly agaynst hys enemy Rowland.

**W**han Rowlande sawe this, and what he knewe that it was one of the brethren of Reynawde: he had so great ioye of it that him seemed that he had been in Paradyse, and incontinent he beganne to crye Hounde lope sayne Denys. And said, vpon him now my frendes, for ye he scape vs: I shall tell it to the king Charlemayne. And whan that the frenshemen sawe that Rowland wolde haue taken Richard: they sette al, vpon him, so that they smote hym with more then foure swordes al at once, and it happed so that his horse was kyled vnder hym, and he ouerthrewen to the erthe. And whan that Richard sawe his horse dead a ground:

he was tyght for it, and rose by quickely vpon his feete, and smote the erle Anthony so greare a stroke with his sword that he wounded him tyght bye. Humall the byeton sawe that: & he smot Richard, and Richard recouered vpon him with such a stroke that he felled both horse and man to the erthe. And with this: Guidell came from behynde and ouerthrewe Richard fro the arsons of hys saddle to the grounde. And whan Rowland sawe Richard at the ground: he came to hym and sayde. Nowe yeeld you and abyde not that we slea you, for it were great damage, for sayd than Richard the yongest sonne of Simon to you Rowlande I shall yeeld me & to none other. For I can not yeeld me to no better man than ye be one. And with this he rooke him his sword, & Rowlande receyued it with a good wyll and made the lytell Rycharde to lye vpon a mule. And thus they hadde hym prisoner. Alas and what a damage shall it be yf the prynces Rycharde behanged: he is well lyke to be, but that god & Marys deliuer hym, all this myshap sawe a seruante of Richard. And whan he sawe that men ledde thus his maister Richard: he spurred hys horse with the spurs and auentured him selfe to passe ouer the riuer, and came lightlye to Reynawde and saide to hym. For I bringe you euell tydynges wyl that Rowlande leadeh with hym your brother Rycharde for prisoner well shamefully. Whan Reynawde vnderstoode these wordes: he was sore angry for it, that he had almoste lost his wyffe, and after he sayd

sayde to the yemou, come hither tell me my freend, are they that leden my brother sette hence? Spz sayd the yemou, yea, it is not possyble that ye shoulde ouertake them. And whan Reynawode vnderstood this: he was moze angry than he was tofore, and fell from bayarde in a swoone to the erthe. And whan he was come again to hym selfe: he behelde afoze hym. And sawe his brother Alarde come with his folke that came after Reynawode by the trafe. For they wende that Richard hadde be gone to hym longe afoze them. And whan Alarde sawe Reynawode make such a sorow: he came than to hym and sayde in thys maner. Ha sayre brother, and what eyleth you? It longeth not to such a knight as ye be for to make so great a sorow as ye doo. Alard sayd Reynawode, ye haue doone ful yl, for I haue left my brother Richard with you to keep hym, and ye haue lost him, for Rowland lederh him with hym as prisoner, and he is all ready so sette brought that we can not succour hym, whan Alard, & Gulchard vnderstoode these tydynges: they beganne to make such a sorow that it was meruaille for to see the lamentacion that they made, alas sayd Reynawode, what is he that hath parted our company? to day in the morning we were foure bretherne toggyther & now we been but thre. Ha sayre brother Richard it is greete damage of you, for if ye had liued your age: ye shoulde haue passed all your brethern sayng that ye were the yongest of vs all and yet ye were the most hardye, and throughe your hardynes: ye are

taken, sayre brother sayd Alarde, all cometh by you that brought vs herte against our wyl for to succour the kingdon. Now haue we loste Richard, wherof the losse shall neuer be recouered, for we shall neuer see hym a lyue. And whan he had sayd thys: he sayd to Gulchard. Brother drawe out your swerde so shall we cut of the head of thys traitoure kingdon therewith, for whome we haue now lost our brother Richard, brother saide than Reynawode. I praye you for the loue that ye haue to me that ye touche not the kingdon for to doo hym anye harme, for he hath yeldded hymselfe vnto me, but byngge hym vnto Hounslow, and see that he be kept sure. And I shall abyde heere with my good horse Bayarde and flamberge my good swerde without any other company. So shall I goe in to the pauplyon of Charlemayne, whete I shall recouer my brother Richard or a nother prisoner for hym: or elles I shall die with him. And whan he had said that word: he spured bayarde with the spurres for to haue gone thither: but Alarde tooke him by the byddell and Gulchard tooke him with both his armes fro behind for to keep him that he should not goe, and than Alard said to him, by saynt Peter of rome ye shall not goe no foot there, for it is better that Richard: dye yf it must be so than ye should dye. And thus as the thre bretherne made theyr mone for Richard, came there Hawgys theyr colin yf followed them, & when he saw his colins make such sorow: he was for a gaste and said to them. Wha eyles



# The booke of the four

erles; you saye colins: it is no woꝝ  
 Myppc noꝝ th; maner of good knigh-  
 ces, but of wyemen to make such so-  
 row as ye doo. Cosyn cosyn sayd A-  
 lard, I shal tel you what causeth ys  
 to doo so. Wit that Rowland ledeyth  
 Rycharde for hys prysoner the best  
 knight of the world afte Reynawd,  
 and Reynawde wyl goe to the Pauli-  
 lpon of Charlemayne, and also ye  
 knowe well yf he goe there: he is but  
 lost for evermoze. Reynawd( said the  
 Matogis ) it were no wylsome to  
 you yf ye went there, for your going  
 thither shoulde not proffyte you no-  
 thyng, but goe your wayes to  
 Mountauban, and I shal goe there  
 as ye wold haue gon my selfe, and yf  
 Richard be not dead: I shal byng  
 him again with me vnto you al were  
 he myghte by m. x. prysones matogre  
 Charlemayn. Cosyn said Reynawd,  
 I shal become your manne yf ye doo  
 this that ye saye. Cosyn sayde  
 Matogis I shal doo it without faur,  
 but leue your sorowe I shal deliuer  
 him agen to your handes whole & soue-  
 re yf it please god: and whan he had  
 sayde so: the bycheren sette themselves  
 to the waye for to returne to Moun-  
 tawban, but so great sorowe was there  
 neuer made as the thres bycherne  
 made for their brother Richard,  
 & thus making their great mone: the  
 byd so muche that they came vnto  
 Mountauban and lyghted fro their  
 horses in the base court, & after wēt  
 vp to the dungeon & whan the noble  
 lady Clare, & wife of Reynawd wist  
 that her husbände came: she came  
 gairist hym right glad and Joyfull  
 and led at eche hande of her bothe her

pongechylzen. Simon and pon, and  
 cyther of them bare a lytell staffe in  
 theyr handes, and began to crye by-  
 on theyr vncl, vassalle, but that ye  
 be no w prysoner: ye shoulde haue di-  
 ed by our handes, & they came nyghe  
 hym and saide cufled kinge and vn-  
 true why haue you betrayed my lord  
 our farther and his bycherne our vn-  
 cles that haue doone to you so good  
 scruple: settes ye be well woꝝtpe to  
 dye a shamefull deach. Whan Alarde  
 hearde his newwes speake of this  
 maner: he began to weep ful tender-  
 ly. And thus as he wept he kissed Si-  
 monet that bare the name of theyr  
 father, and said. Ha god how ben we  
 brought loke and destroyed. And  
 whan that lady heard Alard speak  
 these wordes, and saw that he wept:  
 she thoughte well that it was not  
 without a cause, and she sayde to A-  
 larde. Saye brother for god tell me  
 the occasion of your sorowe. Ladye  
 sayd Alarde with a good wyl. So w  
 wpt that we haue losse our brother  
 Richard. Rowlande ledeyth hym for  
 hys prysoner to Charlemayne, but yf  
 our lord saue hym: we are not lyke ne-  
 uer to see him. Alas I vnhappy what  
 shall we doo sayd the lady, syth that  
 Rycharde is lost: for we shall neuer  
 haue honoure. And sayinge these  
 wordes: she fell downe in a swoone  
 to the erth. And whan that she was  
 come againe to herselfe: she beganne  
 for to make so great sorowe, that all  
 they that were there had greete pytie  
 of her. But hoere leueth the bysto-  
 ry to speake of Reynawde, of Alar-  
 de, and Guycharde, and of the ladye  
 Clare. And of her ponge Chylzen  
 And

And retourneth to the of Haw-  
gys the good knyghte that had put  
hymselfe in aduventure and in payne,  
for to deliuer Rycharde oute of the  
handes of the kyng Charlemayne.

How after that Reinard, Alard,  
& Guphard were returned to Mou-  
nteban after the bataylle that they  
had by the woode of the Serpente they  
made great sorow for the loue of Ri-  
charde their brother, that was in the  
handes of the kyng Charlemayne.  
And howe he was deliuered by the  
wyfe of Hawgys.



**N**ow telleth the hystorie, that  
whan Hawgys was come  
again to Mounteban: he was so  
much wrothe that he myght no more  
for the loue of Richard that was take.  
And because that Reinard and his  
bretherne made therfore so great so-  
rowe. Incontinent that he was  
lyghed from his horse, he went in  
to his chambere and made hym selfe

to be disarmed and after he tooke of  
all his clothes, and put hym selfe all  
naked, and this doone: he tooke an  
herbe and eate it, & as soone that he  
had it: he swelled like a padder, and  
than he tooke an other herbe, & chau-  
sed it and helde it betwene his teeth,  
and anon he became all blacke as a  
cole in his face as one that is beaten  
with staues, & his eyen reeled in his  
head



head as he hadde be ocher dronke o:  
mad, and disguised himselfe won-  
derfully, that he that had well know  
him afore, shoulde not chan haue said  
that he hadde be Watogys. And  
whan he was thus turned and coun-  
refayr: he took a great mantell and  
a hoode & clothed himselfe ther with  
and rooke on his feet a grete payre  
of bootes and the staffe of a pilgrime  
in his hande. And thus arrayed: he is-  
sued out of Mountauban. And whā  
he was our: he set himselfe for to goe  
the way so grete pale that no horse  
could not haue waloped so fast, yll  
that he came to mounbendel, befoze  
the centes of the emperour Charles  
mayne o: euer that Rowlande were  
come there againe, and there he helde  
him still and spake nothing at all, but  
looked onely vpon the kyng and vpo  
his paupillon. And whā he went: he  
halced with the one foot, & lened be-  
foze the kinges cent vpon his staffe,  
and kepte the one of his eyen close.  
And whā he saw the kyng come oure  
of his paupillon: he nighed him and  
said God of heauen that suffred derh  
and passion on the crosse, keep you  
kyng Charlemain fro derh and from  
pison, and from cuil treason.

**U**ntill said the kinge Char-  
lemayn god confounde you  
for I shall neuer truste vpon suche a  
begger as ye be, bycause of the euill  
cheef Watogis, the whiche hath de-  
ceyued me many times, for whan he  
woll, he is a palmer a knight o: a gri-  
son o: elles a heremyte, by suche ma-  
ner that I canne not be ware of hym

And if it please god & his blessed mo-  
ther I shall auenge me once vpon him  
howe that the game goeth. And whā  
Watogys hearde the Emperoure  
speake of this maner: he answered  
nothyng, and kepte hym styl a great  
whyle, and after he sayd to the king.  
Syr: yt Watogys be a theefe all o:  
ther pooze folke be not so. I haue  
more need of helthe, than I haue to  
doo any treason, and it is well seen  
on me that I am not the bodye that  
mighr doo any greatcharme. Syr: I  
come from Jherusalem, where I haue  
wo:shipped the holy graue, and ha-  
ue doone my oblacions in the temple  
of Salomon, and yet I must goe to  
rome and to saint James in galycie &  
God will. But I dyd passe yester-  
daye ouer balancon and ouer Giron-  
de, with .x. men my seruantes that  
I ledde al waies by the waye with me  
for to keep & defende my bodye. And  
whan I had passed ouer Gyzonde: I  
came with my men throughe a wood  
nighe Mountauban, where I met  
with many bygganics and cheucs &  
slewe all my men and all that I had  
they took fro me, and let me goe, and  
gladde I was whan so saye I was  
deliuered of theim. And after I as-  
ked of the folke of the countrey what  
menne they were that so hadde slaine  
my men, and they dyd tell me that  
they were the foure sonnes of Armo  
and a grete cheefe that was called  
Watogis with theym. And I asked  
them why they wold set themselves to  
so foule a craft & unhappy, seen that  
they were so grete gentlemen born:  
and the people of the countrey answered  
me that they were constrained for

to doo so because they had so greace  
pouertie within Bounta Whan that  
they wist not what to doo. But I did  
neuer see so cruel a man as the same  
Hawgis is, for he bounde my han-  
des behinde my backe whan he had  
robbed me, and thā he bet me so soze:  
that I wened to haue dyed therof,  
and hath araised me as ye see. Sye ye  
be the best kynge in the worlde and  
ye be the lord of all this land, wher-  
fore I pray you for god that ye wyl  
doo me ryght of these four sonnes of  
Aymon and of Hawgis that greace  
theese. And whan Charlemain vn-  
derstood these wordes: he ryghted his  
deade vp, & said. Pilgrime is it true  
as thou saiest: yea sir said Hawgis.  
Nowe tell me thy name said Char-  
lemayne. Sir said Hawgis, my na-  
me is Gaidon, & I am borne in Bre-  
tayne & I am a great man in my coun-  
trei, wherfore I require you in the  
worshyppe of the holie sepulchre that  
I haue sought: that ye doo me ryght.  
Pilgrime sayde Charlemayne I can  
not haue no ryght of them my selfe,  
for I promyse thee if I had them: all  
the worlde should not saue them, but  
that I should make them dye a sha-  
meful deache. Sye sayde then Haw-  
gis, sith that ye can do me no ryghte  
of theym: I beseeche almighty god  
that is in heuen that it please him  
for to doo it. Sye laide the barons  
thys pilgrime semeth to be a good  
man and a true as we suppose. For  
it is well seen on him, geue to hym  
your almesse yf it please you. And  
thenne the kinge commaunded that  
men should giue him twentye pound  
of money, and Hawgis tooke them

and put it in his hooode, and he saide  
in himselfe, ye haue gyuen to me of  
your own good but ye haue doon like  
a foole. I shal rewarde you ryght so  
uel for it or euer I departe fro you, &  
whan he had the syluer: he asked for  
some meate for gods sake, and oure  
ladyes, for sythe yesterdaye he hadde  
not eaten as he said, by my faith said  
Charlemayne thou shalt haue meate &  
drinke ynoughe. And anon they did  
brynge him meate, and he sette him  
downe and tooke and ate wel of the  
best. And the king saide to him now  
eat free good pilgrim. For thou shalt  
be wel serued, and Hawgis eat & yl  
& was wred neuer a word but beheld  
onely the king in thys bylage. And  
the kinge saide to him tell me Pil-  
grime and hide no thyng from me,  
whi hast thou looked so on me: sir said  
Hawgis I shall tel you with a good  
wyl. Wyt that I am a wel traung-  
led man, but in no place that euer I  
was, I saw neyther chylten man ne  
sarahyn so goodly a prince, ne so cur-  
teous as ye be one, wherof of all the  
pardones that I haue wonne in my  
vyage makinge. I giue you the halfe  
freely. Certes pilgrime said the king  
and I take it gladly. And I thanke  
you muche therof. And Hawgis  
gaue hym for a witnessse of the same  
his palmers staffe for to kysse it, thā  
said the barons euery chone certain-  
lye sye the pilgrime hath giuen vn-  
to you a verie fayre gyfte, ye oughte  
to rewarde him wel for it. Sye said  
thenne Hawgis I aske none other  
rewarde of you for it but that it plea-  
se you for to take my pooze gyfte a  
worthe, and that I may rest my selfe  
hence



The booke of the four

heere a while for I am verye sycke & wey. And thus as the kynge spake to Hawgys: came than Rowlande and Oliver and al their folke, that brought Richard for a prisoner.

**A**nd whan Ogier & Escorfaud the sonne of Dedon, and the duke Raimes saw that Rowlande wold goe to the paultie of Charlemaine with Richard: They came to Rowlande and saide to him. Syr Rowlande howe can ye have Richard so soze that ye wyl peeld hym to Charlemaine: Lordes said Rowlande what wyl ye that I shall doo with him: tell me and I shall doo it. Syr sayde they we wyl that ye deliuer Richard and ye shall say that it was a nother prisoner. Lordes said Rowlande yf I canne doo this: I shall doo it gladly. And these wordes hearde a yoman, that incontinent spurred his horse, and came to the kinges tent, & said to Charlemaine. Syr I bringe you tydynge soze straunge, we haue foughten by the ryuer syde of Balancon, where that Keinawd the sonne of Aymon hath keepe his own right well apenst Rowland pour newe w, and settech nor a straw by him. And Rowlande lost there more than he wan. Whan the Emperoure Charlemayne vnderstood that worde: he was abashed greatlye, and after he said to the yoman. Tel me my freend howe was yet of my newe woe Rowlande: Sir said the yoman, he fought with the four sonnes of Aymon, that defended themselves well. But Rowlande hath brought with him prisoner one of the four sonnes of Aimo

the which is the most hardy and the most balaunt of the al in al pointes.

**C**harlemayne began than to lope for Joye whan he vnderstoode these tydynge, and came out of his tent, and beelde and sawe Richard that Rowlande brought, and whan Charlemayne sawe Richard: he knewe him well incontinente, and began to crye for greete Joye that he had. By my soule newe we it is well seen that ye haue ben there. For elles Richard shoulde not haue ben take. Certes sir said Rowlande, well lied Ogier to you, for yf he hadde not be the four sonnes of Aymon were take as well as one, and than said the king to Richard. Whoresone by the faith that I owe to god, ye shall be hanged by the necke, but first ye shall haue of euil and of tormentes ynoughe sir said Richard I am in prison. I feare me not to be hanged as longe as my brother shal may lyght vpon bayard and that Hawgys be aloue, Alarde, and Guicharde my ryghte deare brethren, for if ye do to me any outrage: no castell, ne cordon, ne fortesse shal not keep you, but they shal make you dye an euell deache or two dayes be passed. Whan Charlemayne heard Richard speake so proude: he was ryghte an angred for it, and took a staffe with bothe hys handes and smote Richard therewith vpon hys heade so hard that he made the bloud renne out of it to the earthe, and whan Richard felte himselfe thus wounded: he vaunced hym selfe, and rooke the emperour Charlemain with both the

hy's armys by the waste & wastled to  
gither a longe wyple, so that they fell  
bothe dowe the one heere, & the other  
there. And Rycharde rose vp quicke-  
ly and wolde haue renne vpon Char-  
lemayne but Ogier, and Salamon  
seased him and kept him therfro, and  
after they sayd to Charlemayne. Syr  
ye haue doonc ouermuche amys, for  
to beate a prysoner. Certes my lordes  
saide Rycharde it is more dyshonoure  
to the kynge to smite me, than it is to  
me for to defende my bodye, but he is  
well wount to doo suche outrages,  
for it is not the fyrste that he hache  
doone, nor it shall not be the last. And  
whan Hawgis sawe that Charle-  
mayn had synnyn Rycharde: he was  
soe an angred therfore, that he had al-  
most layed vpon him wryth his pal-  
mers staffe, but he thought yf he had  
doo so: bothe Rycharde and he shoulde  
haue be dead. And whan Charlemai-  
ne sawe that Rycharde spake so bold-  
ly: he sayde to hym. Rycharde God  
confounde me, yf ye scape me for all  
your wickednes, for ye shall soone be  
hanged by the necke. Syr sayd Richard  
speake more courteously yf it please  
you. For I shall see you sooner be slein  
quicke than ye shall see me hange, nor  
ye shall not be so hardye to doo so,  
what comeuet ye prae, saye or cra-  
ke. Charlemayne sayd, ye shall not  
scape me but ye shall be hanged or  
nyghre, and wolde God I helde as  
fast your bretherne, and Hawgis  
that cheef as I holde you now, for  
they shoulde be hanged wryth you to  
beate you company, because ye should  
not be aserde. And thus as Rycharde  
trowe wryth Charlemayne: he turned

hymselfe and saue Hawgis behin-  
de hym that helde him selfe styll le-  
nyng vpon his staffe, and he knew  
hym well wherof he was wel gladd  
for he wylt well he shoulde not dye  
syn Hawgis was there. And whā  
Rycharde had seen Hawgis: he was  
sure of his lyfe, and sayde to Charle-  
mayne. Syr Where shall I be han-  
ged tell me: certes sayd Charlemayne  
at the gybet of Mountawcon & there  
shall your brethern maye see you, and  
Hawgis your cosyn. Syr it is no  
reason that such a mā as I am shoulde  
be hanged, but make peace wryth vs &  
ye shall doo wryllly, and yf ye doo not so:  
ye shall soze repente it as I trowe.  
And whan Hawgis had heard e all  
that he wolde heare: he made no len-  
ger taryng, but he went oure of the  
payllon and sayde no worde, and  
whan he was out of it: he beganne to  
walke so greate a pace that no horse  
myghre not haue folowed hym, and  
passed throughe the wood of the Ser-  
pent and dyd so muche that he came  
to Mountawbā, where he found Rei-  
nawde and his folke that wayted for  
him. And whan Reinawd sawe hym  
come without Rycharde: he was full  
soz so that he fell dowe in a swoo-  
ne. And Alard and Guycharde tooke  
hym vp and saide to him. Farye bro-  
ther ye doo as a chyld, ye oughre  
not to make suche a sorowe. Holde  
your peace traytours sayd Reynawd  
for ye haue lost the best anyghre of  
the worlde, for I see Hawgis come  
alone, wherfore I beleue that Richa-  
rde is deade, for yf he were a lyue:  
Hawgis wolde haue brought hym  
wryth him. For he neuer mysted of no  
B. i thing



The booke of the four

thing that he tooke in hand. And whā Alard, & Gurchard vnderstood these wordes: they tooke therof so greace a sorow that they fell boch downe in a swoone to the earthe, and whan they were come againe to them selfe they made so great sorow that it was pyrie for to see. And this hāging: cam there Hawgis. And whan he sawe the great sorow that his cosyns made: he was wrothe for it, and sayde to them. What eyleth you faire cosyns that ye make so euill cheere. Was Hawgis said Reinald, what is doone of our brother Richard. Cosyn sayd Hawgis Richard is yet in prison, but Charlemaine hath saide that he wyll make him to be hāged at the gybet of mount: fawcon, and hache sayde that ye shall not keepe him longe a tūe lest ye and I should rescue him, and heere is. xx. li. of money that Charlemayne hath gyue me in his pavillion and made me hūe boch meate, and drynke, at my pleasure. Nowe shall it be seen yf ye loue Richard, & if ye be a good knyght or not, for ye must succour and deliuer him by force of armes or elles he shall die, for all the world shal not keep him otherwise thefro.

**R**einald was wel recomforted whan he heard Hawgis speake: and after he sayd, sith that it is so yf Richard is yet aliue: if I had but my selfe, my brethern, and Hawgis, yet should I keep Richard fro death maugre the power of Charlemayne, & thā Hawgis without any longe abiding tooke of his cope & his hod, and tooke an herbe & eat it, & anon the swellinge went fro him, & whan he was armed:

he presented himself to Reinald, and incontinent all his brethern put them selfe in armes, and anon they tooke their way toward mount: fawcō. And whan they were come to a bowe shot nyghe fro it: Reinald sayde to hys folke. Lordes if ye euer loued me: thinke for to doo nowe so muche that my brother Richard may be rescued from this tūamscull death. For I promyse you that I shal byngge hym with me, or els I and my bretherne and Hawgis shall die with him. So: sayde his men doubte not of vs, for we shal doo our deuoyre. Brother sayde than Alard, let vs lyghte heere down, and let vs hyde our selfe within that bushe that we see yonder, for yf we were seene: the frenshmen mighte kille our brother Richard, or euer they wolde come. Brother said Reinald ye speake wilsely, and than they lyghred down a foote, and put themselves in a bushe: ment within a wood that was nigh the mount: fawcon. Reinald at the ryghte side of it. Alard at the left side & wyth him Guichard and Hawgis.

**N**ow they were sent to y<sup>e</sup> plaine of Malcolours ye haue well heard, and the paine that reynald & his bretherne suffered and than howe they wente and succoured byngge pon of Gascogn that had betrayed them. And howe reynald dyd syght wyth Rowland, wherof he was sore trauaylled, and hadde been all ready three daies without slepe, and therefore ye oughte not to be merueilled yf Reynald his bretherne and mawgis fel a slepe, and to say the trothe as soone as Reinald, his bretherne and mawgis

gys were embusshed vnder the sarpygn  
trees they fell into so harde a slepe,  
that they forgate Richard. Now god  
for his pytie, haue pytie vpon him, &  
keep him. For otherwise he must die.

**N**OW shal we tel you of Char-  
lemaine that was in his pa-  
uply, he called to him the duke Nai-  
mes and Richard of Normandy and  
saide to them. Lordes what counseil  
gyue you me: ye knowe that Richard  
the sonne of Aymon is of great pow-  
er, I feare me that Reynawde shall  
come to succoure hym, whan I shall  
sende him for to be hanged, and ther-  
fore I must send company for to with-  
stande Reynawde, his byetherne and  
Hawgis. And thus as the king and  
the duke Naimes spake togither: he  
looked befoze him & sawe Berenger  
of valoy, and called him and saide to  
him. Berenger ye are of my men for  
ye holde of me scorlande & wales, ye  
oughte to come serue me in Fraunce  
with all poure power euery yere once  
whan I haue need. I shall now quite  
you and release vnto you all the ser-  
uise that ye owe me, to you & to your  
heires for euermore so yf ye will take  
richarde the sonne of Aymon and see  
that he be hanged and strangled at  
mounctaicon. And yf Reynawd com  
there for to rescue hym: I praye you  
that ye wil take in hand my quarell.  
Syz said Berenger I see well now  
that ye loue me but a lytell, whan ye  
sende me to doo suche a deed, it were  
to me a great shame yf I dyd it, for  
nothyng that is to my dyscowynge  
I wyll not doo wchyn good wil,

and also ye ought not to counseill me  
to it nor suffre me to doo so, yet haue  
I leuer to serue you as my duety is  
for to doo, than that I should doo the  
same that ye wolde put me to. And  
whan Charlemaine sawe that Be-  
renger wolde not doo it: he called to  
therle Guydellon & saide to him. Guy-  
dellon ye be my man and holdeth Ba-  
uyere of me, and ye ought to serue me  
at any tyme that I call you with thre  
thousand men, yf ye will goe hange  
Richard the sonne of Aymon: I shall  
make you free, and shall giue you the  
cite of Gascon. I wil not doo it said  
therle Guydellon. But I tell you for  
certeine that Richard shall haue no  
harne if I may help him fro it to my  
power. Than saide Charlemayn goe  
oute of my sighte for ye be no good  
men. And than he saide to Rycharde  
by god yet shall ye be hanged in dis-  
pyre of cheym. Than called Charle-  
mayne Ogier the dane, and saide to  
him Ogier ye be my man, it is the w-  
ed vnto me that ye did the other daye  
treasowenst me in the plain of Mal-  
colours for loue of Reynawde, now  
shall it be seene if it is true or not. Yf  
ye wyll goe hange Richard: I shall  
gyue you the cite of Lion, and I shall  
gyue you quite of al the seruise that ye  
owen me & your heires also for euer-  
more. By the faith that I owe to you  
sir I shall not doo it, for ye wot howe  
Richard is my cosyn germayne, and  
I tell you that who so etier shall han-  
ge Richard the sonne of Aymon: I de-  
fie him, and I shall helpe Reynawde  
with al my power. Goe from me said  
Charlemayne, Goddes curse haue  
ye, neuertheles by my bearde sayde



## The booke of the four

he yet shall be hanged. And when he had saide so: he called to him the bishopp Turpin and sayd to hym. Ye bishopp I shall make you Pope of Rome if ye will hange Richard, for said the bishopp Turpin, what say ye: ye knowe well that I am a preeste, if I dyd so: I should lese my masse and be regular, and also ye knowe well that richarde is my cosyn. Wolde ye that I should commit treason upon my kynsmen: certes it were ayenst reason. So help me god said Charlemaigne ye leaue it nei: her for kyndred nor for masse, but as a coward ye leaue it onelye for feare that your crowne should be beate.

**T**han called Charlemaigne Salamon of byron and said to him, Salamon ye knowe well that ye be my man and that ye holde Byeten of me, I shall giue you the duchie of Aquitain if ye will hange richarde the sonne of Armon. For answered Salamon, if it please you to commaunde me any other thinge I will be readye to doo it with a good will, but this I will not doo. And I tell you for certayne that richarde shall haue no harme if I maye. Salamon sayd the kinge, ye be a traytoure siche that ye will not doo my commaundement. And after this: he sayde Richard I will that ye knowe well that ye shall be hanged in despite of all thy kynsmen. For said richarde perauenture it shall be other wise than ye wene. and than Charlemaigne turned hym selfe towarde Rowlande, and said to hym ffarenewe goe and see that

he be hanged I pray you. For it is well reason that ye doo thoffice, syth that all the frenshemen haue saylled me, and also ye haue taken him, wherfore ye must needes hange him, and I shall giue you Loieyn upon the ryn and so many ocher countreys that ye shall haue ynough. Sir answered rowlande if I dyd this: I should be taken for a traytoure. For I haue answered richarde afore that I tooke hym that he should haue no harme of his bodie, and if ye make hym dye: no man shall neuer truste me vpon my faith. wherfore I praye the. xii. peeres of fraunce that none of them will take the charge vpon hym for to see hym hanged, for if he were hanged: I should be diffamed. And I promise you that who shall hange Richard: I shall goe to Reynawde and shall put my selfe in his prison, and if he will pardon me his brothers deathe: I shall help him vnder my othe ayenst all menne with thre thousande fyghtinge men well arrayed on horsebacke. Acuewe sayde than Charlemaigne the deupill speed you, ye be at alle vnto me.

**A**nd when Charlemaigne saw that he might not bring his wyll about for to hange Richard: he was so wrothe that heooke for angre, and rose vpon his seere and said. Lordes ye knowe well that I am the sonne of kinge Depin and of the Quene Berthe, my father was nothynghed in fraunce, and I fledde in to Spayn to Blaffre vpon the sea. And there I dyd so manye meruaylles of armes that I was made knyghte  
and

and dyd conquere fallen my loue that  
forsoke. x. bynges bearinge crowne  
for my sake and she came with me in  
to fraunce, and than I was crowned  
kinge accordyng to the righte of my  
parrimony, and than I dyd wedde  
the sayde ladye Salpne with ryghte  
great loye and weend to haue had my  
realme in peace, but the same day that  
I was crowned: the. xii. peeres of  
fraunce purposed to haue made me  
dye at chrysmasse next follovyng, but  
our lord sent me an aungell and  
made him to tell me that I shoulde  
goe hyde my selfe, the whiche I dyd  
so and I durste not save aspenst it, nor  
I wylt not where I shoulde hyde me,  
but god wolde that I shoulde fynde  
Baso a great cheef, that brought me  
in to a pytte, and this hanging: men  
conspired my death, but Baso shew-  
ed me al togither and through his ai-  
de Iooke myne enemyes, and I pu-  
nyshed them afterwarde at my wyl,  
and so shall I doo by you, if there be  
any that wil doo contrary to my wil.  
And I am despyered to enquire eche  
of you by this maner for to see who  
shall be false or true to me. Whan  
Charlemaine had sayde this: he tur-  
ned towarde the sonne of Dedon and  
sayde to him. Escoufe come forth I  
haue brought you to greate honoure  
and we haue nouryshed you ful dea-  
ly, ye knowe that ye holde langres of  
me, yett shall I doo to you muche more  
good than I haue doone, for I shall  
gyue to you theldome of mounfer-  
raunt & of cleremount so that ye will  
goe hang that whoreson Richard, as  
sayd Escoufe ye wot well that more  
Dedon holdeth all the londe that ye

speake of, and I had neuer norþynge  
therof, but I am felaue with Ro-  
lande in armes. And whan I shall be  
lord of that lond that my father hol-  
deth in his hand: I shall fulfyll pour  
comunaundement, by saint Denis of  
fraunce ye must goe see that he be ba-  
ged said Charlemaine and I shall ma-  
ke you lord of mo londes. Syr sayd  
Estorfaud, is it earnest that ye spea-  
ke: yes saide Charlemaine. By my  
head sir saide Estorfaud, ye wolde  
not be with me for to see Richard ha-  
ge for halfe of your realme. Whan the  
kinge heard that he was thus repre-  
ued: he tooke a staffe and cast it after  
Estorfaud, but Estorfaud stert from  
his place, and the staffe brake in pee-  
ces aspenst a post. And whan the. xii.  
peeres saw that: they went all oure of  
the pauillion of Charlemaine, and  
whā that Charlemaine returned him,  
and saw that none of all the. xii. pee-  
res wolde abyde there with him:

Than he saide to the duke Raymes  
where be my. xii. peeres gone: sir said  
duke Raymes, they ben all gone out  
of your pauillion, and not without a  
cause, for it becometh not to suche a  
noble kinge as ye be to synne his ba-  
rons, for ye should be soze blamed.

**W**han whan Charlemaine saw  
this: he called to him Richard  
of montrolonde & saide to hym, come  
foorth the Rycharde of montrolonde,  
heare what I shall tell you, ye knowe  
well that ye be one of theym that I  
loue best in this worlde but ye must  
doo one thinge at my request. It is  
that ye wyl goe hange Richard the  
sonne of Aymon at the gybet of moue



The booke of the foure

sauecon. Than Richard of monro-  
londe answered. *Sy?* I shall doo so  
with a good wyl, for I am your man  
and so I ought not to refuse your co-  
maundemente, but by my soule *sy?*  
Emperour if ye will that I goe han-  
ge Richard: ye shall come with me  
with a thousand knightes well ar-  
med, and I shall hange hym where  
soeuer it please you. And if Keinawd  
and hys bretherne come there for to  
rescue: I shall icoparde mine owne  
body for to saue yourres. Nowe see to  
if ye will doo this or no, for none o-  
therwise will I not goe there one foo-  
te. Soe from me gloston saide Char-  
lemain, gods curse haue thou.

**T**he kinge than called to hym  
the duke Raymes, and sayde  
to him. What counsell gyue you: *sy?*  
*sy?* sayde the duke Raymes, good if ye  
wyl beleue me, sir ye wot that Rey-  
nawde, his bretherne, and Maugis  
are the best knightes of fraunce, as  
euery man knoweth well, this warre  
hath lasted tyght longe. For it is wel  
xvi. yerres that it began *sy?* it, and ma-  
ny a noble knyght hath be slayne for  
the same, if it please you ye shall send  
word to Keinawde, Alarde, Guy-  
chard, and Maugys that they wyl  
become your men, and ye shall deli-  
uer agayne vnto them theyr brother  
Richard alpyue, and that ye wyl doo  
make Keinawde and Alarde of the  
xii. peeres of fraunce. And whan  
Keinawd & his brethern shal se that  
ye haue doone to theym so great woo-  
shyp: they shall serue you with good  
herce, and so that ye shall con them  
greate thanke for it, and I ensure you

ye shal be the moze bredde and moze  
redoubted for cause of theym, and if  
ye haue once the foure bretherne and  
Maugis theyr cosyn to youre freen-  
des: there shall be no prynce in all  
chrystendom so hardy that dare moue  
warre apenst you, and I promise you  
*sy?* that the moze that ye keepe theyr  
warre apenst them: the moze shall ye  
lose therby, and mozeouer they be all  
of our house by theyr father Armon,  
this knowe ye wel, and chesore I can  
not hate them by no wyse, Raymes  
sayd Charlemaine, I will not doo so  
for they all haue doone amys apenst  
me and so shall I doo hange Richard  
by the faiche of my bodye, *sy?* sayde  
the duke Raymes ye shall not doo so  
and god wyl, for he is of greate lye-  
nage & of our lignage, for we shoulde  
neuer maye suffre it nor endure, and  
ye also shoulde be blamed ful soze for  
it. But and ye wyl make hym dye:  
I shall gyue you better counsell.  
Tell me howe sayd Charlemaine, &  
I shall doo it, if it semech me good,  
*Sy?* sayde the duke Raymes sych is  
please you that Richard shall dye:  
let him be cast into a deep prysyn vn-  
der the earthe, and make him to be  
kepte surely therein that he scape noe  
awaye, and commaund that no meane  
at all be brought vnto him, and so  
shall he dye for hungre. And ye shall  
not be blamed if ye doo so. Raymes  
sayde the Emperour Charlemaine,  
ye doo Iape with me. I knowe it wel  
whan ye doo tell me this, ye knowe  
well that Maugis is to great a ni-  
gromancer. For I shoulde neuer may  
keepe Richard in prysyn, but that  
Maugis wolde haue hym out cho-  
rough

rough his craft, and therfore I wyl  
not doo as ye say. Then came Ogier  
the Dane, and said to the duke Ray-  
mes, ye make to longe a sermon, let þ  
kinge doo with it, as it pleaseth him,  
For the more that ye praye him: the  
worse shall he doo, but he shall ma-  
ke peace. Whan he see that he can no-  
ne otherwise doo. But this daye shal  
be seen who loueth richard. And whā  
Ogier had said this: he went oute of  
the pauillion, and Escouke with him  
and Richard of Normandy, the by-  
shop Turpin and Guidellon of Ba-  
uyere, and made theyr folke to be ar-  
med, a whan they were armed: they  
were well. xii. thousande men. And  
than Ogier began to crie with a hie  
voice. Now shal it be seen who shal  
be so hardy for to leade Richard the  
sonne of Aymon to hāgng. For such  
shal bring him that neuer shal come  
again, but he be headles, and Ogier  
went in to the pauplyron where  
richard was, that was bound both  
handes and feet, and was blindfold.  
And whan Ogier sawe rycharde  
that was thus arayed: he had of hym  
greate pytie, so went he to him to  
haue deliuered him, but he aduysed  
himselfe, and sayd that he should not  
doo it, but he wolde tary for to see an  
ende of it what the kyng should doo  
therof. And whan rycharde hearde  
Ogier speake: he called to hym and  
said in þ presēce of the duke Raimēs  
and of rycharde of Normandy, of  
Guidellon of Bayere, and of the  
byshoppe Turpin, and of rowlande  
that than happed to com there. Faire  
lordes I knowe well that yf it were  
at youre pleasure: ye wolde let me goe

quyre, and all þinghe ye haue tra-  
uayled youre selfe for me, wherof I  
thanke you right much, but syth that  
I must needes be brought vnto the  
galous: it is better that I poore vn-  
happy die alone, than that ye should  
haue anie harme for my sake, wher-  
fore looke that ye lose not the good  
grace of Charlemayne, and I praye  
you that ye will goe vnto hym and  
telle him that he doo his wyl vpon  
me, for I haue leuer disshortly, than  
to liue longe in sorow. Whan Ogier  
sawe rycharde speake so: he was so  
sorye for it that he fell almost downe  
to the grounde for greace sorow. In  
swoun, and saide to rycharde in an-  
gre. What sayest thou soole detestable  
wylte thou be hanged: for yf we said  
the same that thou sayest to Charle-  
mayne: all the golde of the worlde  
shoulde not saue thee, but that thou  
shouldest soone be hāged by þ necke.  
I care not saide rycharde, happe as  
it happe wyl. And than he turned  
himselfe toward rowlande and sayde  
to him. I pardon you sy rowlande  
heere and afoze god the faithe that ye  
haue promised me, and that ye gaue  
me whan ye tooke me afoze Balanç.  
And whan Ogier heard this: he wax-  
ed almost mad for greace angre, and  
saide to rowlande. Syr belue not  
rycharde, for he speaketh as a man  
that is vexed in his spiritus, and not  
without a very great cause, but keepe  
vnto him the sayth that ye haue pro-  
mised to him, for it shall be youre  
greace worþyp, yf ye doo so. Ogier  
said Rowlande, doubte not. I shall  
keepe to Richard al that I haue pro-  
mysed him and more. Whan rycharde  
heard



## The booke of the four

hearde that worde: he called to hym  
 Ogier & sayde. Saye cosyn for god  
 keep your peace, for I haue seen here  
 Aungis ryght now, and I wor wel  
 he hath not forgotten me. For by the  
 faith that I owe to you such shal lede  
 me to the gybet that shal soone lose  
 the; head, and many oher mo with  
 him. Cosyn sayde Ogier is it trouth  
 that ye saye that ye haue seen Aungis  
 heere: seide Richard without  
 any faure, than saide Ogier, blessed  
 be the good lord of these rydinges,  
 now haue I no doubte of Rycharde  
 sich that my cosyn knoweth of it. And  
 than all the .xiiij. peeres of fraunce ligh-  
 ted a foote, and came to kynge Char-  
 lemagne and sayde to him. For we

ben all your men swozne to you. All  
 that we haue sayde and doon: we did  
 it for to see whether we myght haue  
 deliuered oure cosyn from deathe by  
 your good wyll, but sich that it ples-  
 seth not to you that he be laud and þ  
 ye wyll that he be hanged: we wyll  
 not speake no moze ayenst it, bycause  
 that ye angre your selfe to soze. Now  
 sende Rycharde to be hanged by who  
 me ye wyll, for he shal not be letted  
 of vs therfro.

How the emperour Charlemain  
 sente Rypus for to hange Rycharde.  
 And how that Rynawde succoured  
 hym and hanged Rypus hymselfe.  
 Capitulum. xliij.



**W**han sarde Charlemayne, by my faith now ye speake wel and wpselye, & now I pardon you al, and than Charlemayne called to hym Rypus of ryplemond and said to him Rypus if ye wil doo so muche for me that ye wil goe hange Rycharde: I shall make thee lord of great lordes and ye shall be my chamberleyne all your lyfe. **S**pyr saide rypus I am all redy to fulfyl your commaundemēt, for Reynard slewe my vncle besyde balancon, ye speake now wel said **O** gret, ye shall be a cowarde but ye ye auenge your selfe at this tyme. And whan rypus understood **O** gret speake thus: he thought hym selfe the more sure for it, and ryghte humbly and curteously he kneeled down tofore the emperour Charlemayne, and kyssed his feete & after he said to him. **S**pyr I am ordeyned for to doo you seruite and your commaundement. If it please you ye shall make me sure that whan I shall come again fro the hanging of Rycharde: that none of your ryt. peeres shall not a waite me none cupil turne for it after ward. By my faith said Charlemayne I will doo so with a good wil. And than he said to Rowlande and to Olyver, and to al the twelve peeres of fraunce. **L**ordes I will that ye promise him that he shall not be hurte by none of you, nor in tyme to come by no maner of wise, by cause I make hym to hange Rycharde. The whiche things all the ryt. peeres promised hym with a good wyll. And whan rypus hadde taken the othe of the. xii. peeres of fraunce for his surety: he went to his owne tence, and made him to be armed,

And whan he was armed: he lyghted on horsebacke, and came before kyng Charlemain. And whan the Emperour sawe him: he sayde to hym. Rypus take a thousand knyghtes with you for to kepp you, and if Reynard or Maugis come therc: take them and hange them with Rycharde. **S**ir saide rypus I shall doo your commaundement. And than the kyng made them deliuer Rycharde. And whan rypus hadde him: he put him to the waye and mounted Richard vpon a mule, and put a halter at his necke & so led him forth lyke as it had be a stronge cheefe, and broughte him before the pauplyon of Charlemayne. And whan the kyng sawe him: he was glad of it and sayde to rypus. Wolde god that all the other sonnes of Aymon were in the plyghte that Rychard is now in, for I should well auenge you and my selfe also vpon them.

**W**han the frenchemen sawe rycharde that was led to hanginge so vilaynously: they beganne to make suche a sorowe for hym that it was miruayl, so that none so great was neuer seen. Rypus rode on his waye and dyd so muche that he came to Dounefawcon. And whan rypus dyd see the Galous set vp: he sayde to rycharde. By god rycharde see ponder is your lodgyng, where ye shall be hanged by myne owne handes, this daye shall be auenged the deathe of Fouques my vncle that Reynard slewe besydes Balancon, & succoures of Maugis is now fetterd fro you, for he can not keepe you, but that



## The booke of the foure

that I shall hange you now in dyspice of Keina Wde and of your other bretherne. Whan rycharde hearde rypus speake so proude & saw that he was so nyghe the gybet, and that he sawe no succours cominge of no parte: he was soze agast and a ferde, & thought he wolde keep rypus with wordes & saide to him. Rypus for god haue pitie vpon me, for I am no man & should be hanged by reason, but I ought to be deliuered with you, and if ye wyll deliuer me: I shal giue you two hundred marke weicht of fyne golde, and I shal make you a greaue lord. Certes rycharde saide rypus ye speake for nought, for I wolde not leaue you but that ye should be hanged for. x. of the best cities of fraunce. Rypus saide Rycharde sith that ye will not haue pitie vpon my body: haue pitie vpon my soule, and I pray you as much as I can that ye wyll make a prest come to me for to shypue me, certes saide rypus ye shal haue one with right good wyll. And thanne he made come a prest. Some sayen that it was a bps. shop for to shypue richarde, the which began to shypue himselfe and shewed to the prest manie moo synnes than euer he dyd in hys dayes, and this he dyd for to lengthe the tyme, and to see if he should haue any succours or no. And whan richarde sawe that his helpe came not: he wered almost mad, & saide to his confessour. & y: I wot not what I should more say, giue me absolucion, & he gaue him penaunce accordinge to the tyme of hys lyfe and the confessour went from him all weeping. And whan rypus sawe that richard was confest: he came

to him and put the halter aboute hys necke, and made him moue vpon the ladder & dyd shyp the cheyne wherac he should hange. And whan rycharde sawe that his bretherne came not for to saue him: he wende none other but that he should haue died, and delibered hymselfe for to suffre death at the houre, and than he saide to rypus. & y: frend I pray thee for God that thou suffre me a while till I haue saide an oryson that I dyd lerne in my yowth to the ende that god haue mercie on my soule. I wyl not sayd rypus, thou shal haue no lenger respire. & y: saide his men, yes, ye shall if it please you. for if he may doo so muche & his soule be saued: he shall praye for you in the other worlde, and for vs also. And thā rypus gaue respit to richard, wherof he did like a foole. And than richard turned him self toward the east, and began to saye his prayer with a good heart and deuourly. for he trowed to haue death withoute remission, and he sayd in this maner.

**G**lorious Ihesus by thy blessed name, that made heauen and erthe, and al the elementes that been, and went in this worlde as a poore man. And saued Jonas from the belly of the fysh. And in Bethleem reisedest Lazarus. And deliuered Daniell from the pyt of the Lyon. The synnes of the theefe, ye dyd pardon on the Crosse, where the felous Jewes had crucifyed you. Also to Mary Magdalene bet synne ye forgaue in the house of Symon. for she walshe there your feet with her

greate deuocyon. Judas the false tray-  
toure murmured through enuy wher-  
of ye did shew to him that he did greate  
folly, and Judas kyssed you by greate  
treason, and deliuered you to the Jewes,  
wherof he was rewarded after  
his deservynge. Good Lorde ye crea-  
red and made our father Adam of the  
kyme of the earth, and illumyned him  
with the grace of the holpe ghoste, and  
after ye did abandon to hym the frui-  
tes of paradise, but he brake your com-  
maundemente, wherby mankynde  
went to dapnacion, and we all were  
dampned withoute remysyon, but  
after ye redemed vs by the merite of  
youre blessed passyon, ye dyd suffre  
greate paynes and greate afflictions  
for vs poore synners withoute  
anye deuocyon. Whan Longys dyd  
thoue the spere in so youre dryue side  
the water ran out of it and also the  
bloude lepte into his epen, wherof he  
recovered his syghre, and ye pardon-  
ned him his synnes, whan he called  
vpon you for mercie. And also so Noe  
ye let make by your carpenters an ar-  
ke for to saue himselfe, and of every  
beast a couple. In Josaphat good lord  
ye brought your Appostles where ye  
dyd make a fayre myracle for with ii.  
fyshe and fyue lounes of barley, ye fed  
fyue thousande men all their fylle. O  
good lorde, as I doo beleue this that  
I haue saydestedfastly: keep this day  
my body fro death that is so nigh that  
I be not hanged nor put in pryson, but  
delyuer me from the handes of my  
enmyes, that I be not vyrupered nor  
brought to shame by Rypus of ryp-  
mond that holdeth me in his gynnes.  
O Reynarde my ryght deare bro-

ther that ye be not heere now with my  
brytherne and with my cosyn Haw-  
gys, ye haue now forgotten me and let  
me beere die, wherfore I recomende  
me to god of heuen. And than Richar-  
de began to weepe full tenderly and  
sayde to Rypus. Rypus doo wish me  
what ye wyll.

**N**owe shall we speake of Bay-  
arde the good horse of Rey-  
nard, of his brytherne and Hawgys.  
It is trouche that Bayarde the horse  
of Reynard the sonne of Aymon that  
came of the fery, and thus he vnder-  
stode the worde whan it was spoken  
as well as it hat be a manne, whan  
Bayarde vnderstode the noyse that  
the folke made about the galous and  
saw that his master slept fast, he cam  
to Reynard and smor hym so harde  
with his feete in the myddes of his  
shewe that he made hym awake. So  
lepte Reynard vpon his feete al a frai-  
ed and behelde what it was and loo-  
ked roward Bounteful Leon and saw  
his brother vpon the ladder, so made  
he none other caryng but lighred vpon  
Bayarde that ranne as the wynde,  
for at every tyme he lepte xxx. foote in  
a playne grounde. And Alarde, Guy-  
charde, and Hawgys awoke for ioue  
of Bayard that made greate noyse.  
And whan they were all awaked:  
Hawgys began to crye as hyghte as  
he coude vpon his horse, the deuyl  
speede the euyl beast that thou hast let  
me slepe so longe, and than he lighred  
quickly vpon his backe, for ther was  
no better horse in all the worlde after  
Bayarde.

Whan



**R**ichard saw come his bretherne and Hawgys: he was so sore abashed with it that he wist not what he shoulde doo, & he sayde than to Richard. richarde ye be deliuered oute of my handes, for here comen Reynawd and Hawgys, and all they: purffaunce that come for to succoure you, and if it please you, ye shall haue mercede on me. For this that I dyd for to haue brought you heere: it was but for to haue a waye the debate that Charlemaine had with the .xii. peeres of Fraunce, and I knewe well that ye shoulde be rescued without any fault by youre bretherne and of Hawgys. Ripus saide richarde mocke not with me, for heere is to harde a mocke for me, and ye wynde not muche by for to gabbe me of this facion. By my soule saide ripus I mocke you not, it is in good earnest that I saye, ye maye see them heere not a bow shot a fette nor: I seeke not to doo you any harme but got downe fro the ladder, and haue mercy on me I beseeche you for goddes loue.

**R**icharde was meruelouslye abashed when he hearde ripus speke, and he turned his heade a syde and saide Reynawd that came a good pale, and when he sawe hym: he sayde ryppus I shall neuer clayme my brother Reynawde for my brother, yf he hange you not by the necke to the same gybet where as ye thought to haue hanged me righte now. This hanginge that richard spake to ripus: Reynawde was aryued and hearde

this that Richard had sayd to Ryppus. And Reynawde beganne than to crye with highe voice, so helpe me God Ripus ye be deade, for ye be a cursed man, and for youre cursednes: I shall hange you my owne selfe at this gybet, so shall you be possessor of my brother Richardes place, for al the people that Charlemayne shall make: shall not saue you thereto. This hanginge came there Hawgis sore chaufed & said to Ripus. Hawgis thou traitour euil man ye haue alwaies be readye to doo some euil againste vs, but such that I haue founde you heere I shall not seeke you no where elles, & than Hawgis bare vp his spere for to haue perced his body therewith, but Reynawde cried vpon hym, Colyn touche him not, for I wolde not for a greate thinge that a nother thanne I should slea him, for I shall auenge vpon him my deere brother richard, and than he drewe oute flamberge and smote ripus with it such a stroke that he felled him dead to cherch at the foote of the ladder, and after he sayde to his brethern, keep well that none of his folke scape but that they be deade or taken. And than Reynawd descended a foote and went vpon the ladder, and tooke richarde betwene his armes and brought him downe, and vnbond him handes and after he kyssed his mouthe and sayd to him. Brother howe doo ye, feele youre selfe, are ye not in ease?

**B**rother saide richarde I haue no harme, but let me be armed I praye you. By sainte Iohan saide Reynawde ye shall be armed anon

none. Brother sayd Rycharde let me haue the armour of ripus of Riplemonde, w a good wil said Reynawd And Incontynente he made Rypus to be had from his harnays and made his byther Rycharde for to be armed, cher with he made him to lyght on horsebacke & tooke him his sheeld and his baner. And whan richarde was well aparelled: Reynawd tooke the halter that rypus had put aboute Richardes necke, and put it aboute Rypus necke and after he mounted upon the laddye and drew him al dead, & hanged him there as he wolde haue hanged Rycharde, and with him wel. xv. mo of hys company such as king Charlemayne loued most. And whan he had hanged them: he sayde to Rycharde. Brother thus manye shall keepe heere watche in stede of you. Whan this was doone: As wyllys came to Reynawd and sayde to him. Cousin tell me who waked you so wel in time as ye were: cousin said Reynawd, by the fapth y I owe to god I slept as hard as though I had not slepte in. xii. nightes afore, but bayarde my gentil horse awoke me, than sayd As wyllys. O gracious Lorde of heauen blessed be God that made suche a horse, it is not the first good turne that Bayarde hath done to you my cousin nor also it shall not be the laste. And thei al went and kissed Bayarde for the goodnes that he had shewed vnto them.

**M**e lordes said chā Reynawd  
What shall we now doo: wee  
haue wrought well, syth y we haue

rescued the gentyll Rycharde whole & sounde, me semeth that we ought to goe to Mountauban, so shall we recomfort Clare my wyfe & my two children that ben all euill at ease for the loue of Reynawd and so shall we eate and slepe at our ease, for we haue well need therof, and we shall doo Justyce of king gon that so falsly hath betrayed vs. And after to morow we shall assaile charlemayn that we loue not, and we shall leue syue hundred men within Mountauban, and as many aboute Mountbail that shall succour vs if need be. And thā sayd Rycharde, sy if it please you ye shall not doo so. For ye knowe not the sorow, & the great lamen-tacion y the frēche mē made for loue of me in the holte of Charlemayne. And I promise you ye ought wel to loue Ogier, Rowland, Estorfawde the sonne of Dedon, Richarie of normandy, the fayre Gypdellon. Salamon of bretayne, and eke Oliuer of Wile. For they tooke great debate for me with Charlemayn within his paullion, and all this they dyd for the loue of you, for they wēde al for certayne that Rypus should haue hanged me, & that I should haue no succours, but and it please you giue me leue that I may shewe me to Ogier the dane & to all other our kinsmen that be in Charlemaynes courte, for they shall haue great Joye for to see me scape from the death.

**W**han sayd Reynawd: forsoth  
Ogier dyd lyke a valiaunte  
man, for mē ought for to loue their  
freendes & help them whā it is need  
S. i. and



## The booke of the foure

and Reynawde said. Brother þe sone  
is almoste vnder al redy. I feare me  
fore of you yf ye wyll go into þe hoste  
of Charlemayne, but and ye will ne-  
des goe there: take wyth you foure  
hundred knyghtes well horsed and  
wel armed, & put the in a busshemēt  
nyghe by where ye goe, and I shal be  
heere wyth my folke, and ye shal take  
wyth you Bondy my good horne: &  
yf ye need of ony helpe: soune it hys  
as ye can well doo, & I shal succour  
you incontinent. Syr sayd Richard  
be it as it please you. And than Rei-  
nawde tooke his horne to Rycharde  
& foure hundred knyghtes, and Ry-  
charde tooke on his way & bare the  
baner of Rypus wyth hym, and he  
did so muche that he came to þe hoste  
of Charlemain, & the king stode ar-  
med afore his pavilion, w<sup>th</sup> his folke  
that kepte the waye of Pouutfa w-  
con, and they saw come the baner of  
Rypus, as it had be borne by Rypus  
hymselfe vpon his horse.

**W**han whan Ogier saw Ry-  
charde come out: he wende it  
had be Rypus of Rypplemonde, that  
had hanged Richard, & of the sorow  
that he tooke for it he fell downe to  
the erth in a swoone. And after whā  
he was come agayne to hymselfe: he  
sayd, Alas we haue losse Rycharde,  
we shall neuer haue hym a gayne.  
Now it is well scene Rycharde that  
ye had few freendes. And wyth this  
he spurred his good horse Bayford  
and came agaynst Rycharde, for he  
trowed verily that it had be Rypus.  
And whan Charlemayne saw that  
Ogier þe dane ra toward Rypus: he

sayd to hys folke goe after hym ba-  
rons I shall now see whyche of you  
is my freend or my foe heere cometh  
Rypus, certaynly he hath doone wel  
his deuoure and hath wone me good  
seruice, for he hath made me quite of  
Rycharde one of my mortall enemy-  
es, and now Ogier wyll kyll him  
in treason, but and I can holde him:  
I shall doo suche Justyce vpon him  
that it shal be spoken of it longe time  
heere after. And than spurred they  
horses frenchemen and bourgoyns  
after Ogier, and Charlemayne him-  
selfe went after hym, but Ogier was  
all redy ferre from them, wroche and  
spers as a lion, & he cryed as hys as  
he coude. So helpe me god Rypus  
ye be dead, & ye shall haue a reward  
of that ye haue doone vnto my colin  
Rycharde & I promise you Charles  
mayne shall not come time ynoughe  
for to saue you from my spere. Whā  
Richard heard Ogier speake thus:  
he sayde, haue mercy vpon me my  
fayre colyn, for I am Rycharde your  
colyn and not Rypus, for wee haue  
hanged Rypus in my place, & I pro-  
mise you my brother reynawde hath  
wel auenged me vpon him and ther-  
fore I am come for to shewe me to  
you and to my other kynsmen for I  
note well þe ye shall be glad therof,  
ye make lesynge false traytour of ry-  
plemonde sayd Ogier, but ye shall  
not scape me so. Whan Richard saw  
Ogier so sore chaufed w<sup>th</sup> wyathe: he  
sayd vnto him. Colin know you not  
me nay wout sayd Ogier. For  
ye bere the armes & the baner of Ry-  
pus, I haue done so syr said Richard  
bycause þe I should not be knownen.

By my soule sayde Ogier. I wil see  
your face naked. For otherwyle I  
Wyll not beleue þ, that ye saye. Syz  
sayde Richearde, and ye shal see me a-  
non. And than he unbuckled his hel-  
me & shewed hys visage. And whan  
Ogier sawe him: he was right glad  
and wente and kissed the mouth of  
Richearde ful sweetly, and tooke him  
in hys armes many tymes and sayd  
to Richearde all laughynge. Cosyn  
whachane ye doone of Ripus: by mi  
fayth sayd Richearde, he is nowe Ar-  
chebischop of the feedes giuyng the  
benediccion wyth his foote. For my  
brother Reynawde hath haged hym  
with his owne handes, & wolde not  
suffre þ none other shoulde set hande  
vpon hym, but only hymselfe, by my  
soule sayd Ogier, he hath doone ri-  
ght well. And than he sayde to Ry-  
charde, saye Cosyn see to your selfe,  
for heere cometh Charlemayne, and  
god be with you, & thus returned a-  
gier. And whan Charlemayne saw  
Ogier: he sayd to hym, why went ye  
to Warde Ripus afoze me? Syz said  
Ogier if ye were not so nygh me: I  
shoulde smite of his hed. But I dare  
not doo it for loue of you, go yee to  
hi, for I make you sure, he shal haue  
none harme by me. Then sayd Char-  
lemayne, I shal defende him against  
all men. And than he spurred þ horse  
with the spures & came to Richard  
weenyng to him that it had ben Ri-  
pus and sayd to him, come nere my  
specyall frende Ripus, and take no  
feare of nothyng. For I shall keepe  
you agaynst all men. Whā Richearde  
heard Charlemayne speake thus: he  
sayde to hym. I wyll that ye knowe

now þ I am not the false traptoure  
Ripus, but I am Richearde the sone  
of Aymon, and I am the brother of  
Reynawde the beste knight of all the  
worlde, and of Warde and of Guy-  
charde, and cosyn to the valyaunte  
Hawgis that ye loue so muche, ye  
smote me to day in þ moynynge with  
a staffe in the head, whercof ye my-  
dyd greatly, and therfore my brothe-  
re Reynawde hath hanged your ryght  
welbeloued ryng there as he wolde  
haue lodged me, and xv. of his fel-  
lows with hym for to beare hym fe-  
lawshyp, now beware of me for I  
desye you. Whan Charlemayne vn-  
derstoode these wordes: he was so soze  
an angred of it þ none can be more,  
and spurred his horse and ran vpon  
Richearde, & Richearde agaynst him,  
and gaue þ one to the other so great  
strokes in theyr sheldes þ they brake  
bothe theyr spures all peeces. And w-  
the same they recountred eche other  
wyth their bodys so mightly that þ  
strongest of bothe habandon ned the  
stropes, but it happed wel to Char-  
lemayne that he abode within char-  
sons of the saddle, but Richearde fell  
do wne to the erth. And whan Ry-  
charde saw himself a ground he was  
wrothe for it & rose vp quicklye and  
set hande vnto his swerde, and went  
and smote Charlemayne vpon hys  
helme so great a stroke, that he made  
him all altonyed withal, but þ swerd  
wyded vpon þ helme that was good  
and fine do wne vnto the horse necke  
so harde that he cut it a sundre, and  
wyth this stroke: he felled the horse  
sterke dead, and by all thys was  
Charlemaynes brought to þ grounde



The booke of the four

And whan Charlemayne saw hym  
 selfe a groude: he was soze an angred  
 for it, and lept vpon his fecte ryght  
 quykely and tooke hys swerde in  
 hys hande, and smote Richarde vpon  
 his helme so harde that he made him  
 reele withal, and than begā betwene  
 Charlemayne and Rycharde a soze  
 sharpe medlynge. And whan they had  
 fought a great whyle together: char-  
 lemayne began to crye Mountrie  
 saynt Denys. And whan Rycharde  
 hearde this: he drewe him a syde, and  
 tooke hys hoine and souned it right  
 hye, so that his brethren heard it wel  
 and so did Hawgys. And than inco-  
 tynēt they spurred theyr horses, and  
 came towarde Rycharde for to suc-  
 cour hym. And than sayd Hawgys,  
 I doubt me that Rycharde is taken,  
 but we shall dye al wyth hym, or els  
 we shall haue hym agayne.

**O** Keate dyligence made Rey-  
 nawde for to succour Richard  
 And whan he was come where he  
 was: he cryed sodaynly Moun-  
 tainban and Alarde pauerement Guy-  
 charde Balācon & Richarde, Ardeyn  
 and Hawgis went & ranne vpon a  
 knight that was called magon other  
 wyle Sampson Lord of Pierrefrit  
 and tought hym suche a stroke: that  
 he felled hym dead to the grounde, &  
 Reynawde smote vpon another kni-  
 ght by suche a wyse that he shoued  
 his swerde throughe and throughe  
 his bodye, & Guycharde smote ano-  
 ther with hys swerde so spersly that  
 he cleued his head in two peeces, &  
 Alarde smote the fourth knyght vpon  
 his helme so great a stroke þ he caste  
 hym dead tofoze hys feere, & after he

ranne vpon another knyght ryche-  
 ly arayed and gaue eche other suche  
 strokes that they bothe fell do wne  
 from theyr horses to the erth, & than  
 came there Reynawde þ dyd so mu-  
 che that the sayde knyght was taken  
 prysoner, whych was called Hughe  
 of Almayne & brought hym to mou-  
 tainban. What shal I tel you moze  
 þ baraple began to be fell, & so cruel  
 that it was great pitie for to se, for þ  
 one spared not þ other, but slew eche  
 other as thicke as beastes. And whā  
 Reynawde saw al redy þ the Summe  
 was gone vnder & that the night ca-  
 me fast on: he was in a doubt for his  
 brethren, & sayd good lord through  
 thy mercy and redempcion, keep me  
 & my brethren from death and from  
 prysen, for the night þ is at hand ma-  
 keth me to be aferit. And as he spake  
 these wordes: came therc king Char-  
 lemayne as fast as his horse myght  
 walop agaynst Reynawde, and Rey-  
 nawde agaynst him, bicause he knew  
 him not, & smote eche other so harde  
 in theyr sheeldes þ they made theyr  
 speeres to flee in peeces, and recoū-  
 tred together bothe with theyr bodyes &  
 sheeldes so meruailously that they  
 ouerthrew eche other to the ground,  
 and than they rose quickly bothe at  
 ones & set hande to theyr swerdes, &  
 than Charlemayne began to crye  
 Mountrie saynte Denys, and af-  
 ter sayd, if I be outraged by one kni-  
 ght only: I ought not for to be a big-  
 no: to bere crowne. whā Reynawde  
 vnderstode Charlemayne speake: he  
 knew him well & withdrew hyself  
 a side & sayd. Alas how am I dys-  
 medrit is charlemayn to whom I ha-  
 ue

ue iousted, I haue misprised to soze  
for to haue set hande vpon hym. I ha  
good lozde, it is wel. xvi. peres a go  
ne that I spake not ones with hym,  
but I shal now speke to hi if I shoul  
de dye for it, for by reason & ryght:  
I ought to lese the lyf, wherfore I  
will make to hym a mendes present  
ly, and let him doo with me what he  
wyl, and whan he had sayd this: he  
went to Charlemayne and kneled  
before him and sayd to him. Sir for  
God I crye you mercy, gyue me tre  
wes tyll that I haue spoken wyth  
you. With a good wyl sayd Charle  
mayne, but I wote not who ye be:  
how be it that ye haue iusted w me.  
I thanke you hūbly sayd Reynaldd  
of that it pleaseth you to saye so by  
me. Syr wot that I am Reynaldd  
the sonne of Aymon, and I crye you  
mercy. And for that pytie that oure  
lozde had vpon the crosse of hys mo  
ther whan he recommended her to  
saynte Iohn his discipule, I beseeche  
you that ye wyl haue pitie vpon me  
and vpon my brytherne, ye knowe y  
I am your man, and ye haue disheri  
ted me of my landes and haue chased  
me out of Fraunce. It is a go. xvi.  
peres, and by cause of thys are dead  
so many noble knyghtes and valy  
aunt men and other in so great nū  
bre that it can not be sayd. For God  
ye see well what losse that cometh of  
y warre: for a lozde y hath no piti in  
hym hath a hert as hard as a stone.  
And therfore syr I beseeche you for  
god that ye haue merci on me and of  
my brytherne that ben such knyghtes  
as ye know. I speke not these wor  
des for feare of death: ne for couetyse

of richesse. For god gramerci we haue  
goodes ynough, but I speake it for  
to haue your loue onely. Syr suffre  
that we haue peace with you, and we  
shall become your men for euermore  
and we shall swere to you fayth and  
legeaunce, and also I shal gyue you  
Houatban and my good horse bay  
arde, which is the thing that I loue  
best in this worlde after my brytherne  
and Hawgis. For there is not in  
all the worlde suche another horse.  
And yf thys cānot satisfy your mind  
I shal doo yet more, pleaseth it to you  
for to pardon my brytherne, and I  
shall for swere fraunce for euermore  
that I shall neuer be seen there. And  
I shal goe to the holy sepulchre in Je  
rusalem bare foote for the remem  
braunce of you, and I noy Hawgis  
shal neuer come agayne into fraunce  
but we shall warre tyll on goddes  
enempes as ben turches and Sara  
lyns.





**W**han whā Charlemayn hear  
de Reynawde speake thus he  
answered hym and sayde. Reynawde  
ye speake for nought, ye dyd an ouer  
great foly, whan ye tooke that hardi-  
nes vpon for to speake w me in my  
palays as ye dyd, and yet yee dyd  
worse whan ye slew my newe ber-  
thelot that I loued so muche, & now  
ye speake of peace & ye crye me merci.  
I promyse you for certayne that ye  
shall haue no peace with me, but yf  
ye doo that I shal tell you. Spz said  
Reynawde what shall that be tel me  
I pray you? I shall shewe it to you  
Wyth a good wil sayd Charlemayne  
and if ye doo it, ye and your brethern  
shall accorde wyth me, and I shall  
gyue you agayne your heritage, and  
yet I shal gyue you ynough of myne

owne. It is that ye gyue me what-  
euer is in my handes for to doo my plea-  
sure wyth hym. For I hate him more  
than any thyng in the worlde. Spz  
sayd Reynawde, yf I should deliuer  
hym to you, what wolde ye doo to hi  
Reynawde sayd Charlemayne I p-  
myse you I should make hym to be  
drawen shamefully at foure horses  
tayles thzough Warys, & after that  
I should take from the body of hym  
the lymmes one after another, and  
than I should make hym to be bznt  
and his ashes to be cast at the wynde  
And whan he shall be arayd as I  
tell you: let hym than doo his inea-  
tacions & his magyke as he wyll, &  
I pardon hym all that he can doo  
to me after þ. Than sayd Reynawde  
to the kynge. Spz wolde ye doo it

in deed as ye say: yea said Charlemayne in good fayth. Emperour sayd Reynawde Wolde you not take to wones ne castelles, golde nor syluer for the raunsom of Daugis: certes nay sayd Charlemayne. Syr sayd Reynawde than shall we neuer be accorded to giether. For I tell you for certeyn that yf ye had all my bretherne in your pryson, and that ye were delibered for to make them to be hanged: yet should I not geue you manwys for so haue them deliuered oute of your handes. Holde your peace than sayd Charlemayne and be ware of me for orher wyse get ye no peace wyth mee. Syr sayd Reynawde I am sorry for it. for we be no men that ought to be caste from your scruple, and sith that ye de fynd me: I shall defend me, and our lord shall me doo that grace yf it please hym that I shall not betake of you. And whan Charlemayne heard this: he was sore angry and ranne vpon Reynawde. and whan Reynawde saw hym come vpon hym he sayd to hi. Syr for god mercy suffre not that I sette hande vpon you, for if I should let my selfe for to be slayne by you: I were well a myschaunce. Mallayl sayd Charlemayne these wordes auailerth you not for ye muste neddes defende yourself. And thā Charlemayne smote hym with Joyuse his swerde vpon his helme. and the stroke slided downe vpon the sheelde of Reynawde so that he kytted quyte and clene a great part therof. Whā Reynawde felle so greaue a stroke that kynge Charlemayne had gyue hym: he was sore angedred for it. He baunced hym selfe forth

and caught the kyng with bothe his armes by the backe, & by the waste in maner of wastelynge. For he wolde not synge hym with his swerde flāberge, and tooke a layd hym vpon þe necke of his horse baiard, for to haue brought hym with hym to Mountatowan without any other harme. And whan Charlemayne sawe that he was hādeler of this facion: he began to crye as lowde as he myghte. Mountiope saynt Denys, and than he sayd, ha saye neuw Rowlande, where be your Oliuer of byenne and ye duke Raymes, and byshop Turpin, shall ye suffre that I be thus taken and brought as a prysoner and if ye doo so, it shall be a great shame to you al. Reynawde began thā to crye Mountatowan as hygge as he coult whan he heard Charlemayne speake so. And after he sayd, ha my bretherne and ye colyn Daugis come hyther, and let vs goe, for I haue gyuen the kyng suche a checke, that if we canne no w bynge him with vs, we shall haue peacc in Fraunce fro hens forth on. Than the noble peres of Fraunce as Rowland, Oliuer, & the other cam to the succours of Charlemayne, and of that other parte came there for to helpe Reynawde his bretherne and Daugis, & wel foure hundred knyghtes well armed. And whan þe valyaunt knyghtes were assembled together of bothe partyes: ye should than haue seen a merueylous batayle. For they slewe eche other as bestes and there were so many spere broken, and so manye sheeldes clouen and helmed into peres, and so many helmes



The booke of the foure

helmes vnbnckled, and so manye a  
 quiras broken and perced, and soma  
 ny hoyses that drewe after theyr gut  
 tes a longe in þe felde, and so ma  
 ny a man slayne that it was pytie  
 for to see. And whan Rowland was  
 come to the meddle: he wente vpon  
 Reynawde and gaue him so great a  
 stroke vpon his helme that he was  
 all astonyed therewith, and after he  
 sayd to him. Wasell ye haue doone  
 euill þe trowed to haue brought a  
 way the king in this maner of wise,  
 ye wot well it is to heaup a bourden  
 for to lede of this facion, ye shal leue  
 him, and yet ye shall aby full deere  
 for it or ye escape me. And whā Rey  
 nawde saw that he was thus repre  
 ued, and felt the great stroke þe row  
 lande had giuen to him vpon his hel  
 met: he was wrothe, and tooke hys  
 swerde in his hande, holdyng alway  
 es Charlemaine afoze hym vpon  
 bayardes necke & came to Rowland  
 and sayd to hym. Damp Rowlande  
 come forth so shall ye wot how fla  
 berge cutteth. And whan Rowlande  
 vnderstode hym: he came vpo hym, &  
 whan Reynawde sawe hym come: he  
 let fall downe Charlemaine & ranne  
 vpon Rowland. And there began a  
 monge them two affers medlynge.  
 This hangyng: came Alarde, Guy  
 charde and the lytle Rycharde, and  
 ranne vpon Rowlande at ones and  
 gaue hym so muche to doo that he  
 muste put hymselfe to flyght wolde  
 he or no. And whan Reynawde saw  
 that Charlemaine and Rowland had  
 saued them selfe: he was ryght soye  
 for it, and he sayd to his bretherne.  
 My bretherne ye haue wrought yll,

for yf ye had be still by me wee had  
 doone a great fayt, for I had taken  
 Charlemaine that wee should haue  
 brought wyth vs to Mountauban.  
 Syr sayde his brethern, we are soye  
 for it that we wold not so, but we had  
 so muche to doo in a nother place þ  
 it is well to vs þ we be scaped saue  
 wyth our liues. But let vs see that  
 wee doo well, and solwe our hoise  
 to the ende ye may gather agayne to  
 gether your folke that be so sperkled  
 abrode, for there is daunger bycause  
 of the nyght that cometh so fast on,  
 and call agayne your baner for we  
 haue wonne moze than we haue lost  
 and let vs go to Mountauban. Rey  
 nawde that was sage vnder his bre  
 thern and Hawgis counsellid him  
 whan Charlemaine sawe that Rey  
 nawde had withdraue hys baner: he  
 was glad of it, for he saw well that  
 his folke was at the worst hande,  
 so made he to sowne the retrete and  
 passed Balancon, and did so muche  
 that he came agayne to hys holte.  
 And whan he was lyghted downe a  
 foote: he sayde to hys folke. By my  
 soule it goeth not well wyth vs, for  
 Reynawde hath put vs from þe felde  
 Syr sayd Rowland, speake no moze  
 of it for it is not longe on you, but þ  
 wee had be almoste shamed, ye dyd  
 great folyc whan ye iousted w Reyn  
 nawde for yf he had slayne you or  
 take: the warre had be ended þ hath  
 lasted so longe. ¶ I leue now heere  
 to speake of Charlemaine & of Row  
 lande his neuw, & retorne to speak  
 of Reynawde and his brethern and  
 of Hawgis theyr colin and of theyr  
 folke.

How

**C** Howe after that Reynawde, hys  
brethern and Hawgys had discom-  
fited Charlemayne, after þ they had  
rescued Rycharde, that Ripus wolde  
haue hanged at Mountfawcon, Wēt  
agayne vpon hym, and pulled down  
his pauplypon, and bare away with  
them the Eggle of golde that was ther  
vpon, wherof the kyng was full sor-  
ry for it, so that he wolde haue taken  
agayne hys crowne into the handes  
of his barons saying that he wolde  
not be no moze theyr kyng because  
that they had saylled hym, and had  
habandonned hym for the foure son-  
nes of Aymon. And sayd to them, þ

they should crowne Reynawde ther  
with, so should he be their kyng. For  
they loued hym better than they dyd  
hym. And how Wyuer sayd to char-  
lemayne, that he should take agayne  
his crowne and that he should yeld  
him Hawgis that he had taken as  
he robbed the paullion. For he abode  
there alone. And how Charlemayn  
tooke agayne hys crowne, and was  
right glad of the pryse of Hawgys  
that he hated so much.



**D** Ere theweth the hystory þ whā  
Reynawde the sonne of Aymō  
saw þ the kyng Charlemayne was  
gone agayn to his hoste: he made his  
baner to ride before him, & railed his  
folke together. And whā he had mou-  
ted þ mountayne of mountfawcon: he

called his folke & sayde to them. Mi  
frēdes put your self in ordinaunce &  
take on your way to Gestraban &  
I, my brethern & Hawgis shal come  
behinde. For I feare me lest þ frenche  
men þ be so wroth þ we haue discōfi-  
ted them: so shall folow us for to hurte  
us



## The booke of the four

vs yf they can, and yf they doo: Wee shall better suffre the payne tha our folke. I wolde not for no good that Rowlande and Oliver should moeke with vs, nor that they should fio vs in disaraye. By my soule sayde Alarde. Soother Reynawde ye speke well and wiselye. And than they folke put themselves in ordenaunce, and they abode behinde til that their folke had passed Balacon. And whā the moste part was passed: he tooke threethousāde men of the best of his folke and sayde to the other, go your wayes to BountaWhan. For I wil goe & assaile the kyng Charlemayn in his pavilion, what so euer it hap of it. And so shall I shewe his folke what I can doo, and that I am a man for to seeke hym and not he me

**A**nd whā Reynawde had sayd this: he came to the water of Balacon, and passed ouer with his threethousāde men, And they rode so longe that they came to the hofte of Charlemayne, that was wrothe more than mesure requirerh because that he had losse the felde agaynst Reynawde. And whan Reynawde sawe the pavilion of Charlemayne: he sayd to his byrthern, and to al his folke, I praye you y pe gouerne you wpsely. Spz sayd Richard the hardy he that wyl be enhaunced in pryce: he ought not to looke so nygh, but he must Jeoparde for to conquire woꝝshipp. And whan Richard had sayd so: he set hande to his swerde, & spurred his horse with the spurres and wente streyght to the pauplyon of Charlemayne, & cut of the cordes &

made it fall doꝝne to the erth with the Egge of golde massy that was of great value. Whan Reynawde sawe this: he called Hawgis & said to him cosin come hyther, helpe me to bring a way this gayne, spz sayd Hawgis with a good will, and they lighted a foote & tooke the Egge of golde that was so riche y no man wote what it was worth, & Reynawde sayd to his folke. My lordes smite now well & sayne not your selfe, he that beginneth a game: he ought to see an ende of it to his profyte yf he can. Who than had seene the folke of Charlemayne arme them & com out of their tentes & ranne vpon the sonnes of Aymon: he wolde haue meruayled, & it was pitie for to see the great slaughter that was doone there. Whan Hawgis had put the egge of golde in sure handes: he wente agayne to y pavilion of Charlemayne & he found the kyng & sayd to him. By my head spz Emperour, ye haue troubled vs sore a longe whyle, but ye shall bye it ful deere at this houre your comyng into Gascoyne & the death of my father the duke benes of Aigremount. For I shal giue to you such a stroke y ye shal neuer make warre to vs nor to none other. And w this: he bare by his speare for to haue shoued it through the brest of charlemayn, but charlemayn abode not y stroke, but he turned himselfe aside & the spere entered into the bed of the king wel two foote, & whan charlemayn saw this he was aserde, & he begā to cry mou: foye saynt denis, & than he said. Ha faye neuell Rowland where are ye now: whan Hawgis heard call Rowlande

lande, he looked about him and saw not Reynawde nor his brethren, for they had put themselves to the way to retourne home agayne.

**O**ver longe tarried Hawgis in the hoste of Charlemayne, for Reynawde was all redy passed ouer Balancon, and Rowland & Oliuer were all redy come to the callinge of Charlemayne soze afrayed, & whan Hawgis sawe them: he made no longer tarpinge, but gaue the spurres to his horse & went after Reynawde as fast as his horse myght runne. And whan he wolde haue passed balancon: he met wyth a great company of the folke of Charlemayne, and Hawgis smote one of them so hard in the helde, & he overthrew both horse & man to the erth. And after that he smote the sonne of Wylen or Wyll so that he cleued his helde & sonder & cast him do wne to the grounde w a wounde moztal, & than he cryed out a whan & sayd. Ha fayre cousin Reynawde where be you, succour me for god. for if ye lose me: ye shal haue harme therat. And than Hawgis thought weil that Reynawde was gone, this hangynge: came Oliuer throughe the prele and came vpon Hawgis & smote him so harde & it abode not nother for helde nor for courset of steele, but he made hym a wounde in his breste, and caste hym do wne to the erth.

**W**han Hawgis felt hymselfe thus hurt and overthowen: he was ryght wrothe for it. So rose he vp quickly vpon his feete & tooke his swearde in his hande & did mer-

uayles of armes, and the nyght was depe darke that almoste & one knew not the other. And whan Oliuer saw Hawgis defende hymself so well: he sayde to him. I knowe not thee knight whom thou art, but and thou yelde not thy selfe to me: I shal now smyte of thy head from thy shoulders. What is thy name sayd than Hawgis: for and thou be a good man I shal yelde me to thee and els not, knight my name is Oliuer of Lien. Whan Hawgis heard him named: he knew him well, and sayd to hym, Ha gentyll knight Oliuer I yelde me to you vpon your sayth & vnder suche a condycion that ye shal not deliuer me to Charlemayne, for if ye deliuer me in his handes I am dead wythout remedy & he shal make me dye shamefully as a theefe. By my sayth sayd Oliuer this wyll I not doo for I dare not hyde you from Charlemayne, but yelde you and I promise you & I shal help you to my power for to make your apoyntment with the king, sir sayd Hawgis, & I yelde me to you vpon your trowth and tooke his swerde to hym & Oliuer tooke it, & after made hym to be lighted vpon a litle horse, & brought him to the pavilion of Charlemaine where they found not & kying, bycause he was all afrayed as ye heard afore. And whan Oliuer saw that he found not Charlemaine: he was soze aferd & Hawgis should scape from hym throughe his inuencions & wythe craft, and sayd to him, Hawgis ye know how I haue taken you by armes and that ye are my prisoner, I wyll & ye gyue me your sayth trulpy that



The booke of the foure

that ye shal not go out of with in w  
out my leue. Syr sayde Hawgis w  
a good wyll, and thus he dyd swere  
this Olyuer. And whan Olyuer had  
taken the othe of Hawgis: he made  
him to be vnarmed, and made hys  
woude to be wapped: and gaue him  
a mantell vpon him and made hym  
to lye vpon a bed. Now shal we leue  
a litle to speake of Charlemayne, of  
Olyuer and of Hawgis. And shal  
we w of Reynawde and his brethren  
what they dyd whan the host of char  
lemayne was moued, and how they  
wonne the Egge of Golde that was  
of so great value, & how Reynawde  
sayd to his brethren, lordes let vs se  
now for to quyte vs wrl, for it were  
not good for vs for to tary heere any  
lenger. And than he made to with  
draw his folke, and made them put  
to the wyte. And as they wente: Ri  
chard sayd to Reynawde. Syr wee  
haue gotten a ryche pryce thanked be  
God. For Charlemayne shal be ma  
ny a longe day wrothe therfore. Cer  
tes sayd Reynawde saye brother ye  
saye trowth and also we haue slayne  
a great many of hys folke. Ha God  
sayde than Marke, where is our co  
sin Hawgis: for I se him not heere  
Brother sayd Richard, be not aserde  
for Hawgis, for I beleue that he is  
gone to Mountauban afoze vs, god  
be with hym wherfoeuer he be sayd  
Reynawde. For he is right sage, and  
a noble knyght. I wolde not for all  
the Golde in the world that my cosin  
Hawgis had any harme. ¶ We shal  
leue a litle to speake of Reynawde  
and hys brethren that are bounde to  
Mountauban glad of theyr pryce.

And shal now speake of Charle  
mayne that was so soze wrothe as  
I haue sayde. ¶

**W**han Charlemayne was fro  
his harneys: he fel in a swo  
une for the greates angre that he had  
of that he had be thus distressed. And  
whan he was come agayne to hym  
selfe: he sente for the duke Raynes  
the bisshoppe Turpyn, Escoute the  
sonne of Dedon for Salamō of bre  
taine, Richard of Normady, perle  
Guydellon and for Ogier the dane.  
And whan they were all gathered to  
gether: the kynge began to shewe to  
them his complayntes in thys ma  
ner Lordes I haue kepte and mayne  
teyned you vnder mitucion þ space  
of .xl. yeres and moze that no man  
hath not wronged you of a peny, &  
ye haue no neryghbour that dare as  
ke you any thinge. Now me semeth  
because that I am now olde that I  
am but half a man & yet not so good  
as I wolde be, and I maye not be a  
kynge without you: for whan ye faile  
me I am no kynge, ye know well þ  
ye haue left me for loue of Reynawd  
wherof I am ryght sorry as I maye  
well, for Reynawde hath taken me  
where I was habandoned of you,  
& he hath chased me out of the feild,  
certes I am worse thā mad of thys  
þ ye haue forsake me for Reynawde.  
And syth that it is thus wyth me: I  
seeke not to lye any lenger, nor to  
be kynge any moze, and now I take  
to you the crowne to þ ende that ye  
shal gve it vnto Reynawde whan  
ye wyll, and that ye make him king  
of fraunce. For I wyll be no moze  
your

pour kyng.

**W**hen the .xiiij. peeres of Fraunce,  
 & the other lordes hearde Char-  
 lemayn speake so sorowfullpe:  
 thei were soze abashed that there was  
 no man so hardye that durst saye one  
 worde. And the one looked vpon the  
 oher and were abashed. And whan  
 the duke Raymes of baviere vnder-  
 stood the wordes of Charlemain: he  
 put him self forth and said. Sir Em-  
 perour god forbyd that ye should doo  
 as ye saye, for it were great shame to  
 vs all and also to you, but I wot wel  
 that we haue mysprysed apensit you  
 in that we haue supported Reynaw-  
 de, but ye oughte to consydre that we  
 haue doone, was by no malysce: but  
 for good entencion. For we Wend for  
 to haue made the peace of the warre  
 that hath endured so longe, wherby  
 many good true men are deade, but  
 sith that we see, that it pleaseth not  
 you to make peace with the four son-  
 nes of Aimon: take again your crow-  
 ne and be not wroth with vs, and we  
 shal promysse you that we al shal ser-  
 ue you well and truly, and that we  
 shal take Mountauban or a monerh  
 be passed, or elles we shal die all, &  
 from hence forth on he that shal spa-  
 re the four sonnes of Aimon, shal be  
 slaine of vs. Then saide the kinge  
 Charlemayne, lette all this alone I  
 tell you for certayne that I shal ne-  
 uer be your kyng, but ye peeld to me  
 Reynawde or Watogis the cursed  
 theef that hath mocked me so often.  
 And whan Charlemaine had saide  
 this: he entred within his pavilion so  
 re an angred. And than came there

Olyuer that was soze abashed of  
 he sawe the king make so cutill there,  
 and after he saide to Charlemayne.  
 Syr: Wherof are ye so soze angry: by  
 my faith saide the duke Raymes he  
 hath shamed vs, for he hath forsaken  
 his crowne and his realme. Sir said  
 than Olyuer doo not so, but take a-  
 yen your crowne and be our lord and  
 our kyng. And who dooth not your  
 commaundement: chastyse him in  
 such a maner that me take ensample  
 therby. Olyuer saide Charlemayn,  
 ye speake for nought, for I wyl not  
 doo it, but I haue Reynawde or Wat-  
 ogis dead or quicke, syr saide Olyuer  
 now pardon vs than, & I shal deli-  
 uer to you Watogis or eyn.

**D**imp Olyuer sayd Charlemain  
 I am not a chyld, wherof  
 men oughte to mocke with. For I wot  
 well that Watogis doubteth you of  
 noching. Syr: said Olyuer, yf ye will  
 promysse me that ye shal take again  
 your crowne, and that ye shal keep  
 vs as ye haue doone afore tyme: I  
 shal bringe him nowt afore you, by  
 my faith sayde Charlemayne yf ye  
 doo it, and that I maye haue hym at  
 my will (for I hate hym most of all  
 men in the worlde) I shal doo al that  
 ye will desire of me, and also I shal  
 giue you londes ynough that ye shal  
 be content of me, for if Watogys were  
 not: the sonnes of Aymon myght not  
 endure apensit me, for yf I had them  
 in prision, and thoughte I had sworn  
 to keep them, yet shoulde that theefe  
 Watogis sle the pman afore me.  
 Syr: said Olyuer I shal bring him  
 to you without any doubte. And than  
 T. i. Oly



Olyuer went to his pauppon and Rowland with him, and many other knightes for to see Hawgis. Olyuer sayde then to Hawgis, Hawgis ye must come to Charlemayne. Olyuer saide Hawgis, ye haue betrayed me, but I wot well that Charlemaine shall be more curteous than ye haue be, for he shall do me no harme, and let vs goe to him in the name of god whan ye will. And than Olyuer ledde Hawgis to Charlemaine, and whan he was within the pavillion: he went streighte to the king and saide to him. Syr ye haue promised me that if I brought Hawgis: hat ye should take againe pource crowne. And that ye should keep vs to right as ye haue doone afore time. Certes saide Charlemaine it is trouble, and if ye keep your couenaunt: I shall doo that I haue promysed you. Now holde you sit saide Olyuer here Hawgis, that I deliuer to you for to doo your pleasure with him the which I haue take and conquered by force of armes. whā the kyng Charlemaine sawe Hawgis: he was so gladde that no man mighte be more, and after he saide, by my fath nowe haue I one parce of my desyre, thou false theef Hawgis now I holde thee, nowe shalt thou be rewarded of thy pride that thou hast shewed to me whan thou barest a waye myne egle of golde, and for all the good turnes and theftes that thou hast doone in thy daies. For many times thou hast angred me soze, wherof thou shalt be nowe payed after thy deservynge. Syr saide then Hawgis ye shall doo with me what it please you, for I am

now in your handes, but I counseyll you for the best that ye let me goe and that ye make peace with Keynawde, and with his bretherne, for ye shall get no thinge by my deathe, and my colins been such that they shall auenge it right wel by force of armes, and if ye doo as I saie: ye shall haue with you the flour of knighthode of all the worlde. A theef said Charlemaine how fearful thou arte now. Certes this that thou sayest shall auayle the nothyng. Syr saide Hawgis I am no theefe. Now can I not doo no thing sich that I am in your handes. And whan ye shall haue put me to death: ye shall doo me no more nothyng, and yet ye shall be soze for me or euer. xiiii. houres comen at an ende. Bybawd saide Charlemaine, speake not so boldly, for I can: thou shalt haue an euil nyght or euer thou scape me, nor the glutons thy colyns shall not helpe the thereto, but that I shall make the die in despite of al thy witchcraft that thou cannest doo. Now we shall leue a lile to speake of Charlemaine and of Hawgis: and we shall speake of the good knight Keynawde Alard, of Gyschard, and of the litle Richard his brethern.

**W**han Keynawd was departed from the hoste of Charlemayn as I sayde before: he rode so longe that he came to Mountawban and his folke with hym. And whan that lady wist that her lord came: she came him ayenst, and said to hym. Sir ye be righte welcome, haue ye deliuered Bycharde? yea, here.

verely sayd Keinaude god graunter  
cy, and blessed be god sayde the lady.  
And than sh: went to Rycharde and  
kysed hym moze than ten tymes, &  
there was a cheere and a feast made  
ryght anyable. And after they had  
made greate Joye: Reynawd began  
to demaunde after hys cosyn, and the  
lady answered, my lord I knowe  
no troynges of hym, and whan Kei-  
naude heard that he was soze agast  
of it, and turned himselfe to warde  
hys bzetherne and sayde to theym.  
My bzetherne I praye you that we  
may know whether our cosyn maw-  
gis is come or nor, and goe seeke him  
in his lodges, for haply he is goe for  
to vnarme him selfe. And inconty-  
nent Guicharde and Richard sought  
hym at thys lodges and asked for  
hym to two of his men, the whiche  
sayde that they had not seen hym sich  
he was gone with them. And whan  
they hearde that: they were full soze  
and went agayne to theyr brocher  
Reynawde and tolde him howe they  
could not fynde hym. Whan Rey-  
nawde vnderstoode that they hadde  
not founde hym, he beganne to make  
moze sorowe than yf all his bzethern  
had be deade, and than who had seen  
the greate moue that Blarde, Guy-  
charde and the lycyll Richard ma-  
de for theyr cosyn: he wolde haue had  
greate pitie for to see theym, for they  
pulled theyr hertes from theyr heades  
and scratched theyr visages, whan  
the good lady sawe the greate sorowe  
that Keinaude her husbande and his  
bzetherne made, she fell downe in a  
fwoone to the erth. I promyse you he  
that had seen that sorowe (how heard

hearted that he were coude) not haue  
kept him from weepynge.

**A**fter that Reynawde hadde  
thus made greate sorowe: he  
restrained himselfe a lycyll and chan-  
sayd. Ha my cosyn Mawgis well ye  
haue stolen your selfe from vs, and  
what shill we doo fro hence forth sich  
that we haue lost you: whan they had  
made theyr mone in this maner a lo-  
ge while: Keinaude said to his bz-  
etherne and to his folke. My Lordes  
I praye you that ye leue your sorowe,  
for by no sorowe the matter can not  
be remedied, I praye you recomforte  
yourselfe, for I wyll put me agayne  
to the waye for to goe to the woode  
of the serpent for to speake with the  
abbot of saynte Lazare to wot yf he  
canne tell vs anye tydings, for my  
hearte iudgeth me that afoze. xliiii.  
houres I shall knowe the certente,  
and fare well my bzetherne yll I co-  
me agayne, ye speake well and wisely  
saide Blarde, but we shall goe with  
you for to keep you. Certes said Rei-  
nawd, ye shall not come a foote with  
me: And tha Keinaud went in to his  
chambre, and made him to be armed,  
and came and lighted vpon bayarde  
his good horse, & yssued out of mou-  
taun, the sheelde at the necke, and  
the spere in the hand and came to ba-  
lancon, and passed ouer the water, &  
whan he was ouer the water he founde  
two laddes that came to water their  
horses from the host of Charlemain.  
Whan the laddes sawe Reynawde  
that was so greate, and was all  
alone: they sayde to hym. Syr what  
be you that are alone, ye seeme to be a



The booke of the four

noble man. Children saide Reynawd  
 Jam of Rypus folke that dyd scape  
 whan the sonnes of Armon hauged  
 hym at mounsfawcon. And than he  
 sayde agayne to theym. What dooth  
 the valyaunt kynge Charlemaine?  
 so it is suppet tyme with hym. Syr  
 said the laddes the kynge is well me  
 rye and maketh good chere, & he hath  
 forgotten all the sorowe that he dyd  
 make for your mayster Rypus. For  
 men haue brought to him Hawgys  
 that he hated so muche. Now tell me  
 saide Reynawde is Hawgis deader?  
 Syr saide the two laddes he is yet a  
 liue. Whan Reynawde understoode  
 that Hawgys was a lyue: hys herte  
 lepte all in his bely for greate Joye,  
 and than he saide, my saye children  
 blessed more you be syth that Haw  
 gys is not dead. Now I feare me not  
 that he shall dye this daye. All thus  
 as Reynawde spake this: the laddes  
 went their wayes, and Reynawde  
 abode alone thynkyng at the tuer  
 spde, and whā he had thoughte ynou  
 ghe: he saide to himselfe saye God  
 what shall I doo? I wote not now  
 what shall I thynke or saye, for yt I  
 goe assayle Charlemayne at his sup  
 per: the night is darke, and he shall  
 wene that I haue great folke with me  
 and he shall be aferde to lese Hawgis  
 and thus he might kill him anon.  
 But sith that I knowe so muche of  
 him: I shall tary till to morowe, and  
 yt he bringeth him than for to be put  
 to death: I shall defende him with my  
 power, or els I shall dye with him.

¶ Here leueth the histori to speake of  
 Reynawde that is at the riuers syde  
 of balancon al alone vpon Bayarde:

and returneth to speake of Charle  
 mayne the emperoure kynge and of  
 Fraunce.

¶ How the king Charlemayne wolde  
 haue doone hange Hawgys incon  
 tinent after that Olluet had deliuerd  
 him to him, but though the meane of  
 of the .xii. peeres of Fraunce that as  
 request of Hawgys were his surety  
 for one night only he dyd so muche  
 that he scaped with his honour and  
 acquitaunce of them that were hys  
 sureties. And he brought with hym  
 to mounta whan the crowne and the  
 swerde of the Charlemayne & same  
 night, and also the swerdes of all the  
 peeres of Fraunce. wherof the Em  
 perour was right sorry, and how the  
 kynge Charlemayne sente woode to  
 Reynawde that he should sende hym  
 agayne his crowne and his swerde  
 and all that Hawgis had boyne a  
 waye with him, and he should geue  
 him cruce for two peeres, to the whi  
 che thing Reynawde graunted wher  
 so happed many greate euyl les af  
 terwarde.



**I**n this patty sheweth the histo-  
rye that whan Charlemaigne  
saw him seased of Hawgis: he cal-  
led Rowland, Olpuet, Ogier the da-  
ne, the bishop Turpin, Richard of  
Normandy, Guidellon of Bauler &  
the Duke Raymes and said to them,  
My lordes I pray you as muche as  
I can that ye doo make a greate ga-  
lous, for I am delybered that afore  
supper Hawgis the great theef shal  
be hanged by the necke, for yf all the  
woylde had swozne the contrary: yet  
shall I not keep him to the day we  
come. *Sy:* saide the duke Raymes  
syth that it please you that Hawgis  
shall dye: ye shall make hym dye by  
a nother maner of wyse, if ye doo af-  
ter me. And how than sayde Charle-  
maigne: *Sy:* I counseyll you that

ye hange not Hawgis by nyght: for  
Reinaude and his bretherne should  
mocke you, and they shall saye that  
ye durst not make him dye by daye  
light for feare of them, and therfore  
*sy:* abide till the day be come, and thā  
maye ye doo execution vpon hym  
with wo:shyp. And whan the tyme  
shall become that ye wyl sende him  
forth: send many folke with him, that  
and Reinaude and his brethern co-  
me there for to succure him: that thei  
may be take, and hanged with hym,  
Raymes sayde the kinge, ye mocke  
with me, for yf this theefe scape me:  
I am defamed. *Sy:* sayde Hawgis,  
if ye be a feard that I should goe awai  
I shall giue you suretye that I shall  
not goe. Who is that saide Charle-  
maigne that shal be thy suretye: is there  
E.iii. anye



ny man in the world that is so hardy that dare take this: Syr, saide Hawgis I shal finde ynough of it please you. Nowe shall we see saide Charlemain how ye shal finde them, and thā Hawgis looked about him, & saide the two lye peeres: so called he Diuer and saide to hym. Syr Diuer ye promysed me whan I peeled me to you that ye wolde helpe me to ward Charlemaine. Nowe I requite you that ye wyl be my suretye if please you, wryth a good wyl sayde Diuer vpon my life and my goodes I shal be your surety, and ye sit Rowland, saide Hawgis shall ye not be also for god my surety: and ye duke Raymes, and ye Ogier, and ye Escoff, and ye byshop Turpin, and ye damp Richarde of Normandy, and ye Guydellon of Baupere, I praye you all that ye will be my surety for the loue of the good knight Beinaud Hawgis saide than the duke Raymes, will ye promysse to vs vpon your faith that ye shall not goe from vs without our leaue: ye saide Hawgis vpon my faith. And than came the duke Raymes, with the other peeres of fraunce before the kyng Charlemaine, and saide to hym. Sir we will be suretye for Hawgis vpon our lyues & vpon our landes that we holde of you that he shall not goe a waye without your leaue, & also of al your company, and we shall deliuer hym agayne to you to morow in the morninge for to doo with hym what ye wyl. My lordes saide the king sich that ye wyl be his suretye: I remysse him in to your keepynge, by suche a

condicyon, but that I haue him to morow in the morninge earlye: ye shal leese all your landes. And ye shall neuer maye retorne in to douce fraunce againe. Sir saide Diuer we graunte it as ye haue sayd. Lordes saide the duke Raymes sich that this is doon: lette vs goe recomforthe Hawgis, for he is well sayd. Lordes saide than Hawgis to them agayne. Sir that ye haue doon me one good turne: doo me a nother. I praye you get me some meate, for I am yll a hungred. Whan Charlemaine vnderstoode Hawgis spake: he looked vpon hym, and saide all laughinge. And shalte thou eate sayde Charlemaine: yea, saide Hawgis if I can haue any meate. Nowe heate saide Charlemaine, what is it of this deuil heere asketh for meate and so spelle a terme he hath to lyue. For & I were in his pynge: I should not nowe haue courage for to eate. Syr saide the duke Raymes ye saye yll, for who hath eaten well: he is the better at his ease wherof I praye you that ye let him haue some meate. And thenne the kinge washed his handes for to goe to souper and saide, wher shall Hawgis be for to eate: syr saide Rowlande, he shall well be by you. Reuewe saide the king ye saie ryghte well, for heere shal we be sure of hym and I hadde thoughte for to doo so. For I shoulde not dare trust hym to none other man. And than the kinge was sette at the table, and he made Hawgis to sit nexte hym, and serued hym at the table, for as longe as the supper lasted: he durste not eate nor drynke, least that Hawgis should

shoulde werke wythe crafte vpon him, but Hawgis ate ryghte wel, for he had a good appetit to his meat. And whan Olyuer sawe that he beganne to lawghe and he wed Rowlande and after saide to hym. Haue ye seen how the king durste not eate all this supper, for feare that Hawgis shoulde werke wythe crafte vpon hym. Surely sayde Rowlande, it is true. After supper Charlemaine called his stuarde, and sayde to hym, stuarde I praye you bypunge me. xl. toches, and that they byenne all the nyghte. Syr sayde the stuarde, I shal doo your commaundement. And whan Charlemayne hadde ordeined this: he retourned him toward Rowlande and sayd to him. Fayre neuwe I pray you that ye and Olyuer and al the twelve peeres of fraunce that ye wyll watche to nyghte with me, for to keep this cheef Hawgis, and make an hundred men to be armed, that shal watch with vs and make the play at the tables and at the chesses, to chende that none of vs falle a sleepe, and also make a thousand knyghtes to make good watch wythout to the ende that ye Hawgis shoulde escape vs: that shoulde take him againe. And whan Charlemayne hadde ordeyned this: he set him downe vpon his bedde, and he made Hawgis to sit downe by hym. And of that othet parte Rowlande, Olyuer, Ogier the Dane, and all the twelve peeres rounde aboute the bedde. Syr sayde then Hawgis, where shal I sleep. What say ye said Charlemaine

wyll ye slepe: yea, sayde Hawgis full sayne, if please you to suffice me. By my soule sayde Charlemayne ye shal haue euyl reste heere, for ye shal not sleep as longe as ye be a lyue. For ye shal be hanged to morowe at the spryngyng of the daye. Syr sayde Hawgis, ye doo me greate wronge. wherfore haue I giuen you surerie, but only that I may haue my ease for so longe as I haue for to lyue. Oher suffice me to take my reste and that I may slepe: or elles holde quite my surerees, certes false theese saide Charlemaine, all this shal not auayl thee. For I wyll that thy sureries goe quite, and discharged. But therfore ye be not out of my handes. And than he made to be broughte a greate payre of pyens, and fetted him with them bothe his feete togither. And made the cheyn to be fastened harde at a piller, and with all he gaue him a greate colet of pyen aboute his necke, wherof the kynge kepte the key himselte. And whan Hawgis was arraied of this facio: Charlemaine saide to him. By my soule Hawgis ye shal not escape me now. Sit said Hawgis, ye mock well with me. But I tell you now before the. xii. peeres of fraunce that I shal see yountra whan or it be to morowe prime.

**W**han Charlemayne vnderstode this that Hawgis saide to him: he croued to haue wered madde all quicke. So he stode



The booke of the foure

stood vp and set hande to hys sword, and came vnto Hawgys all wothe for to haue smiten of his heade. But whan Rowland sa we that: he auaised hym and sayde to the kinge. Syr for God mercy, for yf yelle we him: we been all shamed for euermore, sye ye ought not to take heed to that he sayth to you. For that, that he sayth he saith it like a man that is in despayre. And howe might that be that he shoulde escape you as ye hold hym now: Merely my newewe I wote not how, but yf he heere afore tyme hadde so often mocked me, maketh me to doubt of him, but at all auenture I shall leaue hym in peace till to morowe that he shall be hanged. Syr sayd Rowlande, ye saye well. Than all they that were there beganne to playe at the tables and at the chesse, and many other games. And whan it came that they had played longe: they began all to haue greete luste to slepe. And whan Hawgys saw that: he made his charme. And whan he hadde made it: they beganne all to fall in a stronge slepe, and Charlemaigne hymselfe slepte so harde, that he fell backe warde vpon hys bed. And whan Hawgys saw that Charlemaigne was so fast a slepe: & all the twelue peeres of fraunce and all the company of them: he beganne to make a nother charme, that was of suche vertue that his fetters that were on his feete, & the coler and the cheyne of yren fell all to the grounde a sundre. And thenne Hawgys rose vpon his feete, and saw Charlemaigne that slepte so wel grouelpnge with

his head a wyse, and he tooke then a pelow & rygged vp his heade with all. And then he vngirded him and tooke Joyous his swerde, and girded about him, and then after he wote to Rowland and tooke from him durandal his good swerde, and after he tooke Hauteclere from Oliuet and Loyyn from Ogier. And after this: he went to yf coffres, and tooke there out all the treasour of Charlemaigne and went with all this streyght to Mountauban. And whan Hawgys had taken all this: he tooke an herbe and rubbed Charlemaignes nose and his lippes with it, and vnholed hym and after he shoued him with the fynger, and sayde to hym, awake sir emperoure, I promysed you yester night that I should not goe without I should take my leue of you, farewell I goe now. And whan he had sayde this: he went out of the pavilion, and set him to the way to wards Mountauban. And whan Charlemaigne vnderstoode that Hawgys had said to him: he rose vpon hys feete so wothe that inenne could be no more, and called vpon hys twelue peeres that he coude not awake. And whan he saw that: he bethought hymselfe an herbe that he had broughte with hym from beyonde the greete sea, and tooke it and rubbed with all the nose the mouth and the eten of Rowlande, and in like wise to all the other. xii. peeres of fraunce, and incontinent they were awaked, and rose vpon their feete soze abashed. & whan they were all awaked: they beganne to looke the one vpon the other. And the

the first that began to speke: was the duke Haymes that sayde to the king Where is malwies? By my soule sayd Charlemayne, ye shall deliuer him me agayne, for ye haue let hym goe wilfully, for yf ye wolde haue suffred me to haue hanged him yester day: I had be othertwysed of hym. Rowland said Olyuer, saue ye him goe hens: Naye by saynt Denys said Rowland. I saw him wel goe saide Charlemayne. Spoke said Rowland ye ought thenne to haue tolde vs of it, for he shoulde not haue escaped so. And in saying this: Rowland loketh at his side, and he sawe not durandal his swerde, wherof he did cast a great sighe. And than Charlemayne sayde to him. Anewe whete is your swerde? by my head I know well that y cheef Malwies hath be wyched vs. for none of vs hath his swerde, and also he hath my hosen with him. Nowe hath he well mocked vs.

**A**nd whan the. xii. peeres of fraunce saw that they had lost al their good swerdes: they were right soze for it moze than any man canne saye. And after Rowland sayde, by my saythe Malwies hath wonne a great gayne, whan he berech a way thus our swerdes, for they ben moze worth the cha is all Paris. And whan Charlemayne perceyued that his cofers were open: he went anon & looked in, & he was soze an angred whā he founde nor his Crowne, nor the best parre of hys treasoure, wherof he made great sorow, and after sayd, Ma false cheefe Malwies full lile I haue gotten of thee & of thy takynge.

And who than had seen the sorowe that the. xii. peeres of fraunce made: wolde haue had no luste to laughe.

Nowe shall we tell you a yrcell of Malwys that went as fast as euer he coude towarde Mouncauban and he came to passe ouer the water of Baiacon at that place where Reinalde was full heauy, and full of sorowe, by cause he knewe no rydinges of Malwys, but whan Malwys had passed ouer the water: bayarde smelled hym and begane to crye and came to ward Malwys, wolde Reinalde or no. And whan Malwys sawe Reinalde: he knewe hym well, and saide to him laughing. Knight what be ye that rideth at this time of night: and Reinalde said to him ye know wel I am your cosin well, and saide to him laughing. Knight what be ye that rideth at this time of night: and Reinalde said to him ye know wel I am your cosin Reinalde the sonne of Aymon, & than he lighted from bayard, and came to Malwys and kyssed him by greete loue many times, and than sayde to hym. Saye cosin thanked be our lord that I see you deliuered from the handes of Charlemayne. By my saythe saide Malwys, ye forgate me well behinde. Cosyn saide Reinalde, by my soule I coulde not doe chetter. For I haue be heere syth yester day euen. And I promyse you that I was delibered for to haue succoured you or elles to haue dyed with you. My cosin sayde Malwys I thanke you, lighte vpon your horse, and lette vs goe to Mouncauban. Whan Reinalde was vpon his horse againe: he sayd to Malwys. My cosyn what is that ye haue laden. Cosyn sayd Malwys it is the crowne of Charlemayne & his swerde Jopous, durandal the swerde of



of Rowlande, and the swerdes of al  
the .xii. peeres of Fraunce. Cosyn said  
Keinaude ye haue wroughte well  
god graunte ye, but of the swerde of  
Oger me displeaseth. Cosyn sayde  
Hawgis I haue doon it all wilfully  
to the end that the king should mar-  
ke thereby none euil, and that he were  
not aspeched of treason. And than he  
shewed him al the cause and the ma-  
ner that Charlemayn had holde him.  
Cosyn saide Keinaude ye did ryghte  
well. And whan he had sayde thys:  
they went on their waye to Warde  
Mountaiban, and they mette in  
their waye Harde, Guicharde and  
the lyell Richard that came ridinge  
makinge greates mone for doubte of  
Keinaude. And whan Keinaude  
sawe theim come: he saide to them,  
Whether goe you my fayre brethren?  
Sir saide they we went seekinge af-  
ter you, ye haue founde me said Kei-  
naude, and I haue founde our cosyn  
Hawgis. And whā they vnderstood  
this rydinges: they were ryghte  
gladde and thanked our lord of it.  
And after Harde saide to Hawgis  
fayre cosyn where became ye that ye  
came not with vs again. Harde said  
Hawgis, whan Richard was en-  
tered within the pauillion of Charle-  
maine, and had take the egle of golde:  
I tarried in the pauillion for to slea  
Charlemaine, and it lacked but litill  
that I slewe him, and whan I to-  
wed to haue comen after you. I founde  
a greates rowe of knyghtes, that a-  
rested me, and so I defended me of  
all my power. And than came Oliuer  
of Wyenne that ouerthrew me downe,  
and I ycelded me to him for his

prisoner, the whiche deliuered me  
to Charlemaigne that wolde haue  
made me to be hanged shamefullye  
but lord I thanke you, I haue doon  
so much: that I am escaped. Cosyn  
saide Harde, it is well happed to you,  
whan thei had deuised longe ynough:  
they went to Mountaiban, where  
they made greates feast, whan they  
were come there: it is not to be asked  
if the good lady clare was wel glad,  
for incontinente she did to be made  
ready diuerse meates for the diner, &  
whan they hadde eaten: they went to  
rest, for they were wery and specially  
Keinaude and Hawgis, wold faine  
haue slept. And the nexte daie they  
went to heare their Masse at the chir-  
che of Mountaiban, and whan the  
masse was doone: Keinaude called  
Hawgis his cosyn and his brether-  
ne, and saide to them. Lordes she we  
merche bothie that ye gate yesterdaie.  
Sir saide Richard gladlie sich that  
it please you. And than he tooke the  
egle that was of golde masse, and of  
precious stones and gaue it to Kei-  
naude. And whan Keinaude saw  
that gifte so riche: he was gladde of it  
by cause of the great valure of it. Kei-  
naude called Hawgis & saide to him  
Cosyn what shall we doo with this  
egle? My cosyn saide Hawgis me se-  
meth that ye ought to put hym aboue  
vpon the apple of the greates towre of  
this castell to the ende that Charle-  
maigne and all his hoste maye see it.  
By my soule said Keinaude ye, saie  
wel. And they tooke the egle and ma-  
de it to be bozne vpon the highe to-  
we of Mountaiban. And whan the  
sonne dyd shyne vpon this Egle: it  
ca

casted so grete a light: that it might  
be seen .x. myles thence. And whan  
Charlemaine and his folke apperce-  
ued it: they were ryght sorpe for it  
and an angred.

Whan Charlemayne the grete  
**W**emperour saw that the four  
sonnes of Aymon mocked him  
thus: he called to him Rowland and  
Olyuer, and all the other Peeres of  
Fraunce and sayde to them. Lordes  
it is so: my happe to vs lich we ca-  
me in this londe of Gascoyn, for I  
haue lost my crowne and Jalous my  
swerde & myn egle of golde that was  
of so great value as ye all know, and  
ye al haue losse youre good swerdes,  
where of we be wel shamed, & also we  
haue ben chased fro the feeld shame-  
fully. Now haue wel the four sonnes  
of Aymon shamed vs al through that  
false theef Hawgis. Wherefore my  
faire lordes I complain me vnto you  
prayinge that you wil helpe me to a-  
uenge me vpon them, for they haue  
doone you shame as wel as vnto me.  
Then said the .xii. peeres of Fraunce,  
sp: we be ready for to doo all that ye  
wyl. I wyl saide the kinge that ye  
Ogier, also the duke Raymes and  
ye bishop Turpin, and ye Escoufe,  
the sonne of Dedon, that are of the  
kinred of Reynawde: that ye goe to  
Mowntawban, and so tel to Reynaw-  
de, to his brythern and Hawgis that  
they deliuer me againe my crowne,  
Jalous my swerd, and also myne E-  
gle of gold, and the swerdes of you al  
and I shall giue them truce for two  
yeres. And I shall doo al mine hoste  
to returne againe in to fraunce, sp:

answered Ogier. I shall with a good  
wyl doo your commaundement, but  
I feare me of Reynawde that he will  
keep vs prisoners. Ha Ogier, sayde  
Charlemayne: ye feare him but liell.  
Whan the barons heard the comaun-  
dement of the king: they made no ca-  
rying but lighted on horsbacke, and  
rode to Mowntawban. And whā they  
were come togither to the drawbrid-  
ge: the porter that kept warde vpon  
the gate, said to them lordes what be  
ye: my frend said Ogier, we are of  
the folke of Charlemaine, goe youre  
Waye to Reynawde, and tell him that  
the Duke Raymes the bishop Tur-  
pin, Escoufe the sonne of Dedon, and  
Ogier the Dane wolde speake with  
him. My lordes said y porter, I shall  
goe to him incōtinent, & than he went  
to Reynawde and shewed him howe  
four knights were at the gate that  
wolde speake with him, what be they  
said Reynawde? My lordes said the  
porter they tolde me that the one is  
called the duke Raymes, the other  
the bishop Turpin, and a nother Es-  
coufe the sonne of Dedon, & the fourth  
is named Ogier the Dane. Whan  
Reynawde heard this: he stood vp and  
said to his thre brythern. My lordes  
heere cometh four valyaunt knygh-  
tes and wise. I beseeche you that we  
shew to them that we been no chil-  
dren for to be rocked in a slepe. Cosin  
sayde Hawgis ye speake well and  
wisely. He semeth it were good that  
we should know, wherefore they co-  
me, or they entre to the ende that we  
may best answer to them. Then  
they went vnto the gate, and made  
the drawe bydge to be lette downe.  
And



And whan it was doome: Rycharde  
ysued out first vpon the bydge, and  
went ayenst them and made to them  
greate honour and sayd to them. My  
lordes ye be ryght welcome, thys ca-  
stell is at your commaundement. For  
I holde me so sure of my brother Rei-  
nawde that I dare offre it to you, co-  
spyn said the messengers gramercye.  
And than Reinawde auanced him  
selfe, and saluted them honourablye,  
and after tooke Ogier by the hande,  
& he him, & thother thre he broughe  
to the Dungeon, whete they were re-  
ceiued honestly by the lady Clare the  
Wife of Reinawde. And whan Rei-  
nawde had receyued them: he made  
them to sit vpon a benche, and than  
he saide to them, saye lordes I praye  
you that ye wyl tell vs wherfore ye  
be come: for ye come not without a  
greate cause, ye knowe wel sy: Rei-  
nawde said Ogier, that all we that  
been heere haue euer loued you well.  
And I promise you yf it had been our  
wille: ye should haue had good peace  
with the kinge Charlemayne, but  
many tymes he hathe vnbrayed vs  
therof, ye must knowe that your co-  
spyn Hawgis hath shamed vs al, for  
we were his suretie to Charlemayne  
vpon our othe to deliuer hym at hys  
wille. And the said Hawgis is come  
hyther without our leaue ayenst hys  
promyse, and that worse is: he hath  
robbed the crowne of the king Char-  
lemayne and his swerde, and all the  
swerdes of vs all. xii. petres. whete-  
fore Charlemain sendeth to you two:  
de by vs that ye see heere, that ye deli-  
uer him again his crown, the egle of  
golde, and all oure swerdes. And he

shall gyue you cruce for two petres,  
and he shall doo retorne al his armie  
in to fraunce. After that Ogier had  
said this: Hawgis stood vp and spa-  
ke by the leaue of Reinawde, & said,  
Lordes ye ben right welcome in this  
castell of Mouncauban. And yf it  
please you, ye shall not speake no mo-  
re of this matter now, and ye shall a-  
byde this night with vs, and to mo-  
rowe ye shall haue an answer of that  
ye haue sayde. Reinawde saide than  
Ogier, wyl ye keep that Hawgis  
hath said: yea without fault said Rei-  
nawde, sith that it pleaseth you: we  
shall abyde for the loue of you. And  
than Hawgis went to the stuarde  
of Mouncauban, and aduised him  
the meates. whetof the knyghtes of  
Charlemayne should be feasted with  
all, and tolde that they should be wel  
serued, what so euer it coste. And les-  
that the great cup be borne afoze the  
duke Raymes, the whiche I did con-  
quere at repyns. My lord answered  
the stuarde, doubte not, ye shall well  
be serued at my power. And chen-  
ne Hawgis came agayne. And whan  
Reinawde sawe him come: he called  
hym and saide to him, my cosyn I  
praye you see that we be well serued,  
sir saide Hawgis, I haue putueyed  
for it al ready. whan Reinawde vnder-  
stood him: he was gladd of it, and  
began to deuise with þ folke of Char-  
lemayne right honestly and of many  
chinges. And whan he thought that  
the meate myght be well ready: he &  
his byetherne tooke the four knygh-  
tes and broughe them to the halle to  
theyr meate, & whan they were there:  
Hawgis made them washe, & than  
he

he tooke the duke Raymes and made hym spt downe, and my lady Clare next hym. And he made spt downe þe bisshop Turpyn and Reynawde and than Ogger and Alarde, and after Guicharde and Escoute the sonne of Dedon, and than the lytle Rycharde. And whan they were all set at the table, the meates of þe first course were brought to the boorde, & tha the other one after another by good ordenaunce and saye. And to say the trouthe they were well and honourably served, and of many and dyuerse seruises of royall meates. And after that they had well eaten at theyr ease: the duke Raymes called Reynawde and sayde to him. Good colyn I pray you that ye wyl delpyer your selfe for to geue vs a good answer of þe we haue heard of vs. Lozdes sayd Reynawde I shall doo it in so muche that the kyng shall haue a cause to be contete of me. For I shall doo all that he wyl for to haue peace and hys loue withall, and that for the loue of the other my lordes þe be heere now. And than Reynawde made to byng the swerde of Charlemayne & the swordes of þe twelue peeres, and also the crowne and the Egle of golde. And whan Ogger sawe this: he began to laughe and sayd. By my soule Reynawde ye had heere a saye gayneyt ye had kept it. And whan Rycharde saw that his brother wolde delpyer the Egle of golde: he began for to say. By saynt poule my saye brother ye shall not doo so. Ye shall not delpyer agayne that I haue wonne wel and truly by force of armes, brother Rycharde sayde Reynawde, let me doo

I pray you. I will not sayd Richard by my soule, for Charlemayne hym selfe smote me whyle that I was prysoner within his pavilion full shæfully wyth a staffe. Lozdes said the duke Raymes, let thys a lone. And take we that Reynawde giueth to vs in thanke, for he hath doone ynough. By my sayth sayd þe bisshop Turpyn he dooth so. And than they tooke the crowne of Charlemayne & all theyr swordes. And whan they had them: Ogger sayd to Reynawde. Wy colyn I counsell you that ye come w vs, and Alarde & Guicharde shall abyde heere to kepe your castell. By sayd Reynawde I feare me to loze þe kyng wolde make me for to be killed outrageously. Come on hardy sayd the duke Raymes, for we shall lede you wel surely. For syth that ye shall be with vs: ye ought not to fear nothyng. Lozdes sayde than Reynawde I shall doo your commaundement vnder your assuryng.

**W**han Reynawde was accorded for to go wyth the duke Raymes, and with the bisshop Turpyn, wyth Ogger the dane and Escoute the sonne of Dedon: they lychted all vpon theyr horses, and Reynawde mounted vpon bayarde and armed hym. And in like wyse dyd Alarde. And whan the duchesse Clare saw that Reynawde her Lozde wolde go with the folke of the Emperour Charlemayne: she came befoze them & kneeled downe befoze them, and sayd vnto them my lordes, I thanke you muche of the fauour that ye did



## The booke of the four

shew to my brother Richard and to  
 Hawgis, now agayne I pray you  
 that ye will haue Reynawde for re-  
 comended mi lord and my deere hus-  
 bande the whiche ye lede with you.  
 Madame said Ogier, haue no doute  
 that Reynawde shall haue anichar-  
 me. For we should not suffre it for  
 nothing for to leese both life & good-  
 des. And than they put them to the  
 way for to goe thens, and Reynawd  
 tooke ten knyghtes wyth him for to  
 beare hym felawship. Whan they  
 were come to the riuer of Balancon:  
 they sought after þ passage and pas-  
 sed ouer. And whan they were all  
 ouer: Ogier began for to sai. Lordes  
 ye wot well all is of euill courage  
 agaynst Reynawd, wherfore I doubt  
 me of him þ we haue brought heere  
 wyth vs. I counsell that we knowe  
 fyrst the wyll of charlemayne or euer  
 he see Reynawd, Ogier sayd the duke  
 Raymes, ye speake well and wisely  
 we shal go speake ye and I to Char-  
 lemaine, and Reynawde shall abyde  
 heere tyll we come agayne. Lordes  
 sayd than Reynawde I shal doo that  
 ye counsel me, but I pray you holde  
 me that ye haue promised me, that is  
 that ye shall keep my bodye and my  
 lymmes from harme. Reynawde  
 sayd the duke Raymes. We shall ra-  
 ther dye, than that ye should haue a-  
 ny harme. And than he and Ogier  
 tooke the way towarde the hoste of  
 Charlemayne, and Reynawde abode  
 wyth the bysshop Turpyn and wyth  
 the sonne of Dedon. Now herken of  
 Dynabell a wyfe that longed vnto þ  
 kynge Charlemayne, wylt it that the  
 wyfe was at the riuer side of Balan-

con wyth this felawship. Whan the  
 wordes afore sayde were spoken,  
 whan the wyfe had well vnderstand  
 all the concludon: he stode hymselfe  
 fro the companye and rode a good  
 pace as he myght in the wynde and  
 came to Charlemayne, to whome he  
 sayd in this maner, syz I byng your  
 tidings wherof ye shalbe ryght glad  
 my freende sayd Charlemayne thou  
 art well come. I praye you tell me  
 what tidings ye bynge: Wylt it  
 syz that I haue leste Reynawde and  
 Alarde his brother at the ryuer side  
 of Balancon wyth the bysshop Tur-  
 pyn and Escout the sonne of De-  
 don, and the duke Raymes, and O-  
 gier are coming towarde you for to  
 aske leue yf they shall bynge them  
 to you wyth surty. Is it trouth said  
 Charlemaine: yea without faut said  
 Dynabell. By my soule sayd the king  
 I shall rewarde thee for it ryght  
 well, but keep well that ye shew nat  
 this to no man vpon thy life, for I  
 shall put therto a good remedy. And  
 than he behelde aboute hym and saw  
 Oliuer and sayde, Oliuer inconty-  
 nent and without any delaye, take  
 two hundred knyghtes wyth horses  
 and wel armed, and lede them at the  
 ryuer syde of Balancon, wher ye  
 shall fynde Reynawde and Alarde,  
 & see that ye take them & bring them  
 hither, and if ye doo this: aske of me  
 what ye wyll, & ye shall haue it. And  
 than sayd Oliuer, syz I shal wel doo  
 your commaundement. And than  
 he tooke wyth him two hundred kny-  
 ghtes as þ kynge Charlemayne had  
 ordeyned hi, & tooke his way towar-  
 de the ryuer of Balancon. Now god  
 thyng

through his pitie saue the good knight Reynawde and Alarde his deere brother, for they ben in great perill of theiꝝ lyues. This hangyng that Delyuer was gone towarde the cytye of Balancon: the duke Raymes and Ogier came to the hoste and lighted a foyr the pavilion of the kyng, and went in. And whan they sawe the kyng: they made him the reuerence, but he sayd no word to them. Whā Ogier saw the countenaunce of the kyng: he sayd to hym. *Spy:* What seblaunt is this that ye shewe to vs? I meruaile me greatly that ye make vs so euill chere seen that we come fro thens where ye haue sende vs, & was to Dousta Dōā, where we haue spoken with Reynawde the sonne of Aymon, the whiche is al togither ready for to doo al that your pleasur is, and so he hath deliuered vs agayne your crowne and al our swerdes, as for your egles: ye shal haue it whā ye wyll. Ogier sayd than Charlemain what haue ye doone of Reynawde for I am sure that ye haue brought him wth you? *Spy:* sayd Ogier it is trouthe verily we haue brought him wth vs vpo our faith for to take lutes of you of truce & ye haue graunted hym. By saynt Denis (sayd Charlemain) I will not therof, for if I can haue hym ones in my handes al the golde in the world shal not saue him but I shal make him by a shamefull death. *Spy:* sayd Ogier what say ye? I meruel me greatly of that ye haue sayd. Damp emperour said than the duke Raymes, so greates a kyng as ye be: ought neuer to haue sayd suche wordes as ye now haue

betred with your mouth for the value of halfe his realme, ha goddes sweete sir giue not to your selfe so great a blame, & if ye doo this that ye say: I promise you that I, Ogier, the bisshop Turpin and the sonne of Odon, we shal receiue you euill for euill, & yet wee shal saue Reynawde at our power so that ye shal not doo him harme, sith that we haue brought hym vpon our faith. Now shal we se sayd Charlemayne how ye shal conne helpe him. *Spy:* (sayd Ogier) if ye doo to vs any outrage or dishonour: I promise you we shal forsake the homage and the faith that we owe to you, and we shal doo the worst that we can agaynst you and agaynst your realme. ¶ We shal now presently speake a litle of Oliuer & was gone to Balancon. It happed as by fortune that the sayde Oliuer ouertooke Reynawde so nigh & whiche was on foote: that he coule not haue lefse for to moue vpo bayard. And whan Reynawde sawe that he might not light vpon his horse because that Oliuer had ouertaken him so soe: he was soe an angred of it that almoste he waxed mad al quite. And than he returned him towarde the bisshop Turpin and towarde Escoute & sayd to them, Wastalles ye haue betrayed me falsly and I wolde neuer beleue it, wherein ye haue doone greates sinne and greates euill. *Spy:* sayd the bisshop Turpin, I sweare to you vpon my faith that herof we neuer knew nothynge nor thoughte it, and I promise you that we shal liue and dye with you, and wth this: Reynawde turned towarde



## The booke of the foure

Oliuer & sayd to him Oliuer may ye peelde me againe the goodnes that I the wed to you in the playne of Malcolours, I know that one curteple requireth another, for whan ye were to the ground cast, I deliuerde you your horse againe, and holpe you to light vpon hym agayne, sayd Oliuer it is trowth that ye say, and I promise you that I am ryght soye that I haue founde you now heere. For I know no man in the worlde that wolde doo to you anye harme, but I wolde be wroth with him, this hanging that Reynawde and Oliuer spake together: there came Rowlande that was departed from thost after Oliuer for to help hym to take Reynawde, and whan he was nyght he began to crye. Ha ha Reynawde, by my soule ye be now taken and be trapped. And whan he had sayd this there was Ogier behinde him & had folowed hym with the point of the spere, the which sayde to hym, by my head sayd Rowlande ye shall doo no harme to Reynawde, for the Duke Raymes and I haue brought hym herher vpon our fapth, for to take & sureties of the trowes that we haue gyuen to him in the kinges behalfe as ye know he had charged vs to do And I tell you sayd Rowlande yf ye doo to him any harme: ye shall doo it to vs. Ogier sayd Rowlande ye shall now be an euil suretie for him. Rowlande sayde Ogier, I make myne a vo we to you & yf ye saue Reynawde: we foure that ben heere shall helpe hym agaynst you. Rowlande sayde than Oliuer I praye you that ye let Reynawde in peace, for I promise

you he did ones to me a curteple turne, and a great pleasur, & now I will rewarde him for it, if it please you, and I shall tell you what we shall doo. we shall lede Reynawde before Charlemayne. And we shall praye hym that he treat hym curteisly, and we shall parforce our selfe to make his appoyntment. Lozdes sayde the Duke Raymes, Oliuer hath spoken honestly. I counsell that we leade Reynawde tofore Charlemayne, for to see what he wil doo of him. And I swere by god yf he wyll doo any outrage to Reynawde: we shall not suffer it for to dye for it, & we shall help him to saue him selfe to our power. After all these wordes: they tooke them selfe on theyr waye, for to lede Reynawde to Charlemayne.

**R**yan Rowlande and Oliuer had brought Reynawde into the pauplyon of & kynge Charlemayne: wpt it that the duke Raymes, & byshop Turpin, Ogier the dane, also Escouf the son of Dedon wente neuer one foote fro Reynawde. But whan Oliuer wold haue presented Reynawde to Charlemayne: Ogier auanced hymselfe and sayd to the kyng in this maner. sayd ye knowe howe pee dyd sende vs foure that ben heere afoze you in your message to Mountauban, for to tell vnto Reynawde as pee had charged vs, to whome we dyd shewe in your behalfe, that yf he wolde deliuer to you agayne your Crowne, and all the good sweardes that Hawgys had boyne with hym, and the

the Eagle of gold, ye should giue him  
 cruce for two yeres, & that ye should  
 doo turne your hoste into fraunce a  
 gayne. Wyt that Reynawde hath doo  
 one all that we haue required hym  
 of in your behalfe, & we haue brou-  
 ght him wiche ys vnder your saufe  
 conduyte, and so we take hym vnder  
 our charge that he should haue no  
 more harme than we should. For with  
 standynge ye haue made hym to be  
 taken, the whyche thyng we wolde  
 neuer haue thought that yee wolde  
 haue doone it, seen that heere be your  
 crowne & your swerdes, & the Eagle  
 of gold is at your pleasure whan  
 ye will haue it. And moreover we  
 promysed hym that yf ye dyd to hym  
 anye harme: that ye should doo it to  
 vs as well as to hym, & I promise  
 you yf ye doo to him any harme, yee  
 shalbe greatly blamed for it of al the  
 worlde. But and yf ye wil werke ho-  
 nestly heere in and lyke a true empe-  
 rour & king for to keep that neyther  
 ye nor we be not blamed for it: sende  
 Reynawde agayne to Mountauban,  
 with this that he hath taken to vs,  
 & whan he shall be therin agayne: do  
 to hym the worste that ye can.

**O**gyer sayde Charlemapne, ye  
 speake for nought & all youre  
 felowes also. For I shall not doo so  
 but I shall doo after myne owne wil  
 though ye all had sworne the con-  
 trary. And so shall I not doo of Rey-  
 nawde as I dyd of þe false theef man-  
 gis. And whan Charlemapne hadde  
 sayde thus: he turned him towarde  
 Reynawde, & sayd to him. Reynawd  
 Reynawde I holde you now, cer-

res I shall so keep you that ye shall  
 not deceyue me as did Manwys, for  
 I shall make you anon to be lympt  
 and cutte in small peeces, and than  
 byente all to powder. Wyf sayd Rey-  
 nawde ye shall not doo so & god wil.  
 Ogyer sayde Charlemapne, wyll ye  
 defende agaynst me my mortall ene-  
 mye? Wyf sayde Ogyer I wil not de-  
 fend your enemyes agaynst you: but  
 I promise you that I shall defende  
 my trouthe agaynst all men. Wyf said  
 than Reynawde what is your plea-  
 sure? I doo ye haue called me tray-  
 tour, wyt it that I was neuer such  
 nor no mā of my lynage. nor I know  
 not in the worlde that sayth that I  
 haue be a traytour, or yf I haue doon  
 any treason agaynst you, but that I  
 should fight in the quarrell agaynst  
 him body to body. By my sayth said  
 Charlemapne, I shall make it to be  
 proued vpon you by force of armes  
 Wyf sayd Reynawde, ye speake now  
 as a kynge, & heere is my gage that  
 I giue, sayinge that I am as true a  
 man as any that is in all the worlde  
 & in lyke wise all they of my lynage.  
 Than Charlemapne sayde to him, if  
 ye gyue me sureties: wyt that I shall  
 take vp your gage, and not els. Wyf  
 sayd Reynawde I shall fynde suretie  
 ynoughe. Than he turned him & saw  
 Ogyer, and sayd to him. Wyf Ogyer  
 come forth, & ye duke Raymes, and  
 also þe bishopp Turpyn & ye Escouf  
 the sonne of Wedon, be my suretie I  
 pray you, for ye ought to be so, ye  
 knowe that I dyd neuer vntrethe  
 Reynawde sayde the duke Raymes  
 we shall be suretie for you wryth a  
 good wyll.



## The booke of the four

**W**han sayde Reynawde, sye  
 here ben my sureties that I  
 take you, are ye contente of the: yee  
 sayd Charlemayne I aske no more.  
 Sye sayd than Reynawde, who is  
 he þ shall make the batayles? By my  
 sayth sayde Charlemayne, my selfe  
 shal it be. Sye sayde Rowland, yee  
 shal not doo so & it please you, for I  
 shal fyght for you my selfe. Sye sayd  
 Reynawde ordeyn in your place su-  
 che as it shal please you, and whan  
 he had sayd this worde: bayard was  
 taken agayne to Reynawde, & whych  
 lighted vpon & went towarde moun-  
 tauban, and with him went Ogier  
 the dane, the duke Raymes & elcous  
 the sonne of Dedon, and togither a  
 lord that had betaken as Reynawde.  
 And whā they were come nigh mou-  
 tauban: Gurcharde, Richardes and  
 Malogys sawe them come, & came  
 theym agaynst, and whan Rycharde  
 sawe Reynawde: he asked of hym  
 howe he had doone: By my saythe  
 sayd Reynawde we are not welcom  
 for the kynge knew that we were at  
 Balancon where Ogier had left vs  
 and he sent anon Olyuer & Rowland  
 for to take vs, and were ouertaken  
 so sodenly that we coulde not fyght  
 vpon our horses, & we were brought  
 to Charlemayne, and I promyse  
 you he is a cruell man fulfilled w  
 all cursednes. And thus recounted  
 Reynawde to his brethren all that  
 ye haue now hearde afore.

**W**hat night Reynawde and his  
 company made good cheere at  
 mountauban and made the folke of  
 charlemayne to be well feasted by þ

noble lady Clare his wyfe right ho-  
 nourably, and after they had supped  
 well: they went to bed for that night  
 and whan the moynynge was come  
 that euery mā was by: Reynawde &  
 his felawship went to heare masse in  
 the chapell of saynte Apcolas, and  
 Reynawde offred. iiii. marke of golde  
 And whan the masse was doone: rei-  
 nawde & all his barons asked after  
 theyr armes for to arme them. Whā  
 they were armed: Reynawde tooke  
 leue of his wyfe afore all the com-  
 pany, and than he called to hym bys  
 brethren and Malogys and sayd to  
 them. My lordes I leue this castell  
 in your protection and sauf garde, &  
 I recomende you my wife and my  
 chyldren, for now I goe fyght w<sup>th</sup>  
 the best knight of the worlde, now I  
 knowe not what shall betyde of me,  
 wherfore I pray you þ ye wil keep  
 well this castell, for I promyse you  
 yf I dye: ye shal haue need of it here  
 is Ogier that shall come with me &  
 the Duke Raymes also, for they ben  
 my sureties to the kyng Charlemain  
 By my soule sayde Alarde ye speake  
 for nought, for we shal goe with  
 you, and we shal beare you compa-  
 ny where soeuer ye go and so shal  
 we see the batayle, and howe ye shal be  
 mayntened in your ryght and yf ye  
 haue need of helpe: ye shall fynde vs  
 redy to your succours. By saynte  
 Paule sayde Ogier the dane, Alarde  
 hath spoken wysely, and whan Rey-  
 nawde sawe this: he called Malogys  
 & sayd to him. My saye colin I pray  
 you that ye wyll abide here, & that  
 ye wyll keepe all well syth that my  
 brethren wyll come with me. Rey-  
 nawde

ma to be sayde **M**atogis, I shall doo  
as it pleaseth you, & I promise you þ  
Mowntaiban shall haue no harme  
by my defaute. Whan Reynawd had  
ordeyned all well: he tooke on incon-  
tynent his way in the felawshipp of  
his brethren and of the barons afoze  
sayd. And whan they came there as  
þ batayle shoulde be doone: Reynawd  
lighred a foote & caryed after Row-  
lande. **H**ere icueth the hytore  
to speake of Reynawd, of his bre-  
thern & of the other barons that were  
in the company of þ said Reynawd:  
and returneth to speake of Rowland  
ho w he and Reynawd made they  
batayle the one agaynst the other.

**H**ere sheweth howe Reynawd  
faught agaynst Rowland, the which  
he conquered by the wyll of god and  
brought him to moztawba, wher of  
Charlemayn was ful heuy & wroth.  
And also howe **M**atogys bare þ em-  
perour Charlemayne to Mownta-  
iban vpon Bayarde all a neps, & de-  
liuered hym to Reynawd in a bed.  
Wher Reynawd laye. And howe  
**M**atogys after this wente away &  
tookethabyte of a heremite and left  
his kinsmen and lyued poorly, for  
he wolde not let the pece of Rey-  
nawd to Charlemayne, for þ warre  
had lasted longe ynough.





## The booke of the four

**N**ow betweth the tale þ whan Rowlande saw þ day he rose fro his bed and wēt (after he was ready) to heare masse, and offered a riche gift vpon the alter, & whan þ masse was doone: Rowlande asked after his harnays for to arme him & whan he was wel armed he lighted a horse backe quickly. And thā Charlemain sayd to hym. Fayre neuewe I comēd you to God þ he lede you to a good waye and keep you fro death and fro pylson, for ye knowe that Reynawde hath ryght vpon vs, & we doo to hym wronge, wherfore I wolde not for halfe of my realme that any harme came to you for it. Syr sayde Rowlande it is to late for you to repent now, for syth that ye knewe þ ye were in the wronge: ye should not haue accepted the batayle þ ye haue enterprysed, but sith it is so that the thyng is come so ferre forth: I can not leue it, but yf it were to me great shame, now helpe me god if it please him throughe his mercy. Whan Rowlande had sayd these wordes he: took his way for to goe to the pynce of mounta whan where as the batayle of Reynawde & of him should be made and whan he was nigh mounta whan: he saw Reynawde that awaited after hym at the sayd tree and incontinent he began to crye vpon hym. By God Reynawde this daye shall ye haue a doo with me, & I promise you that whan ye shall goe fro the feild: ye shall neuer doo saytes of armes agaynst me nor agaynst no other. Whan Reynawde heard Rowlande crye so: he came agaynst him & sayd to him, syr Rowlande it becometh

not to luche a knyght as ye be for to chere me thus, & I tell you þ I am heere redye, & yf ye wol batayle: ye shall haue it incontinent. Reynawde sayd Rowlande I am not come heere for praece: but keep you fro me, & ye shall doo as a wyse man. Rowlande sayde Reynawde beware of me, for I am sure that I shall thyng do wone the pryde of you that is so great.

**A**nd whan Reynawde had sayde that wordes he spurred bayard in the spures & came agaynst Rowlande, & Rowlande agaynst Reynawde, & they gaue to eche other so great strokes at theyr byestes þ they brake bothe theyr speares al to peces and with the rennyng that they made agaynst eche other: they recontred the one the other soo harde woth theyr sheeldes that Reynawde muste needes fal do wne to the erth in his saddle betwene his thyes, bicause of the gytes that brake a sunder, & rowlande lost his stirrops w al. And whā Reynawde saw himself a ground he rose vp right quickly, and lighted a gayne vpon bayarde without saddle, and came vpon Rowlande woth his swerde in his hande, & gaue hym so great a stroke: that Rowlande felt himselfe soze greued with all, & whan he sawe that Reynawde had stonyed hi so soze: he set hande to durandall his good swerde, & ranne aspye vpon Reynawde. And whan Reynawde saw him come: he went right spertly vpon Rowlande, & than began the batayle to be harde, and soze cruel be twene them two, and I promise you they leste not one peece of theyr harnes

des whole, nether vpon the one nor vpon the other, but it were al to broken and beate a sondre, in so much that þe barons that looked vpon the had great pitie of thone & of thother. Whan þe duke Raymes, had beholde a longe whyle of this wonderfull batayle: he began to cry as loude as he coude saying in this maner. Ha kynge Charlemayne ye are ouer cruel for thozough your cruel malice: ye put to deathe wo of the best knyghtes of the worlde, wherfore ye shall ones aby oꝝ longe. whan Reynawde saw that neyther of them two coude not ouercome the other: he sayde to Rowlande, yf ye beleue me: We shall lyght do wne a foote bothe to thend that we kyll not our horsess. For yf wee slea them we shall neuer recouer none suche nor so good, ye saye well sayd Rowlande, and I am so content. And than they descended a foot vpon the medow. Rowlande sayde Reynawde, now are we per to per, now it shall be seen the whiche of vs two shall be mayster of the place. And w this they ranne the one vpon thother as proudly as it hadben two Lions who that had seen than the greate crokes & that dangerous that they gaue to eche other he shold haue said that there had be neuer suche two knyghtes in all the remenaūt of the worlde. Whan Rowlande sawe that he coude not wyne Reynawde: he came to hym, & tooke him with a ful arme, and so dyd Reynawde hym in lyke wyse in maner of. Whastelunge togyther a great whyle without that the one coude cast do wne the other by no way. And I promyse you that

a man shoulde wel haue gone a mile: oꝝ euer they leit eche othir goe whā they were coupled ones togyther, & at the last whā they saw that the one coude not cast downe the other: they let eche other goe the one there and the other here for to take their bryeth for they were tyght wery, & soze trauayled so muche that almoste they myght not stande no lenger, & they helmes sheldes and theyr armes were all to cut and brooken and the grounde where they fought thus was all to stamped and beate with theyr fettes as men had braten coꝝne there vpon.

**W**han Charlemayne saw that the one coude not ouermaster the other, and howe they were both euil auaied: he was soze afeie for his newe Rowlande, and than he kneeled do wne vpon his knes & hewed his handes togyther towarde heauen and began to say. Good lord gloꝝious that made the worlde, sea, heaueus and the erth, and deliuerde the holy virgyn margarete from the bely of the holyble Dragon, and Jonas from the bely of the fysshe: I beseeche you also that ye wyl deliuer my newe Rowland from this batayle mortall, and sende me suche a token wherby I maye departe these two knyghtes from eche other to the honour of the one and of the other. Whan Blarde Guycharde and Guychard saw theyr brother so wery they were a ferde of his person, and than they began also to praye god that he wolde keep theyr brother Reynawde fro



The booke of the foure

fro death and from prison. And whā they had made theyr prayers: ourte Lozde for þ prayers of Charlemain the wode a fayre myracle, for he made ryse so grent a clowde & so thike, that they myght not see eche other. Than Rowland sayd to Reynawde, Where are ye gone Reynawde, other it is nyght, or els I canot see neuer a whit: No moze doo I sayd Reynawde verely. Reynawde sayd Rowlande, I pray you doo to me a curtesy turne, & a nother tyme I shal doo as much for you yf ye require me therof. Spz Rowland (sayd Reynawde) I am ready for to doo al that ye wyll require me of, so that my honour be saued. Gramercye Reynawde of that ye haue graunted me. Wyt that þ thing that I wyll desyre of you is this, þ ye bring me with you to Mountauban. Spz Rowland sayd Reynawde yf ye wyll doo this: I shal be ryght glad therof. By my sayth I shal go there wyth you without any faute if it please you. Spz sayde Reynawde God of hys goodnes petyde you the woorthp that ye wil now doo to me for: I haue not deserued it vnto you. Spz Reynawde (sayde Rowlande) Wyt that I doo this bycause that I know wel that ye be in the right, and that ye fyght in a good quacell, and I am in the wrongs. And whā Rowlande had sayd this: he receyued hys spght, and saw as he dyd afore, and than he sawe Uplaunche his good horse, and he lyghted vpon hym, and in lyke wyse Reynawde vpon bayarde And whā Charlemayne sawe this: he was sozeaballhed, and begā to call and to crye. Lozdes Lozdes

nowe see, I wot not what I shoulde saye, for Reynawde ledeth Rowland with hym. Now shall I see if ye shal let him goe. Whā Charlemayne had spoken thus: he came to his horse & lyghted vpon him, and began to crie Now shall I know who ben my frendes. Whā the barons of Fraunce heard Charlemayne speake thus: they spurred theyr horses and ran after Reynawde.

**W**hā Ogier sawe Reynawde come wyth Rowlande that he brought to hym: he was ryght glad, and he came agaynst Reynawde and sayd to him. Spz ye haue wel thought this dai, that ye haue taken such a poyr. Ogier sayd Reynawde, I promise you that Rowlande hath let himselfe to be taken with his good wyll. Thanked be God of it sayde the duke James Reynawde said Ogier go your way to Mountauban, and the byshop Turpin & sonne of Dedo and I: shal retorne agayne, & we shal tary Charlemayne that cometh after you and wee shal doo so much that ye shall be wel at Mountaubā or they ouer take you. Ogier sayde Rowland ye say well, and I thanke you of your curtosie. Whā they had thus shortlye spoken together: Reynawde & Rowlande rode so fast that they came to mountauban. It is not to be asked if Rowland was wel feared at mountauban. I promise you it is not possible to feast apynce better nor more honourable thā he was at mountauban. This hanging: Ogier was come agaynst king Charlemain and

and he dyd so muche by his saye la-  
guage that he helde the king till that  
he thought that Reynawde a Row-  
lande might be well at Mowntawba  
by that time. And whā he had doone  
so: he spurred his horse and went to  
Mowntawba after the other. where  
as he myght well goe without to be  
vnbraied for it, for he was one of the  
suterpes of Reynawde as yee haue  
heard. And whan Charlemaine saw  
this: he folowed him vnto the gates  
And whan he was come to the gate  
of Mowntawban: he began to crye  
withan hie voyce. By god Reynawde  
this that ye haue doone: shail auayle  
you litle, for ye shall neuer haue pea-  
ce wth me as longe as I am man a  
liue. And whan that he had sayd this  
he returned him from the gate, and  
sayd to Oliuer that was there with  
hym. Oliuer go lightlye to Mount-  
bendell, and bring heere all my hoste  
for I wyll besiege all thys Castell.  
Than sayd Oliuer I shall go there  
with a good wyll, but and it please  
you ye shall come wth me, for I  
promise you if ye comnot there your  
selfe: they shall not come hither for  
me. Than shall I goe there my self,  
and thus tooke Charlemayne hys  
Waye towarde Mountbendell where  
his hoste laye, whan his folke sawe  
him come: they wente agaynst hym  
and began to saye to him, syr what  
haue ye doone with Rowlād: lordes  
sayd Charlemayne Rowlād is gone  
to Mowntawban, but I commaund  
you al that incontinent without de-  
laye that my siege be transported all  
rounde aboute Mowntawban, and ye  
damp Oliuer shall beare the ozillā

and damp Rycharde of Normandy  
shall lede our hoste. whan Charle-  
mayne had comaunded all this: there  
was none that sayde agaynst it, but  
set themself to bringe downe the ten-  
tes and paulion, and to trusse and  
lede theyr baggages, and carped all  
to Mowntawban.

**R**ycharde of Normandy went  
with .xii. thousande men to  
Balācon. to keep the passage of the  
rpuer. This hanging: Charlemayne  
had put himself afore for to se where  
he might best pitche his tentes, and  
his paulion, for to keep siege to all  
afore the Castell of Mowntawban.  
And whan all the hoste was come a-  
fore Mowntawban: the kinge made  
incontinent his paulion to be set vp  
before the great gate. And whan all  
the hoste was set: the nyght watche  
of the great Towre came to Ma-  
wys, and sayde vnto him. Syr wot y  
Charlemaine is come with his hoste  
and hath put his paulion before the  
master gate. Is it true sayd Ma-  
wys: yea without any faute sayd the  
watche. Now care not for it sayde  
Ma wgis, for Charlemayne seeketh  
his damage, and he shall haue it so-  
oner than he weeneth. Than went  
Ma wgis to Reynawde. And she-  
wed him howe Charlemayne was  
come with all his hoste. And whan  
Reynawde heard this: he went vnto  
Rowland and sayd vnto him. Sir ye  
truiste wpt that Charlemayne your  
vnkle hath layde siege afore vs, but  
I promise you that if it were not for  
the loue of you: I would shew him  
that



## The booke of the foure

þ he hath not doone wel. Reynawde (sayd Rowlande) I thanke you muche, but one thyng I wyll tell you, saue your correccion, me semeth that I ought to sende to myne vnkle the duke Raymes, Ogyer the dane, and also the bysshop Turpyn that shall shewe vnto him in this maner, Syr Emperour wyt that Reynawde for the loue of you wyll not gyue no wrongs to your neuwe, nor he wyl not put hym in prysoun. But he maketh hym as good cheere as he doth to his owne selfe. And that more is, Reynawde, his brethren and Barons doo present themselves for to giue the and theyr castell vnto your handes, so that theyr liues be saued. ye speake well and wisely sy Rowland said Reynawde, and so I am redy to doo as ye wyll haue it. Rowland sayde the duke Raymes, I dare not goe to hym, ye may wel ynoughe sayd Rowland. For ye be not hated of the king duke Raymes sayd Ogyer, we shal goe to Charlemayne, yf ye wyll doo after me. And they accorded that they two should goe together to the kyng for to shewe to hym as Rowland had deuised. And whan that these two princes, the duke Raymes and Ogyer came to the pavilion of Charlemayne: they saluted him reuerently, and the duke Raymes spake to him in this maner of wyse. Syr Emperour your neuwe Rowland recom-mendeth him humblye to your good grace, the whych Reynawde kepeth within Mountauban for his prysouner, not vnkynndly: but he maketh to hym as good chere and as great honour he bereth vnto hym as he were

his owne brother, and his souerayn lord, and all this he dooth for your loue. And demaundeth of you peace yf it please you to graunt it to hym by suche maner that he shall gyue you Mountauban, and the Egge of golde, and he shall let goe Rowlande at his libertie without ransum. And also he shall perlede hymselfe to you and his brethren in lyke wyse, and also Barons for to doo your wyll with them, saue theyr liues: and they shall promise you yf they scruple pleasech you, that they shal serue you agaynst all me with all theyr power and puissance, so that ye shall haue cause to thanke them for it.

**W**hen Charlemayne vnderstood these wordes: he shooke al for great anger. And began to saye to þe duke Raymes, and to the other that were come to hym, flee out of my pavilion euill folke. I meruaile me how haue ye durst cum heere within and I tell you that Reynawde shall haue no peace with me, but if I haue Barons for to doo my wyll of him. Whan the barons vnderstode Charlemayne that spake thus: they came out of his pavilion and tooke no leaue at hym, but returned incontinent to Mountauban. Whan they were come there: Rowland and Reynawde asked them howe they had doone in Charlemayne: Lordes said the duke Raymes, it is no force to be asked after it. For Charlemayne wyl not doo it, but if men take vnto him Barons for to doo his will of him. Lordes sayd Reynawde I am sorre for it. I meruaile how Charlemayne

is so harde harted, and I make mine  
a vo we vnto god, he shall not hane  
Hawgis though I should bre for  
it. After these wordes: they went to  
theyr meat, and Hawgis made them  
to be serued pleseuilly and worship-  
fully, and whan they had supped: the  
beddes were heled, and they wente  
anon to bed. And whan Reynawde  
wolde go to his bed: he called to hym  
Hawgis, and sayd to hym, cosyn I  
pray you that ye doo make good wat-  
che to night. For ye know that oure  
lives lieth therupon. Syr sayd Haw-  
gis feare not for to slepe well & rest  
your selfe. For I promyse you y this  
castell shall be well kepte by goddes  
grace, & whan all the barons were  
a bed: Hawgis wente to the stable  
and saddled Bayarde, and than he li-  
ghted vpon hym and he came to the  
gate and sayd to the porter. My frend  
open the gate for I must go out a lit-  
tle, & abyde me herefor I shall come  
agayne soone. Syr sayd the porter.  
I shall doo so with a good wil. Cha-  
wente out Hawgis streyght to the  
pauillion of Charlemayne. And whā  
he was come there: he began for to  
make hys charme, & brought a slepe  
all they that were in the hoste. And  
whan he had doone so: he wente to  
the bed of Charlemayne, and tooke  
hym in his armes and brought him  
vpon Bayarde. And whan he had  
doone so: he wente his wayes agayn  
to Mountauban, and brought Char-  
lemayne with him. And whan he  
was come there agayne: he tooke  
Charlemayne from Bayarde, and  
bare him into his chambre and layde  
hym in his bed. Whan all this was

thus doone: he tooke aforche & fired  
it, and pyched it byt wene the strawe  
& the bedsted, so that it helde fast euin  
before the visage of the kinge Char-  
lemayne. And after he wente to the  
chambre of Reynawde and sayde to  
hym, Cosin what wolde ye wel giue  
that should deliuer Charlemayne in-  
to your handes? By my soule sayde  
Reynawde I haue notyng but that  
I should gladly giue it so y I might  
haue him heere within this castell of  
Mountauban. Cosyn sayd Hawgis  
wil ye promyse me that ye shall doo  
to him no harme of his body, nother  
your brethern nor none of yours: &  
I shall put him into your handes e-  
uen anon. Cosyn sayd Reynawde, I  
promyse you that vpon my faythe,  
now come with me sayd Hawgis.  
And than Hawgis brought Rey-  
nawde into his chambre, and shewed  
him Charlemayne that was in hys  
bed and slepte, and after he sayde to  
him. My cosyn Reynawde. Now ye  
haue heere Charlemayne, keep him  
so well that he scape not you. And  
whan Hawgis had deliuered Char-  
lemayne to Reynawde, he came vnto  
y stable where he had put bayarde  
and tooke some strawe and rubbed  
his backe with all & his head, & than  
he kissed him al weeping, and tooke  
leau of him. And after he went and  
tooke the palstar and the cloke and  
came vnto the porter, and gaue him  
all his other raymentes, that he had  
wored afore and went out of Moun-  
tauban. ¶ Now leaue the histo-  
ry to speke of Reynawde, and of Char-  
lemayne a lytle, and shall shewe of  
Hawgis that left all his kintred &  
freendes



# The booke of the foure

freendes and became an heremite.

**C**how after that Hawgys had deliuered Charlemayne into the handes of Reynawde his cosyn: he wēt

without any leue from Hountaibā into a wood beyngē y riuer of Dordōn into an heremitage, where as he lyued like an heremite a pooze life to doo penaunce for his synnes.



**N**ow she weth the hystory, that whan Hawgys had deliuered Charlemayne for prisoner vnto Reynawde: he went out of Hountaibā without the leaue of Reynawde, and without the knowledge of any of the castell, except of the porter. And wit it that the sayd Hawgys went so longe that he came to y riuer of Dordōn, and passed ouer the water in a bote. And whan he was ouer: he entred into a wylde forest, & walked withi it til it was noone. And whan he had gone ynough through the wood, he behelde a syde: & sawe a lytle hill, & vpon it a litle house in maner of an heremitage, he went to it and founde the place deuoute and pleasaunt. For afoze the gate sprāge a quicke fountayne. And Hawgys

went into the chapell, and kneeled afoze an ymage of our lady that was there, & prayed our lordē y he wolde pardon hym his synnes. And as he was there makinge his prayer: a deuotion tooke hym so greate, that he made his bowe to God y he should dwell in that place, & that he should serue god there from that day forth on, and that he should eate none o-ther but suche wilde herbes as grem in the wood. And than he prayed vnto our lordē that Reynawde and his bretherne myght haue peace wryth Charlemayne. And whan Hawgys had doon his prayer: he rose bp and came out of the chapell, and tooke y sadle from his horse, and the bydel, and so let hym goe to the grassie, and went agayne to the Chapell.

But

**B**ut here leaueth the hystoie to speake of Mawgis þat was become an hermyte: and returneth to shewe of Reynawde and of his bretherne that had Charlemaine for chey prysoner within theyr castell of Mountauban.

**N**ow the barons of Fraunce that were at Mountauban, were so py þey could not awake the emperour Charlemayne that Mawgis had brought a slepe throughe his arte. But whan the time of the charme of

Mawgis was passed: the kynge awoke by himself, & he soude hymself at mountauban, he swaich þat he should neuer make peace w Reynawde as longe as he was prysoner, and how Reynawde let him goe agayne to his holte vpon his horse Bayarde, wherof Reynawde repented him afterwarde right soze. For soone after þat Charlemayne dyd bessege mountauban of so nyghe that he samplished Reynawde & his brethern with in with his wife and children.



**I**n this part sheweth the hystoie that whan Mawgis had deliuered Charlemayne into the handes of Reynawde, & that he was gone as ye haue heard: Reynawde called to hym his bretherne, & sayde to

the. Come hether my knyghts & bretherne tell me what we shall doo with Charlemayne þat we holde now in our handes, ye know how longe that he hath damaged vs, & hath doo to vs greaue harmes wpythout reason, wherfore  
F. ii. me



# The booke of the foure

me thinketh that we ought to auge  
vs vpon him, syth that we haue him  
Spz sayde Rycharde I cannot saye  
what ye wyl doo of hym, but and ye  
wyl beleue me: he shalbe hanged for  
the with. For after he were deadether  
is no man in all frenche p we should  
feare any thyng. Whan Reynawde  
vnderstode the counsell that Rycharde  
his brother had ginen him: he looked  
do wne towarde the erthe, and begā  
to thinke soze. And whan Rycharde  
sa w him muse so: he asked him what  
he thought a p he cared who should  
doo execution vpon the kynge: for  
sayd Rycharde ye shall not lacke for  
that: for none other shal hange him  
but my selfe, and that I shall doo e  
uen anon yf ye wyl deliuer him vn  
to me. After these wordes: Reynawd  
ryghted his head vp and sayde. My  
brethern ye know well that Charle  
maine is our souerayne lord. And  
of thother part ye see how Rowland  
the Duke of Normes, Ogier the dane,  
the bisshop Turpin and also Escout  
the sonne of Dedon are wythin for  
to make our poyntment with Char  
lemayne, for they know well that we  
ben in the right & the king in p wrog  
and thus yf we kyll hym: be it wyth  
ryght or with wronge, all the world  
should renne vpon vs, noz neuer as  
lōge as we liue: we shal not be without  
warre. And whan Reynawde had  
sayde thys: Alarde spake in thys  
maner. Brother ye haue spoken mi  
selfe, but ye see that we cannot haue  
peace wyth Charlemayne by no wi  
se me semeth that we ought to aske  
it of hym once for all, and yf he wyl

not: let vs keep hym psoner, bro  
ther sayd Guycharde ye say wel, but  
my hert telleth me that he shall neuer  
make peace wyth vs noz loue vs,  
Lordes sayde Rycharde me semeth  
that we haue a good head of Rey  
nawde our brother. thanked be our  
Lorde, the whiche hath gouerned  
vs ryght well herto, let hym shifte  
wyth the kynge as he wyl. And  
that, that he wyl: shall be doone. By  
my fapthe sayde Alarde, Rycharde  
spaketh well. And whan they were  
all accorded to that that Reynawde  
should doo: the foure brethren went  
to the Chambr where Rowlande  
was, to whome Reynawde spake in  
thys wyse. Spz Rowlande a ryse I  
praye you that ye wyl sende for O  
gier, the bisshop Turpin and for all  
the other that be here wythin of the  
folke of Charlemayne. For I wyl  
tell you one thyng. And whā Row  
lande saw Reynawde and hys bre  
thern at that tyme of the nyght come  
into his chambr: he was meruaylo  
led. Neuerthelesse he sent for all hys  
felawes, as Reynawde hadde tolde  
hym. And whan they were all come:  
Reynawde stode vp and sayd. Lōs  
des ye ben all my freendes, god gra  
mercy and you, wherof I wyl not  
hyde nothyng from you. Yee must  
know p I haue here within a p  
soner by whome I shal haue peace &  
all myne herptaunce agayne. Rey  
nawde sayd Rowlād, I pray you tel  
me what he is. For here is no mā,  
but that wolde fayne ye should doo  
wel. By my soule sayd Reynawd: it  
is the great emperour Charlemayne

so whome al fraunce belongeth. And whan Rowland vnderstode these tidinges: he was soze maruayled of it & sayd. Reynawde ye tell me now a wonderfull chynge, Howe haue ye taken myn vnckle so lyghtly: tell me & it please you, how ye had him heere within: haue ye taken hym by force of armes: nay verely said Reynawde. Tell me then how I pray you sayd Rowlander: Wit it sayde Reynawde that I wot not howe Hawgys my colyn did to night, but well I wot þ he hath brought the king heere within out of his paullion, and hath laide him in a bed, in a chambze where he is now fast a slepe.

**W**han Rowland and al his felawes heard these tidinges: they were greatly abashed, how it myght be that mawthis should bringe the kynge there. I meruayle much therof sayd the duke Raymes, for ye knowe well that the king made hymselfe for to be kepte bothe night and day well sure. Lozdes sayde than Ogier, all this hath doone our Lozde for the loue of Reynawde, because he setteth hym al to myscheif against Reynawde and that the warre hath lasted to longe & whiche shal now be left, wherof I thake God for my parte. For manye good knightes haue losse theire lyues for it. And whan Ogier had sayd thus: Reynawde took Rowland and the other, and broughte them al wayes speakinge vnto the chambze, where Charlemayne laye so faste a slepe, that they coude not awake hym, for nothing that they could doo to hym,

for Hawgys had charmed hym so harde. And whan the barons sawe þ kinge so harde a slepe: they wundzed full sore vpon it, & they were greatly abashed of it. Than spake Rowland fyrst and sayde Reynawde where is Hawgis that hath wrought so well to night. I praye you let hym come heere, and that he awake mine vnckle Charlemayne out of this slepe. And whan he shall be a waked: wee shall all fall at hys feete, and shall crye hym mercy. And so I pray you that thoughe yt ye holde mine vnckle in your handes, that ye wyl not be the prouder for it in yourte wordes, by my fayth sy: Rowland sayd Reynawde. I wil that ye know I should rather dye than I should say to my souerayne lozde a foule worde. But I shall put me, my goodes, and all my brethren to his wyll, to the ende that it wyl please hym to graunt vs peace wyth him. And I wyl go fetch the Hawgys to you, therto doo with hym what ye wyl. And than Reynawde wente and sought Hawgys the whiche he coude not finde, wherof he was full sorow. And whan that the porter wyll that Reynawde sought after Hawgys: he came to hym and sayd. Sy: ye seeke hym for nougth, for he wente his wayes out right now. And how knowest thou of it sayd Reynawde: Sy: wot it that this night he made me open the gate and he wet out vpon your horse bayarde. And he had not tarped longe: whan he brought a great man a bigge vpon the horse necke afore hym, & went in I wot not where. And soone after he came agayne vpon another



## The booke of the foure

horse, and he had clothed hym selfe poorly. And than he made me to open the gart, and he wente oute, and he came not sith againe. And al this is trouthe that I tell you now.

**A**nd whan Reynawde had vnderstande these wordes he was so wrothe y he wist not what to say nor doo. For he knewe well by hymself that Hawgys was gon his wayes because he wolde no longer abyde the wrathe of Charlemaigne. Than began Reynawde for to weepe full tenderly for his colyn that was thus gone. And all wepyng he came againe vnto the barons, and sayde to them how Hawgys was gone away wythout his knowledge wher of he was so worth and so for that he went almoste out of his minde. And whā Marde, Guycharde, and Rycharde had well vnderstande thys: they begā for to make great mone, and sorowed full sore. And than Rycharde began for to say, Hamy, saye colyn Hawgys what shall we doo from hens forthon: sith that we haue losse you: we may wel say y we be discomfited. For ye were our saluacyon, our succours, & our hope, our counsel, our refute, our defence, and also our guyde. For it is not yet longe ago that I shouldhaue dyed an euill death yf I had not be succoured thzough your helpe. Alas all the heuy nes y ye bere of the wra the y the kinge Charlemaigne hath agaynst you cometh ouir by vs. And whan he had sayd so: he knacked his teeth for angre, and sayde. Wee ben

nowe well all lost sith that we haue lost Hawgis. And with this: he lette hande to his swearde, & wolde haue slayne the Emperour Charlemaigne but Reynawde drew him a syde. And the duke Raymes and Ogger sayde than vnto hym. Rycharde Rycharde refrayne your courage. For it were not wel doone for to kyll a man that slepeth. And also afore that we shal departe hence: we shall set all at ons and God wyl. **S**hortely for to speake: Olyuer and the Duke Raymes spake so saye vnto Rycharde y they made him promise them that he should doo no harme to the kynge Charlemaigne. Neuerthelesse Rycharde left not to make great sorow for his colyn Hawgys that he had lost. For al them y saw him make so great mone had pitie for to se him. It was no mernayle if Rycharde made sorow we for Hawgis: For I promise you he had greute need of hym not longe after. And so had all his brethern, as ye shall heare here after.

**A**l thus as the foure connes of Hymon made they mone for the loue of they colyn Hawgis: The duke Raymes began to speake & sayde in this wise. By god, lordes ye doo not wel for to make so great sorow we. I pray you leue this heuy nes. And let vs begin to speake of your peace that muste be made with the Emperour Charlemaigne that an ende maye be hadde of thys warre, that hath endured so longe. By god sayd Ro wlande ye be passyng slow therupon. And also we muste fyrste haue

haile his mercy or euer toe more any thing of the peace. For ye wot wel y I left him because that peace should be made. And sayd y Duke Raymes ye speake wyfely and well, but howe shal we speake wyth hym wythout Hawgys were heere: we cannot awake hym. And but yf god remedy ech of us shal neuer speake wyth hym. But al thus as the barons spake in this wyse: The charme that Hawgys had set vpon Charlemayne was come at an ende, and the strength of it was passed. And sodenly Charlemayne began to moue hys body, and arose anon vpon his seete, and right soe abashed looked al aboute him. And whan he saw y he was at mountauban in y subiection of Reynawd the sonne of Aymon: he was soe angry, and made suche soe we for it, so that al they that were there trembled that he had ben mad and from hymselfe. And whā his wytes were come agayne: he knew wel y Hawgys had doone it vnto hym & swaie that as long as he were manne on lye: he should make no peace tyl that he were out of Mountauban, and that men had brought Hawgys to hym. And whā Rycharde vnderstode this that Charlemayne sayde he began to saie in this wyse. Howe the deuill dare ye thus speake: for ye see well that ye be our prysoner. And yet ye threte vs. I make to god mine a bove and to Saynte Peter, were not that I haue promysed, that I shal not doo to you no harme at this tyme: I should strike the head from the bodye of you. Holde your peace sayd Reynawd, let the kynge Char-

lemayne saie his wyll, ye are ouer bely in your wordes. And let vs all pray hym that he wyll pardon vs. For the warre hath lasted to longe, cursed be he that began it. For great euyles and harmes the whiche are happed therby.

**R**eynawd was wyse, and wel taught for to sturle thus hys brethren, to whom he said. My lordes my brethren, yf it please you, ye shal come with me, for to cry mercy vnto our souerayne lord the Emperour Charlemayne. Reynawd said Alarde, we shall doo all that ye wyl. By my faith said the duke Raymes, My lordes ye doo ryght wisely, and I promyse you that all good shall come to you therof. Than Reynawd and all hys brethren, and Rowland and Oliuer, and Ogier the Dane, the duke Raymes, the bisshop Turpin, and Escouffe the sonne of Dedo began all for to fall on theyr knees, before the emperour. And Reynawd spake fyrste, and sayd in this maner of wyse. Noble Emperour haue mercy of vs, for I and my brethren weeped vs to you to doo your pleasure of vs, & your will be so y our lyues ben saued: & there is nothinge but y we will doo it for the loue of you, if it please you to graunt vs peace w you. And for that pity & pardon that God gaue vnto Mary Magdelene whan she washed hys feete in the house of Simeon, good fyr haue pity of vs. And yf it please you not for to pardon me at y least pardon my brethren. And take them agayne theyr landes, and I shal gve you Mountauban



The booke of the four

ta wba, and Bayarde my good horse  
And so shall I goe into the holy lade  
I a Hawgis, where we shal serue  
to the Temple of our Lorde. And  
Whan the kinge Charlemain heard  
Reynaude speake thus: he blastred  
all for angre, and sayd by that good  
lorde that made me, yf all the worlde  
speake to me therof, yet should I ne-  
uer colset me to no peace, but I haue  
Hawgys in my handes for to doo  
my wyll vpon hym. Alas sayd than  
Reynaude, now haue I hearde that  
worde bytyng, wherof I am al des-  
perate. For I should rather let my  
selke be hanged, thā that I should co-  
sente to the deach of Hawgys my  
good cosyn. For he hath not deserued  
cowarde vs, that we should betraye  
hym, but rather he were worthy by  
reason for to be lorde about vs. Rey-  
naude sayd thā Charlemaine, thike  
not thoughe I am your prysoner &  
ye shall make me doo anye thyng a-  
gaynnt my wyll, spz sayd Reynaud  
wyte it that myne entence is for to  
meke my self toward you for I haue  
leuer that we suffre wronge of you,  
than ye of vs, now tell me spz how I  
shall deliuer you Hawgys that is  
our life, hope, succours, our comfort,  
sheld, our spere and also our swerde  
our brede, our wyne and our fleshe,  
also our refute, our mayster our gu-  
rde, and our defence in all places,  
Wherby spz I tell you that yf ye had  
all my brethern in your prysen, and  
that ye should make them to be han-  
ged, and that Hawgys were with  
in my power and with me: yet wold  
I not yeelde hym vnto you for to  
quyte wythall my brethern. And al-

so I swore you vpon my sayth that  
I wot not where that he is gone, god  
wot it. Ha sayd the Emperour char-  
lemayne, goddes curse haue he, for  
I am sure he is heere within you,  
he is not sayd Reynaude I take it  
vpon my baptyisme. And than Rey-  
naude turned himself toward Rom-  
lande and all the other barons and  
sayd to them. Lordes I beseeche you  
for God that it wyll please you for  
to pray our souerayne lorde & kinge  
that he wyll haue mercey of me and  
of my bretherne, to the ende & peace  
maye be had in fraunce yf it please  
hym. And than Raymes that was  
kneeling vpon his knees, and that  
heard that Reynaude had sayd and  
wyte well that he spake but well:  
sayde to the Emperour in this wise,  
Spz I pray you that ye wyll not be  
dyspleased of that I shall tell you,  
ye know spz yf I am suretie for Rey-  
naude, and so is Ogier & danc, but  
me semeth that we ought now to be  
discharged therof, such that ye be here  
presente within his castell, but ano-  
ther thyng I wyll tel you, me thin-  
keth that ye ought to take, that the  
erle Reynaude proffereth to you or  
yf any moze harme come to you ther-  
of, and so helpe me God ye shall doo  
wel. And al they of your courte shal  
be glad of it. And whan the barons  
hearde this that Raymes had sayde  
to the kinge Charlemaine: they spo-  
ke all and sayde. Spz doo that the  
duke Raymes hath tolde you, for he  
hath gruen you good counsell and  
true. And yf so be that ye doo it not:  
ye shall come to late for to repente  
you of it.

But

**W**han Charlemanyne understode this that þe duke Raymes had sayd to him: he was ryght wroth of it. For his herte was so harde alloyed with great angre: that he tooke no hede of good counsel, and he swore by saynt Denys of Fraunce that he should not doo it for no man but yf he had spylt Raymes in hys handes for to doo hys wyll ouer hym. And whan Reynawde hearde these wordes: he blustered in his face for angre, and rose vp from kneelinge bys bryetherne and all the other barons also. And then Reynawde sayde to Rowlande and to all the other Lordes that were there. Syr I wyll wel þe Charlemaine know my wille my entente, þe whiche I shall shewe afore hym vnto you. Wyt it that syth I cā fynde no mercy in him: I praye you that ye wyll not blame me fro hence forthon, yf I seeke my ryght. For I shall seeke it in all the maners that a true knight ought to do. And whā Reynawde had sayd this: he turned him towarde the kynge, and sayd to hym. Syr ye maye gos hengs whan it please you, for by my soule ye shal haue no harme of me now, for ye be my souerayne lord, & with good wil we shal be in good peace wryth you.

**T**he barons of fraunce þe were there: wondred soze of the great kindenes of Reynawde. Thā sayd þe duke Raymes, haue ye heard the great humilite of the noble knight Reynawde? By soule sayd rowlande. Reynawde sayth meruaylously. I wolde not haue trowed that

he should euer haue fared so fayre wth Charlemanyne. And whan Rycharde understode þe, that his brother Reynawde had sayde: he spake in thys wise, brother Reynawde I holde you mad. What wyll ye doo: ye see that we haue in our handes this benigne ble kyng the whiche we may kyll or els suffice hym to lyue, & yet he is so soze to pryde that he wyll doo no thing that his good counsell telleth hym, but he threteneth vs alwayes more and more, and ye wil let him go thus a waye: surely brother if he scapeth vs so: he shal yet angre vs right soze, and I promise you yf he hadde vs as we now haue hym: he should make vs all to dye shamefully, not al the golde in the worlde should not saue vs therfro. And therfore I tell you that ye doo grete folye to let him go thus a way. For and ye wyl, ye shall now make our peace, but me semeth, ye seeke none other but your death, wherof I pray god yf ye suffice him thus to goe awaye: that he maye make you to dye a shamefull death. And whā Reynawde heard his brother speke so: he was wroth & sayd to hi in angre. Holde your peace brother for he shall goe his wayes quite wyl you or no, and the peace shal be made whan he wyll and no soner it shal not be, for there vnto he shal not be compelled of me, and go you hengs from me, for your great wordes displeaseth me.

**W**han Reynawde had sayde this: he byd call a gentylman of hys to whome he sayd, go lightly without any caryenge to the yoman of min hores, & byd him bryng me my



The booke of the foure

my horse Bayarde. for I wyll that my souterayne lord epe vpon hym vnto his hofte, for he coue neuer vpo no better hofte. And whan Richard heard this: he wet fro thens al swellinge with angre as a fiersfull lyon because he knew that Charlemapne should goe so. And wit it that þing Charlemapne hearde and vnderstode well all these wordes, but he durste not saye nothyng, so soze he feared þ fierlines of the yong Richard. This hangyng: came there agayne þ gentilian that was gone for Bayarde whiche he brought with him, & than Reynawde tooke his good hofte bayarde & came to Charlemapne, & said to hym, sye ye maye lyght whan it please you, and goe at your lybertye, for to comferte your folke, whiche I am sure ben full soze for the taking of you. And whan Charlemapn saw this he lighted anon vpon Bayarde & went out of Mountauban for to goe to his hofte, and Reynawde comierced hym to the gate of Mountauban, & whan the kinge was gone: he made the gate to be shet anon. And the frenche men that sawe their king come agayn: they were right gladdhe and receyued hym worthely, & after they asked hym how it wet with him and if he had graunted þ peace lordes it is wel with me, God graunte: cy, but of peace I haue made none nor neuer shall as longe as I am man a lyue for no man that speake to me of it, but if I haue the traycoute maygis for to doo with him in wyll. Sye sayd some of his barons how haue ye be deliuerd. By my saych sayd Charlemapn, Reynawde hath

deliuerde me agaynst that the wyll of hys byetherne all quire at my lybertie. Sye sayd the barons haue ye not seen Rowlande, Myrner, & duke Raymes the bisshop Turpin, Ogier the dane nor Escout the sonne of oedon: yea surely sayd Charlemapne, but they haue all forsake me for the loue of Reynawde, wherof by þ god that hynges vpon the crosse if I can haue them agayne: I shall thew the that they haue not doone well, and whan he had sayd thus: he lyghted from Bayarde and made him to be brought agayne to Reynawde.

**A**nd whan Reynawde sawe Bayarde, that Charlemapne had sent hym agayne: he called Rowlande and his felawes & sayd to the, saye lordes I knowe well that ye be not in the grace of the greete kyngs Charlemaine for the loue of me, but I wyll not that ye haue maygre for me nor for my byethern, and therfore saye lordes I quyte you all quarells that I maye lay vpon you, and gyue you leue to goe whan it please you. And whan the Duke Raymes vnderstode the kindnes of the hert of Reynawde that was so noble: he thāked hym hyghly, and kyssed and embraced hym for great loue, & wolde haue kneeled downe afore hym, but Reynawde wolde not suffre hym. Than the duke Raymes began to saye, let vs thynke to goe after the kyng Charlemapne your vncle, sith it please Reynawde to gyue vs leue Raymes sayd Rowlande, how can we too this, shall we leue Reynawde the whiche ye se myne vncle wyl dy: stop:

Acrope wrongfully: Syr said þ duke  
 Maymes heare me þf it please you. I  
 counsel that we go hens, and whan  
 we shal be afoze Charlemayne: we  
 shall aske him how Reynawde dyd  
 delpue him, for þf we speake to him  
 of peace: he shalbe wrothe wyth vs,  
 but whan he shal remembre þ great  
 goodnes and curtesy of Reynawde:  
 his hert shalbe mollified, & it cannot  
 be but he shal too to him some grace  
 and fauour, for he shal know well þ  
 his hert is ouer great, & that he hath  
 doone to Reynawde great wronge.  
 Certes syr Maymes sayd the barons  
 ye speake wylfely, and ye giue ryght  
 good counsell. And whan they were  
 accorded to the counsell of the Duke  
 Maymes: Rowlande asked after his  
 horse, and eche of the other barons  
 also. And whan they were redye for  
 to lyght on horsbacke: there came mi  
 lady Clare the wyfe of Reynawde  
 that kissed Rowlande, Olpuer and  
 all the other barons, and after she  
 sayde to them in this maner. Lordes  
 that be heere present. I beseeche you  
 in the name of god & for his blessed  
 passion þ it pleaseþ you for to pur  
 chase þ peace of my lord Reynawde  
 and semblably of hys bytherne to  
 warde the great king Charlemayn,  
 ye know my lordes that the kynge  
 dothe to my lord great wrong: and  
 also ye know the great curtesy and  
 the kyndnes that my Lord my hus  
 band hath shewed vnto Charlemayn,  
 and well ye wor that þf my Lord  
 had not be: hys brother Rycharde  
 wolde haue striked the head from þ  
 body of hym. Madame sayde þ duke  
 Maymes doubt not. For and god be

pleased the peate shalbe made with  
 in these thre dayes. And than they  
 lighted al on horsbacke, and the three  
 bytheren of Reynawde conueyed the  
 to the gate, and Reynawde taryed  
 after them vpon the bydge, & whan  
 they were come to the sayde bydge  
 Reynawde sayd to them, My lordes  
 I comende you to God. I maye no  
 lenger goe with you, prayinge that  
 ye wyl haue me in your remembraunce.  
 Then al the Peeres of Fraunce (that  
 were there) began to wepe tenderly  
 and tooke their leaue of Reynawde  
 the noble knyght, & after they tooke  
 theyr way towarde þ hoste of Char  
 lemayne. And whan the Emperour  
 saw them come: he called to hym his  
 barons and shewed them they that  
 were comynge. And whan the barons  
 saw them: they meruayled greatly &  
 had greute feare, for they wylle not  
 what it was, but Odellon the Erie  
 said, by god we haue recouered row  
 lande and hys felawes, pea sayde  
 Charlemain, godes curse haue they.  
 Thys hangyng: Rowland and hys  
 felawes came tofoze Charlemayne  
 and lighted afoote, and incontinent  
 they knceled humbly afoze the king  
 and thā the duke Maymes began to  
 speake first and sayd. Noble Empe  
 rour we are come in your presence  
 for to crye you mercy, beseeching you  
 for God that it will please you to  
 take vs vnto your good grace, for  
 we haue doone nothing agaynst you  
 but þ it was for your wele. But sith  
 þ we haue knowen þ your wyl was  
 not for to haue peace: we haue forsa  
 ken Reynawde and all his bytheren  
 nor neuer whyle we ben a liue they  
 shall



## The booke of the four

shall haue no succours of vs. Lozdes sayde Charlemayne I pardon you, but I tell you yf we tary heere longe still: we shal haue lytle gaynes therby, wherfore I pray you that we go assaute Mountawban bothe by day and by night, by such maner that he be taken of vs incontinent, & they all y ben in it brought to deach. Sir sayd the duke Raymes ye say well, but and yf ony misfortune happeth to vs as it hath done heere afore tyme: I promise you it shalbe to you great dommage, and me seemeth it were muche better to haue peace, thā for to contynue the warre.

**A**nd whan the Barons of Fraunce heard this, that the duke Raymes had sayde to the king: they began to crye with a high voice Syr Emperour, We praye you that ye wyl doo this that Raymes counselleth you. For he gyueth you good counsell. Whan Charlemayne heard the crye that hys folke made to him: he came to the duke Raymes y was kneelyng afore hym, and tooke him by, & in lyke wyse his neuewe Rowlande and all the other, and sayde to them. My lordes ye knowe that I haue pardoned you with right good wyll, but I wyl well that ye know but yf ye keep yourself fro helpinge of my enemies mortal: I shal angré you vpon your bodies. For I hate them so muche that yf I should abyde heere all my lyfe: I shal destroy the. And wit it that Charlemayne was glad that he had recouered hys neuewe Rowland and his other Deeres how be it he made no semblaunte of

it. And he sayd yet agayne, y he shold neuer departe from hys spege tyll y he had taken Mountawban and all the roundennes of Almon, wherof he shall doo sharpe Iustyce, & shal doo brene Hawgys y false traytours. Syr sayd Rowland I promise you that Hawgys is not win Mountawban, for he feareth you so muche that he dare not abyde you, least ye should make him to be hanged, by cause he dyd steale you so falsly oute of your hoste. A god sayde Charlemayne, whan shal I see that I haue him for to doo my wyll of hym: for than the Sonnes of Almon should soone be a greed with mee.

**A**nd whan the kyng Charlemayne had deuysed longe y nough: he gaue leaue to all hys barons for to go agayne into theyr restes for to see theyr folke. And whan the morow came: all the barons came agayne vnto Charlemain. And whā the kyng saw them together within his pavilion, he was therof glad, & spake to them thus. Lordes I haue besyged Mountawban as nere as ye see, and I am not dysposed for to departe heere nother for colde, for hete nor for hungre, vnto y tyme y I haue taken hym by fyne force, the whiche thyng shall be lyghtly doone, for I am sure that they shal want bytayles wythin. And worse is for them: they haue loste the traytoure Hawgys whiche was theyr hope and comforte. Wherfore I saye that they canot holde it longe agaynst my power, whan the barons hearde y Charlemayne thretened Reynawde so

so soore: there was none of them but  
 thei were soze for it, for the most par-  
 te of theim loued Reynawde for the  
 worthynes and the kyndnes that  
 was in him. Then spake the Duke  
 Haymes and said to the Emperour,  
 Syr ye say that they of Mounta-  
 wan be dyspuryed of meate, and that  
 ye shall not departe from the spege  
 tyll that ye haue taken the castel and  
 that is a thinge that shall be doone  
 lighthe, but I promyse you yf ye sa-  
 rye to their vittailles be doo: ye shall  
 lye here lenger then ye ween of, wher-  
 fore I beseeche you, that it wyll  
 please you to beleue my counseyll yf  
 it semeth you good, syt take heede  
 to the curtyse that Reynawde hath  
 doone to you, for ye wot well that if  
 he had not be: his brother Richarde  
 shoulde haue slayne you, al the golde  
 in the worlde shoulde not haue saued  
 you. I sem thynke thenne also in the  
 great mekenes that he hath alwaies  
 shewed to you, also for the great trust  
 that he hath had in you, he lencd you  
 his good horse bayarde that hath no  
 matche in all the world, syt ye o-  
 uerthynke well al, ye shall find that  
 no manne dyd neuer to none other so  
 greate curtyse as Reynawd hath  
 doone to you, and of that other parte  
 he and his bretherne ben such knygh-  
 tes as euery body knoweth. I swe-  
 re to you syt by al hallowen that o-  
 uer ye shal take Mountawan: Rey-  
 nawde and his brethern shall beare  
 to you suche damage, wherof ye shal  
 be wrothe. And yet ye ought well to  
 take heed how we wast and destroye  
 the country and the feeldes and great  
 good ye doo dyspende, whiche for

your honour were better to be em-  
 ployed vpon the sarasins: than vpon  
 the four sonnes of Aymon, for the  
 sarasins been now in rest makynge  
 great tope for the cause of this warre,  
 and they doo well. For warre hath  
 left them, and it is come among our  
 selfe so horrib'e and so cruel that ma-  
 ny noble and worthy knyghtes ben  
 deade therof.

**T**he kynge Charlemain was soze  
 abashed, whan he hearde the du-  
 ke Haymes speake so: and it  
 moued his bloud full soze and became  
 pale as a white cloth for the greate  
 wrath that he had at his heart, and  
 casted a syde his sight angrely vpon  
 the duke Haymes and sayde to hym  
 by great wrath. Duke Haymes by  
 the faith that I owe to that blessed la-  
 dy that conceyued the sonne of god  
 in her virginite, that if there be any  
 man so hardy to speake moze to me of  
 accorde to be made with the four son-  
 nes of Aymon: I shal neuer loue him  
 but I shal angre hym on his bodye.  
 For I am not dysposed to make pea-  
 ce with them for nothyng that can  
 be sayd, but I shal hange them what  
 soeuer it coste me or I departe from  
 this spege. Whan the barons hearde  
 Charlemaine speake thus proudly:  
 they were soze meruaylled of it, and  
 left to talke of this matter. But whā  
 Ogier sawe that al the barons held  
 theim styll: he began to saye to the  
 kynge Charlemaine. Cursed be the  
 houre that Reynawde suffred not  
 Richard to smite of your heade. for  
 ye had not thyrned him so now. And  
 whā Charlemayn heard that Ogier  
 said



## The booke of the four

sayde to him, he bowed his necke and looked downeward all pensifull and syn he sayd, now lordes make you ready & see that every man fal to his armes, for I wil now give assaute to Mouncauban. And whan y frenshemen hearde the commaundement of the king: they made no tarryng but went & armed themselves, and whan they were all ready: they came in good ordinaunce, and brought ladders & other instrumentes with them for to saue withal the castell and engynes for to breake downe the walles, and presented the before Charlemaine for to accomplysh his will. And whan the king saw them so wel apparelled: he commaunded the to goe saue the castell of Mouncauban.

**A**S soone as Reynawde saw his enemies come: he called his brother Alarde, and sayde to him. Brother I pray you take bondy my good horne & blowe in it strongly to the ende that our folke arme themselves when they heare it, for heere come the frenshemen to saue vs. Whan Alard vnderstoode the commaundement of Reynawde: he tooke bondy, and blew in it with so great a winde three tymes that all they of the castell hearde it, and were all abashed with all and without anye taryng they went & armed themselves, and lyghely gate vpon the walles for to defend the Castell. Neuerthelesse the frenshemen came neare and entered in to the dyches as bogges doone in a myze, and dressed vp their ladders to the walles. But wyl it that they of within the castell beganne to defende

so strongly with castinge of stones: that they domaged sore the frenshemen so that many of them lay deade within the dyches. For Reynawde & his brotherne dyd there so great feates of armes that no body myght endure their strokes, who had seen the poore duchesse and her yong child, enat that saut byngynge stones to Reynawde and to his brother vpon the walles: he wolde haue had pytie of it. For the two yonge sonnes of Reynawde said to theyr vncles, holde out vncles these stones, for they been great pynne. Suche defence made they of Mouncauban, that they ouerthrew them that were vpon the ladders to the botome of the dyches, all dead and sore wounded, and whan the king Charlemaine saw this: he was wrothe, for he knewe than wel that he should neuer take Mouncauban by force, nor also the noble knyghtes that were within it, as Reynawde and his brotherne. And therefore he made the tempeste to be blownen, to call his folke a backe with so great angre that he was almoste out of his mynde, and whan the frenshemenne hearde blowe the retreat: they were glad, for they were shrewdly handled, and I promyse you that Charlemaine left such a company dead within the dyches that he longe after was full sorry for it.

**W**han Charlemaine and all his folke were wythdrawen again: he beganne to sweare saynt Denys of fraunce that he should neuer departe thence til he had slain Reynawde & his brotherne within the castell of Mouncauban, & than he com

commaunded that afoze euery gate of the castel shoulde be layed two hundred knyghtes, for to keep that no bodye might in noz oare, but he shoulde be take. And whan Reynaude sawe that he kneled down vpon his knees and heued by his handes toward beauen and said, Good lord that suffred derth on the crosse. I beseeche you that ye wil graue vs that grace that we maye haue peace with Charlemain & saue our liues. And whan Richard heard the prayer of Reynaude: he took heed to it and said. Brother I promise you if ye wolde haue beliened me: we shoulde now haue be in good rest & peace. For Charlemaine wolde haue be glad therof for to saue his life, ye know that our cosyn mawgis brought him not heere for none other cause to be our prisoner, but to the entent that we shoulde make our peace, but ye wold not take heed to it. Whan we might haue had our wyll, and I promyse you we shall not doo as we wolde.

**T**he emperour Charlemain abode so longe at the siege afoze Mownta Whan, that they that were within it had great need of vitaylles, for he that had any meat: he had it incontinent, and so great scarcitye of vitaylles was there within a while that men coulde get there no meat for golde nor for siluer, and many other fell doone at grounde here and there so ferynt for hungre that it was great pite for to see, for y derth was there so great that thone brother hidde his meat from the other, and the father from the childe, & the childe

fro the father & fro the mother. And shortlye to speake: I promise you that the poore folke died for hungre by the streetes, and with this was so great stench in Mownta Whan of the dead that were there: that no man coulde endure it. And whan Reynaude saw this he was soze for it, and than he dyd doo make a greare charnell wher in he made all the deade bodyes to be buryed. And whan Richard sawe so greace mortallite within the castel of Mownta Whan, throughe cause of the great dearth that was there, and saw his brother Reynaude in so great distresse: he could not forbear, but he said to him, by god my brother nowe goeth it worse then euer it dyd, it had be muche better if ye hadde beleued me, for yf ye wolde haue suffred me to slea the kynge Charlemaine: we shoulde now not haue be in this myscheef and great pouertie that we haue now, nor your folke hadde not dyed for hungre as they doo, and thā he began to weep tenderly and sayde Alas why doo I complayne other: I myght well complayne my selfe sicke that I must dye and be put in to the charnell as the poorest of vs all. Ha Mawgis my saye cosyn, where be ye no wyse faile vs at oure need, for and ye were here within with vs: we shoulde not be famyshed for hungre and also we shoulde not doubte muche the kynge Charlemaine, for I wot well that ye shoulde get vs vitaylles ynough to lyue vpon for vs and our men, and now we muste dye for hungre as the wulf shoulde vpon a sca, for Charlemaine hateth vs more than he dooth the satayns. And therfore



it is not for vs to waite after pittie of him, for he is ouer cruell a king vpon vs.

Ogier with great payne kept his eyes fro weeping lest Charlemaine should not perceiue his sorowful herte

**C**harlemaine by the reporte of some folke knewe the great dethe & scaritie of vitailles that was within Mountauban, where of he was right glad, & called to him his folke and said to them. Lordes now can not Reinald escape, but he shal soon be taken & hanged, & the false Richard drawn at an horse tayle, & Blarde, & Guichard also, and they worthines shal be kill worthe to them. And whan the kinge Charlemaine had sayde these wordes: he sent for all his peeres & barons, and whan they were all come within his pavillion: he was glad of it and sayd to them. Lordes that ked be god, that I haue brought mountauban so low that Reinald and his knyghtes haue no more vitailles in it, and now they shal yeeld them selfe at my wyll maugre their ceceth, for I muste parge of their folkes ben deade for hungrē, and yet dien dayly, and yet muste wyte I wyl that Reinald be hanged & his brethern also, but first I wyl that Rycharde be drawn at an horse tayl. And so I charg you that none of you be so hardye to moue my wyll to the contrary, for I wyl that it be doone as I saye. Whan the duke Raimon Rowland, Oliuer, Ogier, the bishop Turpin, & escouir, & sonne of Dedon, & were there heard & king speke thus they were righte soye for the loue of Reinald & of his brethern, & looked down & said no word at all for feare & they should be shent of the king, &

**H**ere ye ought to wit that duringe I came that Charlemaine laye at the siege afore Mountauban persecuting the four sonnes of Almon Reinald, Blard Guichard, and Rycharde: Almon their father helde the party of the king against his children for he had promised him to doo so, as ye haue heard about, but wit it that whan he heard howe the emperoure thretened his children, howe be it that he had forsaken them, he was wrothe for it, for he knewe wel if his children died so: he woud neuer haue joy after that, for what soeuer warre he made against them, he loued them kindly as the father ought loue his childe, for nature may not lie, & therfore he took so great sorow whā he heard of his sonnes that they were thretened to be hanged: that he almost fel down dead to the ground, & of the great sorow & he had could not keep himselfe but he said. Sir emperour I beseech you that it wyl please you to byrnyng my children to right, for though I haue forsaken them, yet are they my sonnes of my body begotten. Hold your peace Almon said Charlemaine, for I wyl that it be so doone of this, for Reinald did slea my newe barthelot that I loued so much. And after he turned himself & saw & barons that spake thone to thother & said to them. Lordes leue your musing, for I tel you for a trouthe that I shal not leaue to doo herin my wil for no mā & speaker ye wor wel it is iii. pere gon sith we besieged this

castel first and euer sith haue leien here, where we haue lost many of oure folke, wherfore I comaund you that either of you doo make engynes for to bynge doone this great towre & all the remmaunt also, for with such maner we shal abash them greatlye, and ye my neuw Rowland ye shall doo make of the engines. vii. and Oliver shal doo make vi. the duke Raymes iiii. the bishop Turpin, and Ogier the dane orber. iiii. and ye duke Aimon said the king Charlemain ye shal make thre.

**H**Owe shoulde I now doo this good lord said the Aimon: for sir Emperour ye know wel they be my children, nother trauantes nor knaues: but be the best knyghtes of the world, & so I feel you sir that if I saw theim die: I shoulde for goe my willes for angre. And whan Charlemaine heard Aimon speake thus: he was wroth and began to gnaw on a staffe that he held in his hand, and after said. By that god that made me if there be any of you that gainsaich my wil: I shall strike of his heade with my swerde. Sir saide the duke Raymes angre not your selfe. For that, ye haue comaunded: shal be doone incontinent. whan the barons vnderstood the comaundement of Charlemain: they went their way for to make the engines that the king had comaunded, the whiche were anon made ready & these engines were for to cast greete multitude of stones. And as soon the they were made: they were set for to cast ayen moucatoba & in short tyme they damaged it ful sore, & so I promise you the within the castel were

made greete crying of women and of children, & for feare of the stones they went and hid them vnder the ground and so thei of Moucatoba endured this mischef as longe as they had any morsell of meat. And I ensute you that there was so great derth and so great mortallite: the men wist nomore whete to laye the deade. For the charnell was al full. Alas who had seen so pong bachelers that for seynnes went leringe vpon their slaues thorough Moucatoba for lacke of meat: he wolde haue had great pitie. For as for that the castel was besieged they were so stronge and so myghte that none could haue ouercome them, but they were than so feble that they fell whete they went, musselinge in the grounde as hogges.

**A**nd whan Reinald saw the great pitie that was among his folke: he had of it great sorow because he myghte not put no remedye thereto, and than he began to saye in himself. O good lord what maye I now doo: now I see wel my wyf availleth me nothing, for I wot not whete to seeke victualles. Alas god whete maye Harogis be now that he know not my great need and the outrage the Chatlemaine dooth to vs. And whan the good lady clare saw her lord Reinald that complained him selfe so piteously: she began to say vnto hym in this wise. For soch my lord ye doo not wel for to discomforte your self so sore, for ye discourage vs al within, moreouer I promise you that heere been yet within mo than a C. horses, I pray you let one of theim be killed, and ye, my selfe and our poore childre



The booke of the four

shal eat of it, for it is more than thre daies agoe that they no: I eate anye thing that did vs good, and w<sup>h</sup>ā she had said this: she fel down in a swoone at the feete of Reyna Wode her husband, for greace feblenes for lacke of meate. And whan Reyna Wode sawe her fall: heooke her by anonc in his armes, and after that she was come againe to her selfe, she saide all weeping. Alas dere lady mary what shal I poore wretche doo for all my heart faileth me, and almost wil my soule departe: al so soze is my bodie famished alas mi childre who should euer haue Wende that ye should haue died for hungre.

**W**han Reyna Wode sawe the greate distresse wherin his wyfe was: he had greace pitie of heer, and the teeres began to fall ouer the cheekes of hym, and al weepng he went to his stable, and there he made a horse to be slayne, the whiche he made to be dressed for meate to hys folke, but I promyse you that horse flesh lasted not longe afore theym for they were menne ynowe to eate it by lghly. And heere ye must knowe that all the horses that were within Mounteban: were in lyke wise eaten, one after a nother, excepte foure, that is to wyte Bayarde and the horses of the thre byetherne of Reyna Wode the whiche foure horses they wolde not eat by cause they wolde not be a foot. And whan Reyna Wode sawe that there was no more thyng that they might eate: he called his byetherne and said to them. Faire byetherne what

shall we doo: we haue no more food: to take vs but onely our foure horses that are left alpye. Lette vs doo kille one of theym that oure folke may eat with vs. By my heade sayde Richard that shal not be mine, and yf ye haue luit to it: let yours be slayne, for ye shall not haue none, and yf ye haue great myscheete be wel worchy for throughe your pyde: we are brought in this pleyght, by cause that ye lette goe the king Charlemayn, for and if ye had beleued me: thys greace myschappe had not be fall vs. Thys hanging: came the litle Almon the sonne of Reyna Wode that sayde to Richard in this maner. Holde your peace myn vncle, for that thing that mai not be amended, men oughes to let it passe in the best wise. For it is to shamefully to reherse that, that is passed but doo as my father commaunderth you & ye shal doo wel. For ye doo not well to angre him so as ye doo, and though he hath missed of his entent, he hath bought it deare ynoughe as wel as we, if the king Charlemaine hath domaged you longe, it may well hap that god shall helpe you or oughe longe, if it please him, and I beleue certenlye that he shall doo so, for the kyndnes that my lord my father did shew vnto charlemain whan he had him heere, can neuer be lost as I wien.

**G**reat pytie had Richard of his newetwe whan he hearde hym speake thus wofly & rooke him betwen his armes and kissed him al weeping, and than he said to Reyna Wode. Forther commaund my horse to be

be slayne whan it please you, and ge-  
ue some comfort therewithall to chys  
folke and to my lady your wyfe and  
to my yong newwes youre children.  
For my lictel newwe that is here hath  
wel deserved to eat of it for the good  
counseyl that he hath given to me  
now. Brother said Alard, let be slain  
whiche ye will of thre, for it were  
to great adomage if Bayard should  
dye, and also I tell you that I had le-  
uer dye my selfe than that Bayarde  
should be slayne. Brother sayde  
Guyhard, ye say wel, and anon the  
horse of Richard was killed and de-  
fed to their meat, and so in lyke wise  
was doon with the horses of the two  
other brethren, and full sauourly it  
was eaten. And whan Reinalde  
saw that there was no meat moze:  
he wist not what he should doo, for he  
was moze sorow for his brethren and  
for his wife, and his childre, than he  
was for him selfe, and began to saye  
in this wise. Alas what shal I doo:  
I am vanquished & overcome with-  
out any stroke. It had be better for  
me to haue belued my brother Ry-  
charde, for I had not be now in the  
myserye and greave need where I am  
in at this houre. Now I see wel that  
Charlemaine hath chased me so mu-  
che that he hath betrapped me with-  
in his gynnes, wheroure I can not  
scape, and I know wel that I ought  
not to be complayned, for I haue ma-  
de my selfe the rodde wherewith I am  
beaten, and yf I should repente me  
therof: it should be profyte nothinge,  
for I come to late for to doo so. whan  
Richard saw his brother Reinalde  
make suche sorow: he knewe well

hys mynde, and was ryghte sorow for  
hym, so that he shooke al for sorow,  
and wist not what he should saye.  
For yf Reinalde wolde haue hadde  
of his owne sleigh: Rycharde wolde  
wel haue gyue hym of it, yf he myghte  
haue be comforted therewith. Then  
spake Guyhard that other brother  
and sayd. O good brethren what  
shall we doo: we shall peeble our selfe  
or elles dye heere for rage of hungre,  
and we may no moze from heere forth  
on, but onely wayte after deathe.  
What say you brother Guyhard said  
Reinalde, wyl we peeble our selfe to  
the moste cruel king of the world for  
he should make vs all to be hanged  
shamefully, if any prync could be fou-  
de in him: I wolde peeble me gladly  
but ther is none in him, and therfore  
I am delybered that we shal not pee-  
ble vs to him, we shall rather eat my  
children, and after our bodies. But  
alwayes if ye will eat Bayarde: I  
am therof content for to passe the  
tyme forthon, for I haue ofte heard  
saye, that a daye respite is worthe  
much. But neuer thelesse what so e-  
uer he sayde, he had no courage to eat  
Bayard, for it was al his succours.  
Brother sayde Alard, I counseyl  
that we eat Bayarde, rather then  
we should peeble vs in to the han-  
des of Charlemaine, for he is to cru-  
el, nor he shall neuer haue mercy  
of vs. And whan Reinalde sawe  
that they wold eat Bayarde hys good  
horse: he tooke for it such a herly so-  
row that he almost fell in a swoone  
to the earth, but he tooke togither his  
strengthes and stoode vpryght and  
began to saye. Faire brethren what  
wyl



Wyll ye doo: will ye eate bayardemy  
nobie horse, that so ofte hath kept vs  
from deach and from perill moztall:  
and I pray you that afoze ye slea him  
that ye slea me, for I maye not see  
hit n die, and whan ye haue slaine me:  
slea him hardeye. And if ye will not  
doo so: I forbed you in as muche as  
ye loue me that ye touch not bayard,  
for he that shal hurt him: shal hurt me  
And whan the duchesse hearde Re-  
nawd speake thus: she wist not what  
to doo, than she said to him in greate  
wrache. Ha gentill duke debonayze,  
and what shall now doo pour pooze  
chyliden: wyll you that they die for  
hunger for faure of youre horse: for  
it is thre daies passed y thei eat any  
meate, shortly shal they lyues come  
at an ende and mine also, for my hert  
cleaueth in my body for fine force of  
hunger, and so shall ye see me die pre-  
sently, but if I haue succours. Whan  
the chyliden heard the mother speake  
thus: they saide to Renawde. Good  
father for goddes loue deliuer youre  
horse, for he shal die as wel for hun-  
gre, and it is better that he dye fyrste  
than we afoze him. And whan Alard  
Guycharde, and Rycharde hearde  
their newes speake thus: Richard  
spake and said to his brother. Ha ge-  
ntill duke for god suffre not that pour  
chyliden nor my lady youre wife dye  
for hunger, and we also. And whan  
Renawd heard his broteler Richard  
speake so to him: his hearte rendred  
with al right soze, & fel to wep, & said  
my fayre byetherne sith that it please  
you that bayard shal die: I praye you  
goe and slea him. And whan they  
were al accorded that bayard shoulde

be slaine and eate: they went straight  
to the stable, where thei found bayard  
that casted to them a greate syghe.  
And whan Renawde sawe that he  
saide he shoulde rather slea himselfe,  
than that bayard shoulde die, that ma-  
ny tymes hach saued him fro deache.  
And whan the chyliden had hearde  
this: they returned agayne to their  
mother weeping & al dead for hugre.

**W**han whan Renawde sawe  
that his chyliden were gone:  
he went to bayarde, and gaue him a  
litill hey, for he had none other thing  
to giue him. And than he came to his  
byetherne, and found Alard holdinge  
Simon his newe we that wepte, and  
Rycharde held pon, and Guichard, the  
duches, that in his armes was swo-  
ned, and said to theim. Alas for God  
mercy. I praye you take in you cou-  
rage till night, and I promise you y  
I shal doo so much that we shal haue  
meate, and god wil. Brother said Al-  
larde we must suffre it wolde we or  
not. So longe abode the knightes y  
the night came, and whan it was co-  
me: Renawd said to his byetherne.  
My byethern I wil go speake to our  
father, for to see what he shall say to  
me, and if he shal let vs dye for hun-  
gre. Brother said Richard I wil goe  
with you if it please you, and ye shal  
be the more sure that I be in pour co-  
pani. My brother said y good knyght  
Renawd, ye shall not so, for I wyll  
goe there alone, and if I bringe you  
not meate: I shall than deliuer you  
bayarde. And whan Renawde had  
said this: he made himselfe to be wel  
armed, and lyghed vpon bayarde,  
and

and wel secretly went oute of Dou-  
tauban, and came to his fathers pa-  
uillion, the which he knew wel. For  
he had aspyed it from aboue the great  
to were while it was daye. And it hap-  
ped so that he found his father Aymon  
oute of his pauillion all alone way-  
rynge yf he might by anye waie un-  
derstand some rydynge priuelye of  
the castel. And whan Reynawde saw  
his father, he said to him. What arte  
thou that goe no weat this tyme of  
the nighte all alone? And whan Ay-  
mon heard him speake, he knew him  
anon and was right glad, but he ma-  
de of it no semblaunt, and said to him  
but What art thou thy selfe that goest  
at this houre so hie mouned? Whan  
Reynawde, hearde his father speake:  
he knewe him wel and saide to him.  
Syr, for god haue mercy vpon vs, for  
we die all for hungre, and al our ho-  
tes ben al ready dead & eaten, & so we  
haue no more but baparde, that shall  
not die as longe as I lyue, for rather  
I should let me be slaine, for to me &  
to my bretherne he hath often saued  
our lyues. Alas father yf ye wyl not  
haue mercy on vs: haue mercy of my  
yonge chyldren.

**N**A faire sonne saide Aymon, I  
can not helpe you for nothing,  
but goe your waye agayne, for I ha-  
ue you forsworne ye wot it well, and  
therfore I wolde not doo apenst min  
othe, for all the good in the worlde,  
and my hearte is ryghte so: ye that I  
may not helpe nor gyue you succour.  
Syr, sayde Reynawd ye speake yll,  
cause your reuerence, for I promys

you if ye gyue vs no succoures: that  
my wife, my chyldren, my bretherne  
and my selfe shal die for rage of hun-  
gre: euert hree daies ben passed, for  
it is all ready more then thre dayes  
that none of vs eat any meate, and so  
I wot not what I shall doo. Alas  
ye be our father so ought you to com-  
fort vs. For I wot well if the kinge  
haue vs: he shall make vs all to be  
hanged and dye shamefully. Whyche  
were not your worshipp, wherfore  
my father ye ought not to sayle vs  
yf the lawe of nature is rightwysse.  
My father for god haue pitié & mercy  
vpon vs, and holde not your coura-  
ge apenst your poore chyldren, for it  
were great cruelte, and also ye know  
well that Charlemaine dooth to vs  
great wronge, for to persecute vs as  
he dooth. whan Aymon bearde Rey-  
nawd speake thus: he had greate pitié  
of him, and was so sorowful that almoste  
he fell do wne in a swoon to the erth  
and after he began to behold his chil-  
de Reynawd & soze wepyng he sayde  
to him. Faire sone ye haue said trou-  
the that the kinge doothe you greate  
wrong, & therfore a lyght fro youre  
horse and entre within my pauillio  
and take what it please you for no-  
thyng shall be saide naye to you, but  
I shall not gyue you nothing for to  
saue mine oth. And whan Reynawd  
heard his father speake so: he descē-  
ded a foot & kneled before him, & said  
an hundred gramercyes deare father  
and than he entered within the pauil-  
lion of his father, and laded baparde  
with bread & with fleshy both salt and  
freshe, and wote it that baparde dyd  
beate



# The booke of the four

were more then x. other hors'es should  
 haue doone. And whan Reynawde  
 had wel laded baparde with vitailles:  
 he tooke leaue of his father & went a  
 gayne to Gountrawban, it is not to  
 be asked what welcome Reynawde  
 had of his brethren, of his wife, and  
 of his men, & wote it that whan they  
 saw him bring so much vitailles: they  
 woundred al for ioye to the earth, and  
 whan Reynawde saw this: he wende  
 they had ben dead for hungre. So be-  
 gan he to make great sorow and not  
 without a cause, and while that Rei-  
 nawde sorowed and made great mo-  
 ne: his brethren began to come again  
 to theymselfe his wife and also bys  
 two children. And whan Reynawde  
 saw them al upon their feet: he was  
 glad and presented to them meat for  
 them and for bys folke, and they tha  
 made great Joy and ate their fill as  
 they ease. And whan they had eaten  
 well: they went to slepe excepte Rei-  
 nawde that wolde keep watche byn  
 self. And on the morne whan the day  
 was come: they rose & went to heare  
 masse, and after the masse was doon  
 they fell to their meate againe, and  
 eat al that was left ouer eyn of that  
 Reynawde had broughte, and whan  
 the next night was come, Symon (þ  
 coude not forget his children) made  
 his stuarde to come before him and  
 sayde to him, ye know how I haue  
 forsworn my children, wherof I am  
 soze that euer I did so. But it is said  
 that at the need the frend is knowen,  
 I let you wite that my children been  
 yonder within in great pouerte and  
 misse, and howe be it that I haue  
 forsworn the: I oughte noz maye not

faile them, we haue thre engynes  
 that Charlemain hath made me doo  
 make for to hurt my children wherof  
 we haue domaged them as muche as  
 we might, now we must we helpe them  
 after their domage. And I shall tell  
 you, see that ye put within the engy-  
 nes bread and flesch both salt & fresse  
 in great pleny in stead of stones, and  
 let this be cast in to the castell, for þe  
 I shoulde die my selfe for hungre I  
 shall not fayle theym as longe as: I  
 haue wherof to helpe them, and also  
 I repent me full soze of the harm that  
 I haue doon to them, for al the world  
 oughte to blame me therof with good  
 ryghte, and we been in the wronge.  
 Syr saide the stuarde ye saye well.  
 For ye haue doone so muche apensle  
 them that al the world blamech you  
 therof, but incontinence I shall doo  
 your commaundement. And than þ  
 stuarde went and made the thre en-  
 gins to be filled with vitailles, and  
 after he had the gouernour to cast the  
 in to Gountrawban. And ye muste  
 wote that many of the hoste blamed  
 Symon soze, that he made bys en-  
 gynes to be caste apensle bys children  
 for they wende it had be stones, and  
 whan the night was passed & that  
 Reynawde was vp: he went heere and  
 there within the castell, & found folsom  
 of vitailles that his father had cast,  
 wherof he was right glad and sayde  
 Good lord be blessed be you, now see I  
 wel that they that haue their trust in  
 you can not fare amis, & than he cal-  
 led his brethren his wife & his chil-  
 dre & said. My brethren ye see howe  
 our father hath pley of vs. And then  
 he made the vitailles to be gathered

by and put in a sure place, and so thei  
care therof as their case for they had  
well great need therof, for they were  
so foye an hungred that it was greave  
pise. And wote it that Aymon made  
caste so muche bytill within Moun-  
tainban: & they of within had prou-  
gh for thye mone: heg with good go-  
uernance.

**N**ow must we vnderstand y  
Christenain had some know-  
lege howe the olde duke Aimon had  
giuen vitailles to his childre, wher-  
of he was soze an angred & made Ai-  
mon to come incontinence afore him  
& sayd to hym. Aymon who maketh  
thee so bolde to giue any meate to mi-  
enemies mortal: I know wel al thy  
woyles, thou mayst not excuse thyself,  
but by the faythe that I owe to God  
I shall auenge me so well of nyght:  
that if I may ye shall leese your heade  
for it. Sir said the duke Aimon, I will  
not denie it: for I tell you truly if ye  
should make me dye or be bzence in a  
fyr: I will not fayle my chyldren as  
longe as I maye helpe them. For my  
chyldren be notheues traytours nor  
no murderers, but they been the most  
valiaunt knightes of the world & the  
truest, & woeen not you to slea my chil-  
dren in suche maner, ye haue to longe  
wrought your folp yf it wolde suffice  
you. whan Charlemayne heard Ay-  
mon speake thus: he was angrie  
with it, & for great wrath he loked as  
fire & almost he smote Aimon, & whā  
the duke Naimmes saw this: he auan-  
ced him forth & said. Sir sende home  
Aimon for ye haue kepte hym here  
to long, ye ought well to vnderstande

that Aymon will not see his chyldren  
to be destroyed, and therfore ye ought  
not to blame him nor smite him, after  
that Charlemayne hearde the duke  
Naimmes speake: he sayd to him. Nai-  
mes syth that ye haue iudged it: ye  
shall not be gaynsayd, & than he tur-  
ned him towarde the duke Aymon &  
sayde to hym. Now goe forth out of  
my holl. for ye haue doon me more  
domage than profyte, sir said the du-  
ke Aimon. I shall gladly doo your co-  
maundement. And anon he went &  
lighted on horsbacke, and after said  
to the peeres of fraunce. Lordes I  
pray you al that ye will haue my chil-  
dren for recomended, for they be com-  
of your bloude, & let the king see well  
to, for yf he make my chyldren to dye  
by such great vengeaunce as he hath  
sayd: if I should become a satyrp &  
dwell in Affryque al the dayes of my  
lyfe: I shall stryke of his head, for no  
ne other gage I will not take. And  
whan Aimon had said thus: he went  
out of thost into fraunce to his coun-  
tre wel heuy bicause that he lef his  
chyldren in so greave pouerty, & Char-  
lemayne that sawe Aymon goe thus  
quite, and that he hadde garnysed  
Mouncauban of vitaylles: he was  
full angrie for it. So studyed he vpon  
this a longe whyle. And whan he  
had studyed longe prouche: he was  
so soze that none myght be more soze-  
er, and returned hym selfe towarde  
hys Barons, and sayde Lordes I  
commaund you that ye bzeake al our  
engynes. For by theym I haue mys-  
sed to haue the castell of Mouncau-  
ban. And incontinence the Barons  
made bzeake the engines as the king  
had



had commaunded. And by all thus Reinald abode a long while in good peace, but their vittailles began soze to mynyshe. And whan Reinald sawe that he was soze, and began to complayne in himselfe, & saide good lord what shal I doo: I knowe that at longe tennynge we shal not now holde, and so shal Charlemain haue no mercye of vs, but he shal make vs die. Alas Hawgis where be you: for if ye were with vs we shoulde doubte nothinge nor I shoulde not suffre this great distres that I haue. All thus as Reinald complained hymselfe: than came Alard that was so feble that with payne he myghte stonde vpon his fette, and sayde to Reynald. Reinald for the loue of god make bayarde to be slayne. for I may no lenger lyue without meate, nother yet my betherne.

**W**han whan Reynald heard his brother Alard speke th<sup>o</sup>: he was ryght soze for it and rooke his sword & went to bayarde for to slea him. And whan bayarde sawe Reynald he began to make greace. Iope, and whan Reynald sawe the chere that bayard him made: he sayd to him. Ha bayarde good beaste, yf I had the herre to doo thee harme I were well cruell. And than ponnet the yonger sonne heard that: he cried vnto his facher, sir wherfore cary ye that ye slea not bayarde sith he must dye, for I were madde for hungre, and so I tell you yf I haue not th<sup>o</sup>ze ly some spode: ye ye shal seme die afoze your eyen, & yet my mochet & my brother also, for we may not lenger

lyue thus so harde we been famished. And whan Reinald hearde bys sonne speake to him so: he had great pite of him, and great soze in his heart, and so he had of bayarde that chered him so muche. Than wiste not Reynald what he shoulde saye nor doo, and so began to thinke alonge while. And whan he had be thoughte him selfe longe ynough: he aduysed him howe Bayarde shoulde not dye. And than he called after a basyn, and made bayarde be lette bloodemuch, and after he had let him bloude ynough: Reynald stopped the bayne and gaue y bloud to Alard for to be dressed. And whan it was soden they ate all alytell therof, whyche gaue them great sustenaunce. And to save the trouch: Reinald and his folke were well foure dayes without any other foode. And whan it came to the v. day that they wolde haue had bayard let bloud againe: he was so feble that he caste no bloude at all. And whan the duchesse sawe that she began to weep tenderly and sayde. Sir for god sith that he giuerh no more blood let him be slayne, and so shal eate your pooze children of him that dyen for great hungre, & I also. Adame saide thanne Reinald I wyl not doo so. for bayard hath boyn vs good companie in oure lifes and so shal he doo till the houre of our derth for we shal dye all togpyber. And ye ought to knowe that Reinald and his company were brought so lowe that they waited none other but derth the whiche was them nigh ynough. Than an olde man that was amog them came and sayde to Reynald  
vp

**S**ay: what shal it be? I see that you a Mountauban shalbe destroyed, but in you is not the fault, for it hath be well defended as longe as ye might as it appeereth, and sith that I see ye mai no more doo: come after me and I shal the w pou away, where thoughe we shal well all goe out wyth out any daunger, and I wll well that ye knowe Mountauban was once made and hytte, afoze ye dyd make it, and the Lorde that buylded it first: let make a wape vnder the erth that bringeth folke to the wood of p serpent, & I was a yonge childe whan that way was made, & I know well where it lieth, doo digge where I shal thew: you: and ye shal finde it without any fayle, and thus shal we go free wout any daunger. Whā Reynawde heard these wordes: he was so glad of it that none might be moze, so that he forgot his hungre with all and sayde. O saye God p all made, blessed be you. Now haue I founde that I desyred, for I shal goe to Ardeyne whiche I ought to loue deere. And thā he tooke the olde man by the hande and made him to bringe him to the place where he said and there he made to be digged in the erth and founde the way that p olde man sayd, wherof he was right glad and than he wente to the stable and put the saddle vpon Bayarde and after brought him to the way, but wit it that Bayarde was so feble that he scante coulde go the palse, and thā Reynawde, hys wyfe, hys byethern, hys chyldren and the remenaunte of hys folke put theym selfe to the way vnder the cithe, so that no crea

ture a lyue abode within the castell.

**O** great plentie of torches Reynawde made to be fyrd p thei might see the better within the caue as they wente, and he ordeyned hys forwarde of that fewe folke that he had, and wente forth in good orde: naunce with his baner displayed, & he with his byethern made the rere garde. And whan they had gone a longe whyle throughe the Caue that was wyde & large: Reynawde made his folke to tary and layd to hys byethern, my byethern wec haue doone euill. for we haue leste behinde vs kynge Pon in the pryson, certes I should leue dy: than that I should leue him so, for he should dye there for hungre as a famished wolfe, & that were to vs great synne. By god sayd Richard he hath well deserued it, for of a man p is a traytour: men ought not to haue pittie, brother sayd Reynawde ye say yll. And than he returned agayne & came to the pryson where the king Pon was, whiche he tooke out & brought with him. And whā the duchesse sawe her brother p kynge Pon come: she sayde to hym. Ha my brother ye are right yll come to me: for al the harme that we haue suffred: cometh thozoughe cause of you. I am soz that ye be not dead & rotten within the pryson, for ye haue well deserued it. Madame sayd Reynawde, let that alone I pray you, for he shal not dye yf I maye. For I haue doone to him homage, wherefore I ought to obey hym, and how be it he hath wrought ful yl agaynst



## The booke of the foure

us: yet shall I neuer be forsworne a-  
gainst him, whā his brethren heard  
him speake thus: they sayde to hym,  
brother ye speake well & wysely, &  
ye doo that ye ought to doo, nor ye  
shall neuer be rebuked of us for it,  
doo therin as it pleaseth you, and af-  
ter these wordes: they went on their  
waye.

**S**o longe went these knightes  
that they came out of þe caue,  
and found themselves at the wood of  
the serpent eyn at the spryng of the  
day, & as soone as they were yssued  
out of the sayd caue they were so sca-  
ped fro Charlemayne: yonnet than  
the lytle sonne of Reynawde swou-  
ned there for great hungre. And whā  
Reynawde sawe that: he was ryght  
fory for it, and tooke him vp and said  
fayre sonne I praye you be a good  
cheere, for we shall haue soone meat  
great plentie. And whan he had said  
this: he tooke his other sonne Armo  
in his armes and recomforted hym  
much. And whan Reynawde had  
doone so: he looked aboute him and  
knew well where they were, and he  
sayd to his brethren. Lordes me se-  
meth that we ben nyghe the hermy-  
tage of my good freende Bernarde,  
for sayd Alarde pec saye trouth, but  
what shall we doo: Brother sayde  
Reynawde. I counsel for þe mooste pro-  
fytable that we go there, and we shal  
abide there tyll the nyght be come, &  
than we shall take our way towarie  
Ardeyne, for I counsel not that wee  
goe bi day, and also it cannot be, but  
the heremite shall haue some meate,  
whiche we shall gyue vnto my wyfe

and vnto my chyldren. Brother said  
Alarde by my faythe ye speake well  
and wysely. And than they put them  
selve to the way, and they had gone  
but a litle: that they founde the heres-  
mitage, but as they went al thozou-  
ghe the wood of the serpent: they de-  
parted the one fro the other as wilde  
beastes eatyng the herbes and gras-  
ses as it had ben apples or peres,  
so great hungre they had. And whan  
that Reynawde saw this: he was so-  
ry and called them agayne and sayd,  
Lordes ye doo not wel for to separe  
thus the one from the other. For it  
might lightly turne vs to domynage  
I pray you that euerye man call o-  
ther and gather your selve together,  
& let vs goe into the hermytage. For  
we shall fynde there Bernarde that  
shall make vs good cheere I wote it  
wel. And whā they were come there:  
Reynawde knocked at þe gate. And  
whan Bernarde hearde it: he came  
anon and saw Reynawde and his  
folke, wherof he was ryght glad, &  
came and kyssed Reynawde. And af-  
ter he sayd vnto him, fayre lord ye  
be ryght welcome, of whens come  
you, and howe is it with you: My  
freende Bernarde sayde than Re-  
ynawde. Wyt it that I haue let myne  
hermytage by fyne force of hungre  
and so I goe vnto Ardeyne. For I  
can none otherwise doo at this time  
And I pray you that yf ye haue any  
meat: that ye for goddes sake wyl-  
lyngue it to my wyfe, and to my chy-  
ldren. For they ben so sore famyshed  
that they dye for hungre, but yf they  
haue some meate.

Whan

**W**han Bernarde vnderstoode these wordes of Reynawde: he had of hym great pite for the distresse wherin he saw Reynawde and his folke. And of the other parte he was glad whan he wyfte that they were scaped out of the daungers of Charlemayne, and anon he wente to the duchesse and sayd to her, madame ye be ryght welcome. I pray you doubt nothing. For ye be aryued in a good place, to take your rest at your ease. And than he wente into the Chamber, and brought out bread and wine and all such as god had sente hym. And after he set hi beside Reynawde and sayd to him Lorde take a worth such vitayles as God hath gyuen to me, there they ben. I shal giue you meate in dispite of Charlemayne. Gramecy sayd Reynawde, heere be good tidinges for vs, but whan the nyght is come: wee shal goe to Ardeyne. For I doubt soze that Charlemayne shal aperceyue that we be departed. For yf God graunt me y I may byngme and myr companie to Ardeyne: I shal not let a roton apple for all the power of Charlemain for I shal well defende me agaynst hym. Spz sayde the hermyte ye saye well. I pray god that he wyll fulfil your wyl. All that daye sojourned Reynawde and his folke wyth Bernarde the Heremite, the wyche serued, and comforted them with al his power, and also he gaue of the Dtes of his ass to Bayarde as muche as he myght eat. And whan the nyght was come: Reynawde wolde depart and bad fete well to the heremite, and whan the heremite sawe that

they wolde goe away: he founde the meanes that they had thre horsys, wherof the duchesse had the one, and the childzen had the other tweyne. And thus Reynawde wyth his fellowship went on theyr way so longe that they came to Ardeyne. And whā they of the Litte wyfte that theyr Lorde was come y they had despyed so long: they were well glad & came agaynst hym in fayre company, and receyued hym honourably, and conueyed him vnto the fortrese, & after they went & made feast thzough all the towne, lyke as god had descēded there, for greate Joye that they had of theyr Lorde Reynawd. And whan the Barons of the lande wyft that theyr Lorde Reynawde and his brethren were come to Ardeyne: they were glad, and came soone to se him, and to hym they made reuerence.

**B**ut heere leaueth the hystorie to speake of Reynawde and of his brethren, his wyfe and his childzen y were in ardeyne wel at ease, for their great hungre was cased, and shal returne to speake of Charlemayne and of his .xii. peeres for to the w holbe he entred into Mountauban after that Reynawde was departed.

**H**ow Charlemayn after y he had besyged Mountauban & had famished Reynawde & his brethren: knew that they were gone, & had habandoned the place, & were gone to Ardeyn. He wote there and besyged them a gayne, but of cuer he had pyght his syge. Reynawd, & his brethren made an issue vpon him & his folke, & slew many of them. And tooke pryncer Rycharde the duke of Normandy.





**I**n this party shewed the histo-  
ry that whan the kynge Char-  
lemaine was at y<sup>e</sup> siege before Mou-  
ntawban soze an angered y<sup>e</sup> he coude  
nor take Reinawd nor his brethern.  
Now it happed vpon a day y<sup>e</sup> Char-  
lemayne rode nighe the Castell for  
to wyt how they bare them self with  
in Mowntawban, And whan he was  
nigh: he looked vp to the walles and  
saw no body that was there, as thei  
were wonte for to be. And whan  
he saw that: he was abasshed of it, &  
came to the paullyon, and sente In-  
continent for all hys barons. And  
whan thei were come: he sayd to the  
Lordses it is wel nyghe eyght dayes  
age, y<sup>e</sup> I saw no body vpon the wal-  
les of Mowntawban, wherefore  
I beleue that all thei of it be dead.

Soz sayde the Duke Maymes, it  
were good that men wyl the trou-  
the of it: sende thether soz if it please  
you. whan Carlemayne heard  
thys: he lyghted anon on horsbacke  
and all hys Barons wyl hym, &  
went to Mowntawban. And whan  
they were come vnto the gate: they  
made semblaunte to giue a salu to  
the Castell, but Reynawde was to  
ferre for to defode it. And than Char-  
lemayne wende verelye that Rey-  
nawde and all hys had ben dead for  
hungre & great distresse, he made to  
be brought thether a longe ladder  
and righted it to the walles. And in-  
continent Rowlaude mounted vp  
fyrst of all, and after him Ogger, O-  
liuer, and the Duke Maymes. And  
whan they were vpon y<sup>e</sup> walles: thei

behelde with in, and they saw nother man nor woman, and so they wente downe from the walles, and yede & opened the gate, and made Charle- mayne to come in and all his folke. But wote it that Charlemayne wet in as angry as any man myght bee. And whan he was within & founde no body: he was so sore merueyled that he wylt not what he should say nor doo. So wente he vp to the dun- geon and he founde there no bodye, wherof he was moze meruayled thā he was afore, and than he began to say. Vp my soule Lordes heere is great meruayles and wel the deup- les werke. Wote it that Reynawde is gone and all hys brethren, and all hys folke also. And all this hath doon that theef Hawgys that hath ben here within, for it can none other wyse be.

**A**fter that Charlemayne had sayd these wordes: he began to walke within the Castell sekynge all aboute to see yf he might finde Reynawde or any of his brethren. And so longe he wente thus heere & there that he founde the waye there as they went out, & whan the kynge Charlemayne saw the caue: he was sore abasshed with it and called Og- gret the dane & sayd to him. Ogret heere is the way where thorough y traytours are gone a waye, and all this hath doone me Hawgis. For he hath made this caue in dyspite of me wherof he maketh my hert to bryke in my bely. Syr sayd the duke Ray- mes, ye blame Hawgys, but this Caue sheweth not that it had be vn-

made this hundred yeres passed, and I tell you for certayne that Saralins made it firste. Whan Charlemayne hearde these wordes: he beganne to smile with an angri face, and cursed them that made the Caue, and was metua: lousli an angred, for he knew well that Reynawde and all his co- pany were gone out at the same hole and so he was dysmyssed of his pur- pose, he sayd then to his folke. Now goe lightly in, & see where this hole bringeth men vnto, for I shal not be at mine ease tyl I know it. And whā Rowland vnderstode Charlemain: he put hym selfe wythin the Caue, and made lycht a great many of toz- ches for to see in it, and after Row- lande went plentic of frenche men that folowd hym, and they went so longe til they came at the ende of the caue, & founde themselves in the woods of the Serpente. And whan Row- lande was come out of the caue: he looked aboute for to knowe where they were but he coude not hymself know it, & than he sayd to his folke, Lordes me semeth that for to goe a- ny farther for to seke after Reynawd it were but foly: for he knoweth wel the countrey and we wot not where to goe. Syr sayd his felawes ye say wel, therfore let vs retorne to Char- lemayne pour vncle for to tell hym what we haue founde wythin this Caue.

**W**han Rowlande and his felo- wes were accorded: they re- turned that waye that they were come. And whan the kynge sawe them come out agayne: he asked of  
3.iii. them



The booke of the foure

them what they had founde, and yf they had found any pſſur to goe out of the Caue. Syr ſayde Rowland yea without anye fayle. Wit that Reynawde and his folke are ſcaped you and they haue ſayarde with them for heere ye may ſee the path. And whan the king Charlemayne knew the trowth how Reynawde and hys cōpany were gone: he was ſo greatly an angred y none might be moze, and the ſame houre he ſent his meſſangers in all his landes and countreis for to wit yf he might vnderſtande any tidinges where Reynawd and his bzethern were become. And whan he had doone thys: he cōmaunded that his hoſte ſhould dyſlodge, & that they ſhould come all to Mountawban. And whan y barons heard the king: they did his commaundement, and came al to Mountawban & lodged them as wel as they could, & abode wel there ſix dayes making great Joye that Reynawde and hys bzetherne were thus expelled out of it. And as the barons were deuiling wythin Mountawban there came a meſſanger tofoze Charlemayne, and ſalued him as to him apperteyned, and to him he ſaid in this wiſe. Sir Wyt it that I haue ſeene Reynawde Alarde, Gutcharde, and Richarde le dyngge great ioye with great company of knightes, keeping a great court within the cite of Ardeyne, where as Reynawde gyueth great gyftes to every one. And I am ſoze merueyled where he hath gotten ſo greate treaſur. And alſo is there with him the kyng yon of gascorgne and that moze is I tell you for certayne that

Reynawde hath made a great aſſe: ble of folke for to defend hym againſt you if ye go in any wiſe for to aſſaile hym.

**T**he king was muche angry whā he heard his meſſangers ſo ſware he by ſaynt denis he ſhould neuer lye in no bed tyll he had beſe: ged Ardeyne. And whan he ſayd ſo: he commaunded to his barons that euer y mā ſhould truſſe his baggage and they ſhould take on theyr waye ſtreight to Ardeyne. And whan the barons heard Charlemayne ſpeake ſo: they tooke on theyr way without any moze tarynge towarde Ardein and rode ſo longe tyll that they came to mountarg weil, y was not ferre from Ardeyne, for men might ſee from thens the ſteples of the towne. There was lodged the hoſte of charlemayne that nyght, and I promiſe he did doo make good watche, for doubt of the foure ſonnes of Iymon. And whā the day was come Charlemayne did ſet his folke in good orde: nance, & with his baner dyſplayed they rode to warde Ardeyne. And whan Reynawde wytt that Charlemayne was come for to beſiege them within Ardeyn: he began to ſwere y he ſhould not let him beſieged as he had doone within Mountawban. For rather he wolde fight w Charlemayne. And if it may ſo falle that he come in his handes: he ſhall not haue pitie of him as he had tofoze tyme becauſe he had founde him ſo cruell and without pitie. Brother ſayde then Rycharde now I ſee you ſpeake like a knight, and by y ſayth that

that I owe vnto you I promise you  
þat I ouer Charlemaigne shall besiege  
vs: I shall leaue more than an hundred  
of his folke, and but yf god saye vs  
we shall doo suche a thing that shall  
be to the great hurte & dyspleasure  
of hym, wherof he shall be sorowful all the  
dayes of his life. For he is not man-  
nered like a gentilman. For the more  
that he is prayed the lesse he dooth.  
Brother sayd Alarde ye speake wel  
and honestlye. And I shall con-  
tynue youe for it as longe as I lyue.

**Y**E ought to wote þat whan Rey-  
narde saw Charlemaigne com-  
ing to besyge him with a grete pu-  
issaunce of folke, he was nothing a-  
bashyd with it, but he made inconty-  
nēt Bondy his good hōne to be blo-  
wen, and made his folke to be cry-  
ed redely that were in grete num-  
bre and made them ysue out of the  
Cite. And whan his army was as-  
sembled in the feeldes: it was a noble  
thyng to see, and than he ordeyned  
hys batayles bi good ordynance  
as a wise fighter. And after he had  
doone so: he called his brethren and  
sayde to them. My fayre brethren  
this daye is the day that we shall die  
or els doo so muche that we shall  
brynge the warre at an ende. Where-  
fore I praye you þat euery of ys shewe  
hym selfe a good knight, for in you  
is all my truste, and so I promise  
you that I haue leuer diworthely in  
batayle, than for to be hanged shame-  
fully as thesē my brethren I praye  
you come all nyghe me. For I wyll  
that we ben the fyrst that smite vpon

our enemies. Brother sayde Alarde  
we shall doo your commaundement  
doubt ye not of it, and go forth whā  
ye wyll, and whā they were so agreed  
Reynarde did choose an hundred of  
the best knyghtes of his felawshyp,  
and sayde to them. Synce I praye  
you that ye wyll be wyth me in the  
fyrst batayle, and ye shall doo me  
great honoure. Synce sayde the knygh-  
tes, we shall gladlye doo your com-  
maundement, and we shall not leue  
you as longe as life is in vs, and so  
we thanke you of the great worthyp-  
that ye doo call vs in your company  
for ye knowe well that we canne  
not fare amys as longe as we be  
wyth you.

**W**han Reynarde had ordeyned  
wel hys batayles  
he made none other tary-  
enge, but wente the foremost of all, &  
sheld at the necke, and the spere in  
the fist & was mounted vpon Bay-  
arde, that beheld proudly about him  
makynge grete noyse. And then  
Reynarde gaue him the spurre, and  
went fayre vpon the folke of the  
kyng Charlemaigne, and whan  
Charlemaigne saw Bayarde com-  
ynge that made so great bruyte, and  
Reynarde vpon his backe þat cam in  
so fayre ordynance: he was sore a-  
bashyd of it, and sayd in him self. O  
good Lorde, and where the Deuyl  
haue all redy had the foure sonnes  
of Aymon so many folke as I se here  
now come with them. I beleue that  
it is some deuyls werke, for I had  
not



## The booke of the four

not left many with them late a goe. And now Reynawde is so puppsaut that he feareth me nothyng. But I promise god all this shal not auayle hym nothyng, but I shal doo iustice vpon him and his brethern or ought longe. And than he made his bataille to set in ordenaunce in the best wyse that he coude, and lighted on horse backe for to come fyght wryth Reynawde. And whan the Duke Raymes saw that Charlemayn was so mad þ he wolde goe fight wryth Reynawde: he went to hym & sayde spy, what is that ye will doo? I promyse you it were greates folpe for to fight wryth these folke, & it were better that ye made peace wryth Reynawde. For I am sure that Reynawde shal doo all þ ye wil comaunde him, and I tell you wel þ if we fight wryth the: that ye shal see manye knyghtes to trayle theyr howelles thorowgh the feelde, wherof it shal be great harme to the one party, and to the other. And suche shal þ losse be that it shal not be recouered agayne. Raymes sayd the kyng Charlemayne let vs alone, for I shal doo none other wise for no man that liueth, I shoulde rather let me to be dismembred. And whan the duke Raymes had vnderstande his wordes: he was ful sozpy of it and left his speaking therof, & from that houre Charlemayne delybered hymselfe for to fyght, and alwayes he rode forth in great wryth.

**A**d whan Reynawde sawe that the two hostes were approached soze nigh the one the other, as to hande and hade: he sayd to his

brother Rycharde that was next him, I wil go speake with the kyng Charlemayne for to wyte of hym yf he wil pardon any take vs vnto hys grace for yf he wolde doo so: I shoulde wrentierly all his wil and pleasure as to our souerayne lord. Wy godbrother sayd then Rycharde, yet be not wrythe a botell of hery, for the herte is all reop fayled in your bely. Goe forth mischaunt sayd then Reynawde thou wot not what thou sayest. For I wyll go there no man shal keep me therfro, & if he refusethe the peace whan I shall ax it of hym: I shall make myne auowe to God that I shall neuermore require him therof. Brother sayd Marde ye say wel and wisely, go there hardly and doo there in your wyll. And than Reynawde made none other delapynge, but he smote Bayarde wryth the spures, and went incontinent towarde the kyng Charlemayne, & sayd than to hym. Spy for gods mercy suffice it if be your pleasure that we haue peace and accorded with you, þ this warre that hath lasted so longe maye: finishe, and that your wryth be put awas from vs if it please you, and I shall be redy to doo all that ye wyll, and also I shall gyue you Bayarde my good horse. Than sayd the kyng to hym, goe fro me false gloton, the deuyll speed thee, for al the worlde shal not conne keep thee but I shall slea thee. Spy sayd Reynawde ye shal not doo so, and god wyll, for I shall defend me well. And wit it sith that it is com to this: ye shal not be spared of vs, but we shal doo the worste þ we can. Summe knyghtes sayde the kyng

Kynge Charlemaine, I shall neuer prayse you if this euil glotton scape me now. And whā that Reynawde sawe thys: he sayde. Syr kinge of fraunce I desie you, and forthwith he spurred Batairde, and ranne with his spere vpon a knight, whiche he smote so harde in the brest that he ouerthrew hym dead vnto the erthe. And after that he went agayne vnto his folke. And whan that the kinge Charlemayn sawe this: he cried wā hys voyce smite knyghtes now shall they ben discomfyted.

**U**han whan Rowland hearde the kynge Charlemayne crye thus: he spurred his horse and went after Reynawde, & also many other knyghtes, but they ouerooke hym not. Whā Rycharde saw his brother come: he came hym agaynst & sayde to him. Brother what tidinges bring you: shal wee haue peace or warre? Brother sayd Reynawde let vs doo the best that wee can doo, for peace we shal not haue. Brother sayd then Rycharde god blesse you for the tidinges that ye bring, for I thynke to doo this day suche a thyng, wherof king Charlemayne shalbe angry. Brother said Reynawde I pray you that ye shewe yourselfe vertuous & stronge agaynst our enemyes. Whan the king Charlemayne sawe that it was time to set vpon him he called hastily the duke Raymes and sayde to hym. Raymes holde my Oriflam and thynke for to smite wel and valiantly as a worthy knight ought for to doo at eyther hande in keeping my worship, and herof I praye you

hertely. Syr sayd the duke Raymes ye need not for to pray me, for I am bounde for to doo the same, but it grieueth me that ye haue not done other wise, that is for to sai that ye should haue graunted to the peace, for the warre hath lasted to longe. Raymes I commaunde you that ye speake no more therof vnto me, for while I liue they shall haue no peace with me.

Syr sayd the Duke Raymes I am sorry for it. Now let see what ye shall doo, for I goe to batayle fyrst of all, and looke that ye folow me if ye will for I shall put me in suche a place wherof ye shalbe sore meruayled, & not without a cause, for there nys no man so colde, but he should soone get hete there within a litle whyle, now folow that wyll.

**A**nd whan Reynawde saw þe Oriflam of fraunce come: he broched Batairde with the spures, and ranne amonge the thickest, and smote a knyght so harde that he cast hym downe vnto the erth. And after he turned him to ward his folk & chered the honestly, & than wente agayne vpon his enemyes, and of then he ouerthrew foure one after an other, and vpon the fyft he brake his spere into two peces, and hurted hym right sore, and anon he set hande to flamberge his good swerde and smote a knyght withall vpon his helme so great stroke that he cleued him vnto the harde reth, and forthwith he smote another with suche strength that he made flee þe head from the body of hym. And after þe he had doone thesetwo strokes: he cryed



## The booke of the foure

ized Ardeyn as hye as he could for  
 to reloyse his folke, and whā he had  
 cryed so: he sayd to them. Now vpo  
 them good knightes, for this day we  
 shal auenge the great shame þ̄ Char  
 lemayne hath doone to vs so longe  
 wythout any reason. And whan A  
 larde, Guycharde & Rycharde heard  
 Reynawde speake thus: they ranne  
 vpon theyr enemies by suche a ma  
 ner that eache of the ouerthrew. vii.  
 knightes at þ̄ enprynte, who that  
 had be there than he should haue sene  
 great faytes of armes doone of the  
 foure sonnes of Armon, for after þ̄  
 they were ones assembled together:  
 the folke of the kinge Charlemayne  
 myght not endure afore them. For  
 Reynawde and hys brethren wente  
 smytynge at eyther hande, and felled  
 theyr enemies downe sterke dead as  
 beastes, so that the moste part of the  
 were slayne or dyscomfited.

**W**han the kyng Charlemaine  
 sawe the great domnage that  
 the foure sonnes of Armon bare to  
 him: he was right soze an angered for  
 it. And wyth great wrathe he wente  
 and ranne vpon the folke of Rey  
 nawde and smote a knyght so venge  
 ably that he cast hym downe dead to  
 the erth, and brake his speare all in  
 peeces. And after he rooke his sword  
 in his hande, whetof he did merua  
 les of armes, so muche that his folk  
 praysed hym for it, for he bare hym  
 selfe there valpant and stronge. And  
 wot that this meruaylous batayle  
 was so cruell that it was great py  
 tic for to see. ¶ It is trouthe þ̄ Row  
 land was aserde for his vncle char

lemayne that he should be ouerthre  
 we whā he saw him in þ̄ p̄se, wher  
 fore he went anon nyghe him, and so  
 dyd Oliuer, Ogger and all the .xii.  
 peeres for to keep þ̄ he should haue  
 no harinc. And whan the great ba  
 tayles were assēbled the one against  
 the other: ye should haue seen there a  
 sharpe and a heauy batayle so that it  
 was pitie for to see, for syth þ̄ Row  
 lande, Oliuer and all the .xii. peeres  
 of Fraunce were come in the medle:  
 they began to make so great slaugh  
 ter of the folke of Reynawde þ̄ they  
 made them leaue the place. And whā  
 Reynawde and his brethren saw þ̄:  
 they medled them so sharply among  
 the frenche men þ̄ euery man made  
 them waye, for they raught no man  
 but they threw hym dead to the erth  
 so muche that there was nothyng  
 but it trembled afore them, ye ou  
 ght to wot that from the houre of  
 p̄yme vnto the houre of noone en  
 dured this mortall batayle, that no  
 ne wot who should haue the better  
 of it. But whan noone was passed:  
 the folke of Reynawde beganne to  
 wythdrawe themselfe, for they mi  
 ght no more. And for to save the  
 trouthe yf the folke of Reynawde  
 drew them: they were not to be bla  
 med for it, for Charlemayne had  
 foure tymes moe folke than Rey  
 nawde beside þ̄ .xii. peeres that were  
 suche knightes as men wel knewe.  
 But this that the folke of Reynawd  
 dyd: was for the good ensample that  
 they sawe in Reynawde & in his bre  
 thern. And whan the noble knyght  
 perceyued that hys folke withdrew  
 themselfe: he came to hym that bare  
 his

his standard and sayde to hym. My freende ride towarde Ardeine in the worst wyse that ye can, for this day we haue fought wght sore, and it is tyme that we goe rest ourselve. Syr sayde the knyght I shall well doo your commaundement, and incontynent he tooke his way to warde Ardeyn. And than Reynawde called his brethren and sayde to them, let vs be behinde for to keep our folke, for other wyse we are lost. Brother sayde Rycharde doubt not, for as longe as god giueth lyfe to you & to Bayard: we need not feare nothyng.

**W**han Charlemayne saw that Reynawde and all his company was gone: he cryed wyth a hye voyce, now we after Lozdes after for now ben they dyscomfyted. But this worde of Charlemayne was cause that many a worthy knyght lost his lyfe. For such dyd folow after Reynawde that payed deedly for it. For Reynawde and his brethren slewe more than an hundred that folowed after them. And wolde Charlemain or no. Reynawde and his brethren entred agayne with their folke with in Ardeyne. And ye muste knowe þat Rycharde the brother of Reynawde: Justed with Rycharde the Duke of Normandy by the gate of Ardeyne as they wolde haue entred in. And there the Duke was overthowen, the whiche was taken prysoner by Rycharde the brother of Reynawde, and brought him into the Citie mawgre the folke of Charlemayne. And whan Reynawde and all the folke were within Ardeyne: he made the

gates to be shet. And after went, and dysarmed the for to take some ease. For they had well need thereof.

**Y**e ought to wit þat whan Charlemayne saw that the four sonnes of Aymon had saued them self, and that they had taken Rycharde the Duke of Normandy prysoner that was one of the .xii. peeres: he was so angrye that no man can be more, for he feared sore lest Reynawde should make to dye Rycharde of Normandy, and whan he sawe that he might doo none other: he commaunded that the Citie should be besieged of all sydes, the which thing was incontynent doone as he commaunded. And than swaie Charlemayne that he should neuer leaue his syege vnto the tyme that he had taken the Citie and the four sonnes of Aymon to be hanged shamefully. Syr sayd Rowlande ye know that I am he þat moste hath hurted the four sonnes of Aymon, nor neuer I speake to you of peace betwene you and them, but fro hence forth reason comaundeth me þat I should speke & moue there vnto. Syr ye know well that it is a go. xx. yeres and more that ye haue warred with the four sonnes of Aymon, & we had alwaies þat worse of the warre and not wythout a cause, for Reynawde & his brethren are valiant knightes, nor they be not to be lightly brought to dyscomfiture. And I promyse you yf ye had warred so long vpon the Saracyns as ye haue doone on the four sonnes of Aymon: ye should haue be lord of þat moste part of them, whiche had be to you more  
Woz:



## The booke of the foure

Worshipp and lesse domage, & worse  
 is: ye know howe Richard of Noz-  
 mandy one of the best knightes that  
 ye had: is taken, and yf other wise it  
 happeneth to hym than well: it shall be  
 to you great dyshonour and blame.  
 For therof ye shall see all fraunce in  
 a roze and trouble, but if ye put som  
 remedy thereto, & I tell you if I were  
 in the case that Reynawde is in: I  
 should slea hym. Syth that I might  
 haue no peace wyth you. Wherefore  
 syz yf ye wyll beleue me for your ho-  
 nour and for your profit: ye shal sed  
 worde to Reynawde that he deliuer  
 you agayne Rycharde of Nozman-  
 dye all armed vpon his horse, and ye  
 shall make peace wyth hym, and I  
 promyse you syz he shall doo it glad-  
 ly wyth all that ye wyll commaunde  
 hym and so shall all hys brethren al-  
 so. Rowland sayd than the king, wil  
 ye say any thing more. Nay syz sayd  
 Rowland. And I sweare you vpon  
 my fayth that the foure sonnes of  
 Armon shall neuer haue peace with  
 me, and so I tel you yf I feare me not  
 for Rycharde of Nozmandy, for Rey-  
 nawde should rather put out bothe  
 his owne eyes than that he durst doo  
 to Rycharde any harme vpon his bo-  
 dy. And whan þe barons heard Char-  
 lemayne speake so: the teares began  
 to fal downe fro theye eyes for great  
 feare that Rycharde of Nozmandye  
 theye Deere should haue any harme.  
 After all these thynges Reynawde  
 and his brethren were wythin Ar-  
 deyne making great Joy. And after  
 they were all out of theye harneys:  
 Reynawde ordeyned good watche  
 vpon the walles of the Citie. And

than he made come the duke Richar-  
 de of Nozmandy afoze hym, & sayde  
 to him in thys maner. Duke richard  
 ye know wel that the king & th great  
 wronge for to trouble vs so as he  
 hath doone, and yet dooth withoute  
 any resonable cause. And therfore I  
 tell you for certayne, but yf that ye  
 make vs to haue peace: thinke not  
 to lyue onye longer, for I shall doo  
 smyte of your head and your body to  
 be hewed in foure quarters. Sir said  
 the duke Rycharde of Nozmandye, I  
 am in your daunger, so maye ye doo  
 of me your pleasure. Ye haue taken  
 me by warre, and none other wyse: yf  
 ye doo to me other wyse than ye ou-  
 ght of ryght of warre, ye shall haue  
 dyshonour for euer more. And so I  
 wyll wel that ye know that as long  
 as I liue: I shall not sayle Charle-  
 mayne for no feare of death. Whan  
 Reynawde hearde Rycharde of Noz-  
 mandye speake thus: he refrayned  
 a lytle his wrathe, and than he com-  
 maunded yf he should be put in prons  
 within his chabres, and yf he should  
 be well kept and curteysly, and that  
 he be well serued of that appertey-  
 neth to hys estate. Than was the  
 Duke Rycharde all thus in prison:  
 but he was well serued of all good  
 meates, and he had good companye  
 for to playe to what game that he  
 wolde. And also the good Duchesse  
 elare dyd visite him often, and reco-  
 forted hym with her fayre langage.

**W**han Charlemaine had bese-  
 ged the Citie rounde aboute  
 and sawe that by no sawyng, he  
 myght not get it: he dyd doo make  
 mani

many great engynes for to cast stones in, but what somcuer þ he dyd: Reynawde and his brethren and also his folke pssued out often, as well by nyght as by day vpon the folke of the king Charlemayne, and did him great domage, for Reynawde tooke no man but he kept him prisoner, for to see yf he myght haue peace wyth Charlemayne, by meanes of them.

And whyle that Charlemayne had layde his siege thus afoze Ardeyne: the king þon of gascopgne fell like a bed of a great sickenes, & shroto hym of al his synnes praying god to haue pitie and mercy on hym, and after he had be longe speke he died. God pardon his soule. And wyth that Reynawde made hym be turped wofully, as to a kinge perteyneth, but there was no man that wept for hym, for all they of the Citie hated

hym, bycause of the greute treason þ he had doone to the foure sonnes of Aymon. ¶ Now leueth the hystorie to speake of this mater, & retuerneth to speake of Walgys that was in his hermitage þ serued our lozde w good herte, so muche that he had forgotten Reynawde, his brethren & his freendes.

¶ How Walgys he beyng in his hermytage, came in hym a wyll by a byspon þ he had by nyght in a slepe for to go see Reynawde & his brethren And how he met with two marchautes that. vii. theues had robbed in a wood, of whiche theues the sayde Walgys slew fyue, & deliuered to the Marchautes all theyr good agayne. And after this he went to Ardeyne for to see Reynawde, and his brethren.



**N**ow sheweth the hystory that whan Walgys was in his hermitage, & had watched so longe about his prayers to God: he fell a

sleepe, and him semed in his slepe that he was at Mountaiban and sawe Reynawde and his brethren þ came agaynst him, and made theyr complaynt



## The booke of the four

playnt to hym of Charlemayne that wolde take fro them the good hofse Bayarde, but Reynalde had hym fast by the bydle, and wolde not let it goe. And wit it that Hawgys had so great sorow in his dreame: that he awoke with all al wrothe, and arose on his feete incontinent. And than he swate our Lorde he should neuer cease to goe till he had seen Reynalde and hys brethren his good cōsyns. And whan Hawgys had said so: he made none other taryng, but he shet the doore of hys chapell, and tooke his weede and hys staffe, and went on his waye also soone as he myght. And about y<sup>e</sup> houre of noone he founde hymselfe in a great wood where he founde two men makynge euill chere and great sorow, & whā Hawgys sawe them: he cam to the and sayde: God be with you. And one of them answered and sayd, certes god is not with vs: but rather the deuyll, for vnhappy was that houre y<sup>e</sup> euer we came into this wood, for we ben vndoone for euer. Good Syr sayde Hawgys what cyleth you y<sup>e</sup> ye speake so. Good man sayd y<sup>e</sup> one of the two, a litle before you, are theues y<sup>e</sup> hath robbed vs of our clothe and haue slayne one of our felawes because he speake to them angrely. Whan Hawgys heard these pooze marchauntes speake thus: he had great pitie of them and sayd to them. My freendes come with me, I shal pray the theues in our Lordes behalfe y<sup>e</sup> they wyll deliuer you agayne your goodes, and yf they will not doo it: I shal be wrothe with the, & so I shal

fight with the wel as I can with my staffe for to wit yf they beades ben soft or harde. whan the marchauntes hearde Hawgys say so: they began to looke vpon hym if they could know him, but they might not knowe what he was. Then spake to hym one of the in this maner, and what deuyll is that ye say: thou art but a man alone all naked and they ben all armed and also ye can scantlye heaue vp your staffe. Let this foole alone sayd that other, see ye not howe his eyes goe in his head: And than they sayd to Hawgys. Brother go thy wayes and let vs in peace, or els I shal giue thee suche a stroke with this same staffe y<sup>e</sup> thou shalt feele it well. And whan Hawgys sawe the marchaunt speake thus to him: he sayde. Brother thou dooste not wel to speake to me so, for by force thou cannot get ought of me. And thus departed Hawgys from the marchauntes, & went hys way so muche y<sup>e</sup> he ouertooke y<sup>e</sup> theues and sayd to them. Lordes God saue you. I pray you tell me whye ye take away y<sup>e</sup> goodes from these marchauntes: ye know well y<sup>e</sup> it is not yours, wherfore I pray you let the haue agayne they goodes and their marchaundise, & god shall comen you thanke. Whan y<sup>e</sup> theues heard mawgis speake to them thus: they were angry for it. And behelde vpon mawgis from ouer the shoulter as he had be a Saracen. Thenne spake the Mayster of the Theues and sayde th<sup>e</sup> to Hawgys. So away hofselon or els I shal giue thee suche a stroke with my foot that I shal brest the

the hert within thy bely. And whan Hawgis heard this and knew that the theues feared nother god nor hyz mother: he was ryght an angred, & heued vp his palmers staffe & smote the mayster theefe with al vpon his head so stronglye that he caste hym do wne dead to the grounde. And whā the other theues saw their mayster dead: they ranne all to Hawgys to haue killed hym, but Hawgys arrested them so with his staffe that he slew fure of them within a litle while and than the other tweyne began to flee away through the wood. And whan Hawgys saw that they forsooke the place: he folowed them not but cryed vpon them. Ha false theues turne agayn for to deliuer your thefte where ye tooke it. And whan the Marchauntes hearde Hawgys crye thus: they came incontinent towarde hym, and they found that the theues that had robbed them were dead. And than they sayd the one to the other, here is a good Pilgrym. I wene it is my lordes saynt Martin

**A**nd whan the marchauntes saw this that Hawgys had doone: they were right glad of it. So came they towarde Hawgys and kneeled before hym and cryed mercie of that they had said to him. Lordes sayd Hawgys yf ye gaue me greete wordes: so dyd the theues muche more. For they called me rybaude, truant and hozelou, but they haue bought it right deere as ye may see. & I am right soze that t wo of them are scraped from me. Stande vp thā & take with you your goodes agayn

and god be with you, but I pray you cell me oze ye go yf ye wot not, where is Charlemaigne. Swy sayd the marchauntes, we wot wel that Charlemaigne hath taken Mountauban, but we promyse you he hath not yet taken none of the foure sonnes of Aymon: for they were gone out w their folke through a caue vnder the erth, that they found vnder the walles of the Castel vnto the Citie of Ardeyn where as they ben now. And Charlemaigne hath layde there his syege afoze them, & will not make no peace with Reynawde nor with his brethern. Lettes sayd Hawgys I am soze for the, for they ben good knyghtes and true. Whan Hawgis vnderstoode that Charlemaigne had besyged Reynawde within Ardeyn: he comended the marchauntes to God & tooke his way towarde Ardeyn, and so muche he went that he came into the hoste of Charlemaigne, and went streyght towarde the Citie, & made semblant to be soze feble, for he wete lenynge vpon his staffe. And whan the folke of the kynge Charlemaigne sawe Hawgys goe thus: they looked soze vpo him and sayd thone to the other, that pilgrim is lyke for to goe ferte, he cannot stande vpon his feete. By my othe sayd another it might well be Hawgis that is so dysgysed, for to dysceyne us. It is not so said y other. Hawgis is not alyne. And while y thei deuised thus together: Hawgys came neere to y wicket of the gate, and founde the meanes that he gat in anon. And whan he was within Ardeyn he wete vnto the Palays, where he founde



## The booke of the foure

Reynawde and the duchesse his wife and bothe theyr childzen Armonet and Ponnet, and their vncles his cousins, w a great meny of noble knyghtes that were all at theyr meate. Whan Hawgis had looked a while vpon them, he leued agaynst a pillar that was in the middes of the halle afore Reynawde. Than began he to looke agayne vpon his fayre colyns y he loued so muche aboue all thinge of the worlde. And whan the Marshall of the halle saw Hawgys, warning to him y it had be a poore heremite: he commaunded that he should be serued of his dimer for Goddes sake. And whan Hawgis sawe the meat that was brought him, he said my lordes I beseeche you for the loue of God that it wil please you for to bringe me some browne bread and water in a trene dissh, and thus I shalbe serued as vnto me apperteyneth. For I dare not take none other meat. And whan y steward of Reynawde saw that, he made him anon to be brought al that he wolde haue. Than tooke Hawgys the browne bread and made coppes in water, & eate of it with a good appetite. And whan y Reynawde sawe thys poore man afore him that liued so poorely and was so lene and so pale: he had of him great pitie. So tooke he a dissh that was before him that was full of venyson, and sent it to hym bi a squier of his that presented it to hym sayinge thus, holde good man the duke sendeth you this, god yelde him sayd Hawgys, and than he tooke and set the dissh afore hym, but he eat nothing of it. And whan Rey-

naude sawe that: he was greatly meruailed, & said to hi self, god who is that good man that liueth so hard a life, if he were not so lene: I should say that it were my good cosyn mawgys, but a nother thing sheweth me that it is not he. For he wolde not hyde hymselfe from me in no wyse.

**R**eynawde behelde stil Hawgys so muche that he left his mere for to looke vpon him. And whan the tables were taken vp, & that euery man had eaten at his ease: they went to their warde for to defende the towne as they were wonte for to doo, in theyr hartys. And whan Reynawde sawe that euery man was gone, and that there was no body in the halle for whome he wolde leue for to say hys will: he went to mawgys and sayd to hym, good heremite I pray you for the reuerence of that God that ye serue that ye tell me yf ye be Hawgys or no, for ye are well lyke him. Whan Hawgys heard Reynawd speake thus to hym: he could hide himselfe no longer, and sayd al on hye. Cosyn I am Hawgys wythout doubt. I am com to see you and I am glad that I see you and also al your brethren in good plight. And whan Reynawde vnderstoode y it was his cosyn y he loued moste of all the men in the worlde, & that had kept him diuise times from peccill and daunger, he had not ben so glad yf men had gyuen him the halfe of al the worlde. So wente he and kissed him more than a hundred tymes, and after he said to him in this maner

maner. fayne colyn I pray you that ye wyl doo of this cope that ye were vpon you. for my eyen cannot see you thus poozely arayed. Than answered Watogis to hym and sayde, My colyn be not displeased of that I shal tel you, ye must wpt that I haue made my vow to god that I shal neuer eate but alonly breade and wilde herbes and that to my drynke I shal take none other but water, and that I shal neuer weare the dayes of my lyfe none other clothes but suche as this is, for I haue giuen my self vnto to serue and loue our blessed sauiour & hys glorious mother, for to byynge my soule to saluacyon in the blyss that euer shal laste.

**W**han Reynawde hearde his Colyn Watogis speke thus: he was in a thought whether it was Watogys or no, for he couide not knowe hym well bycause he was so sore apayzed of his person. And began to looke well vpon him agayn, and he shoulde neuer haue knowen him if it had not be a litle liste that he had by hys right eye. And after þ he had verye knowledge of hym: he made greatesoye for hym. And he prayde hym agayne sayinge in this wyse. fayne Colyn I pray you for þ loue of the fayth that ye owe to me that ye wyl tell me the trouthe of that I shal aske you. Spz sayd Watogis I shal tell it you gladly. Colyn said Reynawde I wolde wpt where yee haue be euer syth that ye went from me, & fro whens ye come now. Spz sayd Watogis sythe it please you to wpt of my lyuynge: I shal shewe it

you with a good wyll, yee ought to knowe my fayne colyn for certayne þ I haue made my selfe an hermite, & I haue left the world for to serue hym that made me, & the blessed vyrgyn Marye his mother, for to haue pardon of my synnes that I haue doone in my lyfe, for I haue doone many great euilles agayn & my creatour, & by me are dead so many folke wherof I knowe that our Lorde is greatly wrothe agaynst me. After þ Reynawde had hearde Watogys speake thus: he had so great pity on him that the tere fell alonge bys cheekes fro his eyen for loue of hys good colyn. And than he called bys brethren & sayd to them, come hyther my brethren & ye shal se your colyn Watogys. And whan Marde, Guy charde, & Richarde, heard these wordes: their hertes rose in their belyes for ioye and ran all to Watogys & kyssed him ful sweetly. And whan þ duchesse wyfte that Watogys was come: she cam anon there as he was and kyssed hym weepynge ful sore for ioy that she had to see hym. And thā came there Aymonet & Ponnet that made great ioye, & welcomed hym. And thoro we all the cite was anon knowen the coming of the balaunce Watogis, wherof many folke cam to see him. But he was so chaunged and so apayzed that it was pitie for to see. Thus was Reynawde well glad of þ cominge of his good colyn & after þ they had made greatesoye a longe whyle: Reynawde called his brother Richarde and sayd to hym, Brother go sit anon a good getone for our Colyn Watogys, and let



him be brought a payre of shone that  
ben wyde ynoughe, for I know wel  
that his feete ben sore, & than he said  
to his wyfe. Lady arise, and set hym  
suche linnen as he nedeth. **S**pyr sayd  
the he shall haue of the best ynoughe  
anon. And whā **W**algis heard this  
worde he sayd to **R**epnawde. **S**pyr I  
tell you truly that I haue sworne  
I shall neuer weare shone nor lin-  
nen clothes aboute me. But doo to  
me if it please you to giue me a new  
slop and a large hooide, a palster wel  
pynde and a male, and thertwith yee  
shal well contente me. And than I  
shal comende you to god, and I shal  
go my way, for I am not comē heere  
but only for to see you, wherof my  
desyre was sore set vnto. Right soyr  
was **R**epnawde whā he heard **W**al-  
gis say so, in so muche that almoste  
he was swooning for sorowe. **R**ep-  
nawde sayd thā **W**algis leue your  
sorow, for I haue gyuen my self to  
god utterly for to bynge my soule to  
blesse of heuen, and so wyll I goe to  
the holy lande for to serue to the tē-  
ple of **J**herusalem, and for to bysite  
the holy sepulcre of our lord. And  
whā I haue doone so I shal come  
agayne to se you and God spare me  
my life, and than I shal go agayn to  
myne hermitage, and shal lyue there  
as a beast with rootes and wylde  
herbes as I dyd before that I came  
heere. Whā **R**epnawde heard thys  
he was soyr for it, & sayd to **W**al-  
gis in this wise. Saye cosyn for god  
take with you a good horse and mo-  
ney ynough. for ye shal haue al this  
of me. Holde your peate said **W**al-  
gis I wil not therof, for whā I haue

byde it is to me ynoughe, for al my  
hope is in God, to whome I pray  
that I may come agayne whole and  
sounde.

**A**fter all these thynges thus  
sayd **W**algis prayed **R**ep-  
nawde that he wolde make haste to  
make hym be deliuered, suche thin-  
ges as he had despyed of hym. And  
**R**epnawde dyd so lythly he myght  
not make hym to take none other  
thyng with hym. And whā he mo-  
row cam, and that **W**algis had his  
newe sloppe and his hooide, he tooke  
hys palster and his new male & **R**ep-  
nawde had giuen him. he went and  
hearde masse, and after the masse he  
tooke his leaue of euery one, & went  
on his way. And **R**epnawde coueied  
him vnto the wicket of the gate of  
Litie and kissed him: and in likewise  
dyd all his byetherne, and also the  
chelle Clare and her chyldren. And  
whā they had all kyssed **W**algis  
he comended them to God & went  
out of the towne, and went forth the  
ryght waye. But he was not ferre  
gone whā he was aduyned round  
about him with the folke of **K**yng  
**C**harlemayne. And the one sayd to  
the other: heere is the hermite that  
we saw yesterday but he is now bet-  
ter clothed than he was at that time  
It might be well **W**algis & cosyn  
of **R**epnawde that hath mocked vs  
diuerse times, certes sayde the other  
it is he herelpe, let vs slea hym, and  
we shall doo well, we shall not laide  
some: for thys man semeth to be an  
hundred yere olde. It canout be, but  
that he must be a good man & it were  
synne

lynne to do hym harme. All thus as  
these folke sayd these wordes, Haw-  
gis heard al that they sayd and held  
his peace and went on his way syl  
thoroughe the hoste without any let-  
tynge of any man. ¶ Here leueth the  
hykoye to speake of Hawgis, that  
went into the holy lande, and retur-  
neth to speake of Charlemayne that  
had besyged Ardeyn because that  
Reynawde and hys byethern were  
wthyn.

¶ How Reynawde wolde doo hage  
Rychard of Normandy by cause he  
myght not haue peace with the kyng  
Charlemayne. And how the twelve  
Peeres required Charlemayne to  
make peace w Reynawde. And how  
they left Charlemayne because he  
wolde not make peace. And how he  
sent wordes to them þ they should  
come to hym agayne. And he shoulde  
make peace with Reynawde.



**I**n this party betwex that the  
kyng Charlemayne was at þ  
sege of Ardeyn fore an angred that  
he myght not know howe Rychard  
of Normandy dyd. So sent he for

all hys Barons for, to come to  
hym. And whan they were come in  
his pavillion, he sayd to them thus  
Lords I see wel that it goeth now  
yll with me, because I see that Rey-  
nawde



## The booke of the four

na Wde hath not sent me agayne Ri-  
 charde of Normandy, and he might  
 well haue deliuered hym free & quite  
 and haue sende hym vnto me for all  
 the harmes þe hath doone to me.  
 Uncle sayde Rowlande I merueyll  
 greatly of that ye saye, ye shew wel  
 to vs that ye be without counsell.  
 By the sayde that I owe to you, ye  
 shal neuer see Richard of Norman-  
 dy, but yf ye pardon Reynawde &  
 his brethren, diuerse times he hath  
 meked himselfe vnto you, and hath  
 be alwayes redy to fulfyll your ple-  
 sure, & ye wyll not take hym to your  
 grace, be not than merueyled if Rei-  
 nawde shew now some dispire a-  
 gaynst you. For and ye consider wel  
 the great curtesie that he hath doone  
 vnto you: namely whan he had you  
 at his Will within mountauban &  
 that he deliuered you, and suffred  
 you goe quite and free fro him at  
 your liberte, ye should doo for him o-  
 ther wyse than ye doo, but syth that  
 Reynawde seeth þe he may not finde  
 no mercy in you: he wyll not leese  
 his curtesie, but he shall doo þe wor-  
 se that he can, as ye maye well per-  
 ceue experience of it euery day, for  
 he domageth vs dayly, and keepeth  
 his prisoner the best knyght that yee  
 had, that is Richard of Normandy,  
 the whych I weene be dead  
 by this time. Heuere sayd the kynge  
 Charlemayne, I promyse you that  
 Reynawde hath not put hi to death  
 but he kepeth hym wel at his ease &  
 with great honoure, sayd than þe  
 Duke Raymes. Syth that the wor-  
 des ben come to this: I must tel you

my mynde. Syth þe Reynawde bea-  
 reth you domage: ye cannot blame  
 hym for it. For he hath prayed you  
 so many times humbly that ye wold  
 haue mercy on him and ye wold ne-  
 uer heare hym, but ye haue al wayes  
 shewed your selfe the moste proude  
 kynge of the world agaynst hym, &  
 the moste angry, and ye wyll beleue  
 no counsell, and so I tell you if Rei-  
 nawde hath not made to dye Richard  
 of Normandy: he is the kyndest mā  
 of the world. But I beleue better  
 that he is dead than other wyse: for  
 no man heere can tell whether he be  
 dead or a liue.

**W**han the kynge Charlemayne  
 heard þe Duke Raymes speke  
 thus: he knew wel that he tolde hym  
 trouth. So began he to syghe soze,  
 and to these wordes came forth the  
 Bysshop Turpin, & Ogier the Dane  
 that sayd in this maner. Sir wyte it  
 verely that Raymes telleth you  
 trouth. For Reynawde hath a good  
 cause to be angrye with you. And  
 whan Charlemayne heard his ba-  
 rons speke thus: he was all abashed  
 of it. And called þe duke Raymes, the  
 bysshop Turpin, Ogier the Dane, &  
 Escout the sonne of Debon, & sayde  
 to them. Lordes I pray you goe to  
 Ardeine & tel Reynawde in my behalfe  
 þe he wil sende me Richard of Nor-  
 mandy. And whan he hath doone so:  
 þe he shall deliuer Hawgys into my  
 handes for to doo my wyll of hym.  
 And then he shall haue peace with  
 me al the dayes of my lyfe. Dider sayde

sayde the duke Raymes, ye sende vs  
for nought. For I wot wel þat a wo-  
gis is gone from Reynawde, it is  
thre yeres passed and moze. And yf  
that Reynawde wolde deliuer him  
he may not. For he knoweth not him  
selfe where he is. Raymes sayd the  
king Charlemaigne, yee shall acleste  
heare what Reynawde shal say vnto  
you, and ye shall also know how Ri-  
charde of Normandi dooth. Syr sayd  
the duke Raymes, syth that it plea-  
seth you that I shall goe: I am well  
contente, but I pray our Lorde that  
we maye retorne agayne whole and  
sounde of our persones, without to  
be dishonoured. Whan the barons  
saw that kinge Charlemaigne wolde  
that they shoulde goe to Adepne for  
to doo his messages: they durste not  
saye there agayn. And so they wet  
thether anon, and ech of them bare  
in his hande a braunche of an olive  
tree in token of peace. And whan  
they came vnto the gate: they founde  
it open for them. For Reynawde had  
seen the come from ferre. Wherfore  
he commaunded þat the wicket shoulde  
be open. And whan the barons saw  
the litle gate open: they went into þe  
towne, and cam to the Palays. And  
whan Reynawde wist þat they were  
come within the palays: he wet and  
layde hymselfe downe vpon a bedde  
wyth his legges crossed and swaie  
God and his blessed mother that he  
shoulde not praye the kinge Charle-  
maigne of nothing. For he had doon  
him to great harme, for throughe  
the kyng Charlemaigne he had losse  
his good cosyn Hawgis and Bou-  
tawban, that he loued so muche.

This hanginge came there þe messen-  
gers of the king Charlemaigne, afore  
Reynawde. Whan the Duke Ray-  
mes that was the for most saw Rey-  
nawde: he saluted him honourably.  
And after he sayd to hym. Syr Rey-  
nawde the kinge sendeth you wolde  
by vs, that ye sende hym agayne Ri-  
charde the duke of Normandy. And  
moze ouer he sendeth you worde þat  
yf ye wyl deliuer him a halvyng  
that haue peace with him al þe dayes  
of his lyfe. And he shall deliuer you  
agayne all your landes. And he shal  
keep bothe your childre in his court  
with him, and he shall make them  
knightes wth his owne handes.  
By Lordes sayde Reynawde, ye be  
ryght welcome to me as the knygh-  
tes of þe worlde that I ought to loue  
best. But I misuayle me greatly of  
Charlemaigne, that sendeth me these  
wordes, for euery man knoweth wel  
that I haue not a halvyng. But by  
him I haue lost hym. And wolde to  
god that I had here Charlemaigne as  
wel as I haue Rycharde of Norman-  
dy. And yf he wolde not graunte me  
peace wth him. I promise you he  
shoulde leaue his head for a pletge.  
So shoulde I be than auenged of all  
þe great harmes & damages that he  
hath doone to me, syth that I haue  
be made knight of him. Lodes I wot  
that Charlemaigne had be moze cur-  
tous then he is. For if I had wist  
that he wolde haue ben so fell vpon  
me and my brethren: I shoulde wel  
auenged it vpon him. But it is to  
late to repent me that I did not so,  
wherfore that ye voyde out of my  
Palays, and goe tell your king that



I haue not Hawgys, but I haue  
loste hym for him, and also yf I had  
him he should not haue him. And be-  
cause I haue thus loste my good co-  
lyn Hawgys for hym: I shal make  
to morow Richard the duke of Nor-  
mandy to be hanged vpon the chese  
gate of this Citie in y<sup>e</sup> dispite of him  
for no lenger respit he shal not haue  
of me, how be it that he is of my lig-  
nage, and I tell you, come no more  
heere, nor no man of Charlemaigne.  
For I promyse you I shal stryke of  
the heades of as many as shal come  
fro him to me without any sayle.

**W**han Ogger the Dane saw  
Reynawde so angry, & that  
he answered so proudly: he merua-  
led soze, and drew him selfe by Rey-  
nawde, and said to him. Fayre colin  
I pray you that ye will shewe to vs  
Rycharde of Normandy, to thende  
that we may tell Charlemaigne that  
we haue scene hym. Ogger I haue  
well vnderstande you sayde Rey-  
nawde, but ye shall neuer see him a-  
fore that I haue hanged hym, And  
yf Charlemaigne be angry wyth me  
for it: let him auenge it yf he can, for  
I defie hym and all his power, and  
goe you hens anon. For by my soule  
if ye abide heere any lenger, it shall  
repent you full soze. And whan the  
barons saw that Reynawde was so  
feruently wrothe, they durst no lenger  
tary there: but rooke leue of him  
and went out of the Citie, and went  
lightly to the hoste of Charlemaigne  
that awaited after them. Whan the  
kyng saw the Barons come: he said  
vnto them. Lordes ye be welcome,

what tidynge bynge you: haue ye  
not scene Rycharde of Normandy?  
Syz sayde the Duke Raymes. Rey-  
nawde both you to wit that as longe  
as he maye ryde vpon Bayarde: ye  
shall not haue Hawgys, for he hath  
lost him by you. And for the venge-  
aunce to be taken of the same: Rey-  
nawde sedeth you worde by vs that  
he shall hange to morow Rycharde  
of Normandy vpon the great gate  
of his towne, and thus shall he doo  
of all your me that he shall take, and  
yet he sayth more, yf he had you as  
well as he hath Rycharde of Norma-  
die that if ye wolde not graunt him  
peace: ye should leaue wyth hym  
your head for a pledge. Whan Row-  
lande heard the worde that the Duke  
Raymes had reported vnto hys vn-  
cle Charlemaigne: he sayde. Syz be  
not displeased of that I shal tel you,  
me semeth that ye shall neuer see the  
duke Rycharde, and al for your pryde.  
Syz we finde in holy scripture that  
god curseth the fruite that neuer is  
ripe, thus shall it be by you y<sup>e</sup> neuer  
wylt ryse nor condiscende to no peace  
with the foure sones of Symon, the  
best knightes of the worlde, y<sup>e</sup> so ma-  
ny tymes haue prayed for it humbly  
and full pitcouly. Wherfore I swere  
to you vpon all halowes that yf the  
duke Rycharde of Normandy be han-  
ged: ye shall lose honour & worshyp  
all your lyfe dayes. Whan the kyng  
Charlemaigne heard his newe Row-  
lande speake thus: that sayde y<sup>e</sup> Ry-  
charde of Normandy should be han-  
ged: he was so myscheuouly an an-  
gred that he gnewe the nailes of his  
handes, for great wroth, & ye ought

to wit that Charlemayne was so an-  
gry at that tyme, þ̄ yf he had had any  
maner of staffe in his hād: he wolde  
haue gladly smitten Rowland, but  
whan he sawe that he might not ac-  
complishe his wil: he called his ba-  
rons and sayde to them, Lordes ye  
wene to make me a ferde with your  
wordes, I am no childe for to be th̄  
abasshed, and also I swere you by  
my fapth that if Reynawde were so  
hardy to doo anye harme vnto Ry-  
charde of Normandy: I should hāg  
hym wyth myne owne handes, he &  
all his lynage that none should be  
left a lyue.

**R**yght soze wrothe was the  
king Charlemayne, whan he  
hearde tell that Reynawde wolde  
make Rycharde the duke of Normā,  
die to be hanged. But whan Ogier  
hearde Charlemayne swere thus: þ̄  
he should hang all the lynage of rei-  
nawde: he coude not absteyne hym-  
self but that the teares fel downe fro  
his eyen, and than he said to the bis-  
shop Turpin. Sir what thynke you  
by our kynge that sayth by his great  
pyde that he shall hange vs all: for  
al that he dooth p̄cedeth but of en-  
uys & pyde, but god sende me death  
yf I care for hys wrathe, for yf Rey-  
nawde hath not lied to vs: he shall  
doo be hanged to morowe Rycharde  
of Normandy in such a place where  
as Charlemayne shall mo w see him  
hange with his eyen. This hanging  
the Duke Raymes saw that þ̄ king  
was angry, and he sayd to him. Sir  
wit that we all be soze abasshed that  
ye th̄ere vs of one parre & Reynawde

of the other. And I meruaile me not  
of Reynawde, for he is so wroth for  
bycause that ye haue make him lose  
Mallogys that no man might be  
more. And I promysse you for grete  
angre he shall make Rycharde of nor-  
mandy to be hanged, and as to you  
namely he wolde stryke of your hed  
yf he had you in þ̄ case that he hath  
Rycharde now, and yf he hangeth  
Rycharde: what may we doo chertor  
that ye th̄eten vs so muche therfore  
wherofore I counsell all my fela-  
wes that are of the lynage of Rey-  
nawde: that we goe our wayes and  
that we let you shifte of the warre of  
the foure sonnes of Aymon. By god  
sayd þ̄ other peeres of fraunce Rai-  
mes speaketh well, and he giueth vs  
good counsell.

**W**hen whan Charlemayne  
saw his barōs so soze moue  
he wylt not what he should doo, but  
gaue them leaue to withdrau them-  
self vnto the morow that they should  
returne to him, and he hymself went  
to his bed, but al night he could not  
fall a slepe: but wēled in his bed w-  
out any rest, and wylt not what to  
doo. And whan þ̄ day came: he arose  
from his bedde, and sent for all hys  
barons, & whan they were come: he  
sayd to them. Lordes what shall we  
doo of Reynawde that wyl hange þ̄  
duke Rycharde of Normandy afore  
mine eyen: Sir said thā þ̄ duke Rai-  
mes for nought seeketh one counsell þ̄  
wyl not put it to effect, wbi aske ye  
counsell sytbe that ye wyl doo no-  
thing but after your owne head: but  
and ye wyl beleue me: I swere you



The booke of the four

on my fayth that al good shal come  
therof. Spz make peace with Rey-  
nawode, and ye shall haue the Duke  
Rycharde, and also ye shall haue the  
good loue of all your men, for there  
is none but he is wery of the warre,  
and they haue reason. Raymes saide  
the king I wil not doo it, holde your  
peace therof, for that shalbe the laste  
worde that euer I shal say. Spz said  
Rowland by my soule ye doo great  
wyronge yf ye suffre þ good duke Ri-  
charde to be hanged that so muche  
loued you and doone great honour,  
it shall be to you great shame, and so  
I sweare to you vpon all halo wes  
that yf I see hange Rycharde of nor-  
mandy I shal part out of your hoste  
fro your seruyce, and I shall goe so  
ferre that ye shall neuer haue helpe  
of me. Rowland sayd Olyuer ween  
not that I shall abide after that yee  
are gone, for the kinge doothe great  
wyronge to Reinaude our cosin. Ful  
soze an angred was the kyng to  
heere these wordes but he helde thā  
his peace and sayde neuer a worde.  
And wryt it that al the hoste was mo-  
ued by cause they feared soze lest Rei-  
nawode should make Richard of nor-  
mandy to be hanged, for he was wel  
beloued of the folke of Charlemain,  
also he was of a grete kynred and  
a noble lpgnage.

**T**his morning thā Reinaude  
that was within Ardein af-  
ter that he had hearde hys masse: he  
called his three bretherne and sayde  
to them. My brethern it goeth ful ill  
with vs that we can haue no peace  
wryth Charlemaine, but sythe it is

thus come: by the fayth that I swe-  
to the olde Armon our father I shal  
angre hym right soze, for I am sure  
yf he had vs in his handes he wolde  
bitterly destroy vs without pitie, &  
therfore I am disposed for to doo the  
worste that I can agaynst hym. for  
now afoze his eyen I shal hange the  
duke Rycharde of Normandy, for I  
am well sure that Charlemayne  
shall were fyre angry for it, whan he  
shall see him. Brother sayd Alard, I  
pray you as muche as I can that ye  
wyl not doo as ye saye, for I shall  
hange hym my selfe yf ye wyl. Bro-  
ther sayd Reynawode I wyl wel, now  
commaunde sayde Alard that þ gi-  
bet be dressed all hye vpon the gate,  
that Charlemayne and all his hoste  
may see him. Shortly to speak: Rei-  
nawode dyd doo make þ gibet in suche  
a place þ Charlemayne might see it  
as well as he had be by. And wryt it  
that Rowland was the fyrst man þ  
perceyued it, and whan he saw this:  
he began to crye as hye as he myght.  
Spz, now see how they wyl hange  
the duke Rycharde with great shame  
alas he hath shrewdly employed his  
tyme in your seruyce. And now he is  
full yll rewarded for it, and also it  
is shrewded ensample to al that serue  
you. Alas sayd Olyuer now shall þ  
good duke Rycharde be hanged with  
great shame, for I see the Gibet righ-  
ted vp. Holde your peace sayde than  
Charlemayne, they doo all thys but  
for to make me abashed, and that  
they myght haue peace with me, but  
for all this they shall not haue it, &  
I promise you they dare doo hym  
no harme of his bodye. Thus recō-  
foited

for to Charlemaigne him selfe, were  
nyng that Reynaude had not durst  
hange the duke Richarde. This hang-  
gng: Rowlande (that had the thyng  
at herte) helde alwayes to warde  
the towne, and saw that men righ-  
ted the ladder to the gybet, than sayd  
he to Oliver. Ha Oliver true felaw  
and good freende, yonder I see the  
ladder that is set vp all redye for to  
hange Rycharde of Normandy, ful-  
pill he hath bestowed his good ser-  
uyce wyth Charlemaigne. Syr O-  
liver sayde Rowlande, ye saye well  
trouth, god saue Rycharde.

**A**fter the ladder was rygh-  
ted to the gybet aboute vpon  
the hyghe gate of Ardeyne: Reynaude  
called ten of his folke, and sayde to  
them. Galantes go fet me the Duke  
Rycharde. For I will that he be han-  
ged incontinent. Syr sayd they wee  
shall doo your commaundment. And  
they went into the chambze where the  
noble duke of Normandy was, and  
founde hym playinge at the Chesse  
wyth Pounet the sonne of Reynaude,  
and than these men rooke hym a said.  
Syr duke come forth, for Reynaude  
hath commaunded that ye shall be  
hanged incontinent, whan the duke  
Rycharde of Normandy heard these  
felawes speake thus to hym: he loo-  
ked vpon them ouer the shoulder, &  
wolde not answere to them, but said  
my fayre Pounet, hast thou for to play  
for it is tyme that we goe to dinner.  
And whan these galantes saw that  
Rycharde of Normandy answered  
no worde vnto them: they began to  
take him on euery syde and sayde to

hym. Arise byp duke Rycharde, for in  
dispite of Charlemaigne that loueth  
you so muche: ye shall be hanged now.  
Whan the duke Richarde sawe that  
these sergountes had him thus by  
the arme, and helde in his hande a la-  
dy of Juerp where he wolde haue  
giuen a mate to pounet: he withdrew  
his arme and gaue to one of the ser-  
gountes suche a stroke with it into  
the forehead that he made him tum-  
ble ouer and ouer at his feete, & than  
he tooke a rooke & smote another w  
all vpon his head that he all to brost  
it to the hayne, & after that he smote  
another of the with his fist so great  
a stroke that he brake his necke, and  
fell dead vnto the erth. And whan the  
other saw they felawes thus arrayed:  
they began to renne away, and whā  
Rycharde sawe them goe: he cryed to  
them. Flee rybaudes Godes curse  
haue you, come not heere agayne.  
And whan he had sayd so: he sayd to  
Pounet the was all abasshed. Playe  
well my chyld, for ye shall be mated,  
I trowe these truantes were dzon-  
ken that thus wolde haue had me a-  
way, but I haue well giuen to them  
their parte. And whan Pounet heard  
hym saye so: he durste not speake a-  
gayn it because he sawe hymselfe  
to fore an angred, but played wyth  
his rooke that he should not be ma-  
ted, but he might not saue the mate.  
Whan the duke Richarde had mated  
Pounet: he called a yeman the was  
there, & sayd to hym. Goe take these  
carles that lyen heere dead and caste  
them out at the windowes. The yea-  
man dyd incontinent his commaun-  
dment. For he durst doo nothinge  
a.i. there



## The booke of the foure

there agaynst, for doubte he should haue faced as the other that he had seen slayne in his presence.

**A** Larde was y same time out of the castell, & awayed that Rycharde were brought to him that he might goe hange him, and he saw how the dead were cast downe out of the wyndowes of the toure, wherof he was wyrothe & went to Reynawde and sayd to hym. Syr I knowe that the duke Richarde will not let hym self to be take, and ryght decre it shal cost o: he be brought to the gibet, see how he hath slayne your men, & how he hath cast them out at the Towre, at the windowes. Brother sayd Reynawde, the Duke Richarde is to be doubted in hys takyng, let vs go to the helpe of our folk for els they ben in daunger of theyr lyues. And th<sup>o</sup> as they wolde haue gone: they that he had sente for to take Rycharde, came there vnto hym. And whan they saw Reynawde: they sayd vnto him. By god syr the duke Richarde shal not be take without great strife for he hath slayne thre of our felawes. And whan we sawe that: we fled away, and left hym playig with your sonne yonnet. Whā Reynawde vnderstoode this: he was right angri for it, and swore by all halowes y pf he had not peace that daye wyth Charlemayne: Richarde of Normādye should not escape hanging, what somer it should happe therof. And whan he had sayd these wordes: he went towarde the towre where Rycharde was, and his brethern went with him, for they wolde not leue hi,

and also. xl. men well armed for to take the duke Richard if he wolde defende hymselfe, whan Reynawde was come to the gate of the towre: he made it to be opened & went in & whan he was in: he sayd to the duke Richarde. Wassail whye haue you slayne my men: Cosin sayd he, nowe hear me if it please you. It is trouthy that. x. ribaudes cam here right now & layde hande vpon me, & they sayde that ye had thus commaunded them, whye the thinge I coude not beleue. For & ye had sayd so: it should haue be spoken outrageously: so made I them to flee out of this chambie in great haste and flew of them I wote not how many bycause I might not absteyne me, & if it semeth you that I haue doone amis: so take ye amēdes vpon me. But I will wel that ye wit that I wolde not haue doone to you suche a shame as yee haue doone to me. if I had had you as ye haue me, Reynawde if I haue doone amis in any maner: I am redy to make amēdes for it, but ye knowe it is no reaso that no Earle shall Iudge suche a man as I am, for that longeth to a king, to a duke, o: to an erle, the custome is suche ye wote it well, if the earles haue harme be it y haue medled them w it, none ought to blame me therfore. By god Richarde sayde then Reynawde ye shal say what ye will, but trust me yf I haue not this daye peace w Charlemayne: I shall make you to be hāged in such a place where that Charlemain may se you. And whā reinawde had said this: he made Richard to be take, & made his handes to be bounde fast and after

sayd to him. I tel you on my faith þ  
yf I haue not this day my peace w  
Charlemayne: þ for no prechpunge þ  
ye can make noz for no man of the  
worlde, I shall not leue but I shall  
make you dye a shamfull death. By  
my soule Reynawde sayd Richard, I  
fere me not, that ye shall doo that  
ye sayd, for ye dare not doo it as lōg  
as Charlemayne is a liue. Whan  
Reynawde hearde al the duke speake  
thus: he was so wroth that he toke  
all blacke in the face for angre, and  
than he sayde to Rycharde, by that  
god þ made me, ye shall soone knowe  
what I dare doo & whether I am  
a coward or hardy, & than he made  
him to be brought where as the ga-  
loes were righted, & than he sayde to  
him. Richard I wyl that of two  
thynges ye chole one yf ye lust, þ is,  
that ye make me haue peace w char-  
lemayne: or els þ ye helpe me against  
him, & but if ye doo this: wyl that I  
shall make you behāged & strāged, &  
I shall not leue you for all this þ ye  
be of my lignage, & yf ye wil take my  
part agaynst the king Charlemain:  
ye shall be deliuered forthw. By god  
Reynawde sayd than Richard, nowe  
haue I heard you speke like a childe,  
ween ye þ I shall doo þ ye say for fere  
or death: certes nay, for charlemain  
is my souerayne lord, and of him I  
holde mine heritage, and thowge he  
dooth wrong to leue me heere: I ou-  
ght not to fayle him therfore. But &  
ye wil doo wel, leue me a messenger, þ  
whiche I shall sende to Charlemain  
& to his barōs for to wit if he be dis-  
posed for to let me dye heere shame-  
fully. By my faith Richard sayd rei-

na wde ye speake no w wisely, & thā  
he called one of his folke & sayde to  
him. Go & doo þ Richard of Normā  
dy shall tell you, my freende sayd Ri-  
charde to þ messenger, ye shall goe to  
charlemayn & tel him on my behalf,  
þ I pray him as to my souerain lord  
that yf euer he loued me: that he wil  
pardon Reynawde, & I shall take vp-  
on me to make amēdes for hym, yf  
he hath in any thing misdone agāst  
him, as the.iii. peeres of France shall  
Iudge him, & if he wil not doo so: þ  
he wil looke hitherwarde, & he shall  
see me hange shamefully. Of that o-  
ther parte ye shall say to Rowland &  
to all my felawes that yf euer they  
loued me: þ they wil shew to Charle-  
mayne that it shall be a great shame  
to him, yf he suffreth that I dye thus  
shamefullye, syz sayde the messenger  
doubt not. I shall doo your message  
well. After these thynges thus sayd:  
the messenger went out of the towne  
to the holte of Charlemayne, the whi-  
che he founde full of thought. And  
whan he saw him: he made him re-  
uerence, & after sayd to hym. Syz wit  
it that Richard of Normandy re-  
comendeth hym humbly to you, and  
prayeth you as hertlye as he can as  
to his soueraine lord: þ if euer ye lo-  
ued him: that ye wyl shew it now  
for he mystrerth wel of it. For if rey-  
nawde haue not peace this day: tour-  
ne your sight vpon ponder gate af-  
ter that I am come home agayne, &  
ye shall see him hange shamefully, &  
whan the messenger had sayd this to  
the kynge: he looked about him, and  
saw the.iii. peeres, & sayd to them,  
syz to Rowland, & after to the other



## The booke of the foure

Lordes, the duke Rycharde prayeth  
you Rowland, & all ye in generall,  
that ye euer loued him: & ye wyll  
pray Charlemaine that he wil make  
peace with Reynawde, or otherwile  
he is dead without mercy. And whā  
Rowland heard this: he spake fyrst  
to the kynge, & sayd. Syr for God I  
pray you, suffre not that ye be bla-  
med, ye know well that how & duke  
Rycharde is one of the best knightes  
of the worlde., & he hath best serued  
you at your need. For God shal make  
peace with Reynawde, for to recouer  
suche a knight as is & duke Rycharde  
of Normandy, for greete shame it  
were to you for to let him thus die.  
And whā & duke Raymes and the  
bysshop Turpin, Ogier, Escout the  
sonne of Dedon, and Oliuet of vien  
heard Rowland speake so: they begā  
to say to & king. By god sit if ye wil  
not make peace with Reynawde for  
to recouer our felaw the Duke Ry-  
charde: ye shall lose muche by it. For  
within short time ye shall see your  
lande destroyed afoze you.

**W**hā Charlemayne saw that  
his peeres were thus moued  
for loue of Rycharde of Normandy,  
& that they accorded all for to make  
peace: he wende to haue gone oute  
of hys minde, and sware by greate  
trathe as a man mad, & Reynawde  
shoulde neuer haue peace with hym  
but if he had maygis to doo his wil  
with hym. And whā he had sayd so  
he turned him to warde the. xii. pee-  
res of Fraunce, & sayd to them. My  
frende take no fere for Rycharde of  
Normandy. For Reynawde shoulde

sooner let to be drawen one of his e-  
yes out: than he shoulde doo hym any  
harne or shame. Syr sayd the Bys-  
shop Turpin, ye are beside your self  
For ye see all redy that Rycharde is  
Iudged to death. Bysshop said char-  
lemayne ye speke well folisshly, kno-  
we ye not wel that Rycharde of Nor-  
mandye is of & linage of Reynawde  
I promyse you he dare not doo hym  
harne by no maner. By god syr said  
oliuet, ye haue wel paid vs by your  
sayinge. Why dare not Reynawde  
hange & duke Rycharde: for I know  
so muche by hym that ye had you  
as he hath Rycharde: he durst well  
hange yourself & al vs. Syr Oliuet  
sayd the messenger. I were you en-  
my sayth that Reynawde ceassed not  
all thys day to pray & duke Rycharde  
that he shoulde forsake Charlemayne  
and he shoulde saue his lyfe, whet of  
Rycharde of Normandy wolde doo  
nothyng, but spake great wordes  
to Reynawde. And whā that the  
messenger had sayd thus: he sayd to  
the kynge. Syr gyue me leue to goe if  
it please you, and tel me what I shal  
say to Rycharde of Normandy fro  
you. frende sayd Charlemayne ye  
shal tell him on my behalfe & he put  
no doubt in nothig. For Reynawde  
shal not be so hardy to doo him any  
harne. Whā the messenger that was  
a wyle knight understoode Charle-  
mayne: he coulde not abyene hym  
selfe, but he sayd to hym, syr Empe-  
rour ye be ouer proude, but I pro-  
myse you that Reynawde secretly  
telle by your pryde, and I make you  
sure & Rycharde waiteth well for my  
comyng agayne. For he wolde not  
take

take a hundred thousand pounce for  
to leue Rycharde but that he should  
hang him his owne handes. And as  
soone as he had sayd so: he went his  
wayes wythout any leue taking of  
the kyng streyght to Ardepyne.

**A**d whan the xlii. peeres saw  
the messenger go with an yll  
answer: they were full soze for it. Wha  
god sayd Ogier how the deuyl the  
kyng is felle and hard of hert, that  
wil nother peace nor concord. I am  
well sure that his pryde shal be cause  
of a shamefull deaht to Rycharde. O  
gier sayd Rowlande, ye saye trouth  
but I see him hang: god neuer help  
me at my need if I abyde after it w  
Charlemayne whyles I lue, & wha  
he had sayd so: he went to the other  
peeres & sayd to them. Lordes what  
shall we doo: shall we let thus Ry  
charde be hangd our felawe one of  
the best knyghtes of the worlde and  
mooste hardy: for thorough his pro  
wes he is there as he is, neuer no  
foule worde issued out of his mouth  
alas we shall now see hym hang w  
great shame, certes yf wee suffre it:  
we ben shamed for euer.

**R**owland as a man desperate  
came than to þe kyng al wroth  
and sayd to hym in this maner. Syr  
by my soule I go now oute of your  
seruise without your leue, & after he  
sayd to Ogier. Ogier what wyl ye  
doo, wil ye come with me, & leue this  
deuyl heere, for he is all beside him  
selfe: By my head Rowland sayde  
Ogier ye say trouth. I shall neuer  
in my lyfe abyde with hym, but I

shall go gladlye wyth you where ye  
wyl. And I shal not leue you for no  
man in the worlde, syth that he suf  
fereth that suche a valiaunt ma shal  
dye, as the duke Rycharde of Nor  
mandy, that he loued so muche. He  
should soone doo so by vs, for he is a  
man that hath in hym nother loue  
nor pitie. And whan Oliuer of byen  
vnderstoode these wordes: he stode  
by, and sayd. Lordes I will go with  
you. I haue dwelled heere to longe,  
and I also sayd the duke Raymes. &  
in likewise Escoute the soune of De  
don. And whan the bisshop Turpin  
saw this: he casted a great sygne, and  
sayd. By my fayth Charlemayne, it  
is euill to serue you for of good ser  
uice ye doo yelde an euill reward, as  
it is well seen now by the Duke  
Rycharde of Normandy that hath  
serued you so well and so truly. And  
if I dwell any lenger with you I pray  
god punish me for it.

**W**han wha Charlemayne saw  
his peeres that were so soze  
moued with angre agaynst him: he  
sayd to them. Lordes haue no doubt  
of nothyng, for the duke Rycharde  
shall haue no harme. Syr sayde the  
Duke Raymes ye doo great wrong  
for to say so, for a foole neuer bele  
ueth till he feeles soze, weene you to  
make vs fooles w your wordes: we  
se þe galous made by for to haue our  
felaw, wherfore I tel you þe a myl  
chiese take me if I dwell with you a  
ny lenger. Whan the duke Raymes  
had sayd so: he went out of the pau  
lion of Charlemayne and in likewise  
all the Peeres of fraunce with hym



## The booke of the four

And wente into hyg tente the whiche he made to be pulled downe incontinēt. And whan they of the hoste of Charlemayne saw þ: they were soze afrayed. And ye ought to wyt that they were so soze moued within a litle while þ there abode in the hoste of Charlemayne not one baron nor knyght but onlye the pooze symple gentylmen, and comin people. whan Rowlande sawe thys: he went on his wayes wyth the other peeres. And wit it at that houre þ hoste of Charlemayne was made lesse than it was afore by xl. thousande men.

**R**eynawde that was vpon the hyghe gate of Ardeyne saw so great numbre of folke cominge together: so called he to hym the messenger that was but comen fro Charlemayne, and sayd to hym in thys maner. Come heere messenger, tell me what Charlemayne hath sayd vnto you. Spz sayd the messenger, wit it that ye haue missed of peace, for charlemayne wil nothyng of it, but he sebeth you worde by me that ye be not so hardy vpon the eyen of your head to doo any harme to the Duke Rycharde of Normandy. And whan he had said this: he turned him toward the duke Rycharde, and sayd to him. Spz duke now may ye know howe muche Charlemayne loueth you. Wit it for certaine that ye get nother helpe nor succours of him, and for þ loue of you Rowlande, and all the other peeres of Fraunce ben ful soze an angred with him, for ye may perceue it well by theyr tentes that be pulled downe. And so I am sure that

the moste parte of the hoste shall depart for the loue of you. And so shal not abyde there but only the erle guenellon & his lignage. For theyr tentes ben righted & all the other brought downe. Whan Reynawde wyte that the frenchemen were angry w Charlemayne for the loue of þ duke Rycharde of Normandy: he chaunged his courage and could not keep him from weepinge. And after he turned hym toward Rycharde of Normandy and sayd to hym, for god my colyn I praye you for to pardon me the great shame that I haue doon to you. Reynawde sayd Rycharde I blame you not, for I wot wel that ye cannot doo therto. For the greates pride and cruclenes of Charlemayne is causer of al this. Whā Reynawde had cried inercy to the duke Richard he vnbounde him, and Alarde and Guycharde came to helpe hym for they were all glad that Rycharde was deliuered. Notwithstandynge afore that they were disposed for to make him dye shamefully. And whan they had doone so: Reynawde sayd, cosin Rycharde lenc vpon this walle, and we shall looke what Charlemayne wyl doo. Spz sayd þ duke Rycharde ye say well let vs see it.

**A**nd whan Charlemayne saw that his barons went away as it is said: he was soze for it that he wored almoste madde all quicke for the greates angre that he had, and helde a demplaunce in hys handes, the whiche he began to gnawe with his teeth so angry he was, and whā his wyathe was a litle gone: he called

led a knyght and sayd to hym. Now lyght on ho: backe lyghtly, and ride after Rowland and after the other barons and tell them in my behalfe that they come speake with me, and I shalbe demened as they wyl them- selfe, and that I shal pardon Keynawode yf they wyl come agayne to me. So: sayde the knyght blessed be God that hath brought you to this mynde. And than this knyght tooke an horsc and rode hastily after the xii. peeres of Fraunce. And whan Keynawode that was with the duke Rycharde of Normandy upon the gate of Treceyn apperced this: he sayde to the duke Rycharde of Normandy, cousin I se come a knyght out of the pavilion of the kynge Charle- mayne. I beleue that he goeth vnto the twelve Peeres of Fraunce for to make theym to retorne agayne. I weene we shal haue this daye peace and god before. So: sayd Rycharde ye shal haue peace ma wgre them al yf letteth it. I ought for to loue treli my fel: wes, the whiche be cause to keepe me from death, & also to haue peace. Wyt it that the knyght rode so fast that he ouer tooke Rowlande, & all the other peeres of Fraunce, and said vnto them in this maner of wise Lordes, the kynge Charlemayne sendeth you worde by me that ye wyl retorne agayne to hym, and he shal pardon Keynawode for the loue of you & for goddes loue come lyghtly. For he neuer left weepynge syth that ye went your waye from him. Ray- mes sayd Rowland, let vs retourne agayne. For I holde the peacc maie wherof this sorowfull warre shal

sayle yf hath lasted so longe a whyle. Whan the Duke Raymes hearde Rowland speake so: he was ryght glad of it, and forned hys handes to warde heauen, and sayde in this maner wise. Good lord Jesus ble- sed be the tyme that it hath pleased yf to tourne the courage of the kynge Charlemayne, and that this vnhappy warre is brought to an ende. And whan the Duke Raymes had sayde this: they returned agayne to warde Charlemayne.

**A**ND whan Keynawode apper- ciued that the twelve peeres wente agayne to Charlemayne: he sayd to the Duke Rycharde of Nor- mandy. Cousyn the Barons retorne agayne. I beleue that the peace shal be made, and that we shal mow wel goe soone at our liberte, now shal Keynawode maye say that I and my b:ethern ben at his commaundemēt, and shal be as longe as we ben men on lyue. Well glad were the Barons of the one part, & of thother, because that God had suffred that the peace should be made. And whan Charle- mayne saw his barons come agayne he went agaynst the & sayd. By God my lordes ye ate wel ful of great pryde yf ye make me to be come peassible with Keynawode agaynst my wyl, ye know yf I haue hated hi so muche that I may not see him, but I shalbe angry because of his pryde that is so great. Wherfore yf ye will yf I make peace wyth hym: I wil that he goe into the holy lande pooze & clothed on foote. And so I wil haue his hors Bayarde. And I shal also retorne agayne



The booke of the four

agayne to his brethren all they: ly-  
uclode out of my handes. Therfore  
yf thus he wyl doo: I shal sail to pea-  
ce, and accorde with hym, & els not,  
for I make mine a vowe to God y  
I shal neuer doo other wyse therin  
tha I tel you now. And therfore loo-  
ke wel whiche of you shal doo thys  
message. Syr sayd y duke Raymes  
I shal go to Reynawde with a good  
wyl, yf it be your pleasure that I go  
to hym. Raymes sayd Charlemayn  
It pleaseth me well. And than inco-  
ntinent the duke Raymes rode to Ar-  
deyn. And whan Reynawde saw him  
come: he knew hym well, and wente  
him agaynst, and so did the duke Ri-  
charde, and y brethren of Reynawde  
whan the duke Raymes saw y no-  
ble Barons come agaynst hym: he  
lyghted from the horse anon & went  
and kyssed them all, and after he had  
doone so: he sayd. Reynawde. Char-  
lemayne sendeth me to you with his  
greeting. God yelde hym sayd Rey-  
nawde. Now haue I that I haue de-  
syred so longe. Raymes shal I haue  
peace: yea sayd the Duke Raymes  
vnder a condicion, the whiche I shal  
tell you. It is that ye must go poore-  
ly clothed, and begging your breade  
for godes sake in the holy lande, and  
so shal ye leue Bayarde wyth Char-  
lemayn, and this doone: ye shal haue  
peace. And he shal gine agayne your  
betrayage to your brethren. Duke  
Raymes said Reynawde ye be right  
welcome. And I promise you that  
I am redy to doo the commaunde-  
ment of the kinge. And yf he wyl  
haue of me any thyng more by any  
wyse: I shal in euery poynt fulfyll

his wil if it be possible, for me to doo  
it. Now shal I be a good trauait, for  
I can well aske bread whan me nee-  
deh. Whan the duke Raymes heard  
Reynawde speake thus: he was wel  
glad of it, and so was the duke Ry-  
charde, that they saw the noble Re-  
nawde agreed to the will of Charle-  
mayne, so muche as for to be come a  
poore begger for to haue peace. And  
after y Reynawde was thus acor-  
ded thereto: he went into hys stable  
and tooke Bayarde, & deliuered him  
to the duke Raymes, & than he tooke  
his baner, & bare it on hie vpon the  
highe towre in token of peace. And  
whan Charlemayne saw the baner  
of Reynawde: he shewed it to Row-  
land. Ha god sayd Rowlande howe  
muche is Reynawde, & good of kynde  
to haue made peace in this maner of  
wyse: Blessed be Ihesus that hath  
giuen him that wyl for to go now  
a foote, wherof I playne hym sore.  
Rowland sayd Ogier. Reynawde is  
a lambe full of mekenes, and in him  
are all y good condicions y a knight  
ought to haue. This hanging: came  
there the duke Raymes that brought  
Bayarde with him and presented him  
to Charlemayne, & said to him. Sir,  
Reynawde is redy for to doo all y  
ye haue comaunded him, and he shal  
departe to morow yf ye wyl sythe  
your pleasure is so. I wyl wel said  
Charlemayne, but tell me tohere is  
the Duke Rycharde: for I wil know  
it. Syr sayd the duke Raymes.  
Wyt that the Duke Rycharde fareth  
well, and is abiden wyth Reynawde  
for he wyl conuey hym whan he  
goeth. And wyt that Reynawde  
thys

this hangyng: made great cheere w  
his folke at his ease, and after sayd  
to the. Lordes I beseeche you be not  
soz that I go, for I haue made this  
peace moze for you than for me. I  
pray you that ye holde wel together  
till I come agayne, and whā he had  
sayd this to them: he went into hys  
chābze and vnclothed hymself from  
hys good raymentes, and cast vpon  
him a pooze mantell, & a payze of big  
shoon wel clouted. & made for to be  
brought to hym a palster well pre-  
ned for to beate in his hāde. And ye  
must wyt that þ Duke Rycharde was  
syll with him, to whome Reynawde  
comended his wyfe and his chy-  
dren, and all his byethern. And þ he  
wolde pray the kinge that he shoulde  
haue them for recommended. And  
whā he had arrayed hymselfe so: he  
came towarde þ halle to the duchesse  
hys wyfe.

**A**nd whā the noble duchesse  
Clare saw her husband so a-  
rayed in his beggers clothynge: she  
tooke suche sozowe for it that she fel  
downe in a swoone to the erth as she  
had be dead. And whā Reynawde  
saw her fal: he ran for to take her vp  
and after sayd to her. Lady for God  
take it not so soze at your herte. For  
I shall soone come agayne, and god  
befoze. And wyth you shall my bye-  
therne abyde that shall serue you as  
ther lady. And so I tell you that I  
am so glad of the peace that me se-  
meth that I am come agayne al re-  
ry. Madame my deere wyfe. I pray  
god keepe you from ail euylles. And  
with this he kissed her full sweetely.

And than he tooke on his way, and  
whā the duchesse saw hym go: she  
tooke for it so great sozow that she  
swoured agayne, and abode thus a  
longe while þ all her gentill women  
went she had ben dead. And after she  
was come agayne to herself: she made  
great mone for her lord. Reynawde  
for she scratched her face, & pulled  
her herys from her head for great so-  
row, & whā she had made so muche  
sozow: she said. O good husband Rei-  
nawde whose like is not in all the  
worlde of goodnes, god be w you.  
For I wot well that I shal neuer see  
you. And whā she had sayde these  
wordes. she went into her chābze &  
tooke all her noble raymentes & cast  
them in a fyre, and whā they were al  
brent: she tooke a pooze smocke, and  
cast it about her, & said she shoulde ne-  
uer were none other clothes till she  
saw her lord husband agayne.

**A**fter that Reynawde had ta-  
ke leue of his wife: he depar-  
ted, the duke Rycharde, his byethern  
and his folke conueyed hym a great  
waye, alwayes speaking that it was  
pittie to heare. And whā Reynawde  
thought that they had gone ferre y-  
noughe with him: he turned him to-  
warde them & sayd. Lordes I praye  
you hūbly þ ye retorne home again,  
for as long as ye be w me: I am not  
at my ease, go your way in the name  
of God and recomfozte my wyfe  
the duchesse that weepeth so soze, &  
to you my byethern I comende her &  
my chyldren also. Wyt it whā Rey-  
nawde had sayd this: there was no-  
ne þ coulde take leue of him so ful of  
sozow



## The booke of the four

sorow they were, except Blarke that  
 sayd to him. My deere brother I pray  
 you hertely that ye come hertely a-  
 gayne, for your departing is so he-  
 uy to me þ I trow I shall die for so-  
 row. And whan Blarke had sayd so:  
 he embrased his brother & tokke leue  
 of him making great sorow, & so did  
 Richarde of Normandy to whome  
 Reynawde sayd, my cosyn I comede  
 you ones my wyfe agayne and my  
 chyldren & al my brethren for they be  
 of your bloud well ye know it. Rei-  
 nawde sayd þ duke Richarde, I pro-  
 myse & swere as knyght that I shal  
 heipe & defende them agaynst all mē  
 except agaynst the king, & doubt not  
 for them, for they shal want nothig.  
 ¶ Now leueth þ hystory to speke of  
 Reynawde þ went to the holy lande

araid as ye haue heard: and retour-  
 neth to speake of his brethren howe  
 they came to Charlemanyne, with the  
 duke Richarde of Normandy.

¶ How after that Reynawde was  
 departed fro Ardeyn to make his vi-  
 age beyonde the sea, clothed poorly  
 as a pilgrim askig his meat for god  
 sake: the duke of Normandi took a  
 ladye, Guycharde & Richarde, & brou-  
 ght them with him to Charlemanyne,  
 whiche receiued them honourably, &  
 tooke vp his siege, & went to paris.  
 But whan he cam to the cite of lege  
 vpon þ riuer of meuse: he made bay-  
 arde to be cast in it, with a milstone  
 at the necke of him. But mē sayen þ  
 bayarde scaped out, and that he is a  
 lyue yet in the forrest of Ardeyne.



**T**hus patty sheweth the hy-  
story that whā Reynawde had  
put himselfe to the way as pee haue  
hearde: Richard of Normandy and  
his brethern came agayne to Ardein  
full soyr for Reynawde, where as  
they founde the good duchesse Clare,  
¶ made greete sorow for her lordes  
departyng. And whan they were co-  
me agayne there: the duke Richard  
tooke the duchesse by the hande, and  
began to recomfote her, & so many  
fayre wordes he layde vnto her that  
she laked a litle her sorow, and after  
thys the duke Richard sayde to the  
brethern of Reynawde, in this ma-  
ner. Lordes goe make you redy, and  
we shall go vnto Charlemayn. Sir  
sayd the three brethern, let vs whan  
it please you. And then they went &  
tooke on the best clothynge that they  
had. And I promise you they were  
thre fayre knyghtes, and after they  
were wel apparayled, they mounted  
eche of them vpon a palfrey of hye  
pyce ryght fayre wythout anye ar-  
mes. And for to speake shortly: they  
ysued out of Ardeyn and came to þe  
pauillon of Charlemayn. And whā  
the king saw the, he was ryght glad  
So he commaunded al hys barons  
that they shoulde go agayne them. Ha  
god sayd Rowland, now comen the  
three bretherne well soyre, certayne  
they haue a cause, for they haue lost  
theyr helpe succoure and hope. Now  
I see that the duke Richard cometh  
with them, wherof be dooth well,  
for he is their kynsman.

**N**ow ye ought to wit that þe  
three brethern of Reynawde

came to the pauillon of Charlemain  
well honestly arrayed. And whā they  
were afore the kyng: they kneeled hū-  
bly at his fete, and Alarde spake  
first & sayd. Sir Reynawde our bro-  
ther recomenderh him hūbly to your  
good grace, & salueth you as his so-  
uerayne lord, & he sendeth you Ry-  
charde the duke of Normandy, whi-  
che ye se heere, and so he prayeth you  
þe will haue vs for recommended,  
for he hath taken his way toward þe  
holy lande for to accomplishe your  
commaudemēt. Frende sayd Char-  
lemaigne ye be right welcome. Syth  
that it please our lord that we shal  
be frendes. I shall doo for you, and  
shal bring you al to honour, as it ap-  
perceyneth to suche knyghtes as ye  
ben. And yf god wyl bring Reynawd  
saue agayne from his viage: I shal  
holde him as deere as I doo mine  
owne newe Rowland, for he is re-  
plenysshed w great worthines. Syz  
sayd Richard god bring him agayn,  
whan the king had thus spoken to  
the brethern of Reynawde: he came  
to the duke Rycharde of Normandy  
& kissed him more than .x. times, and  
whan he had feasted him ynough: he  
said to him, duke Richard I praye  
you þe will tel me what priso gaue  
you Reynawde & what meates for to  
eat. Sir said the duke of Normandy  
by the sayth that I owe to god and  
to you I had better priso, and was  
more at mine ease than cure knyght  
was, for I was serued of the same þe  
Reynawde was, and sometye let-  
ter, and so I promyse you syz that  
the gentyll duchesse hys wyfe made  
me great chere, and good company  
with



The booke of the foure

wyth her two fayre chyldren. Syr I beseeche you if that euer ye loued me: that ye wyll worshyp Alarde & his bretherne yf it please you, for they haue done to me great honour, and they haue giue me great giftes. And yf it please you ye shal haue the good Duchesse and her chyldren for recomended, for she is the humblest lady of the worlde, and the mooste wysest. Rycharde sayd Charlemayne, wyte it that I shal not sayle them as long as lyfe shalbe in my body. And whā the chyldren of Reynawde shal be in age for to be made knyghtes: I shal doubte them to it mine owne handes with great worship, and god spare me lyfe, and so shal I gyue them landes ynoughe for to maynten theyr estate. Gramercy syr sayd þe duke Rycharde of Normandye, & god yeelde you.

**W**han they had deuyfled all ynoughe of the thynges afoze sayd: the kynge Charlemayne commaunded that he should be dyslodged, and anon his commaundement was doone, and than euery man put hym selfe towarde the way towarde his countre. And whan that þe king saw that it was tyme: he mounted on horsebacke, and tooke on his way towarde the cite of lege. And whan he was come in lege: he lodged him vp on the byrde of the ryuer of meuse. And whan the moornyng was come, he made be brought afoze hym the good horse of Reynawde Bayarde. And whan he saw him: he began for to saye in this wyse. O Bayarde, thou hast often angered me,

but I am come to þe poynt, god graunte for to auenge me, and I promyse thee thou shalt now abyte it full deere the tourment and felony that I haue often times had by thee. And whan the kynge had sayd so: he made a great milstone to be fastened at the necke of Bayard, and than made him to be cast from the byrde do wne into the water, & whan Bayarde was thus combled in the ryuer: he sank vnto the botome of it. And whan the kynge saw that: he made great Joye and so sayd. O Bayarde now we haue I that I despyed and wysshed so long for ye be now dead, but if ye drinke out al the water. And whan the freche men sawe the grete cruelnes of Charlemayne that auenged himselfe vpon a poore beast: they were yll content. And than spake the bisshop turpyn, and sayd Ogger of Denmarke, What thinke you by Charlemayne: he hath well shewed at this a grete parte of his grete felony, syr sayd Ogger ye say trouth, he hath doone to grete folye for to make þe suche a good beast as this horse was. Syr sayd Oliuer to Rowlande. Charlemayne is now waxen all folysh, ye saye full trouth sayd Rowlande. I perceyue it full well and for to say þe trouth: there was none of the xii. peeres but he wept for loue of the good horse Bayarde. But who someuer was soye for it. Charlemayne was glad of it.

**N**ow ye ought to know that after that Bayarde was caste in the riuer of meuse: he wente vnto the botom as ye haue hetde, & might not come vp for bicause of the great stone

stone that was at his necke whiche  
was horrible heuye, and whan bay-  
arde sawe he mighte none other wyse  
scape: he smote so longe and so hard  
with his scere vpon the mylle stone:  
that he brast it, and came agayne a-  
boue the water and began to swym,  
so that he passed it all ouer at the o-  
ther syde, and whan he was come to  
londe: he shaked hym selfe for to ma-  
ke he falle the water fro him and began  
to crie hie, and made a mervellous  
noyse, and after beganne to renne so  
swyfte as the tempest had bozne  
him awaie, and entered in to the great  
forest of Ardeyn. And whan the king  
Charlemayne saw that bayard was  
escaped: he tooke so great sorowe for  
it that almost he loste his wyl for an-  
gre. But all the barons were gladd  
of it. Thus as ye haue heard: escaped  
bayarde out of the handes of Char-  
lemayne, and wit it for very certayn  
that the folke of the countrey saien,  
that he is yet a lyeue within the wood  
of Ardeyn. But wot it whan he see-

eth man or toeman: he tenneth anon  
awaie, so that no bodye maye come  
necre hym. And after all these chyn-  
ges: the kynge Charlemayne as an-  
gre as he was departed fro Meuse  
and went in to a chapel that was  
nigh, and called to him all his barons  
and gaue them leue to goe in to thei-  
re countreys, wherof they were ryght  
glad, for they were sore desyringe for  
to see thei- wyues thei- chyldren and  
thei- londes.

**H**ow reynawde found that wyl-  
his colyn as he went by the way for  
to accomplishe his voyage to the ho-  
ly sepulchre in the countrey of Con-  
stancynople. And howe they went to-  
gither to Iherusalem, which the ad-  
myral of persie had taken by treasoun  
vpon the Christen, but Reynawde  
and his colyn that wyl- byd so much  
with the folke of the countrey: that  
the cite of Iherusalem was gotten  
again by the christen people.





The booke of the four

**N**owe tellerh the historye that af-  
ter that Reynawde was depa-  
red from Irdren for to goe in to  
the holy lond: he wente so much by the  
iourneys that he came to constantino-  
ple, and lodged him in an holt womans  
house, whiche serued him as well as  
the couloer, and gaue him suche meate  
as god had giuen to her, and after  
he washed his feet as she was wont  
to doo to other pylgrymes. And whā  
this good woman had doon so much:  
she tooke Reynawde by the hande,  
and broughte him in to her owne  
chambre, and sayde to him, Good mā  
ye shal lie heere, for in my other  
chambre ye may not be, for there is  
a poore pylgrime that is soe sycke.  
Danie said Reynawde let me see that  
pylgrime that ye speake of whiche  
is so sycke, with a good wyll sayd the  
poore woman ye shal see him, for I  
promyse you there is greete pitie in  
him. And than she tooke Reynawde  
by the hande, and brought him to the  
pylgrime that was in his bed. And  
whā Reynawd saw him: he knewe  
well that it was his cosyn Watogis  
wherof he was ryghte glad, so began  
he to speake to him and sayd. Freend  
how is it with your persone. And whā  
Watogis heard Reynawd speake to  
hym: he lepte oute of his bed as he ne-  
uer had be sycke and embrased Rey-  
nawde more than wente tymes and  
after said to him. Cosin howe is it  
with you: and what aduventure byn-  
geth you heere in this poore clothing  
that ye haue on: tell me if it please  
you, haue ye peace with the kynge  
Charlemayn? Cosin said Reynawd,

per by suche a maner as I shall tell  
you. And then he rebetted hym at the  
maner as ye haue heard agone, and  
all the reage that he had had with  
Charlemayne.

**W**hā Watogis vnderstoode the  
wordes of Reynawde: he was  
ryghte glad of it. And than he  
embraced againe Reynawde and said  
to hym I am now whole for the good  
tydings that ye haue brought to me.  
And therfore I am dysposed to goe  
with you, and doubt not we shal not  
dye for hunte, for I am mayster for  
to begge breade. And whā the good  
woman sawe that these two pylgry-  
mes made so greete feaste the one to  
the other: she thought it myghte none  
other wise be but they were of greate  
lygnage, and that they had had some  
greete aduantage, and she sayde  
to theyn. Saye lordes I see that ye  
knowe well eche other, wherfore I  
praye you tel me what ye be, and from  
whence ye come. Good woman said  
Watogis sayd that ye wyl knowe  
of our being: I shall tell you a parte  
of it. We it than that we been two  
poore gentylmen that are banished  
oute of fraunce. So muste we goe in  
suche habyte as ye see in to the holpe  
lande, and we been cosins germane  
and we shal doo our voyage to-  
gyther if it please god. And whā  
the lady that good woman vnderstood  
these wordes: she had greete ioye.  
Thenne made she to bynge theyn  
meate pough and wyne. Watogis  
that sayd so longe hadde drunken no  
wyne: dranke some wyne that nyghte

for the loue of Reyna Wde. Shorlye  
to speake: none mighte say noz thinke  
how great feast made the two colins  
to eche oher. And whan the day was  
come: Reinawde and Hawgis arose  
and tooke leaue of the holy lady, and  
put theimselfe to the waie. And wyte  
that so muche went the two pylgry-  
mes by their iourneies that they cam  
nighe the cite of Hierusalem, and  
were but a litell myle from it, so that  
they mighte see well the temple and  
the towre of Dauid, and the most par-  
te of Hierusalem. And whan mawgis  
and Reyna Wde saue that: they were  
ryght gladd of it, and yeelded graces  
vnto god that he had suffered them to  
come so nyghe the holy cite. Whan  
they had doone thus they prapers:  
they went on their waye for to haue  
gonne within Hierusalem. But they  
were gon but a lytell: whan they sawe  
a greate hoste aboute the cite euyn a  
foze the towre of Dauid where were  
many pavillions of the chrysten that  
were there for to fighte with the ad-  
miral of Percie that by force helde  
the cite of Hierusalem, Reinawd did  
carye tohan he saw the hoste that was  
afoze the cite: and saide to his colin  
Hawgis. Colin what folke is  
ponder as ye thinke, for it semeth a  
greate hoste afoze Hierusalem, are  
they Sarasyngs or chrysten, what say  
you: Surelpe saide Hawgys I can  
not tell, and I am soze meruayled  
what it may be. Thus as Reinawde  
and Hawgys spake togither: there  
came an olde man rydyng that waye  
that came from the hoste. And whan  
Reynawde saue hym: he went  
hym a penyte and sayde to hym. God

saue you good mā, tell me and I please  
te you, what be they afoze the holy ci-  
tie, are they chrysten or Sarasyngs: Pil-  
gryme saide the olde mā they ben chry-  
sten that haue besieged Hierusalem,  
and canne not take it, but ye maye  
well goe withoute perill. Now tel me  
saide Reinawde who is within Jhe-  
rusalem: Wyt ic saide the olde man,  
that the admirall of Percie hath ta-  
ken it by treason. And how hath he  
taken it by treason sayde Reinawde:  
Wyt sayde the olde man that the ad-  
mirall arrayed hym as a pylgryme  
and manpe of his folke with him, &  
went into the cite one after another  
and whan they were all within: they  
blewe an horne ryght hyghe, and set  
hande to their swerdes, and foughte  
strongly, so that they were maysters  
of the cite or euer the king Thomas  
could be armed nor his folke, & which  
coude not saue them selfe with such  
fewe folke as was lefte hym alpyue,  
but he was taken prisoner, and a-  
non all the countrey rose vp, and ha-  
ue besieged the cite as ye see, and I  
truste with the grace of God: that the  
cite shall be take shortly. Nowe tell  
me saide Reynawd if they of the cite  
come out often vpon the chrysten. yea  
saide the olde man, for they ben much  
folke within, and the thing that most  
greueth vs: is that oure folke ha-  
ue no heade nor no Lord. And ye wote  
well that folke that haue no heade  
nor no Lord: canne doo but lpyll  
good. And whan Reinawde hearde  
this word: he began to smile, and af-  
ter he said. Fare well good man. We  
wyl goe there for to see what shall  
hap of it. And whan he hadde said for



he tooke on his waye with his cosyn  
Hawoggs, and ceased not yll they  
were comine within the hoste. And  
whan they were come there: every mā  
looked vpon Reynard that was so  
fayre a pilgryme and so calle a man.  
And Reynard looked here and there,  
and wist not where to put himselfe,  
than he aduised him and sayde to  
Hawoggs. My cosin we must see that  
we haue a litell recede oz some other  
thing, for to make vs a lodges there  
at one corner of the walle, and whan  
Reynard had sayd so: Hawoggs cea-  
sed not till he had made a litill lod-  
ge. This hanginge that they made  
their lodge, the admyrall of Percie  
pssued oute of Iherusalem with wel  
thre thousande syghinge men, and  
entered into the christen hoste to ward  
saynt stephens church.

**A**nd whan the goodle of Ra-  
mes, and wallerauen of sayete  
and Gelfray of Nasareth sawe that  
they came anone to theyr harneys.  
And I tell you that there Jaffas of  
Rames was soone armed sooner thā  
the other and inconynente he ranne  
vpon the turkes and beganne to crye  
Jaffa as hie as he couid, and smote  
vpon the Persians, and domynaged  
them sore, for he was a balaunt mā  
in armes. And whan all they of the  
hoste were armed: they began there  
a bataylle of the one parte, and of the  
other right cruell. Than came there  
Gelfraye of Nasareth, which entered  
amonge the thickest of the Saracens  
and began fast to smyte them deade  
to the erthe. So shortly to speake: this  
batayll was ryght great and mortal

for there were many speres broken,  
and many sheeldes clouen, and of the  
one parte and also of the other were  
manye menne ouerthrowen to the  
grounde. And ye oughte to wote that  
wallerauen of sayete smote there deade  
manye a paynym, so that it was won-  
der to see his faices of armes for no  
persayn durst abyde afore him. And  
whan the admyrall sawe this: he said  
to himselfe, that he shoulde neuer see  
nothinge by hymselfe, but he shoulde  
auenge vpon Gelfraye that so tour-  
mented his folke. And anon he tooke  
a spere in his hand, and went ayenst  
Gelfray. And whan Gelfraye sawe  
that: he ranne aspyly vpon him and  
they gaue eche other suche strokes in  
theyr sheeldes that boche theyr spe-  
res flew in many peces, and with  
this cours was the admyrall ouer-  
throwen from his horse to the erthe,  
but Gelfray of Nasareth abode in p-  
arsons of his saddle. And whan the  
admyrall sawe him on the ground: he  
was angry for it, so tose he vp lygh-  
tely and set hand to his swerde and  
made greute semblant for to defend  
hym selfe. And whan Gelfraye of  
Nasareth sawe this: he turned hym  
to ward the admyrall and smote hym  
so great a stroke with his swerde vp-  
on his helme that he astonyed hym.  
And whan Gelfray sawe that he made  
no defence: he bowed his bodye to-  
ward him, and tooke the admyrall  
by the helme and wolde haue brought  
hym away. And whan the admyrall  
sawe that he was take: he cried Percy  
as loude as he myghte, so that his  
folke hearde hym and ranne there as  
he was, and deliuered hym from  
the

the handes of Gessraye and set hym  
vpon a horse and broughre him with  
them, whan than Reinawd saw that  
the batayll was so cruell: he sayde to  
Hawgis. Alas colyn yf I had my  
barneys I shoulde goe gladly succour  
our folke, for it is that thinge that I  
haue moste desyred as that I myghte  
beate armes apenst the sarasins, thā  
said Hawgis to him, ye are not wise  
to saye so, ye wot howe we been tra-  
ueylled of our pylgrymage, and that  
it is time that we rest vs a lytell and  
also the warre shall not be ended so  
soone, but that ye maye proue your-  
selfe in armes afore the holye cytie of  
Iherusalem be wonne, wherfore I  
pray you rest your selfe this nyght,  
and to morowe and god befoze we shal  
be fyghe our enemyes, for I haue de-  
lybered that I shall be no hermyte as  
longe as we ben together, but I shal  
helpe you with al my power, but one  
thinge I tell you that neuer whyle I  
lyue I shall cast no charme more, for  
I haue promysed it God and all the  
sayntes to whome I praye to keep  
me therfro, but I tell you that I loue  
you so hertelpe that yf I shoulde be  
dampned, yet shoulde I come oure of  
my hermytage for to succoure you yf  
ye had need. My colyn sayd Reinawd  
de I thanke you for youre good wyl  
and I knowe well ye saye trouth that  
we haue mylre of rest, but I canne  
not keepe my selfe, but I must goe to  
battayll. Alas that I haue not Bay-  
arde and slamberge my good swerde,  
for I shoulde doo this daye that god  
shoulde conne me thanke of it.  
Myghte soyr was Reynawd that he  
hadde nother horse nor barneys for

to helpe the chrysten folke.

**T**his hanging that Reynawd  
and Hawgis spake together:  
the erle of Rames, Gessraye of Fla-  
sarech and Wallerauen made greare  
slaughter of the turkes and of per-  
cians. And whan the admyrall sawe  
this: he with drewe his folke again in  
to the cytye of Iherusalem. For he  
myght no lenger suffre the great har-  
me and hurte that the chrysten made  
hym. And whan the chrysten sawe that  
the sarasins were discomfited: they  
chased theim sharpely, and slewe so  
many of theim that none canne tell  
the numbze. And than the erle Jaffas  
that was a worthy knight and a wi-  
se, he went to the gate of saynt steue,  
and kepte him there with his folke.  
And whan the Turkes came for to  
saue theimself within Iherusalem:  
the erle Jaffas went ayenst them and  
kept the passage that they myghte  
not entre at theyr ease with in the ci-  
tye, and there agayne were manye of  
them slayne. And the admyrall sawe  
that he was an angred for it, and  
tooke an other waye to the cytie to-  
warde the gate fore, and it happed  
than that the turkes passed afore the  
lodge of Reynawde and by the great  
preece and stampynge of their horses  
the lodge of Reynawd was broken  
and matted, wherof Reynawde was  
angrye. Than Reynawde looked a-  
bout hym, and founde nothyng for  
to fyghe wythall but a forke that  
susteyned vp theyr lodge, that was  
great & stronge. And he tooke it anon  
wyth both his handes and mouned  
vpon a wall that was by the waye



# The booke of the four

And as the turkes passed there by: he layed vpon them with a greace staffe and smote them downe, two and two at once as swynes, and to save the trouthe: Reynawde bringe thus vpon the broken wall slewe moche an hundred of them as they passed by him. And whan Hawgys sawe that Reynawd dyd so well, he tooke his palster and came vpon the Wall by him, and began to smite with both his handes so great strokes, that ther that he caught fel deade to the grounde. Whyle that Reynawd and Hawgis dyd these sayres of armes: came there the erle of Rames and Geffray of Nasareth that followed after the Sarasins with all dyligence. Whiche sawe the great quantite of deade Sarasins, that Reynawde and Hawgys had slayne vpon the waye by theyr promys in so muche that all mooste menne could ride no more that way, for y great heape of turkes that laye dead there, wherof the Sarasins were soze abashed. Than the erle of Rames shewed to Geffray of Nasareth the great slaughter that the two pylgrymes hadde doon and merueylled of him that held the forke that he was so greace and so valliaunt a man, and in lyke wise that other that helde the palster that was not so great. See said he howe y waye is couered aboure theym with this cursed folke, I beleue that they be felawes. A goddis sayd Geffray I merueyll what folke they are, I beleue that god hath sente theym to vs for our sayng, or elles they ben ouer hardye fooles sayng that they ben al naked, and fere not the deeth. Sit said the erle of Rames, what so euer

they ben: they doo like woorthye men. God al mighty keep them from hurt, daunger and from euell commaunce. For they haue well greued our enemies and I shall neuer be at myne ease tyl that I haue spoken with theym, for to wote what folke they be and from hence they come.

**G**REAT WAS the chafe that the erle of Rames, Geffray of Nasareth and wallerauen made after the Turkes and persians. For right great slaughter they made of theym or they were withdrawen within Iherusalem. For they leften not the chase tyl they were within the gate soze. Whan Reynawde sawe that all the Sarasins were passed he caste after them his great staffe for he could doo no more to the. And after he berhoughed hym and descended fro the wal, and sayde he wolde not lese hys forke and fer it agayne, for it shoulde serue for to make hys lodge as it dyd before. This hangyng: the earle of Rames cam from the chasyng again, and soughte the two pylgrymes for to speake with them, and he founde theim where they were makings of their lodge. Than he behelde them welkand sayde nothinge. And whan he sawe that they were so greace and so well shapen pryncypally Reynawde, for he wanted nothinge, he lighred from his horse and tooke theim by the hande, and made theim to sytte besyde hym. Whan they were set: he erle sayd to Reynawde. My frende, I praye you telle me trouthe of that I shall aske you. By the sayde that

ye owe to the temple where ye purpo-  
se to goe. Tell me youre names and  
whar ye be, and of whence ye come,  
and why you goe so poozlye arrayed.  
Sir said Reynawd sich that it plea-  
se you to wit of oure beyng, and of  
our name: I shall telle it you with a  
good wyll. Nowe wyte it that I am  
called Reynawd of Mowntawban,  
but Charlemayne hath called me  
thet from Wrongefully, the Duke Ai-  
mon is my father, and I am now co-  
me in to the holy londe for to serue  
our lord ayenst his ennies. For thus  
hath commaunded me to doo Char-  
lemayne my souerayne lord, whan I  
made peace with him. And that woo-  
se is: I must needes come thus pooze-  
ly arrayed as ye see beggyn my bre-  
de where so euer I goe or come, whe-  
re ayenst I wolde neuer goe for to ha-  
ue peace. Whan the erle of rames vn-  
derstoode Reynawd: he was gladd  
of him, and heaued by his handes to  
warde heauen and thanked God and  
after sayd. O noble knight Reynawd  
de of Mowntawban the best knyghte  
of the worlde, take heere my homage.  
For I gyue my selfe vnto you and al  
my goodes. And whan Reynawde  
sawe this: he sayde to the erle of Ra-  
mes. Stand by for ye profer me oue-  
rage. By god sayd the erle I shall ne-  
uer aryse yll ye haue graunted me a  
thyng. Sir sayde Reynawde, I  
graunte it you with a good wyll, and  
with good herte. Gramercye sayd the  
erle, and than he stoode by and sayde  
to Reynawde. Is it trouche that ye  
haue peace with the great king Char-  
lemayne? I las where been youre  
breyheren the worthy knyghtes and

Mawgys youre colyn, in whome ye  
haue so great trust, & your good horse  
bayard: Sir said Reynawd wit that  
I had peace with the kinge Charle-  
maine of the warre that so longe hath  
lasted by suche maner as I shall tell  
you, that it is that I must come heere  
in suche clothyng as ye see vpon me,  
and heere is Mawgis my colyn that  
is comen heere with his free wyll,  
for he is not constrayned thereto, for  
the kyng Charlemayn wenech he be  
deade longe a goe and my breyherne  
been abyden with my wyfe and my  
chyldezen. For the kyng hath returned  
all oure lyuelode vnto theym again.  
And whan the earle vnderstoode the  
trouche of all, he was ryghte gladd  
of it, so that he beganne to crye with  
a hyghe voyce. Ha duke Reynawde  
of Mowntawban, howe greatly be  
you welcome heere to vs, as the most  
balpaunte knight of the world blis-  
sed be the good lord that hath con-  
duyte you hether. And I praye you  
for god: that ye receyue myne homage  
so shall ye saue the worlhypp of the  
kyng Thomas that is nowe pryso-  
ner there within the cite, for and ye  
be oure capitayne and oure heade: I  
put no doubte but we shall well soone  
take Jherusalem. And thus shall the  
kyng Thomas be helyuered oure of  
the handes of the false sarasyns.

**U** Here came all the barons of  
Surrey that were full glad  
of the coming of Reynawd of moun-  
tawban, to whome they made grece  
reuerence, and scalled hym ryghte  
hyghly



## The booke of the foure

hyghly. And shortly to speake: they al  
prayed him to be theyr lord and head  
capitayne, and that he wolde gylde  
them as the erle of Rames had doon  
 afore. And whan Reynawode sawe  
that all the barons of Surre desy-  
red and prayed him so soze for to re-  
ceyue theyr homages: he sayde vnto  
them. Lordes sith that it pleaseth  
you for to doo me this great honour:  
I take it, saue alwaye the ryght of  
kyng Thomas whiche is your so-  
uerayne lord. Syr sayde the barons  
we will haue it thus. And thenne he  
receyued thei homagis, and whan  
he hadde receyued thei: the erle of  
Rames knelled before him and sayd  
Syr I wil that ye giue me now that  
thing that ye haue graunted me. Sir  
sayde Reynawode saue what it is and  
ye shall haue it. Syr sayde the erle of  
Rames it is that ye wyl vouchesau-  
re to be lodged in my paupillon and  
that ye spende none other good but  
myne. And if ye wyl giue any thing:  
I shall deliuer it to you, and I shall  
giue you syxe of my knyghtes for  
to serue you, Good earle of Rames  
gracemye of the worship that ye doo  
to me, than the erle tooke Reynawode  
by the hande and broughte so hym in  
to his paupillon, and made him to be  
serued as his souerayne lord, and  
whan all the barons hadde conueyed  
Reynawode to the paupillon of the er-  
le of Rames: they tooke leaue of him  
and went again in to their paupillions  
and thanked God that he hadde sent  
them suche a knyghte and so vally-  
aunte a manne to be their capitayne,  
and theyr Lord. And than whan the  
erle of Rames sawe that all the

barons were gon to theyr paupillions:  
he made to be broughte there manye  
good horses and fayre palfreys, and  
ryche raymentes of dyuers coloures  
furred with ryche furs and all ma-  
ner of good harneys for the warre,  
curaces and ryche helmes, and noble  
swerdes, and greute plentye of plate  
bothe of fyne golde and of syluer, and  
all thys he presented to Reynawode.  
But he wolde take nothyng but on-  
ly a complete harneys for his body,  
and a swerde that he chose there a-  
monge all, and an horse. And all the  
remenaunt: he made to be dealed to  
the pooze knyghtes that had myste  
and need of it. And whan the erle of  
Rames sawe that Reynawode hadde  
taken but one horse, one harneys  
and one swerde: he sayde vnto him.  
Syr for God take on you a nother  
raymente, for ye wot well it apper-  
teyneth not to suche a man as ye be  
for to goe clothed as ye doo. Sir said  
Reynawode pardon me and it pleas-  
se you, for I shall neuer wete none o-  
ther raymente but this that I haue  
nowe on, tyll that I haue kyssed the  
holy sepulcre wherin God was put  
after that he was brought downe fro  
the crosse. Sir said then the erle, doo  
as ye wil, and than he went to Swat-  
gys and said to him. I praye you pur-  
awaye this cappe and this hood and  
take other raymentes, syr said Swat-  
gys than I pray you be not dysplea-  
sed, yf I full fyll nor youre desyre at  
this tyme, for I tell you that I haue  
promysed that I shall wete no other  
cloth as longe as I lyue but such as  
the same is. Thenne whanne the erle  
sawe that Reynawode nor Swatgys  
wolde

wolde not take none other raymen-  
res for no chinge that he coulde saye  
vnto them: he was soȝ for it. And  
than he made the tableȝ redye for to  
goe to supper. And whan they hadde  
supped the cite of rames called wal-  
lerauyn of faret and Gelfray of Ha-  
zareth and sayde to them. Now thin-  
ke for to doo Well syth that god hath  
sent to vs suche succour. And whan  
the barons heard the cite speake thus:  
they answered we shal doo oure best  
by the grace of God. And than every  
man went to his paultion, and made  
greate plentye of torches to be tyed  
so that it was merueyles of the lighte  
that was in the hoste, and every man  
began to daunce and dispoȝe them-  
selve aboute cheir tentes and paulti-  
lions a longe while for Joye of the  
comynge of Beinaude. And whan  
turkes that kept the towre of Daup  
sawe the greate lyghte that was in  
the hoste of the chrisſten: they were all  
merueyld of it. Than some of them  
went and shewed it to theyr maister  
and loȝde. And whan the admyraille  
hearde the tydynges: he began to crie  
hie and said. O Mahomet: what cil-  
lech now that unhappi folke that ma-  
ke so greate feast. I beleue that they  
ben as the swanne is whan she shall  
die, for I am sure they shal one of the-  
se daies be all slaine, and therfore they  
make so greate ioye. And whan bar-  
bag the admyrall had sayde this, he  
swore by mahomet afore all his ba-  
rons that he shoulde make an issue on  
the morow for to heve all the chrisſten  
in peeces. Wherfore an olde paynym  
Betware your fleshe well of a greate  
kete that is there new come among

them, the whiche bereth a greate forke  
in his hande, for yf he hyt you: ye are  
but dead. I am well sure that all they  
of thosse make this Joye for that lye-  
den. I know him not sayd chadmyrall  
to the paynym, but and: I canne by-  
hym with my branke of Steele I shall  
make him leue his greate head behind  
him for a pledge till he cometh a-  
gain, for he is naked, and therfore he  
may not endure ayenst me.

**¶** Whan the kynge Thomas  
that was there prysoner  
saw the greate feast & ioye  
that the chrisſten made: wist not what  
he shoulde thinke, but said to himself.  
Ha goddes what haue now my folke  
that they make suche a noyse & suche  
a spozte, alas doo they not remem-  
ber me? I beleue better ye than naye,  
for the feast that they make now is  
for som what. Writ that they of ra-  
mes, and of Jaffes and of all the  
countrey aboute Jherusalem whan  
they saw the greate light: they wende  
that the cite hadde set a fyre, and so-  
me were soȝ afreide lest the hoste had a  
doo. Thus was all the countrey a-  
bashed, but they that were in thosse  
cared but litell for it. And whan they  
had spozed themselves ynoughe: they  
ordained the warche and after wente  
to rest. And whan the day was come:  
the barons rose and went to the paulti-  
on of Beinaude, whiche was by  
and redde, and they salued him true-  
rently, and after said vnto him thus,  
sit what thinke ye that we must doo:  
that we all save the cite or no? Lordes  
saide the duke Beinaude, me semeth  
that



that it were good for to giue to it a  
saues. For we haue great auantage  
afoze hande, for he that shall open  
the sawinge of the holpe citie: he shall  
be saued without doubte. whyles that  
the barons deuised this together for  
to giue a saue to the citie: the admyr-  
all of Berke made to open the gate  
afoze, and issued out of the towne w-  
ten thousande fightinge menne well  
armed. And whan Reinatode and the  
barons of Surry knewe it: they came  
to the barneys. Reinatode was ar-  
med incontinent, & tooke his helme  
and his swerde, and lighted vpon his  
horse that the erle of Bames had ge-  
uen him. And whan Reinatode was  
on horsebacke: Marogis armed him  
also, and mounted on horsebacke, and  
began to crye. Barons of Surry, be  
not dismayed in no wyse, for I pro-  
myse god I shall neuer retorne to be  
hermyt: yf the turkes be not dyscon-  
fited and ouerthrowen. And after  
he had sayde so: he went to Bessaye  
of Asareth and saide to hym. Ba-  
ron keep you by Reinatode, for if all  
the other knyghtes in the felawshipp  
were suche as ye be: Barbas shoulde  
be discomfited or noone, and whan al  
the barons were well armed and wel  
on horsebacke: they ordeined they  
battailles as wel as they could. And  
than came the admyrall barbas that  
smot in to the cite of the chrissten. The  
firste battaille of the sarrasins was  
conduited by a king that had to name  
Margarys that was lord of the towne  
of Tailes, whiche was ryght cru-  
ell, and bare in his armes a dragon  
pictured with an horrible figure.

**M**an the kyng Margarys  
saw it was time to smite  
vpon the chrissten: he spur-  
red his horse with his spurres & ran  
ayenst Reinatode. And whan Reinatode  
saw him come: he said to the erle of  
Bames, Heere cometh one to seeke his  
death with great haste, ye haue doon  
me great honoure, but this king shall  
haue by honoure for your loue at the  
first. And whan Reinatode had saide  
this: he spurred his horse and ranne  
ayenst Margarys so harde that no  
cher sheelde nor quyras could nor sa-  
ue him, but he shoued his spere thro-  
ough the brest and ouerthrew sterke  
dead to the grounde. And whan Rei-  
natode had gyuen that great stroke:  
he saide. Goe thy waye to heile the  
deuill speede thee and beare felawshipp  
to thy predecessours that went there  
afoze thee. And after he put hande to  
the swerde and smot another sarras-  
in so harde throughe the helme that  
he cloue him to the teethe, and for the  
withall he raught another vnder the  
bauere so that he made his heade to  
flee from the shoulders, and whan he  
had slaine these thre: he cried Moun-  
tauban vpon these panpys. And  
whan Marogis hearde hym: he put  
himselke amonge the Turkes so cou-  
ragiously, that the first that he reco-  
rted he sent him downe in to helle,  
and than tooke his swerd in his han-  
de and dyd merueylles of armes so  
that he slewe so many turkes that rei-  
natode and the barons merueylled  
greatly. Than saide Reinatode to the  
erle of Bames. What say you by my  
col in Marogis, saw you euer so good  
an hermyt: By my soule said the erle  
he

he is to be commended, blessed be the  
wounde that bare hym, and thours þ  
pe ben come in to this londe, for now  
I am well sure that Iherusalem shal  
be recovered, & the king Thomas de-  
lyuered out of prison with the grace  
of God. whan cherle of Rames had  
sayde this to Reyna Wde: he spurred  
his horse with the spures and smore  
a cutte such a stroke that he made the  
yren of his spere to aspere at the back  
of him that he fel dead to the erth, & af-  
ter heooke his swerde in his hand &  
began to cepe Rames as hie as he  
coude, sayinge barons smite now a  
good, for the persians shal be nowe  
better byscorned, yf god keep the  
balliaunt Reyna Wde of Mounawde  
& his ballaunt colin Mawgis. Now  
is the houre come that the traytoure  
Barbas shal finish his life, that th  
bettred the holy cite of Iherusalem  
by his false wit. Than did set on the  
barons of the londe, whiche began to  
make metuelles of armes apenst the  
sarasins. Who had seene that cyne  
Reyna Wde and Mawgis how they  
made way to them that cam after the:  
he wolde haue metuelled greatly, for  
I promise you none durst abide afore  
them were he neuer so hardy or balli-  
aunt, but he was slayne of them. Af-  
ter Reyna Wde and Mawgis, was  
cherle of Rames, Gelfray of Nasat-  
rech, and Wallerauen of sapere, with  
their folke, and thei made metuelles  
of armes apenst their enemies, and  
whan the sarasins sawe that they  
could not abide the grece domage of  
that the christe bare to them: they put  
them selfe to flyght toward the cite.

**¶** Than chadmirall Barbas  
saw that his folke were  
byscorned: he was an-  
gry for it & said to his folkes, why doo  
ye flee thus awai know you not that  
I am your lozde, that shal defend you  
apenst this unhappy christe? Where  
is Margaris become that I see hym  
not? Sir said one of the sarasins he is  
dead at the first Ioustinge that he ma-  
de, & whan chadmirall hearde this: he  
wend to haue gon out of his wyre and  
said who is þe hath bozme me so great  
harme as to slea the noble king mar-  
garys, is it not the great carle with  
the toke: yea sir said the folke, for he  
is called the best knyght of the world  
and also he hath brought this daye  
to deach many of your men with his  
handes. Muche soz was chadmirall  
for the deach of Margaris, and swor-  
te the god mahonne that he shoulde  
perse the herre in his bely. And whan  
he had made this oth: he gaue þe spur-  
res to the horse and put him selfe to  
the medle, and the first that he recoun-  
tered: was Wallerauen of sapere to  
whom he gaue such a stroke thorough  
the sheeld that he made his spere head  
to aspere out at the backe of hym and  
slew him dead to the erthe. And whan  
the admiral had giuen that stroke: he  
put hande to his swerde and wound  
him amonge the thickest, crying per-  
ce as hie as he coude, and saide ba-  
rons smite vpon this unhappy chri-  
stens, for now shal they be byscorned.  
And whan cherle Jaffas & Gelf-  
ray of nasatrech saw that chadmirall  
sared so foule with the christens: they  
put them in to the prece amonge the  
sarasins, and there was grece  
laughter



slaughter made of both pattyes, but  
at the last the chysten had ben shere-  
dely handled if Reynawd and ma-  
gys had not come lygthly there, Rei-  
nawd that sawe this harde barayll  
thoued him selfe amonge the thickest  
as a wolfe among a flocke of sheep  
and smot a persian that was colin  
to chadmyrall that had to name Oz-  
rende, and gaue him such a stroke to  
his swerde: that he made his heade to  
flee wel a spere lenger from his bo-  
dye with helme and all. And after he  
smote a nother that was neuer to  
Walbon, so that he slewe both horse  
and man with one stroke. To say the  
trough Reynawd made there so great  
merueylles of armes: that al the pay-  
nymes were sore abashed, for he had  
hys wheelde cast behynde his backe,  
and held the reyne of hys horse about  
hys arme, and helde his swerde in  
bothe his handes and habandonned  
his body smyng merueyllous stro-  
kes on ether side vpon the sarasyns  
so that he smot no stroke but he slew  
a turke or paynim. And whan chad-  
myrall sawe the great greef that Rei-  
nawd bare to his folke: he swore his  
god appoyln he shoulde neuer eate  
meate till he had slaine the great vil-  
lain. Sit said than the king Alez-  
dye to him. I pray you leaue this en-  
trepyffe, for I tell you for bety cer-  
taine th it if ye goe afore him: he shall  
kylle you with one stroke. Than said  
chadmyrall to him, yf I had nowe a  
good gupfarn in my hande he shoulde  
as lyll endure it, n efforce as shoulde  
a boy. for and I bring him not dow-  
ne: I shall neuer requyre to beare any  
armes more, nor to ryde vpon anye

horse more.

**M**uche cruel and harde tosse the  
medyng. Marogis was there  
that made great occysion fro the one  
syde and fro the other. And whan rei-  
nawd sawe Marogis that did so wel:  
he was glad, and so smot he a cutte  
vpon his helme suche a stroke that  
he cleued his head in two peeces, and  
so he smote a nother at the sydes so  
he cleued all his ribbes, and cural to  
gyther a sundre his bodye, and after  
this he smote a nother so that he hew-  
ed his heade cleue of, & one of his ar-  
mes, and whan he had slaine these. lit.  
with one entraine: he cried mounta-  
wan saying, smite barons, for the sa-  
rasins bothe turkes & persians been  
dead & ouerthrowen, and thinke to  
auege your lord Thomas, which is  
so excellent a king. And whā chadmi-  
ral barbas heard cry mountaowan:  
this worde abashed hym more than  
any othe thinge, for he knewe well  
than that he that his men called the  
great carle with y forke: was y vali-  
ant Reynawd of mountaowan, of  
whome he had heard speake of many  
tymes afore that, and that he was y  
best knight of al the worlde, and whā  
he knewe this: he wold ful rayne ha-  
ue be again in petrie, & than he took  
his way anon to ward the cite as a  
man discomfired and ouerthrowen,  
and dreye to the gate soze soze to haue  
gone in to it, but the vallpaunte erle  
of Rames pursued him so nyghe that  
he suffered him not to goe at his wil.  
And than the admyrall sawe that  
he was so soze pursued: he was  
aferde to be take, and so he smote  
his horse with his spures and gar in  
to

to the citie with great payne, & lefte all his folke behinde and saued hym selfe, but the moste parte of his men were there slayne. And whan Reynawde wyfte that the admirall of peccie was so scraped: he was right soze for it, and than he looked about him and saw there a great peece of cybze that had .xv. foote of length, he lygheten doune a foote and tooke the balke and trussed it vp afoze hym vpon his horse necke as lyghly as it had be some peece of welow. Than he sayd to them that had victori as wel as he. Lordes solo to me yf it please you, with a good will sayd the barons for we shall netter leue you, nother for death nor for life.

**N**ow wyl I tel you why Reynawde did take þe balke afoze sayde. Ye ought to wylt þe Reynawde bethought well that the admirall barbas should not make the gate to be shet after him, for loue hys folke should come in that were out, & therfore bare Reynawde þe great balke of the beme, to the ende that if he found the gate open: he should put it vnder the porte colisse that it should not be shet lyghly agayne. And after he had be thought hymselfe therof: he went on his way with the chrystens as faste as they coude runne towarde the gate of Iherusalem, where the admirall had saued hymselfe, & whan he came there: he sawe the gate open wherof he was glad, so tooke he than his beme and put it vnder the porte colisse, so that it myght not be lette doune, nor þe gate could not be shet nother, but ye may well know that

Reynawde dyd not this without great traualle, for there was so many bondes bothe quicke & dead in his way that he myght not well helpe hym selfe, but onethyng helped hym wel: for whan the Sarasyng saw hym: they were so fard of hym that they made him waye, & fled all afoze him.

**W**han the noble knyght Reynawde saw that þe porte colisse was well faste vpon the beme that he had brought there: without any taryng he put had to his sword and put hymselfe within Iherusalem. And whan he was in: he began to crye as hye as he myght. Hounta waban, Hounta waban, the citie is wone and made there so muche of armes þe Hawgys the Erle of Rames, and many other barons gate in by fyne force. And whan the Sarasyng saw that the chrystens were within the citie: they put themselfe so to flyght, & had them within the houses, where as they might for to saue theyr lyues and alwayes Reynawde was at the gate for to keep the entre. They that were vpon the grete towre of Dauid: cryed fast to the other Sarasyng that they should shet the gate, sayig that yf þe great lurdens entred within they should be all lost. And whan Reynawde saw that a great parte of the chrystens were within Iherusalem: he sayd to Hawgis, Cosyn keep wel this passage, and I shall go at another gate for to make it open. Cosyn sayd Hawgis goe your way hardely and doubt nothyng, I shall well keep this path. Than departed Reynawde accompanied with many barons.



## The booke of the foure

byaunt Chyrtians and went vnto a  
 nother gate whiche he founde well  
 garnysshed with paynymys but Reyna-  
 wode thozoughe his prowes put  
 them anon to flyght and gat þ gate  
 open. Thus as ye heere was doone  
 for all the sarasyns lost theyr lyues  
 and was recouered agayne the Citie  
 of Iherusalem, thzough the greates  
 prowes of the noble Reynawode of  
 Mountawban. And whan the ad-  
 myrall sawe this: he wende to haue  
 were mad all quicke and fared as  
 he had be out of his wytte and cur-  
 sed his goddes maho wnter & Appo-  
 lyn, & pulled his heres of his berde,  
 and rent all hys raymentes, and af-  
 ter he sayd. By Apollo the souerayn  
 God, yf Thomas helpe me not to  
 saue my lyfe: I shall make hym to be  
 slayne incontinent, and than he sent  
 for the kyng Thomas and sayd vn-  
 to hym. Kyng Thomas yee muste  
 chuse of two thinges thone, that is  
 that ye must saue my lyfe þ I maye  
 goo to percie agayne with two of  
 my men in my felawship: or els yee  
 to be now cast out of these wyndow-  
 mes do wne. Than sayde the kyng  
 Thomas, & please you, ye shal haue  
 pacience that I may speake with my  
 folke. So on said the admyrall to the  
 at this wyndow, for no fether yee  
 shal not go, and delyuer you lyght-  
 ly. Than went the kyng Thomas  
 to the Wyndowes, & saw Reynawode  
 of Mountawban & Walgys come  
 that cam at the forwest for to saue  
 the towne of Dauid, where he was  
 prysoner to the admyrall. And whā  
 he sawe Reynawode and Walgys þ  
 forwest of all: he kneke them not, &

looked fether, & sawe the erle of Ra-  
 mes behynde them whiche he knew  
 not well, and thā he aspid Gestray  
 of Nazareth, wherof he was glad  
 whan he sawe him, and than he begā  
 to crye. Lorde of Nazareth looke vp  
 to your king that is heere prysoner,  
 the admyrall Barbas sendeth you  
 worde that if ye let him not goe sauf  
 into his countrie and realme of per-  
 cie with two of his men with hym:  
 he shall caste me nowe do wne out of  
 thys wyndow. Than answered to  
 hym the erle of Ramcs, ha good kyng  
 god saue you, ye wot well þ a good  
 man ought not to make anye lye, it  
 is trouthe that yesterdaye wee made  
 our gouerner, & mayster of that lorde  
 that ye see heere afore vs, whiche is  
 the best knyght of the worlde and to  
 hym ye must shew your need, for w-  
 out hym we may doo nothyng. And  
 whan the kyng Thomas vnderstode  
 this tidinge: he wexed almoste oute  
 of hys wit for sorow, bycause he wōd  
 none other, but he should die an euil  
 death. Than sayd he to þ erle of Ra-  
 mes in great angre. Ha erle of Ra-  
 mes, haue ye betrayed me so, that yee  
 haue made a nother Lorde than mee  
 sayd the Erle to hym agayne  
 doubt nothyng, for wee haue doone  
 so, your ryght and honour is alway  
 saued in this behalte, nor ye shal nor  
 lese nothyng of your owne, for the  
 good knight hath ynough in fraunce  
 and ye must know that he hath take  
 this citie, he and his felow, and take  
 no suspencion of hym nor of vs, for  
 I am sure he shall doo euen as yee  
 wil yourself, for he is heere for none  
 other cause but for to delyuer you,  
 for

for as soone as he shall haue vpsit  
the holy sepulcre of our lord: he shal  
goe agayne to fraunce. Than sayd  
the kyng Thomas, lordes how is  
the knyght named? Syr sayd therle  
of Rames, he is called Reynawde of  
Mownta Wban, the sonne of þ Duke  
Aymon, and the best knyght of the  
worlde, for he is suche a knyght þ  
the great kyng Charlemayne might  
neuer greue hym, and yet haue they  
mayntened the warre. xv. yeres and  
more the one against thother, and so  
hath he done so many noble & great  
faytes of armes during the warre: þ  
the renowne therof is shewen ouer al  
the worlde. Ecle of Rames sayd the  
kyng, I pray you that ye wyl tell  
hym in my behalfe this that I haue  
sayd to Gessray of nazareth, Syr said  
therle wyth a good wyl I shall doo  
so. And than he went to Reynawde  
& shewed to him al that the king had  
sayd. Lordes sayd Reynawd we shal  
not doo so, but let vs sawe þ towre  
for at worst fall, we shal alwayes  
wel haue that apoyntment þ thad-  
myral asketh, & so I tell you yf we  
sawe wel: the towre shalbe lyghtly  
wonne by force of armes, & we shal  
deliuer the king Thomas at oure  
owne wyl, & so shal we slea barbas  
that thozoug htreason took þ citie.  
Syr sayd therle of Rames, we shal  
doo your commaundement doubt not  
of it, Thā commasided Reynawd þ  
the towre should be sawed of al sidz  
& made great plētic of ladders to be  
tyghted agaynst it, & he hymself be-  
gan fyrst to clyme vp wyth his sheeld  
for to couer him wyth, and after hym  
went Hawgis & than therle of Ra-

mes, & after them Gessray of nazareth  
& wel thyrty knyghtes mo, and  
men wyth resowes & other archers  
abode byneth for to shoot vpwarde,  
where they saw sarasins looke oute  
& whan thadmirall saw Reynawde  
þ wolde lare come into þ towre: he  
was soze aferde, so wylt he not what  
he should doo, but ranne to the king  
Thomas & caught hym by the necke  
& sayd to hi, by apollo thou & I shall  
lepe bothe at once out of this win-  
dow. Sir sayd the king kill not your  
self nor me also, for I shall make þ  
sawre to ceste. I wyl wel þ ye doo  
so sayd thadmiral, but ye shal come  
wyth me. So took he hym by the neck  
& had him to the wyndowe & sayd al  
hys Reynawde of Mownta Wban I  
shall angre you, for I shall caste the  
king Thomas downe if ye pardon  
me not, & I shall slea my self wyth him,  
for I may wel die after such a king.  
And whan the duke Reynawde saw  
that the kyng Thomas hynge thus  
the head downewarde ail redy for to  
fall: he had great pīrie of hym & said  
ha good lord what shal I doo: for  
if I leue the sawre, it shalbe greate  
shame, for þ towre is almoste taken,  
and of the other part it shalbe greate  
myshape yf þ good king Thomas  
take death for it. Th<sup>o</sup> as Reynawde  
was vpon þ ladder thynkyng what  
he might best doo: al the barons of þ  
lande began to crye to Reynawde,  
swete Syr suffre not that our kyng  
lese his lyfe, so it were greate shame  
to vs and to you also. Lordes sayde  
Reynawde by the fayth that I owe  
to my betherne and to my Cosyn  
Hawgis, I wolde not þ the kyng  
c.ii. should



## The booke of the foure

should take death for me, and when he had sayd so he came downe fro the ladder, and after cryed to the admiral. Leue the kyng Thomas & doo hym no harme, for ye shal be deliuered by suche a couenaunt that yee and your two men shall go on foote into percie and ye shall leue here al your goods. By mahoūe sayd thadmiral I wyll not doo so but shall ryde on horsebacke I and my two men, & so shal ye gyue me saufconduyt vpon your sayth, & if ye wil not doo thus I shall let fall downe þ kyng Thomas. Admyrall sayd Keynawde, þ ye aske I graunt it to you vpon my sayth, for ye haue with you suche a pledge that ye shal not be touched at this tyme for me. Thadmirall was ryght glad whā he heard Keynawde speake thus, so drew he vp the kyng Thomas agayne and sayde to hym, kyng Thomas ye shall go quite fro me, and than he wente downe with the kyng & opened the gate, & went out he & his two men. There was made great ioye betwene the kyng Thomas and Keynawde. And after of all the other barons offurte, and the great thanks that the kyng did to Keynawde and to Maugis: are not for to be named, & the langage þ was betwene them are so longe to be recounted. After this thadmiral tooke his saufconduyt and went his way toward percie. Here of him is made none other mencion, and after he was gone: þ kyng Thomas, Keynawde & all thother barons wēt togyther into þ towne, & whā they were come vp: the kyng Thomas kneld afoze Keynawde. Syr sayde

Keynawde ye ought not to doo so. Yee verely sayd the kyng, & whā Keynawde saw that he wept red for shame and tooke vp the kyng & thā the kyng colled hym and sayd. Blessed be our lord that brought you in this lande, for ye haue succoured Iherusalem the holy cite & broughte my self out of the sarasins handes. Now tell me and it please you if ye haue made peace w Charlemyne þ great kyng of fraunce þ hath doon you so great hinderaunce. Syr sayde Keynawde yea, & bycause of þ peace I am come here, begging my bread & poorely arayed, and whā the kyng Thomas heard him speake: he had great pitie of him, and swoze by the holy Sepulchre that he should araye hym honourably as to hym apperteyneth to retorne into fraunce. After that the kyng had sayd this woꝛde: they came downe fro þ towne of dauyd for to go to the holy sepulchre. And ye ought to wite þ they made great feast throughe out the cite of that was so besail. Thā went they al to the holy sepulchre, for to yeelde thākes to our lord of the cite that was recovered fro the handes of þ sarasyns. And whā all this was doone the barons of surte tooke leue of the kyng of Keynawde & of maugis, & after went euery man into his place in theyꝝ countrey, & the hig toke Keynawde & Maugis and broughte them to his palays where he feasted them a hundred dayes honourably. And this hanging: he shewed them all the countrey aboute Iherusalem, & whā Keynawde had sported him ynough with the kyng Thomas: he wolde

Wolde depart for to go agayne into þe marches of fraunce. And whan the kyng saw that he gaue to Reynawde many riche giffes, as hoxles, silkes gold & spuer & many other thynges in great plenti. And ye ought to wit that Dauidis wolde take nothyng noz chaunge his hermites araye in no wyse, but araped hym agayne as a pylgrime and bare foote, wherof Reynawde was sozpy. The kyng made a ship be redy honourabli at þe haven of Japhes, Reynawde ful tenderly weepynge toke leue of þe kyng & of his barons, and entred into the ship. And wit it þe by fortune of wepyng, they were well eyght monethes vpon þe sea, & at last they tooke lande at a towne called Valerne, & whan they had take lande: Reynawde commaunded that the ship should be unlade, & al thus as they unladed þe ship: the king of Valerne which was called Simon at puill loking out at a Wyndow of his castel, than he said to them that were aboute hym, I see ponder in the haven a shyp setteth her good a lande, and it cannot be but there muste be some great man in it, for I see hoxles that be had out a great riches, I cannot say what it may be, but it were pilgrimes, than he commaunded an hoxse for to be made redy: for he wolde spoze him selfe to the haven syde.

**T**he valyaunt kyng Symon of Puill wout any moze taryeng: came to the sea syde with many a noble knyght in his compaignye. And whan he was come to þe haven: he founde Reynawde þe was come a lande, & as sone as the king saw him:

he knewe hym well, wherof he was ryght glad, & also Reynawde knewe wel the good king Symon. So than enbraced they eche with other, and made great cheare thone to thother. Reynawde sayd þe kyng, ye be ryght welcome, I pray you come lodge in my castell, for thadmyral barbas is entred in my lande & wasteth it daily. I fought yester day with him, but he droue me out of the feelde thamefully & dyd great harme to my folke & I am sure he shal come to bespige me to morowe, & I had thought to haue sende for succours towarde Charlemayn, but sith that god hath brought you heere: I feare not the kyng nother his admiral of Percie. Syr said Reynawde I make you sure I shal helpe you withal my power, & if thadmyral come to morowe: he shal not mysse of batayle, for I shal neuer eat bread till I haue discomfited him. Than the kinge Simon brought Reynawde to hys palays, where he made him good cheere, and thus as Simon feasted Reynawde: came there a knyght that was calledymes that said to the king Simon Syr thadmyral of Percie is come befoze Valerne with so great folke that all therth is couered withall. Whan the kyng understoode these thynges: he was sozpy for it and Reynawde glad. Than sayd Reynawde to the kyng. Syr I pray you be not abashed of nothyng, for this daye shall ye be auēged and god befoze, & the holy sepulchre fro whens I came but late, and whan the kyng hearde Reynawde speake so: he made becried that euery mā should arme himselfe,



## The booke of the four

self, and whan Reynawde saw that: he sent for his herneys and armed hym, and sware the body of God he should doo greif to thadmiral & dai sith that he had found hym agayne. And whan Sawgys saw that Reynawde wolde arme him for to fight: he sayd to hym. Wy cosyn I am yet dysposed for your loue to beare armes, for I coulde not suffre you in daunger. And whan the king Symon hearde Sawgis speake so: he sayd hym great thanke, and went & embraced hym and after sayd, by my soule here is a good hermite for whan it was need he put wel hand to the swerde. Symon sayd Reynawde ye say well trouth, and I promyse you men should fynde in the worlde but fewe suche knyghtes as he is one. After all these thynges sayde: every man tooke his harneys and & kinge all armed went to Sawgys & sayd al laughyng. Wy freend Sawgis I pray you that ye wyl beare my standard this day. Symon answerde mawgys yf ye take me it: I promyse you I shall haue it in suche a place that ye shall wyte of euer ye shall come to me. And whan the kyng heard Sawgys speake so: he was ryght glad therof, and than he tooke him his baner. And whan Sawgis had it in his hande: he sayd to the kyng Symon now folow me that wil, for this day shall thadmiral be discomfited if it please God, & whan Sawgys had sayd so: he gaue the spurres to his horse & put himself amonge the sarasyns as a lyon. Reynawde followed him nyght & recounted a persian, whome he smote with his spere

so great a stroke that he made hym tumble dead to the ground, wherof thother were soze abashed & after he put hande to his swerde & shotted himself into the greatest pcece & smote on eyther syde of him vpon the persians so meruailouse strokes, & they were greatly meruayled wth, for al they that he hit: he brought them to thys ending, and whan thadmiral saw the great efforce of armes & Reynawde made a gaynst his folke: he sayd to a neww of his that was by hym. Wy mahoune I saw not yester day that great ma of armes, nother he that beareth now the baner of Symon, from whens the deuill are they come that so greatly greuenth vs: I see wel they be some straunge knyghtes. I am all redy so feard of them that all the blood in my body trembleth. This hangyng: the kyng Symon & Reynawde made great slaughter of the sarasyns. But whan the admiral saw that his folke bare themselves so yll: he wylt not whether he wolde flee or abyde. Than came Reynawde bykyng the pcece that cried as loud as he could, mounta whan. And whan thadmiral heard that cry he was soze a ferde & he wylt not whether to go but sayd by mahoune I beleue & this deuill helpeth himself wth some deuilty, for I left him in Iherusalem, and now he is here.

**U**han whan thadmiral Barbas knew that he & made so great greif to his folke was Reynawde of mounta whan: he shooke al for feare & said to his neww. by mahomet my god, we haue doone yll to come herte for to make warre a gaynst

gaynst the king Simon, syth that he hath this deuill Reynawde of moun-  
tawban, for his like is there not in  
all the worlde of knighthode, no w  
wolde I be wel in my ship in the mid-  
des of the sea, for yf I abyde hym: he  
shall make an ende of me. For sayde  
his folke haue no doubt of þe grete  
villayn, for and he come ones in our  
handes: he shall not lyghly scape vs  
lozdes sayd thadmyrall, ye wot not  
what ye say, ye know not the grete  
prowes of Reynawde, for & we were  
ten times mo folke than we ben: yet  
should not we endure agaynst hym,  
& therfore by þe sayth that I owe to  
mahoune I wil abide here no leng-  
ger. And whā he had sayd these wor-  
des: he turned þe hyndel, & as sone as  
he might fled to warde his galays, &  
al his folke after him. And whan  
Reynawde saw þe paynems were  
discomfited: he began to crye, after  
þa wgis after for the truaures are  
discomfited. And whan he had sayd  
for he put hymselfe to the chace, & the  
king Simon after him, & went ca-  
sting downe þe sarasyns as beastes.  
And wye þe they slew so many of the  
that men should not beleue the num-  
bre, but they coude not take thadmi-  
rall: for he was the forrest.

**B**arbas the admyrall of þersle,  
whan he founde hymselfe saued  
in his ship: he began to looke a lande  
and saw the great damage that Rei-  
nawde & þa wgis made of his fol-  
ke, for all the shoces of the sea were  
ful of sarasyns slayne, wherof he had  
great sorow, so began he to pull his  
heres of his berde, & cursed thoure þe

euer he was bozne. Reynawde came  
to the shoces & saw that thadmyrall  
was saued, wherof he was full sorow  
& wye not what he should doo moze  
to him, but he made to be cast boltes  
of wyde syze into the galley of thad-  
myrall, so that he bzent þe moste part  
of it, and Barbas was fayne to en-  
tre into another ship. And ye ought  
to wye that all þe sarasyns that bode  
a land: lost theyr liues. whan þe king  
Simō saw that he was to his aboue  
of his enemies: he was ryght glad  
of it, so ranne he and embraced Rey-  
nawde and after sayde to hym, Rey-  
nawde I know wel that I am big  
by your prowes, for & ye had not be  
the admyrall Barbas had destroyed  
me, and had made an ende of me.  
Wherfore it is reason: that ye be re-  
warded for it, & therfore (Reynawde)  
I make you lozde of all my goodes  
& of all my lande. Than sayde Rey-  
nawde, syþ I thanke you muche of  
your good wyl, for we be not they þe  
haue discomfited the sarasyns. Is  
was god and none other, for we be  
not so puppant, I and þa wgis  
for to doo it without him. And whā  
they had thus spoken togerher a lōg  
whyle at the sea sydest he kyng tooke  
Reynawde with the one hande, and  
þa wgis with the other hande, and  
went to warde the Litie. And whan  
they were come there: the king made  
the gayne to be brought, & presented  
it to Reynawde and to þa wgis,  
wherof Reynawde & þa wgis wolde  
take nothyng, but gaue it to the  
pooze knightes, & incōtinent þa w-  
gis tooke agayn his hermites weed  
Than began þe feast to be there great  
for



## The booke of the four

for the victorie that god had giuen them. The cheere that þe kyng made to Reynawde in his palays is not for to say, for it was great, and for to make shorte tale: Reynawde was honourably feasted þe space of foure dayes. And than he wolde departe, & asked leue of the kynge, wherof the kyng was ful soþ bycause he wolde bide no lenger, and whan he sawe þe he wolde go: he gaue him mani fayre giffes, & made his ship to be garnished w muche good vitayles. And whan this was doone: Reynawde tooke leue of the kyng Symon & of hys barons, and the kyng conueyed Reynawde to the shipp. And whan he came to the parting: the king Simo kissed Reynawde soze weepynge, and after went agayne to Baletne, and Reynawde did doo hale vp saile and tooke sea, & ceassed neuer tyl he cam to Rome, and there they tooke lanie and he and Maugys went and confessed them to the Pope, and whan they were confessed: they returned agayne into the shipp and tooke theyr way to warde Fraunce. Shortly to speake they dyd so muche by theyr iourneys þe they came to Ardeyne about noone, & whan þe pleople of Ardeyne wist þe Reynawde & Maugis were comynge they were neuer so glad, & went to alarde and sayd, wit þe your brother Reynawde our lozde is come and also Maugis your cousin whole and sound thanked be god.

**A**nd than whan Alarde and hys brethern heard thesetynges of theyr brother Reynawde þe was come: they had almost mou-

ned for great sope that they had, and anon went to the gate of the towne agaynst theyr brother, but they found him þe he was all redy in the towne, & whan they saw him: they ran him agaynst and Alarde embraced hym fyrst weepynge, and after kyssed him by great loue & in like wyse dyd Guichards and Richarde, and thā kissed Maugis theyr good cousin. And woth they had thus welcomed hym: they wet together in þe palays, & whā they were there, Alarde said to Reynawde saye brother tell vs how we haue founde our cosyn Maugis. Brother sayd Reynawde I founde him in Constantinople bi fortune, & than he began to reherse vnto them all his aduentures that he had sith he became pilgrime. And whan he had tolde al he looked on his brother Alarde in his face & saw he was pale, whiche gaue hym suspencion & sayde. Saye brother how is it with my wyfe and mi children: I meruaile me moche þe I see them not here. Brother sayd Alarde haue no doubt for theym, for they ben whole and sound at Mountauban, and wist it that sith your departing: we haue wo repayre agayne the towne, & haue doone garnissh the castell w vitayle ynoughe, for feare of warre þe any thyng had happed vs amys. And than whā Reynawde hearde good tydynges of hys wyfe & of his children: he was right glad of it, and so he kneeled do wne and thanked God of it.

**W**han Reynawde knew that hys wyfe & his childre were wel: it recomforted him muche & begā to

to make good chere, but whā he saw  
that his byethern made no great ioy  
he meruayled much: so turned hym  
selte towardē Alarde & syghed soze  
and sayd to hym. Brother I awayte  
for to heare some heuie tidinges I  
trowe that, that ye haue tolde me is  
not trowth, and if ye tel me not how  
is it of al: I shall go fro my self, and  
therfore I pray you tell it me, for I  
wyl know it. Whā alarde saw that  
Reynawde helde him so short: he be-  
gan to weepe full tenderly and than  
said vnto him. Sir sith that it please  
you that I tell you the trowth: I shall  
do so. wit it that my lady your wife  
is decessed out of this worlde vnto  
god. For euer sith she departed she  
ceased not her sorow for nathing  
that we could doo of the vnto her.  
And than she cast all her clothyng  
into a fyre and wolde neuer were vpon  
her but a soze marel & a smocke,  
e so longe she wept and sorowed day  
and night that she died at last, wher  
of I am soze for it, for she was the  
goodliest and the sayrest of all the  
worlde. Whā Reynawde vnderstode  
these wordes: he smoured downe to  
the erth for great sorow & he tooke  
at his herte of the death of the good  
duchesse Clare his wyfe, & whan he  
was come agayne to himself: he be-  
gan to weepe & sayd, O king Char-  
lemayne, how wel may I hate you:  
by you haue I lost my wife, for she is  
dead because she se that ye chased me  
out of Fraunce with so great shame  
to make me goe a foote, begging my  
bread lyke a trauant, but I knowe  
well that my synnes ben cause of al  
this. And whā Reynawde had made

hys mone: he sayd to Alarde his bro-  
ther, saye brother I pray you come &  
shew me the tombe where my wyfe  
is begraue. Brother sayde Alarde  
in a good wil, I shall do so, and thā  
he brought him to the churche where  
his good wife the Duchesse was bur-  
ied. And whā Reynawde cam there  
he smoured thre times vpon her  
tombe, and whā he was come againe  
to himselfe: began to make great sor-  
ow, for he rented his clotyes and  
pulled his haire. And whan he had  
sorowed longe: he said as a man re-  
plenysshed with sorow. O god what  
a pylgrym I am. I beleue that there  
is none in the worlde moze unhappi  
than I am: For I see I wel that I  
haue lost all my ioye and my confort  
sith that I haue lost the sayrest lady  
of the worlde and the goodliest. And  
as he was speakyng these wordes:  
came there his chyldren Aymon &  
Jonnet that kneeled before the fath-  
er. And whan Reynawde sawe the  
kneelyng afore him: he wold, as he  
should haue byt. So tooke he them  
vp and kissed them by great loue all  
weepynge, and after sayd to them.  
My saye chyldren see that ye be good  
men, for I seere me that ye shall misse  
me soone. And whan Reynawde  
had sayd this to his chyldren: he be-  
gan to make moze sorow than he had  
doone afore & so did Hawgis. Thā  
began the sorow throughe al the towne  
right grent, and lasted .x. dayes with-  
out cease, and whan came to the  
xiii. daye: Reynawde tooke hys way  
towardē Mounta whan that was  
almost as well peopled as it was  
of the warre began. And Hawgis  
habam



## The booke of the four

Habadorned neuer reynawde where  
 so neuer he went but went alwayes  
 on foote in his hermites araye, and  
 as they went thus to Mountawban:  
 the bzyethern of Reynawde & his chil-  
 dzen went on foote for to bere com-  
 pany to Hawgys theyr colin. And  
 when they of Mountawban knewe  
 y<sup>e</sup> coming of theyr lord: they were  
 ryght glad of it, & made al p<sup>r</sup>estetes  
 for to be hanged with saye clothes,  
 & they came agaynst him al together  
 makynge great ioye, and made hym  
 great reuerence, & welcomed him ho-  
 nourably. And Reynawde receyued  
 them gladly & made the good cheere,  
 for at that tyme he dyllimuled hys  
 sorowe y<sup>e</sup> he had at his hert, bycause  
 he should not dyscomfote hys folke  
 y<sup>e</sup> so great ioy made for hys comynge.  
 And also they of Mountawban wel-  
 comed mawgis honourably, bycause  
 they loued him of olde very well, &  
 the they brought Reynawde making  
 great ioye vnto the castell, and whā  
 Reynawde founde himself wythin  
 hys castell of Mountawban: he was  
 glad of it, and came to a window &  
 looked downe into the towne, & saw  
 that it was as well peopled as euer  
 it was, and had meruaile of whens  
 so muche people was come there for  
 to dwell & he was ryght glad of it,  
 for he wode neuer to haue seen mou-  
 tawban in that plyght as it was be-  
 fore the warre began. After that the  
 feast was ended: Reynawde called  
 his bzyethern & sayd vnto them. Loz-  
 des I holde me bestroged for loue of  
 y<sup>e</sup> good duchesse, whiche I haue lost  
 wherof I am ryght heuy for it, for  
 loue of y<sup>e</sup> great goodnes that I haue

knowen in her, I make my votue to  
 god that neuer whyle I lyue I shall  
 neuer mary agayn. Colin sayd maw-  
 gys ye doo well, but I praye you re-  
 comfote your selfe, for ye know wel  
 that a thyng that may not be amen-  
 ded must be left alone. Colyn sayde  
 Reynawde ye say well & I shall doo  
 so. When Reynawde, his bzyethern &  
 Hawgys had doone great cheere y<sup>e</sup>  
 day at Mountawban: Hawgys on  
 the morow next tooke leue of hys co-  
 lyns & wēt agayne to his hermytage  
 & when he wolde depart: he sayd to  
 Reynawde, Colin remēbre you wel  
 that for you are dead so many folke  
 for whom ye beholden to pray god  
 y<sup>e</sup> he wyll haue mercy on their sou-  
 les. And whā Hawgis had sayd so  
 he tooke his way & wolde not suffre  
 no body to conuey him, and he dyd so  
 muche by his tourneys that he came  
 to hys hermitage, where he lyued a  
 holy lyfe. For after he was come a-  
 gayne to his hermitage: he etc neuer  
 but herbes and rootes of the wood,  
 & in this maner wyl liued Hawgis  
 the space of. vii. yeres y<sup>e</sup> he sawe no-  
 ther man nor woman. And when it  
 came to the. viii. yere: the good maw-  
 gys decessed fro this worlde about  
 Easter. Jesu for his pitie pardō hys  
 soule. ¶ Here leueth the hystory to  
 speke of mawgis whome god pardō  
 & tourneth to speke agayns of Rey-  
 nawde, of his bzyethern & of hys chil-  
 dzen how they were made knyghtes.

¶ How Reynawde sent his two sō-  
 nes to y<sup>e</sup> kynge Charlemyne muche  
 honourably. for to be made knygh-  
 tes at Baris.



**I**n this party the doeth this toz  
 that after that Hawgys was  
 returned agayne to his hermitage,  
 Reynawde was euer after loz for  
 hym & also for his wyfe. But he re-  
 comforted hymself as wel as he mi-  
 ght with his brethren. A long while  
 abode Reynawde with his brethren  
 making as good chere as he could,  
 and wit it that aboute that tyme di-  
 ed the olde duke Aymon which left  
 greute goodes to his children, but  
 shortly to speke: Reynawde reparted  
 & gaue all his goodes as well that  
 he had of his owne, as þ was fal-  
 len by the death of his father Aymo  
 vnto hys brethren except onlpe þ he  
 reterued for himself the castell and  
 town of Mounta Wban, and found  
 the wayes that they were al maried

noble & rythelp. Who þ should speke  
 of the brethren of Reynawde and of  
 theyr dedes: it were to long to be re-  
 colled. Reynawde thā dwelled lōge  
 at Mounta Wban with his children  
 which he endoctrined & taught in al  
 good and vertuous maners as wel  
 as he could, & nourished them tyll þ  
 they were men, and coulde beare  
 bothe sheelde and spere. And vpon a  
 daye he had theym to the feelde on  
 horssebacke, and made to be broughe  
 there spers and sheeldes for to assay  
 themselves, and tooke with hym twe-  
 ty knights, whome whan they were  
 comen in the feild: he made his chil-  
 dren to iuste with. And ye ought to  
 wit that þ two sonnes of Reynawd  
 Justed as well as thought they had  
 be hauntynge the warre ten peares  
 and



## The booke of the four

& more. And whan Reynawde saw that they did so wel: he called theym afore hym & afore the knyghtes and sayd to them. Wyf saye childzen that be our lord, ye be alle men and well made of body. It is now tyme that ye were made knyghtes, wherfore I wyl that ye go serue the king Charlemayne your souerayne lord whiche shall make you knyghtes, for of more noble hande ye canne not be do wbed to the noble ordre of knyght hode. Wyf sayd Wymonet, we are redy to fulfyll your wyl in every thing þe commaunde vs. Father sayde Wymonet ye say well to vs, for it is tyme that we folow the warres, but sith it is your pleasure to sende us to Charlemayne: we must go there honourably, but it canot be without great cost. Wyf sonne sayd Reynawde, care not for the cost, for we haue good ynoughe, graunte our lord, for to byngge you there accordyng to your estate, & I promise you, I shall sende you there on I be. vii. night elder as honourably as any went thither in my tyme. Father sayd the childzen we are redy to goe whan it please you. Whā Reynawde had sayd this to his childzen: he went home agayne to Mountaubā wel toylful of his two sonnes that proued so well, & whan he was within his castell: he called his steward and sayd to hym. Steward I commaunde you that ye array my childzen honorably & richelye of diuerse maners of clothing and of thynges that longeth of them, for I wil send them to þe court of the king Charlemayne, for to be made knyghtes of hym, & see that they goe as ho-

nestly as any went thither this xx. yeres. Wyf lord sayd the steward, I shall wel doo your comaundement sith þe it pleaseþ you, for ye haue inough clothes full ryche of your owne of diuerse colours.

**W**han the steward heard þe comaundement of his mayster without anye taryng he dyd right well al that was commaunded him by Reynawde, for he made to be redy many palfreys and coursers well habed and couered wyth ryche cloth of golde with belles of siluer & gylte in great plenty, and purueyed for two good harnepyses al complete, for speeres & swordes and for al suche other thynges as apperteyneth for the two yonge bachelers. Shortly to speake: it was not possible to araye better two yonge squiers than þe two yong sonnes of Reynawde were by þe purueyance of his steward, and whā all thynges were redy: he brought the before his maysters. And whan Reynawde saw this: he was glad & said by god steward I conne you thanke that ye haue purueyed so wel for my childzen, & Reynawde made. v. knyghtes wel redy to bere company to his sonnes. And whan they were al redy: Reynawde called to his sonnes and sayd to the. Wyf saye sonnes ye be wel apoynted thāked be god, & heere is a saye bende of noble mē to beare you felaowschip, & therfore ye shal now go to þe court of Charlemayne our great kyng, whiche shall make you great cheere and honour for my loue, my childzen ye be of his lynage & ryght noble, & therfore beware þe ye doo no thyng

thyng ayenst your noblenes ne that  
myght retorne to anye shame to me  
nor to your ignage, and I comaund  
you vpon the faith that ye owe to me  
that the money that I deliuer to you  
now, ye dyspende it honestly, & spa-  
re not to doo good therewith to poore  
gentilmen and yonge bachelers that  
wold faine come to worlship, & whan  
ye haue all spended it honestly sende  
to me for more, and ye shall haue y-  
nough and aboue this I charge you  
that ye serue god alwaies afore anye  
thyng that ye haue a doo, and that ye  
speake no worde foule oure of your  
mouth to no lady nor damsell, wor-  
ship your better and loue your neygh-  
bour, and so shall you be prayesed of  
euery man. Moreover I charge you  
that ye liue frendly togither as two  
brethren ought to doo, & to you yonger  
my fayre sonne. I commaunde you þat  
ye bere honour and reuerence to your  
brother, for he is your elder, þat know  
ye well.

**T**han sayde yonger, father be  
you sure I will serue my de-  
re brother as I wolde doo you, that  
are my lord & my dere father. By my  
faiþe faire sonne saide reynard, if  
ye do so ye shall be prayesed for it, wher-  
someuer ye come or goe. But yet one  
thyng I forbidd you that ye speake not  
to muche, for if ye doo the contrarye  
the frenshemen shall saie, that ye be  
not like in condicions to your paren-  
tage. Father saide the childrene,  
we haue such a trust in oure lord  
god þat he shall keep vs from al thing  
that is contrarye to his will, and  
that we shall so gouerne vs, that ye  
shall gladiue auowe vs for your chil-

dren, all they of the courte of Charles  
mayne shall loue vs but ye they wil  
doo wrong, & whan Reynard heard  
his children speake so he was right  
glad therof and dreeve them aside and  
said to them. My fayre children ye  
goe now into fraunce, remember well  
beete affect al which I shall tell you  
now, ye must know þat there be in the  
courte of Charlemaine a great syg-  
nage of folke that neuer lousd vs  
but liel, the which are of the greate  
power thei be of maite. I charge you  
that ye ne goe nor come wth them, for  
noþing þat they can tell you, & if they  
hurt you by any wise: see þat ye reuege  
your selfe wpsely, & the wetherem þat ye  
be the sonnes of Reynard of mount-  
caban. Father saide the childrene,  
doubt not we shall nor suffre þat anye  
outrage be doo to vs if we mai. Faire  
children saide reynard, kneele a-  
fore me, & they kneeled anon afore  
their father & reynard gaue the his  
blessyng, & after kissed them weeping  
manie times & gaue them leaue & af-  
ter turned him to his knyghtes, and  
saide. My lordes I commend you to  
god, & pray you þat ye tend wel my chil-  
dren & suffre not þat any wrong be don  
to them to your power, for ye knowe  
wel þat we ben hated in fraunce, & I  
praise you giue the alwaies good coun-  
sell, and that thei be alwaies courte-  
ous gentil & liberal of their goddes,  
for a pryce couetous was neuer prai-  
sed, & whan reynard had said this: he  
withdrew him soe weeping. Thus  
leueth chiffoze to speake of reynard  
& of his brethren, and retourneth to  
them of his children, that were gone  
to the courte of Charlemaine.

D.I. Now



The booke of the foure

Howe after that the kyng Char-  
lemayne had receyued ful sweetly the  
sonnes of Reynawde: they foughte  
with the sūnes of foulques of Mo-  
ryllon, & discomfited them in the p̄lle

of oure lady, within parys, bycause  
they had layde treason vpon reynaw-  
de they: father, for cause that he had  
slayne foulques: in the playne of  
Valcoloures.



**N**owe the wech the tale, that  
after that Simonet & ponnet  
were departed fro they: father: they  
rode so muche by their Jounneys,  
that they came to parys, and lodged  
themy by the palays, and when they  
were lodged: the two childrē clothed  
themselve honestly & all they: folke,  
& than they went with their felaw-  
shipp, holdyng eche ocher by the han-  
des to the palays. And when the  
barons of Charlemayne sawe come  
the.ii. brethren so ryche arayed and  
so goodly a felawshipp of knyghtes  
after them, they metuayled greatlye  
what they myght be, so said chone to

chother, heere be two sayre chyl dren &  
by lykelyhod they shoulde be byethrē  
and they must be of som hie lignage.  
The barons the folowed them, whā  
they mooved to the palays, & they en-  
tered with in the great hall. where thei  
found the king Charlemayne, that  
deussed with some of his barons, &  
there was the duke naimis. Richard  
of Normandy, & salamon of byetern,  
Ogper the dane, thele Guanello &  
also Constans and robars, which.ii.  
hated reynawde of Mounta Woban  
ryght sore, for they were the sonnes  
of foulques of morillon & reynawde  
had slayn in p̄ plaine of valcoloures

Whan he and his bretherne defended them so wel at the roch of Moubon these two bretherne Konstans and Rohars had great name in the court, but their bettes were full false, and the king Charlemayne loved them well for they were good and grete knighthode. With Charlemain were also many other grete princes and barons wherof the booke maketh no mencion. For it were to long a thing for to be recounted.

**U**han whan the two brethern the sonnes of Aina Wode of Mounawb. n were come in to the hall: they saw the king amonge his barons so towe they vnto hym, and kneeled downe afore him, and kissed his feete. And than Aymoner spake first and said. Sir god giue you good life & longe, and keepe from euill all youre noble companie. Sir we are come to you for to haue the ordre of knighthod, if it please your good grace to giue it to vs, for of no better hand than is yours: We can not haue it, wherfore sir we beseeche you humbly for god and for the loue of our father that it will please you to receiue vs in your seruise vnto the time ye giue the saide ordre of knighthode, who be you said þ king that speake thus? Sir saide Aymoner. we are the sonnes of Reynawode of Mounawban. And whan þ kyng Charlemayn vnderstoode that they were the sonnes of Reynawode: he rose vpon his feet lyghly and receiued them honourably, and aske said vnto theym. My chyldrene, ye be righte welcome and go w faterly your father: sy sayde the

chyldrene, he doo he well thanked be god, and he recommedeth him right hūbly to your good grace, beseeching you that ye will haue vs for recommeded, and we haue left hym at Mounawban, but he dwaleth now fore to age. Thus goeth the worlde my chyldren (said the king) euery man must take in it an ende. Duche glad was the kyng Charlemayne of the comynge of the two sonnes of Reynawode, and ryght gladly he looked vpon them for the loue of theyr father, for the more he behelde them: and the more sayet he founde them and better lyked them, and well he loved them, because they were lyke the father. And whā that he had looked vpon them ynough: he said to his barons. Lordes if the chyldren wold forsake the father: they coude not, for neuer chyldren were more lyke to him, than they, & whan he had sayde so: he turned toward the chyldren and sayde to theym. Saye chyldrene ye shall be made knyghtes at al tymes whan ye will, for the loue of youre father my good frend, and I shal giue you more londes than your father hath, and for loue of you: I shal make an hundred knyghtes more with you, for ye ben of suche a stocke come that ye be worthy for to be honoured praised and holden dere. And than whan the duke Raimon, Roiland & Oliver that came there and all the other Bretes of Fraunce sawe that they were the two sonnes of Aina Wode of mounawban: they were ryght glad of it, & than euery man kissed theym by great loue, and asked them howe Aina Wode and his bretherne dyd,  
D. ii. lordes



# The booke of the four

lordes saide Symonet, what are you  
that be so glad of our coming, Chil-  
dren saide the duke Raymes, we ben  
all youre kinnemen. And than the  
duke Raymes tolde them all thei-  
r names. And whan the childre knew  
what that they were: they necked  
themselfe before theim honestlye and  
after ponnet sayde to theim. Lordes  
our father greeteth you wel, and pray-  
eth you that ye wyl haue vs for re-  
commended as youre kynsmen. And  
than whan the barons heard the two  
children speake so wisely: they were  
glad of it and also of their coming.  
But the two sonnes of Foulques of  
Mozyllon were full sorow and worbe  
for it, by my soule sayde Constance to  
his brother Rohars the father of the  
se two childrene slewe our father,  
wherof the hert in my body swell-  
eth bighe for angre that I see them heere  
noher min eyen can not looke vpon  
them, brother said Rohars, nor I no-  
ther by my trowthe, but I counseil  
not that we fight with them nor hee-  
re, for it were folow. But let vs awate  
a tyme and place couenable, for syth  
that they shall dwell heere: we shall  
auenge vs vpon them. Brother said  
Constance, lette vs doo one thyng,  
that I shall tell you, whiche is easie  
for to doo, that ye shall calle the one  
of treason: and I the other, sayinge  
that they father slewe our father by  
treason. And also we shall proue that  
their father wroughte treason agens-  
t the king Charlemyne, brother sayde  
Rohars, ye speake well, but we must  
suffre a while till we see howe they  
shal bere themselves in court, for if they  
doo any other wyse than they oughte

to doo: we shall mooue kille them and  
be not blamed for it. After this doon:  
ye oughte to knowe that the children  
of Reynawde of Mounta whan, bare  
themselfe full honestlye in court, for  
all the barons loued them dere, saue  
only the two sonnes of Foulques of  
mozyllon, wherof Symonet and pon-  
net perceyued it ryght well, and spar-  
ke not with them, nor haunted theim  
nor. It was grente meruayll of the  
great giftes of the sonnes of Reynawd  
gaue to the Barons and gentilm-  
en of the court of Charlemyne, as were  
fayre horses and hatnaps and many  
clothes of spike of dyuers coloures,  
and in lyke wise they gaue to the la-  
dyes and gentilwomen fayre gounes  
of clothe of golde and of syluer. And  
of the other parte they kepte a great  
estate and good house to al pooze gen-  
tylmen and squyers, and dyd so much  
good that they were greatly praised  
of euery manne. What shoulde I  
telle you moze: the childrene of Rey-  
nawde dyd so muche in the court  
of the king Charlemyne: that of all  
the world they were loued, and prin-  
cypallye of the kinge Charlemyne.  
Whan the kinge sawe that they be-  
haued theim so well and so wisely in  
his court: he was ryght glad of it so  
loued he theim mooste of anye yonge  
knyght of his court, and made them  
his keruers a fore hym. And thenne  
whan the two sonnes of Foulques  
of Mozyllon sawe that the kyng  
loued theim so muche: they were full  
angrye, in so muche that they wered  
mad all quicke for angre of it, and  
so swate by greate angre that they  
shoulde slea the, or euer they shoulde goe

from the courte. It happed so that  
vpon Whysunday euen as the kyng  
was at Paris, and wolde keep ope  
courte, and there was Aymoner and  
ponnet with the other barons in the  
halle. This hanging: arroued there a  
knyghte of Almayne that presented  
to the kyng a fayre knyfe after the  
facyon of the londe, then called the  
king ponnet a gaue it him by greate  
loue. And whan ponnet had receiued  
this gyft of the kyng: as he shoulde  
haue gone to his place agayn: he sho-  
ued Constans with his elbowe a-  
yent his will. And whan Constans  
sa w that ponnet had doon so: he had  
greate dispice at it, and saide. What  
is this: must there be so muche set by  
these two boies the sonnes of a trai-  
tour, whiche been not woorth a roten  
apple: this one is all redde become  
so proude that he hather now shoued  
me with his elbowe by great enuie  
and pryde, muche other langage con-  
stans saide by ponnet: whiche he  
ought not for to saye, and whan pon-  
net hearde that Constans had called  
him the sonne of traytour: he was so  
re an angred. So came he to him and  
saide Constans ye haue learned a  
foule craft, that is that ye can speake  
shrewdely withoute a cause la w full  
why, for I haue hearde that ye haue  
called me and my brother the sonnes  
of a traitour, & that the kinge know-  
eth well that our father slewe yours  
by treason, wherof I will ye wote  
that ye lie falsely, but your father did  
assail oures by treason as a traitour,  
come of the lignage of traitoures.  
But God wolde not that my father  
shoulde dye so, nor myne vncles.

my father slewe your father, it is true,  
but it was in his defendynge of his  
body, & he did then as a noble knyght,  
as he is, and if ye be so hardy that ye  
will maincein that he did it by treaso-  
re: heere I cast now my gage afoze this  
noble companye, saying that ye haue  
lied falsely, saue the reuerence of the  
kinge Charlemanyne, and of his fe-  
lawshipp.

**U**han whan the kyng Charle-  
manyne sawe that none of the  
barons said nothyng of the stryfe of  
ponnet and of Constans: he was an-  
gry for it, and sayde. Constans ye doo  
greate wronge for to saye that I and  
the Welue peeres of fraunce know  
well that Ketna Wde of Mouna W-  
han slewe your father by treason, hol-  
de your peace said Charlemanyne, for  
ye know well how the matter is ye  
shoulde not speake of it, wherfore I  
commaund you in as much as ye fea-  
re to angre me: that ye make amēdes  
to ponnet of that ye haue said, or elles  
voide incontinent my courte and my  
realme, for ye haue troubled all my  
courte, wherof I am not contente.  
And whan Rohars hearde this that  
the kinge Charlemanyne had sayde to  
Constans his brother: he was angry  
and so rose on his feere, and said. Sir  
I am redy to proue vpon Aymoner &  
his father slew our father by treason  
and heere is my gage. Rohars saide  
Charlemain, heere ye take a wronge  
wafe, and it shall be to you ouer late,  
whan ye shal repent it. Whan Aymo-  
ner and ponnet vnderstoode these  
wordes: thei kneeled afoze the kyng  
Charlemanyne and saide to him. Syr



The booke of the foure

for god we praye you to gyde humblye  
that ye take the gages & Rohars  
hache caste, for with goddes grace we  
shal wel defend our father of the tra-  
yson, that they put vpon him. Childre  
saide the king, sith it please you that  
I take them: I shall doo so, and than  
the king Charlemayn took the ga-  
ges, & Constans auauenced himself &  
saide. Syr we vnderstonde that we  
shall fyghte two and two, the one a-  
gainst the other. ¶ Whan the kynge  
Charlemayne had take the gages of  
baraille of Constans and of Rohars:  
he asked theym Who shoulde be theyr  
sureties, than lete forth the traypoure  
Guanelon, berenger, Escouf of mo-  
ryllon, Lyon of pygnabel & Gryffon  
of hauthaunche, the whiche said to  
king Charlemayne, syr we will be  
sureties for Constans & Rohars, for  
they be of our lygnage. Lordes saide  
Charlemain I take them you to kee-  
pe, and I charge you to byng them  
again to the court whan time shal  
be. Syr sayd the sureties we shal doo  
as ye commaund vs. And whan the  
king had receiued the sureties of Co-  
stans and of Rohars: Symonet and  
ponnet came forth, & said in this ma-  
ner. Sirs heere been our gages howe  
that we will defende that our father  
shew neuer foulques of moxillon by  
treason. Children saide the king Char-  
lemaine ye speake well, but I must  
haue surety of you as I haue of the o-  
ther party, yf I will doo reason, than  
lete forth Rowland Dyuier, the du-  
ke Raimes of baupre, Ogier of den-  
marke, Richard of Normandy, and  
Escouf the sonne of Dedon, which  
said to the kynge. Syr we be sure-

ties for the sonnes of Reinald, & we  
shall present them to you at the daye  
of barail. Sirs saide the king Char-  
lemayne it please me wel, but the  
chylidren of Reynawode been not yet  
knightes as ye know, but by the sai-  
de that I owe to god they shall be to  
morrowe, and than we shal sende our  
letters to Reynawode that he come to  
see the battayl of his chylidre, for this  
daie forty dayes I deuyse it. Whan  
the euyng came: the kynge Charlemain  
made be called bys stuarde and sayde  
to hym. Goe and byng me to morrow  
the sonnes of Reynawode, for I will  
that they ben to morrow named knigh-  
tes, and see that they been well ho-  
noured, for I will doo this for the lo-  
ue of theyr father, and putury so that  
they haue eche of them a good cour-  
ser and good harnays meete for thei-  
r bodyes. Whan the stuarde hearde the  
commaundement of the king Char-  
lemayne: he dyd well the renour cher-  
of. And whan the morning came: the  
stuarde brought Symonet, & ponnet,  
well apointed, and in theyr compa-  
nye all suche other as the kynge for  
their loue wolde make knightes that  
daye. And whan that they were afoze  
the kinge: Symonet and ponnet re-  
quyred the ordre of knyghthode, to  
whome the kinge gaue it with good  
hearte, and in lyke wise the other for  
loue of them, and than was a greace  
feast made that daye. And whan the  
feast was finished: Charlemain too-  
ke a messenger, whiche he sente vnto  
Reinald of Mountauban, and sente  
him word that he shoulde come to the  
court with good compaignye, for bys  
chylidren were called of treason, by  
the

the sonnes of Fouques of Poillon  
sayinge that he had slayne they; sa-  
ther by treason, and howe his childre  
had cast their gages, sayinge that  
they had lyed falsely.

**U**han when the duke Reinald  
de heard these rydynges that  
Charlemayne sent hym: he meruay-  
led of it soze. Then sent he for all his  
betherne by his letters. The shoulde  
com to him in armes, for it was nee-  
de. And when the betherne of Rey-  
nald understoode these rydynges:  
withoute anye sayinge they came to  
the brother at Mountaiban. And  
when Reinald sawe them he was  
glad and kyssed them thone after the  
other, and after he tolde them al that  
the king Charlemayne had giue him  
to knowe, and when the betherne of  
Reynald understoode it: they mer-  
uaylled of it, brother saide Wycharde  
doubte not, for the mater shall come  
bettes than ye weene of, by the grace  
of god. I counseill that we goe to the  
court of the kyng Charlemayne. For  
when we shall be there we shal soone  
understonde the kinges mynde, and  
what his will is towarde you, and I  
promyse you, yf he hath doone anye  
wronge to our newe wes your childre  
god neuer haue mercye on my soule,  
but I shal sle him, what hap therof.  
Brother saide Reinald I wyl wel  
that we goe to Paris, and when we  
shal be there, we shal wel understand  
howe the king Charlemayne berech  
himselfe to ward my children. Bro-  
ther sayd Alard, ye speake well & wi-  
selye, & me semeth after myne aduise  
that we oughte to goe thither without

anye longe taryinge. And when they  
were there to accorde: they departed  
fro Mountaiban with a right noble  
company, and so muche they rode by  
their Jorneyes that they came to the  
ciste of parys. And when they were  
come there: al the xii. peeres knewe a-  
non of their coming, and went a-  
gynst them, and brought with them Ay-  
mon & yonner, and receyued Reinald  
& his betherne with great ioye & ho-  
nour. And when Reinald said his  
two saye sonnes: he said to them in  
this wise. My children now shal it be  
seen if ye be my sonnes or no. For and  
ye be my chyldrene, ye shall auenge  
me of that great shame that these tra-  
itors put upon me without a cause.  
Fader said the chyldren: doubte not  
therof, for & they were. x. a-  
gynst vs, yet shall we ouercome them by the  
grace of god. For euerys man knowe  
eth well that ye be as true a knyghte  
as any is in the world. And when  
the kyng Charlemayne knewe the  
comynge of Reinald that was come  
so well accompanied: he was gladd  
of it, and sent worde to Reinald  
that he shoulde come to him, & the which  
thyng Reinald dyd, and when  
the kyng saw him he made him good  
chere and with good beere, and also  
to his betherne. And when Reinald  
had be with the king a longe whi-  
le: he tooke leue of him & went to his  
lodges again, and when he was there  
he callede his betherne and his chil-  
dren & said to them. My sonnes come  
hither, tell me howe the kyng Char-  
mayn berech himselfe towarde you,  
& what he sayth of this quarrell that  
ye haue undertaken. I muste knowe  
the



the trowth of it. fater sayd the chyl-  
dren, wot it that the kynge Charle-  
mayne loueth vs muche, and he en-  
creteyneth vs aboue all other honou-  
rably, for the loue of you that he lo-  
ueth ryghte much, as he sayth. And  
than they tolde him how he had ma-  
de them knyghtes, and how he suste-  
ned their quarell ayenst the traytous-  
tes, and all other.

**¶** Han Reinalde and his  
brythern heard the chyldre  
speake thus: they were  
glad of it, for they doubted lest Char-  
lemaine wolde haue faren euell with  
them. And whan Reynald of mou-  
tauban wist that the king had boyne  
hymselfe so wel toward his sonnes:  
he saide that he shoulde serue hym e-  
uermore as his souerayne lord. And  
on the morowe Reinalde went for  
to see the king at his risyng from his  
bed and thanked him muche of the  
greate worshipp that he had doone to  
his chyldren. Than said Charlemai-  
ne to him. Reinalde euer syth that  
I sawe that ye dyd my commaunde-  
mente with good wil, & that ye were  
obeynge to me: I dyd caste all myne  
angre from me, and all the euill wyll  
that I had ayenst you, and I wil that  
ye wit that I am wel yours, and shal  
be as longe as I lyue in this worlde,  
for I take you for one of my best  
freendes. And whan Reinald heard  
þe debonairetie and the kinde wordes  
of the king: he cast himselfe to the feet  
of him, and in lyke wise dyd all his  
brytherne, and thanked him muche,  
& wot that Reinald & his brytherne  
abode in parrys with greate ioye and

pleasure vnto the daye of the batayll  
that shoulde be of his chylderne. And  
this hangyng: Reynald had doon  
make good harnays for his chyldren  
and had pourueyed two good horsys  
for them.

**¶** Han whan the day of the ba-  
tayll was come: the chyldren  
of froulques of moyllon came and  
presenced them afore the kynge redy  
for to fyght. And whan the kyng saw  
them: he saide to theim. Chyldrene ye  
haue had euill counseyll to chalenge  
the sonnes of Reynald of Mou-  
tauban, as ye haue doon. For I am  
sure, it shal repent you, but this is  
not the first fault that your lagnage  
hath doon, nor it shal not be the last.  
I feare me of it. And whan the earle  
Guanelon & al they of þe lagnage of  
froulques of moyllon heard the king  
speake so: they were so greatlye abas-  
shed, þe they wist not what they shoulde  
doo, but kept al their peace, & aswe-  
red no word. And than said Constans  
to the king. Syr: we pray you for  
god that ye wyll telle to vs the place  
where we shal fight ayenst our ene-  
mies. Than stood vp the duke Ray-  
mes of baupere, & said, syr: Constans  
speakech well, ye must deuise the pla-  
ce, and where they shal fyght two a-  
yenst. ii. or one ayenst a nother alone.  
Raymes sayde the kyng, I wyll that  
ye Iudge this matter, sit sith that it  
please you so: I shal bespeake it with  
a good will. Syr: said the duke Ray-  
mes, me semeth, bcause that Con-  
stans hath called the sonnes of Rey-  
nald to batayll both for one matter:  
that they oughe to fight two ayenst  
two

natwode to battayl both for one matter  
that they ought to fyghte two ayenst  
two, and al foure togyther. So they sayd  
Reynawde, the duke Harmes sayth  
fyghte well. By my fath Reynawde  
sayde the kyng Charlemayne, and I  
graunte it so, but I wyll that the ba-  
taye be made in the ysle of our ladye  
within sauolne to morow in the mo-  
nyng. And whan the kyng Char-  
lemayne had sayde thus: the barons  
tooke leue of him, & eche of the went  
to their lodges, and Reynawde also  
the which toke his two sonnes with  
him, and the two sones of Foulques  
of Hozyllon went also with theyr  
freendes. Whan Reynawde and his  
brytherne had souped, and had made  
good chere: he made bynge harnes  
ynoughe, and made Alarde and Ry-  
charde, and his two chyldren ap-  
monet, and yonner, to be armed. And tha  
he made to be shewd to Aymonet  
and to yonnet howe they shoulde de-  
fende themselves of their enemyes, and  
in what maner they shoulde assaile  
them. And wha that this was doon  
Reynawde byd sende bys chyldren to  
sainte Aycoure and the traptoures  
went to saynt Germaine for to war-  
che that nyghte. And whan the daye  
came: a byshop that was of the ig-  
nage of Constaunce and of robars san-  
ge masse afore his colins, & the bys-  
hoppe Turpyn said masse afore the  
sonnes of Reynawd, which was with  
them at sainte Aycoure, and also the  
true peeres of Fraunce. And whan  
the yonge knyghtes had hearde the  
masse: they came al in their harnays  
to the palays befoze the kyng Char-  
lemayne. And whan the kyng sawe

them: he called his newe Rowland  
and Oliver, the duke Harmes of ba-  
uyere, and Rycharde of Normandy,  
and sayde to them. Lordes ye ben all  
my menne. I commaunde you vpon  
the trouche that ye owe to me, that ye  
goe keep the feild by such maner that  
my honoure be saued by it, and that  
ye keep to euery man his fyghte. For  
by the fath that I owe to god, yf the-  
re be any man so hardy that wyll doo  
any outrage: I shall angre hym right  
soze. Wherfore I wyll that ye passe  
the water of Sayne, in to the ysle  
with the fyghters and that ye beare  
with you the halowes, for to make  
they in swete there vpon, a soze they  
shall enere in to the feilde, that they  
goe to it all in good quartell: truly. Sir  
saide the barons, we shall doo youre  
commandement, and also we shall  
keep therein well your honoure, for we  
ben bounde thereto. Lordes sayde the  
kyng Charlemayne, ye speake wel,  
but ye must take good herde well to  
all. For there shall be great folke ga-  
thered of the one parte, & of the o-  
ther, wherfore I feare me that some med-  
lynge shall happe amonge them. For  
Robars is full of greete reason, and  
all his freendes I knowe well. And  
of the other parte. Reynawde & his  
brytherne are fyghte pynsaunce and  
wille, and they haue great power with  
them, and they wyl not see themselves  
wronged, and namely Rycharde the  
brother of Reynawd, for if he be ong-  
angry: he speareth nother kyng nor  
erle. And therfore I feare him most of  
all the other, for he wolde once haue  
slayne me, I am yet remembred ther-  
of. Of Reynawde I doubte not for  
he



he is in every thyng reasonable. So  
saide the duke Raymes he not dys-  
mayed of norþyng, for we shall keep  
well your ryght and your honour  
With out to doo any wronge to any  
body. This hanging: the children of  
Foulques of Morillon went to the  
saide yle, where as the king Charle-  
main had told them that they should  
fight. And whan they were passed o-  
uer the riuer in to the yle With their  
horses: they bounde them and than  
they set them selfe do Wne upon the  
saite grasse, waytinge after theyr  
aduerser partie. Now heare What the  
traicoures had ordeyned, ye ought to  
wyt that Whyle the kynge Charle-  
maine had spoken with his Barons  
as ye haue heard: Berenger, Adock  
and Griffon of haute branche dyd  
put them selfe in a bulke, nygh by the  
saide yle of oure lady, and purposed  
that yf the sonnes of Reynatode had  
the better of the feelde apenst the two  
other sonnes of Morillon: that than  
they shoulde ysue oute vpon theym,  
With a right great numbze of folke,  
for to slea them shamefull.

**W**han that Reynatode saw  
that it was tyme that his  
sonnes shoulde goe to the  
yle for to accomplissh their bataille:  
he called Tymonet, & said to him, com  
hither saite sonne ye be the eldest, and  
therfore ye ought to be honoured afo-  
re the yonger brother, holde I geue  
you flamberge my good swerde, by  
the which ye shall take vengeance  
of these traytours. For ye been in the  
righte, and they in the wrong, facher  
said Tymonet, ye may be in a suretie

that ye shall see this day suche a thing  
that shall be to your bettes toye, for  
we shall bring the traytours to their  
shamefull death, & it please god. And  
whan Reynatode heard his sonne so  
dallaunty speake: he was glad, and  
kissed him. And than he gaue hym  
his benediccion, and in lyke wise co-  
ponnet. And whan he had doon this:  
he broughte his brotherne & his chil-  
dren to the yle of oure lady. And whā  
they were ouer: he and his brotherne  
came again towarde the kynge. But  
as they wolde haue gone: there came  
a messengar that ascrid to Reynatode  
de as loude as he might. Reynatode  
haue mercy on thy children. For yf  
thou see not wel to them: they be lost.  
Wyt that Griffon of haute branche  
is embulshed with a greace numbze  
of folke by the yle for to slea thy chil-  
dren. And whan Reynatode vnder-  
stoode these wordes: he blusted red  
in his face all for angre, and sayde.  
Ha sweet traunce, that it is great do-  
mage that ye may neuer be With oute  
traytours. And whan he said this:  
he called his brother Richard, and  
said to him. Saite brother goe wyth  
our taryng, and arme your selfe, and  
doo arme al our folke, and than bring  
theym to the yle and if the false tra-  
coute Griffon of haute branche come  
for to greue my childerne: slea hym  
incontinence. And whan ye be there:  
doo that ye maye be seen of both par-  
ties. And for God keepe well yf the  
sones of Foulques of morillon haue  
the better: that ye help not in no wise  
my childerne, but let theym dye if it  
come so. For it were greace by sho-  
noure for vs: yf ye dyd otherwise,

Bocher sayd Richarde, let me alone  
therof, our wo:ship shal be saued by  
the grace of god. For I wolde not  
helpe yf it came so for al the good of  
the worlde. For all oure lyfe dayes  
we shoulde be rebuked of it, & all oure  
lygnage also. And whan Richarde  
had sayd so: he departed fro his bre-  
thern, and went and armed hym and  
all his folke, and then they lyghted  
on ho:sebacke, & went anon there as  
Reynard had sayd. This hanging:  
went Reynard to the kinge in hys  
palays, and when the kyng sawe  
him, he sayde to him Reynard ye be  
ryght welcome. Syr sayde Reynard  
de, god encrease youre honoure, and  
whan Charlemayne saide not Ri-  
charde with his brethren: heooke  
some suspencion of him and sayde to  
Reynard. Where is youre brother  
Rycharde that he is not heere with  
chother. Sir sayd Reynard he is  
gone there as I haue sent him but  
take no suspencion at al for him: no-  
more I doo said Charlemayne as lo-  
ge as ye be a lue, but we must goe  
vpon the towre of Saine for to see the  
bataille of youre chyldren, let vs goe  
there, Sir said Reynard whan it plea-  
se you, whan went they vpon the tou-  
re, & with them the byshop Turpyn  
salamon of byeten, Ogier the dane,  
Gaidellon of baupere and manye o-  
ther barons.

**T**hus as the kyng Charle-  
mayne was gon vpon ycou-  
re for to see the battayll: he looked &  
saue come the brother of Reynard,  
and a great company of men armed.  
And whan Charlemayne saw him:  
he knewe hym well, for he bare hys

owne cote of armes, and Rycharde  
had doon so for bycause he shoulde be  
known. And whan Charlemayne  
saw this: he was all abashed of it,  
and thenne he called Reynard and  
sayde to hym. What wyl ye doo Rey-  
nard, wyl ye dyshonour me: haue  
ye forgotten all reddy poute trouter:  
Syr sayde Reynard nay, saue your  
reuerence, but I wyl serue you and  
wo:shyp you as my souerayn lord.  
wher said the kyng Charlemayne,  
is Rycharde gon in to the ylle of our  
lady with so great felawship for to  
breake the feelde of the which chyn-  
ge. I shal be dyshonoured: Sir sayd  
Reynard haue no doubte therof, for  
I take god to suretye and waraunte  
that knoweth all thynges that ry-  
charde shal doo nothyng that shal  
turne to your dyshonour ne to no do-  
mage to you, and I shal tell you wher  
my brother rycharde hath put hym-  
selfe in armes, ye must wye that the  
crayoure Gryffon of haubtraunce  
is embusched vnder Bayne Marcell  
in a gardyn with a greaie numbere of  
folke armed, that wyl breake your  
feelde for to slea my chylderne. And  
therfore hath my brother armed him  
for to succoure them if neede be, and  
yf ye see that rychard doo any thyng  
against your wyl and comaunde-  
ment: heere I am, that vpon me take  
the vengeance. Is it trouthe sayde  
Charlemayne, that Gryffon hath  
doon so as ye saye: pea said Reynard  
verely, for I wolde not tell you none  
otherwise. Wight angry was Char-  
lemayne whan he hearde that Rei-  
nard had tolde him. Whan he swa-  
re god and all his sayntes, that if he  
might



might take Griffon of haubraunch: that he should make hym be hanged, and all his folke with him. He called than Salamon, and the carle of poiters and Guidellon of bauere, & said to them. Lordes make me anon a thousande knyghes to be armed. For I wil go in to ylle for to see the pryde of these traitours. And I sweare you by saint James, yf I may they shall doo me no more dyshonour and yf I cane fynde them they shal aby it ful dectely. Syr sayde Reynawde ye speake lyke a kynge. The barons than dyd that Charlemane had sent in to the ylle sawe recharde with his folke in armes. And whan rowlande sawe that they were armes: he was not well contente with it, and sayde to the other Barons that were come wyth hym for to keepe the feelde. What wyl Rycharde doo: blame haue the kynge Charlemane yf he take not vengeance vpon Reynawde of that they haue doon agens his commaundement, by my faith said Diuier and the duke Raymes yelape well. Than sayd Dyuer, lordes I promysse you that Reynawde knoweth no thinge of that, that rycharde dooth. Thus as the peeres of fraunce were spekyng of that rycharde was come in to the feelde in armed Griffon yfsted out of his busshement with his folke, bicause he was aferde that rycharde wolde greue the chyldren of Foules of Hozillon. And whan rowlande sawe hym: he cryed to him with a lie voce. By god traypoute this shal nought auayle you for afore that aye stroke be gnen of theur: they shal make theyrothe, and ye

shall aby it full dectely that ye haue doon. Rygh: so ye was Rowlande whan he sawe the foule treason that Griffon wolde haue brought about. This hanging: came there Charlemane wyth a great company of folke well armed. And whan he sawe Rowlande: he sayde to hym. Renewe whys doo ye suffre the outrage that the sonnes of Foules of Hozillon wolde doo to the chyldren of Reinawde, of mountawban. I blamed Reynawde, bicause his brother had armed him: but I know now wel that they had reason, sir said Rowlande none ca beware of traitours. Renew said Charlemane yelape trouth: but by the fayth that I owe to god. I shall make them all to be hanged in bylpyte of all they: lygnage onely for treasoun that they haue doon this day. By god syr sayde Rowlande ye shall doo well. And than came there Reynawde vpon a palfrai without sword. And whan Rowlande sawe hym: he saide vnto him. Syr Reinawde is it your will that Rycharde your brother is com hither in armes: sir rowlande sayd Reynawde, yelapely, for nothing that I haue doon shal nor be hydde from you, ye haue now seen treasoun that the traitours wold haue wrought agens my chyldren, & therefore whan I knewe their falshode: I commaunded my brother Rycharde he should put himselfe shortly in armes to my men for to succour them yf the traytours came them vpon, & yf ye thinke yf rycharde or I haue doon anys in any thinge: so let the kynge make Justice of it. By my soule said Rowlande, nother you nother your brother

brother be not to be blamed, but ye  
haue doone as good knight: should  
doo. And I promise you that your  
enemies shalbe this day brought to  
shame and confusion.

**A**nd whan Rycharde of mou-  
ntauban sawe Charlemayn:  
he knew well that he was come for  
to keepe the feild, and that the tray-  
tours should not con doo any thing  
to his newes. So said he to his fol-  
ke let vs take of our harneys. For  
syth that the kyng is heere himself:  
we need not to wayte heere no more.  
Than went Rycharde and his folke  
and dysarmed them. And whan Ri-  
charde had doone so: he lpyght agayn  
vpon his horse, and came agayne o-  
uer the ruer of Sayne swyminge  
vnto the forsayd yle. And whan he  
was on lande: he spurred his horse,  
and made him to lepe thre or foure  
lepes afoze the company. And than  
he came streight afoze the kyng, and  
made to him reuerens honourably.  
Whan the kinge sawe Rycharde: he  
said to hym, and ye Rycharde wyll  
ye dyshonour me, that are come in  
acme for to breke my feild: he said  
Rycharde saue your grace, for I ne-  
uer thought it, but wyte it well for  
certayne, that yf Bryffcon of haut  
braunche had come for to greue mine  
newes: I wolde haue made his for-  
head for to swete. He ye be our so-  
uerayne lord, so ought ye to mayn-  
ten and keepe vs. and so shall I tell  
you a thing afoze al your barons, yf  
ye beleue the traytours of Wau-  
re: ye shall ones repent it. I am well a-  
payed that ye & your .xii. peres haue

seen the treason of Bryffcon of haut  
braunche, how he wolde haue slayne  
mine newes. He by god said char-  
lemayne, ye save trouth, he is well  
worthy to be blamed, and I tell you  
they that shalbe ouer come shalbe ha-  
ged, nor shall not be saued for none  
of thei lynage. He said Rycharde  
it pleaseth me well, but I tell you yf  
ye I should dys: I should neuer suf-  
fer my newes to be wronged. He  
my head said the kyng, ye shall see  
that I shal doo treason vnto euery  
party. For I shal byng them toge-  
ther, let god walpe the right. Than  
whan Charlemayne had sayde so: he  
went to the two chyldren of Fou-  
ques of Mozyllon, and sayde to them  
now lordes hye you of that ye haue  
to doo, goe and swere vpon the ha-  
lowes yustly ye entre in this qua-  
rell. He said they we shal doo it  
w right good wyll, for the chyldren  
of Reynawde ben dead, but yf that  
they confesse, that they father slew  
our father by treason. Then spak y  
bischop Turpin, and sayd, Lordes  
come hither, and swere vpon the ha-  
lowes, & see to that ye forswere not  
yourself, for he that forswereth him-  
self shalbe ouer throwen, no doubt  
therof, whan the bisshop Turpin  
had said this: the two sonnes of Fou-  
ques of mozyllon knesled downe a-  
foze the halowes, and swore that rei-  
nawde of mountauban had slayne  
they father by treason, & after they  
had made they othe: they kyled the  
halowes, and offred two belans of  
golde. And than went and lpyght  
vpon they horses. And th<sup>e</sup> as they  
lpyghed: they were to nye eche other



## The booke of the foure

so that thone hurted thother so hard: that they fel do done almoste both to the erth. And whan Reynawde saw this: he sayd to þ other barons heere is an euill token. I beleue that they ben forsworne. This hanging: cain the childzen of Reynawde, that kneel- led afore the halowes and Moze þ the two sonnes of Foulques of Wo- ryllon had lied falsely all that they had sayd. And then they put their hæ- des vpon the halowes, and offred a ryche gifter, and þ Bysshop Turpyn gaue them the benediction, & in lyke wyse the kynge Charlemayne, and all the other barons, & than of Rey- nawde, and of his byethern and after they wente and moued vpon their hoyses lightly.

**W**han the foure Champions were vpon they hoyses: thei made none other tarpenges: but gaue the spures to they hoyses, and ran one against an other and smote eche other in theyr sheeldes so sore: þ the spures flew in peeces without þ any of them fell on the ground. And whā they had broken their spures: thei set hande vnto theyr swerdes. Than Ymonet that helde Flamberge in hys hande sayde vnto Yonnet hys brother. I pray you brother thynke to doo well. for if ye helpe me, they shal be vtterly shamed and discomfi- ted as traytours as they ben. Bro- ther sayd Yonnet doubt not, for I shal neuer faile you to the deash, & also we ought to recomfote vs. for we ben in the ryght, and they be in þ wronge. Whan the two byethern

had spoke ynoughe: they went both at ones vpon theyr enemyes, wryth theyr swerdes in theyr handes. And than Ymonet ouertooke Constans with flamberge his sword, and gaue him suche a stroke that the sword flyded vpon the viser, and hurt it and his nose a sunder. And whan Ymo- net sawe that the nose of his enemye fall to the erth: he mocked him & said to him. By god Constans it is wor- se with you than it was afore, for ye shal neuer ben without a moke, for that, that this stroke hath doone vnto you, for flamberge slew your fa- ther, and so shal it doo you & it please god. And whan Rohars sawe that his brother was so sore wounded: he ranne vpon Yonnet and gaue hym so mighty a stroke vpon hys helme: so that yf it had not ben of good fine Steele: he had laine hi without faile. This hangyng: Ymonet ranne a- gayne vpon Constans and gaue hi suche a stroke vpon hys helme, that he made him for to bowe hys backe vpon the saddle, & for the great myght of the stroke: the horse muste for veri need fall down vpon his knees, and smote his mustell into the erth. And whan that the horse felt that stroke: he rose lightly vp agayne all a- trayed, and began for to runne thow- ghe þ medo was maugre of his mai- ster as mad, nor Constans had not the myghte for to rule hym: bycause he was a maled and a stoned of that stroke, that he had receyued. And than Ymonet and Yonnet wente bothe vpon Rohars, and beganne to fare foule with him, and whan Rohars sawe hymself so sharpe

handled: he began to crye with a hie  
voyce. Brother where be you, shall  
pe let me thus to be slayne faillly: Co  
stans that ranne throughe the me  
dow was comen agayne to himself  
and apealed his hourse a litle heard  
his brother crye. So came he agayn  
to hym: and smote Aymonet vpon  
his helme a great stroke, but the hel  
me was good, and dommagid hym  
not. And whan that Constans sawe  
that he had not slayne Aymonet w  
his stroke: he wend to haue gone out  
of his wit, & of þ other part: he saw  
the place that was al couered with þ  
bloud of his brother, so wold not co  
stans what to doo. For Aymonet  
gaue hym so muche to doo.

**T**his hanging: Ponnet rooke  
Rohars bi the helme, & wold  
haue stragled him by syne force. But  
whan Constans sawe that: he spur  
red his hourse with the spures, and  
moued him betwene Rohars & yon  
net, so that it was for to yonnet to  
let goe his pryse wold he or no. And  
whan Aymonet sawe that Constans  
had deliuered Rohars from the han  
deg of yonnet: he went a rane vpon  
Constans and smote him with sam  
berge vpon the shelde so harde that  
he made of it two peeces. Whorlpe  
to speake: the chylzen of Reynaude  
hasted so muche the two sonnes of  
Foulques that they began to lese  
place, & were so werpe, that they as  
ked none other thyng: but for to rest  
themselves. But Aymonet & ponnet  
had none other wille: but for to fight  
still, & I tell you for certayne þ they  
were all foure soze wounded þ they

lost much bloud for they had fought  
longe. And whan Constans had so  
toured a litle: he came vpon Aymon  
et and gaue him suche a stroke: so  
that he made him a great wounde,  
but no d: ad wounde. And whā Aym  
onet sawe him so wounded: he gaue  
Constans so great a stroke vpon þ  
eare: that he bare it away withal the  
iawe bone, whan charlemayne sawe  
that great stroke: he might not for  
beare, but he said. By god now is he  
worse arayed thā he was befoze, for  
the two sonnes of Foulques of mo  
rillon be shamed and confused. Sic  
sayd Reynaude they haue well deser  
ued it, for they haue lost wyne the  
seife faillly. This hanging: Yonnet  
went vpon Rohars, and gaue him  
so great a stroke vpon his helme: þ  
he brake it, and made his swerde to  
entre in his head a finger deep. Wre  
it that the batayle lasted longe the  
one agaynst the other, and it happed  
þ by force of fighting, & one agaynst  
the other: they were fyghtyng two &  
two together, wch a bowe shot from  
eche other, and so made they two  
batayles, for Aymonet fought agaynst  
Constans, & ponnet faught agaynst  
Rohars, which was soze grieved, for  
yonnet had brought hym to the erth  
And whan ponnet sawe that he had  
brought downe Rohars: he sayd that  
it were shame to fyght with hym on  
horsebacke agaynst him on foote, so  
lighted he downe for to fyght wyth  
Rohars. But whā he had habā don  
ned his hourse: In contrynt the said  
hourse ran to þ hourse of Rohars and  
wold haue stragled him. And whā  
Charlemayne sawe that: he began to  
e. ii. laughe



## The booke of the foure

laughe with it and sayd, by my say-  
 ch we haue thre batayles. But I se  
 well that gonnet hath brought Ro-  
 hars so lowe that he may no more.  
 whan Rohars saw that he myght  
 no more endure the great strokes of  
 Ponnet: he began to crye and sayde  
 Ha saye brother Constans, where  
 are ye & ye come not & helpe me & are  
 so good a knight, and that toke first  
 the quatell in hande, wherof ic goeth  
 full euyl with vs. for yf ye succour  
 me not now: I shall dye incontinent  
 And whan Constans heard his bro-  
 ther crye thus: he left Armonet, and  
 went towarde Gonnet, for to helpe  
 hys brother, but wot it well that he  
 went not very sounde from Armo-  
 net, for he had made hym more than  
 xx. woundes. And whan Constans  
 was come to hys brother: Inconty-  
 nent he ranne vpon Ponnet with  
 his horse. And whan Armonet saw  
 that: he began to crye after Constans  
 and sayd. By my soule he hath yf  
 you full yf I named you Constans.  
 for I saw neuer more cowardes tha-  
 ye be that so renneth alway for feare  
 of me, & whan he had sayd sotheran  
 after for to succour hys brother pon-  
 net. And whan he was come there:  
 he went a fresshe vpon Constans, &  
 Constans vpon hym, & which gaue  
 hym a great stroke vpon his helme  
 but the stroke lyded vpon the horse  
 and slew hym with all. And whan  
 Armonet saw him a ground: he righ-  
 ted hym quickly & smote Constans  
 vpon his helme and it was so hard  
 that flamberge coude not entere in  
 it & the stroke lyded vpon the vyser  
 & bialt it, and a great part of his bla-

sage, so that the teeth were seen plas-  
 nely, and with yf sel yf stroke vpon yf  
 horse necke, so that he hit it in two  
 peeces, and so fell the horse dead to  
 the erth.

**S** Orabasshed was Constans  
 whan he saw his horse slain,  
 and than Armonet sayd to him. By  
 god false traytour no wo shalt thou  
 dre, ye dyd yll whan ye called euyl  
 my father of treason, whiche is as  
 true a knyght as is anye in all the  
 worlde, but now is the daye come yf  
 ye shall aye it ful deere. And whan  
 Reynaude heard his sonne speake  
 thus: he was ryght glad of it, & tha-  
 ked God therof hertely, & whan Ar-  
 monet saw Constans vpon his feet  
 agayne: he went hym vpon, and ha-  
 ked hym ryght sore with strokes so  
 yf Constans had no power to strike  
 one stroke more, but he went abacke  
 heere and there for to eschew yf stro-  
 kes of Armonet. And whan Con-  
 stans saw yf he wold no more what  
 to doo: he cast hys sheelde to the erth,  
 and tooke Armonet by the waste for  
 to wraule with hym. And whan Ar-  
 monet saw this he was not afeare  
 of it, for he was stronge and lyght so  
 tooke he Constans by the helme, and  
 drew it to warde him w such myght  
 that he pulled it from the head of  
 him. And whan Constans saw him so  
 sore handled: he cryed vpon his bro-  
 ther Rohars & sayd. Ha brother suc-  
 cour me, for I haue no power for to  
 defende my selfe. Whan Rohars  
 heard his brother call thus: he was  
 ful sore yf he might not help him for  
 he had lost so much bloud yf he myght  
 not

not well stand vpon his feete but al-  
 wayes he forced himselfe so muche  
 that he came vnto his brother Con-  
 stans, and wende to haue smitte Ay-  
 monet from behynde, but he dyd not  
 bycause Aymonet saw hym come, &  
 went and smote hym suche a stroke  
 that he felled hym to the earth. And  
 than went agayne vpon Constans,  
 and gaue him suche a stroke that  
 he smote almoste his left arme of.  
 Than began Constans to crye and  
 sayd. Ha saye brother succour me:  
 or els I am dead. Brother sayde Ro-  
 hars I can geue you nother succou-  
 res nor helpe, for I am my self nere  
 gone, and whan Charlemayn saw  
 this: he sayd, by god now are dead þ  
 sonnes of Foulques or mozilla by  
 theyr false wit. Syr sayd Ogier ye  
 ought not to recke, for they mayn-  
 teyned a false quatell, ye say trou-  
 th sayd Charlemayn. Nowe theyr  
 falsgoode apereth well. Whan Rey-  
 narde saw that his chyldren were to  
 their aboue: he was ryght glad of it.  
 but so was not Guanelon, for he  
 was so angry for it: that he became  
 as blacke as a moore. Then called  
 the sayd Guanelon Berenger, Har-  
 dock, Henry of Lyon and Bigna-  
 bell of Mozilla and sayd to them.  
 Lordes now be we all dyshonoured,  
 for þ sonnes of Foulques of Mozi-  
 lon are discomfited, I wolde sayne  
 succour them yf I durst but I feare  
 so soze þ kynge that is there wyth  
 great payssaunce. Syr sayd Hardys  
 or Hardache, Wo is me for it, but we  
 can not doo none other thing as for  
 this tyme, therfore we muste refrain  
 our wyathe, & shewe a good face, to þ

ende that no medlyng falle not vpo  
 vs, & let vs abide tyll tyme come, þ  
 we may auenge vs therof.

**A** his hanging: Aymonet saw  
 that he had smiten Constans  
 a dea woide: so was he ryght glad  
 of it, by god brother ye haue doone  
 yll þ ye haue slayne this false tray-  
 tour, for I wolde haue slayne hym  
 wyth myne owne handes, but syth  
 ye haue brought it so ferre: make an  
 ende of hym at ones and I shall goe  
 slea Rohars. Brother sayde Aymo-  
 net ye speake wel, now go slea the  
 one and I the other, for thus ought  
 men to doo wyth traytours. Tha-  
 ran the two byethern vpon theyr co-  
 nemies that laye on the ground, that  
 is to wyte vpon Constans to whom  
 he sayd al on hye, bycause all they þ  
 looked vpo should heare it. Tel me  
 Constans false traytoure, why dyd  
 ye call me father of treason: With-  
 standynge that men know wel that  
 he is one of the truest knightes of þ  
 worlde. And that he slew your father  
 in his bodye defendynge. Where as  
 your father had purchased for to  
 haue slayne hym by treaso. Now tell  
 me your falshode and confesse your  
 treason afore the kynge, or els I shal  
 now cut your throte. Aymonet sayd  
 Constans, for god haue merci on me  
 for I yelde me to you, and than he  
 tooke him his swerde. And whā Ay-  
 monet had the swerde of the said con-  
 stans: he tooke him vpon & brought him  
 afore the kynge Charlemayne, to  
 whome he said, Syr holde this tra-  
 tour & doo with him as reason re-  
 quireth, and whan Charlemayne  
 c.iii. saw



## The booke of the foure

same this: he was glad of it and said to Aymonet, freende ye haue doone well your deuoyr. I can no moze aske of you. And wit it that whan the other is daynquished: I shall make theym bothe to be hanged. Syr sayd Aymonet, doo your wyl wyth them. And whan he had sayde so: he went agayn to his brother Ponnet for to helpe him holdynge his swerde in his hande all bloudy wth the bloud of Constans and sayd to Rohars, by God false traytour ye shal dye heere anon, and wolde haue smyten hym but Ponnet that sawe that: sayd to his brother. Faye brother kea him not, noz touche he, but goe your way and tell your self, for I wyll conquere him by my selfe as ye haue doone yours, brother sayde Aymonet ye say yll, for it was ordeyned that we should eche helpe other, and whan ponnet saw that his brother wolde needes helpe agaynst his wyl: he sayde to hym. Faye brother I make mine abowe to god, if ye touche Rohars: I shal neuer loue you, brother sayde Aymonet, ye saye not well, but I shal forbere me in it please you so, but I promise you if I see you in daunger: I shall help you if ye should slea me, brother sayd ponnet I wyl wel, & than Aymonet wddrewe him a litle abacke, and than ranne ponnet vpon Rohars, & rose by agayne for to defende hymselfe, than gaue ponnet to hym so great a stroke vpon his shoulde: that his arme with his shoulde bone fell cleue of to the grounde and his swerde withal. Whan ponnet had giuen this stroke. he put his swerde agayn into his sheeth

& sayd to Rohars, false traytour ye must now confesse with thine owne mouth that Reynaude my father is no traytour, but he is one of the truest knightes of the world, and yet thou wyll not doo so: thou shalt die incontinent. And whan he had sayd so: he tooke Rohars by the helme and pulled him to hym warde so harde that he drew it fro his head, and began for to smite him with the pomell of his swerde vpon his bare head. And whan Rohars saw that he was so sore wold handled: he began for to crye & sayd good lord haue mercy vpon my soule for I know well that it is doone with my body. And whan Constans heard his brother say so: he began to weep for he coulde none other doo. And whan ponnet sawe that Rohars wolde not forsake that he had sayd, noz wolde not cry him mercy: he smote him wth his owne swerde so hard that he tooke awaye the one legge from the body of him. And than he put his foot vpon him and said. Now anon false traytour confesse your falshode, or els ye ben now dead, to the whiche thyng Rohars answered not. And whan ponnet saw that: he smote hym the head of. Whan Aymonet sawe that his brother ponnet had slayne Rohars: he was ryght glad of it, and went to hym and sayde. Brother ye haue doone valiantly, lord grauncie that ye haue slayne so this traytour, the two brethren tooke eche other by the hande and went to charlemayne, to whome Aymonet sayd in this wyse. Syr like it you that wee haue doone, for we be redy for to doo muche moze for you, if ye comaunde vs

vs. fayne sonnes said Charlemayne  
ye need not for to doo more. For ye  
haue doone pnowge, for Constans  
is ouercomen, & Rohars dead. Now  
go rest your self, and see that ye haue  
good leches for your woundes. And  
I p-promise you that I shal doo with  
the traytours as it aperteinech, and  
than Charlemayne commaunded þ  
Constans should be hanged, and the  
body of his brother by him, & whan  
the king had giuen this commaun-  
dement: Constans was anon taken  
and the body of his brother, & were  
drawen at horses tayles befoze all  
theyr l-p-nage, and than were han-  
ged as they had well deserued, whā  
they were hāged: Charlemayne said  
Lordes wot that I wolde not for a  
great thyng that it went otherwise.  
Wot it that whan Guanelon sawe  
hange the sonnes of Foulques that  
were his newelwes: he was soze an  
augred for it that he almost had lost  
hys witte. Than called he hardies  
Berenger & Walger that wot moze  
fals-hode than Lucifer, Henry of Li-  
on, Wygnabell & Gelfray, men that  
neuer dyd good and sayde to them.  
Lordes ye see howe Charlemayne  
hath doone to vs great dys-honour,  
for he hath doone hange our kinsme  
shamefully, but we shall see yet the  
day that this shame shal be aunged  
he sayd trowth þ traytour. For he be-  
trayed afterwarde the. xii. Peeres of  
Fraunce, and made them all die at  
the batayle of Bounceualcs.

**A**fter these thiges aboue said  
Reynawde of Mountatoba  
saw that his childe had vainequis-

shed þ children of Foulques: he was  
right glad of it & thanked much our  
lorde god therof, than he and his bre-  
thern went to them and asked howe  
they dyd: father sayde the children  
we doo ryght well lorde gramercy.  
Than Marde & Guichard behelde  
theyr woundes wherof they were  
glad. This hāging: came there char-  
lemayne and the children came byne  
agaynst & kneeled afoze hi, thā char-  
mayne asked them, children how is  
it with you be ye soze wounded: Syr  
sayd the children it is well with vs  
thanked be our lorde & you: we shal  
soone be whole. Than the kyng see  
for al the leches & sayd to them that  
they should looke the woundes of  
Aymon & of Ponnet, the whyche  
thyng they did wout any taryng, &  
after they sayd to the king that they  
made no doubt of them & that they  
should be soone whole. And after þ  
the Justice was toone of the sonnes  
of Foulques of Dorellō: Reynawde  
abode in Paris til his children were  
whole, & whan they were whole: they  
went to the Dalays to see the kyng  
Charlemayne, the whiche made the  
good cheere & gaue the manye fayne  
gistes as ben castels & fortresses of  
great name, thā Reynawde and hys  
brethern asked leue of the kyng, & he  
gane it the agaynst his wil, & prayed  
them that they wolde come see him  
agayne, syr sayd Reynawde, we shal  
do gladly your comatidement. Whā  
Reynawde had taken leue of þ king  
and also his brethern & childe: they  
tooke on their way toward mounta-  
ban, and they did so muche by theyr  
Journays þ they came to bourdewes  
And



The booke of the foure

And whā Reynawde had rest hym a litle: he called his chyldren afore his byethern and sayd to them, my chyldren, heare what I wyl say to you. For opeyne at this tyme that yonnet shal haue ardeyne for his parte and Symonet Mountawban, for it is not longe a goe syth I heard saye þ god sayd, that the tree þ beareth fruite: shal neuer dye, Wit it that I haue offended god greatli, and me semeth that þ tyme is now come þ I should amende my self. For I feare soze my poore soule, wherfore I shal doo my deuource for to yeelede it agayne to þ blessed lord þ made it after his Image, & whan his byethern hearde speake this: they knew wel what he wold: doo, and therfore they began to make great sorow. And whan Reynawde saw that he sayd to them, forsothe syth ye are not wylle to make suche sorow we, for ye knowe not yet, what I wyl doo, see ye not that I am yet with you: wherof are yee abashed: be not yee ryche ynoughes therre is nother of you but may keep a thousand horses in his stable. Of the other part, though I am now whole of my bodye thanked be our lord, yet wyl I gyue in my lyfe to my chyldren theyr part, to the ende þ they fall not in dyscorde after my death, and therfore I wyl that eche of you knowe from hens forthon what he shal haue. And whan Reynawde had th<sup>e</sup> ordyned for his chyldren: yonnet departed from his father with his blessing, & went to Ardeyne. Where they of the land receyued him to be their lord and made to him fewte & homage. And after þ

yonnet was gone: Reynawde & his byethern With Symonet wente to Mountawban, and whan they of Mountawban saw the þ lord: they were glad & receyued hym honourably. And whan the feast was passed: Reynawde commaunded al his subiectes that they should make the þ homage vnto hys sonne Symonet, & whan al this was doone, & that nyght was come: every man went to bed, & than Reynawde entred hys chambze & walked in it til it was mid nyght passed, than Reynawde vnclothed himself al naked, & tooke a cote of soyrullet vpon his fleshe wout any hert, & ther vpon a great mantel of the same. And thus arayed barefoote & wout any weppyn (but onlye a staffe in his hand to defende hym from the dogges) yssued out of hys chambze, & went out of the palays & came to the gate of the towne, and made it to be opened, & whā þ porter saw his lord so yll & in so poorely arrayed barefoote: he sayd to hym. Syr alas whether goe ye thus without fellowship, & so yll apointed: I wyl go awake your byethern & my lord your sonne, for ye be in great daunger of theues because ye haue nother armour nor weppyn for to defende your selfe, freende sayd Reynawde let alone, go not there. For my trust is in god that he shal keep me from all daunger. But thou shalt tell my byetherne whan thou seest theym to morowe that I greet them wel, & to my sonne also, and that they thynke al wayes to doo wel, & þ they lo. e. eche other as thei ought for to doo, and so tel them that they shal neuer  
see

see me moze as I well trove. For I  
go to saue my soule yf God giue me  
the grace to doo so, & so shall I dye  
whan it please god, for thorough mi  
cause are dead many a man, wherof  
I feele my pooze soule greued sore, &  
therfore wyll I beare payne on my  
body for it, doinge penauence all the  
remenaunt of my lyfe, and if I maye  
saue my soule: I aske none other  
thyng. And whā Reynawde had said  
this: he looked on his finger & tooke  
a ringe wh appecious stone, whiche  
was wel worth. v. mark & gaue it to  
the porter & sayd to him, my freende  
ye be wel rewarded of your seruice y  
ye haue done to me. For said y por  
ter gramercye of this gifte, but alas  
for ye put no w all your countreie in  
greate sorow for your departynge, &  
than he began to wepe right sore.

This hanging went Reynawde on  
hys waye thus arayed as ye haue  
heard, and as he went: y porter loo  
ked euermore after hym by the light  
as longe as he might see him, & whā

he might no moze see hi: he fel down  
in a swoone to the erth, and was th  
a longe while, & whan he was come  
agayne to himselfe: he made greate  
mone, & sith sayd, Ha God wyether  
goth no w my lord so poozely arayed  
after he had made great sorow  
a longe whyle: he sith the gace again  
and went into his house. And whan  
he was there: he looked vpon y ring  
that Reynawde had giuen him, and  
knew wel that it was a ryche gyfte,  
wherof he was glad. ¶ We shal leue  
hcert to speake a litle of the valyaunt  
Reynawde of Mountraban, y goth  
for to saue his soule, and to doo pe  
naunce for hys synnes thorough  
the woodes lookyng downwarde:  
and we shall speake of his brethern,  
and of his sonne Aymon.

¶ How after y Reynawde was gone  
from Mountraban neuer to retorne  
his brethern and his sonne Aymon  
made great sorow, whan they knew  
of it, that he had not take leue of the





The booke of the four

**N**ow sheweth the hystory that  
whan the morowe came and  
that Armonet & his vnclis were vp  
they went to þe churche weenyng to  
haue Reynawde there as they were  
wont. And whan they saw hym com  
not to matyng: they meruayled soze  
there was come his chapeleyn for  
to say matyng there with hym, the  
whyche whan he founde not his may  
ster in the churche: he was all abal  
shed and spered after him to his bre  
thern. Spz sayd Alarde, I drewe he  
be sicke for god let vs go see how he  
dooth, and than he wet to seeke him  
in his chambze, where they founde  
him not, wherof they wende all to  
haue ben desperate. Lordes sayde Al  
larde now we be we lost, for heere ben  
his govmes his shert, his shone his  
sworde and all his armours, now  
is he gone from vs. I see it well in  
pooze arai, god be with him. And as  
they were thus makyng theyr mone:  
came in the portier that made greates  
sorrow for þe loue of his mayster Rey  
nawde. And whan he was come in  
to the chabze: he began to crye as he  
had be from hymselfe & sayde. faye  
lordes what shal we doo sith þe we  
haue losse our lordes for he is gone  
his wayes wulwarde & barefoote w  
a loze staffe in hys hãde, & he sendeth  
you greting by me, & prayeth you for  
god that if euer ye loued him: that ye  
myll wo:ship eche other and that e  
nerue man haue his parte as he hath  
deuyled it. And he doth you wit that  
ye shall neuer see hym, for he is gone  
to saue hys soule, & so hath he giuen  
me the ringe of his finger, þe ye may  
see heere.

**W**han Alarde, Guicharde and  
Richard, & Armonet heard  
thesetidiges: they tooke so great sor  
row at the hert þe they fell downe in  
a swoone to the erth, & whan they  
were come agayne to themself: they  
began to make a ryght great sorrow  
and so meruaylous that he that had  
seen it: hys hert had be full hard, but  
he should haue wept for pitie. Alas  
sayd Alarde my fayre byother Rey  
nawde, ye haue lefte vs in muche  
great sorrow. Certes it had be muche  
better for vs that ye had slayne vs  
all, than for to haue lefte vs in this  
wile. For from heere forth we be no  
thyng. And whan he had sayd so he  
fell agayne in a swoone. And whan  
he was come agayne to himselfe: he  
pulled hys heres of his beard and  
scratched his visage. Alas my bro  
ther sayd Rycharde howe shall we  
now liue without you: Alas now we  
haue we lost hi by whome we haue  
had so great honour in this worlde,  
alas my brother there is not pour ly  
ke vnler the cope of heauen that enre  
bare swerde, sherd or speare, sith þe  
we haue losse you: we may say fare  
well the Joy of this worlde, & whan  
he had sayd so: his here swelled so þe  
he lost his speche so that he coude  
not speake a good wyll after. Of  
Armonet and of Guicharde, what  
shall we saye: I promyse you none  
can tell wretchedly halfe of the sorrow  
that they made, so that it was great  
pitie to beholde. Great sorrow was  
made of all four for the loue of Rey  
nawde that was gone as ye haue  
heard, prayng our lord to be w him  
and for to comforte hys byetherne  
But

**B**ut presently leueth the hystorie to speake of Blaroe, Guicharde, Wycharde and Aymonet that were at Mountaiohan making their mone and returneth to speke of Reynawde that was gone at his aduenture, seeking his wyde for to saue his soule.

**H**ow Reynawde went to Coleyn upon the Rine, where he found that men edified the churche of saynt Peter. And there tooke hym a wyll for to serue there the masons for þe loue of our lord, and did so, but at the last the other labourers had so great entye because he dyd better hys deuoyce than they and that he was better loued than they of the maysters, for the good service that he did: that they slew him and put him in a sacke and casted hym in the water of þe Rine. But by the wyll of god: his body appeared about the water makinge great myracles, so that he was named a Saynt that daye that he was buryed.

**I**n this party sheweth the hystorie þe whan Reynawde was departed from mountaiohan: he took his way through the woodes & went a longe whyle that he ate but Apples and Medlers wilde all that day, and whan the night was come: he layde him down vnder a tree, and as he wolde slepe: he made the sygne of the crosse vpon him, and commended to our lord and slept till it was day. And whan the day appered: Reynawde rose vp & went on his wayes through the wood, and wente euermore through the trauers of þe woodes well the space of. viii. dayes without any other meat, but wilde fruit and so longe he wente by hys tourneys: that he came out of the woodes and incontinent he founde a house of religion where he abode þe night, the monkes woulde haue giuen him meat but he tooke nothing but bread and water. And whan the day came: he went on his way, & dyd so muche day by day that he came to Coleyne vpon the Rine, and whan Reynawde was come to the Citie: he founde the churche of saynt Peter a makinge, where were many masons and many labourers that serued them. And whan he saw this: he wente into it, and kneeled before the hie auter and made his prayers bi great deuotion. And as he was thus kneelynge full busely aboute his orysons: he came sodaynlye into hys mynde that he wolde abyde there and serue the masons for þe honour of god & of saynt Peter. And whan he had made hys prayer: he rose vp & began to looke þe place well & vpon the workemen that wrought



## The booke of the foure

wrought there, and sayd to hym self  
 that it was better to serue the Ma-  
 sons, than to walke styl in the forest  
 among þ wilde bestes. & whan rep-  
 na Wode had bethought hym wel: he  
 went to the mayster mason and said  
 to hym. Mayster I am a straunger  
 and haue no gooddes of the worlde,  
 wherof I maye lyue, if it please you  
 I shall serue the Masons of suche  
 thynges as them needeth for theyr  
 werke as a poore labourer needeth,  
 and whan the mayster mason heard  
 Reynawode speke so: and saw he was  
 a rail man and wel made: he answ-  
 red to hym sweetly in this wise. My  
 freende ye seme not to be pssued of a  
 poore house, for ye are moze lyke a  
 kynge than a mason or a labourer.  
 wherfore I dare not put you in wor-  
 ke by no wise. Notwithstanding þ  
 ye be thus poorely arayed. Mayster  
 sayd Reynawode, care ye not therfore  
 for and it plese you: I shall serue you  
 truly after my power. My freend said  
 the mayster of þ werke, syth it please  
 you to doo so: it pleaseth me ryght  
 well, but I wyll not receyue you for  
 that prync that I doo knowes, for I  
 shall pay you in conscience, after the  
 werke that ye shall doo. mayster said  
 Reynawode I am wel content. Tha  
 the mayster mason sayd to hym, my  
 freende goe helpe these foure that ye  
 see there, that may not bere the sto-  
 ne, for they be but trauantes, mayster  
 sayd Reynawode, be not angry with  
 the poore folke, for I wyll go fetch  
 it to you anon, frend sayd þ mayster  
 payne not your selfe thereto, for it is  
 not in your pynsaunce whout ye had  
 moze helpe than they like knowes. For

the stone is of great weight, mayster  
 let me alone sayd Reynawode I shall  
 bypunge it to you, and whan Rey-  
 nawode had sayd so: he cast his man-  
 tell fro him & came to the foure men  
 that helde the stone and sayd to them  
 Lordes and it please you, goe fetch  
 another stone, and I shall beare the  
 same, freende sayde the foure men ye  
 say well if ye can, & we wyll let you  
 doo with a good wyll. Than Rey-  
 nawode tooke vp þ stone and charged  
 it vpon his necke, and bare it vpon  
 the walle where it should be set, and  
 whan the other labourers saw that:  
 they were abashed & mervayled grea-  
 tely of it, and begā to say the one to  
 the other heere is woder fro whens  
 may this deupl become, we shall ne-  
 uer dwine but a litle as longe as he  
 is with vs heere. And whan the ma-  
 ster masons saw Reynawode beare so  
 great a stone & so heuy: he was glad  
 of it. And whan Reynawode had byou-  
 ght the stone there as he should be set  
 the mayster sayd to hym, freend put  
 not downe the stone yet from you.  
 So sayd Reynawode I shall wel holde  
 it in my armes as longe as ye wyll,  
 than the mayster made the place redi  
 there as þ stone should be set, & whā  
 he was redy: he sayd to Reynawode,  
 let go the stone my freende whan ye  
 will, and blessed be god & the houre  
 that euer ye were bozne, & whan Rey-  
 nawode had set downe the stone: the  
 mayster comaūded hym þ he should  
 fet hym mortar, whā good wyll sayde  
 Reynawode. Than came Reynawode  
 doūne and labed of þ mortar moze  
 thā .x. other me should haue doone, &  
 bare it to þ maister mason & sayd to  
 hym

hym. Mayster care not for nothyng  
for I shall serue you well of al thing  
that ye need by the grace of god, and  
see that ye werke as faste as ye can  
for I shall bringe you moze stones  
and moztter my selfe alone than yee  
shall con occupye; but ye haste you  
well. And whan the mayster Ma-  
son heard Keynawde speake thus:  
he was merueyled and sayd. By my  
soule frende yf ye doo halfe that yee  
say: ye shall doo ynoughe. Then wet  
Keynawde agayne and brought vp  
so many stones that he made with it  
a great hepe vpon þ walles ynough  
for to occupye at ones all the mas-  
ons that were there, and than Keynawde  
sayde to the. faysse maysters thinke  
to werke wel, for whan these stones  
ben layde and this moztter occupied  
I shall bringe you moze. And whā  
the masons heard him speke so: they  
began to say amonge them that the  
churche of saynt Peter had founde a  
good labourer, & that he ought to be  
well rewarde. By my sayth may-  
ster sayde Keynawde I care not for  
no money. And whan came at eyn  
þ the labozers should leaue werke &  
receiue theyr money: the Mayster  
Mason set him downe for to paye þ  
labourers, which tooke. v. penys a  
day. Than the mayster called Key-  
nawde and sayde to hym, come hy-  
ther my faysse frende and take heere  
what it plesse you, for ye haue serued  
better than any of thother. than put  
himself forth, & tooke a peny soze a-  
gaynst his wyl. And whan the mai-  
ster saw that: he sayde to hym, by the  
bodi of God my faysse frend ye shall

haue twenty moze for els my confu-  
sion should be charged wyth your  
labour, and yf ye wyl werke: ye shall  
euery daye haue so muche, for there  
was neuer so good a labourer as ye  
be one. Mayster sayde Keynawde yf  
ye wyl that I shall werke any moze:  
giue me but one peny, whiche shall  
be for to bye bread for to susteyne w-  
all my body, for this that I doo: I  
doo it for the loue of God & for none  
other. frende sayde the Mayster, I  
wyl not trouble you no moze, doo  
as ye wyl. Than tooke Keynawde  
leue of the mayster Mason and went  
to the towne for to get hymself a lod-  
ginge and bought a peny wothe  
of bread, and so had he no moze to his  
supper but bread and a litle water.  
And whan he had eaten: he wet and  
layed hym vpon a lytle strawe for  
to take his rest that nyght. and whā  
the day was come: Keynawde rose vp  
and went to his worke and founde  
no body there, and than he went to  
the Churche and sayd his prayers a-  
foze an ymage of our Ladye. This  
hangyng: the Masons came for to  
goe to theyr worke. And whan they  
were vpon the walle: they asked yf  
the stronge man were not com. May-  
ster answered Keynawde I am heere  
wyl ye any thyng: frende sayd thā  
the mayster Mason, bring ys stones  
and moztter. Wy sayd Keynawde I  
shall wyth a good wyl and that a-  
non. Than set he stones and moztter  
in great plentie, and brought it vp  
vnto them. And I promyse you that  
Keynawde laded moze at ones than  
xb. other dyd, and thus serued Key-  
nawde



## The booke of the foure

natwde the masons in the churche of  
 saynt Peter at Colepn many dayes  
 and euery day at euen he tooke hys  
 peny of the mapster and nomoze for  
 to by hym bread was ye haue heard  
 for he ate neuer but bread & dranke  
 water. Thus liued Reynawde there  
 a longe while seruing there the ma-  
 sons as it is sayd, for the loue of god  
 and of saynt Peter, and dyd so trulpy  
 his deuoyr that the other labourers  
 had great enuy at him, for they were  
 all set at nought (for floue of hym)  
 of the masōs, for the great seruyce y  
 he did to them. Soze an angred were  
 the other labourers whan they saw  
 that they were all thus forsaken &  
 all set a syde and sayde to eche other  
 in this wyse. By god we be diffamed  
 by thys greute knaue that dothe so  
 muche labour, and therfore we be  
 put a syde of the mapsters, the greute  
 deuyl brought hym well heere, for  
 we shall neuer get nothyng as long  
 as he is heere, for he seruethe all the  
 Masōs alone of all that they need  
 for to haue a thus we ben left alone.  
 Then sayd one of them, my fello wes  
 yf ye wyl beleue me: we shal slea him  
 How say ye that sayde a nother: ye  
 wot well it is impossible to vs to  
 doo so, for he is horrible stronge, and  
 yf we set vpon hym: he shall kyll vs  
 all. freende sayd he I shall tell you  
 how we shal doo so. Se you ponder  
 vawte by the great houses: yea sayd  
 choother. wit it y the greute knaue go-  
 ethe a slepeth there euery night whan  
 we ar gone home. And therfore yf ye  
 wil beleue me: we shal go this night  
 there where he is a slepe, and we shal

take eche of vs a Pikeaxe, or els an  
 hamer, and therwith we shall dresse  
 the brayne out of his head, and whā  
 we haue thus slayne hym: we shall  
 put hym in a greute sacke and shall  
 cast him in the riuer, that is there  
 nyghe, & thus shalbe nomoze hearde  
 of hym. And whan the other labour-  
 ers heard this traytoure speake thes  
 accorded all to his counsel, and they  
 dyd as they were purposed soner  
 than they wende they should haue  
 doo. For at noone whan the Masōs  
 left worke and went to theyr dinner:  
 the poore Reynawd went and rested  
 hymselfe vnder the bawte, where he  
 was wont to rest hymselfe euery  
 nyght. And whan the traytours saw  
 that they came to him that fyrst had  
 spoken the treason and tooke hym a  
 greute hamer of a mason in hys hāt.  
 And whan they spyed that Reynawd  
 was fallen a sleape: thys traytoure  
 wyth the hamer went to Reynawde  
 softlye and smote hym with the ha-  
 mer well deepe into the brayne. And  
 whan Reynawde felte the stroke y  
 the traytoure had gyuen hym: he set  
 his armes in maner of a crosse vpon  
 his brest and sayd in this maner. O  
 good lord Iesu Chyrt haue mercye  
 on my soule, and wyl pardon them  
 that hath brought me to my death,  
 and whan he had sayd these wordes:  
 the soule departed out of the bodye.  
 And whan the traytoure had thus  
 slayne Reynawde: they put hym in  
 to a greute sacke that they had orde-  
 ned therfore, and than they laded the  
 cart wherein they brought the stones  
 with the bodye of hym, and so carped  
 him

hym into the ryuer of Ryne, wherin  
they cast him, & whā they had doone  
so they laded the carre with stones  
& broughe them to the church woꝝke  
as they were wont to doo, & as they  
were by the way: they met the ma-  
ster mason, that sayd to the. By my  
fayth galantes I can you now tha-  
ke for ye mende your selfe. For ye  
haue doone great diligence syth dy-  
ner that ye haue laded so many sto-  
nes, and that ye ben so fette wyth  
them to the woꝝke warde. After  
sayd the traytours mocke not wyth  
ys so, but go to your purse and giue  
ys some drynkyng money.

**S**o meruayled was þe may-  
ster of that he saw his labou-  
ers moze dysgent than they were  
accustomed. Than the labourers be-  
gan to say to þe mayster of the woꝝke  
by maner of a mocke, where is that  
great lurdyn that he helpeth not now  
I holde hym gone without leue, by  
cause he might not labour no leget,  
for we heard say that he should neuer  
ceasse tll he had founde hys wyfe  
agayne. And whan the mayster ma-  
son heard that: he was soꝝp and said  
so them agayne. By my fayth I be-  
leue that ye haue chased hym away,  
but I promyse you yf I can wot that  
ye haue doone so: it were better for  
you that ye were at Jherusalem. After  
sayd the labourers ye may well  
say to ys what ye wyl, but we dyd  
neuer say ought to him that shoulde  
displease hym. And whan the noble  
Reynawde was thus caste into the  
ryuer of Ryne by the labourers of

the church of saynt Peter: ye must  
wot that he went not to the botome  
of the water, but went harde aboue  
the water a longe the streame. And at  
that: our Loꝝde she wed for hym a  
fayre myzard. For all the fische of  
the ryuer gathered them aboue the  
corps, and by the strength of the fische  
thes it was taried, and went no fer-  
ther with the streame by the wyll of  
our loꝝde. And the great fische put  
theymsel vnder hym and bare hym  
vpon the water so that he apered to  
euery mans syght. And there the fische  
bare him so vp vnto nyght. And  
whan the night was come: apered a-  
boue the corps a great quantyte of  
torches by the vertue of our loꝝde, &  
aungelles that songe there so melo-  
diously: that they that heard it wolde  
neuer haue gone fro it. And to saꝝe  
trouth there was so grete lycht a-  
boue the corps that all they þe sawe  
it wende that all the water of the  
Ryne had be a fyre. And whan the  
folke of the cite saw so grete a mi-  
racle: they ran all thither bothe men  
and women and children. And also  
the archebysshop of saynt Peter wēt  
thither withal his college in a fayre  
processyon, syngyng by great deuo-  
tion, and tarped vpon the Ryne, for  
they durste not goe no ferther, and  
they saw the fische that bare by the  
Corps aboue the water. And whan  
they that were there saw that: they  
were abasshed & meruayled greatly  
what it might be, and began to saꝝe  
þe one to the other. God what mai he  
be, for whome our loꝝde sheweth so  
fayre a myzard: Loꝝdes sayd þe arche-  
bysshop



## The booke of the foure

bysshop. I shall tell you as myne au-  
upfe giueth me. Wyt it that it is the  
bodye of some saynt that our Lorde  
wyl haue woꝛshypped that is come  
heere from som where, whiche God  
Wyl not that he be lost, noꝛ drowned  
in the water. See ye not how the fis-  
shes holde hym aboue the water, by  
the vertue of our lorde. Than þe bis-  
shop commaunded that men should  
go see what it was, and anon folke  
went there w botcs, & they founde þ  
it was the great man that was one  
of the labourers with the masons in  
the churche of saynt Peter. And whā  
the mayster of the worke sawe this:  
he was greatly abashed, and went  
to them that had slayne hym, & sayd  
to them in thys maner of wyse. Ye  
hoꝛefong faile traytours, ye haue  
slayne þ good man, say ye þ trouth,  
foꝛ if ye deny it: I shall proue it vpon  
you. And whan þ labourers heard þ  
maister mason speke thus: they begā  
to crye, and sayd. By God mayster,  
we haue doone it without doubt foꝛ  
enuy that we had at hym. And ther-  
foꝛ let vs be drowned, hāged oꝛ dra-  
wen, oꝛ what iustice ye Wyl. foꝛ we  
haue well deserued foꝛ to be punys-  
shed. And whan the archebysshop  
hearde the traytours speake so: he  
began foꝛ to wepe ful tenderly, and  
al his college also. And the archebis-  
shop was counsellid that he should  
let go the murderers at theyꝛ auen-  
ture foꝛ to do penance foꝛ theyꝛ sin-  
nes, the whiche thynge the archebis-  
shop dyd wth a good Wyl. Than  
was the bodye of Reynawde brought  
to lande, and was put vpon a carre

foꝛ to beare hym to the church, wher  
as he was had woꝛshyppfully wth  
saynt procession. And whan þ corps  
was in the church: the archebysshop  
made him redy foꝛ to syng the masse  
by great deuotion. And whan that þ  
seruice was doone: the archebysshop  
wolde haue gone a procession wth  
the corps aboute the churche, & com-  
maunded foure lordes þ were there  
that they should bere the corps. And  
than the barons wolde haue doone  
hys commaundement, but whan  
they came therto: they coulde not  
moue the corps by no strength that  
they could put therto. Soꝛe mer-  
uayled were the barons, whan they  
saw that, and sayd vnto eche other.  
How may we well knowe that we  
be not woꝛthy foꝛ to touche this ho-  
ly corps. foꝛ we be wicked synners  
wherfoꝛ let vs go foꝛ to shryue vs &  
put our selfe in good estate. And  
while that they spake thus together:  
the corps rose vp of hym selfe, and  
was boꝛne, no man knoweth howe  
out of the churche into the carre, whi-  
che anon moued and went his way-  
es strenght out of the cite, wherof  
they were al greatly meruayled, and  
whan the carre was out of Colepne:  
he went a pace all the hye waye. And  
whan the people saw that: they begā  
all to wepe bycause þ corps wolde  
not abyde. Than sayd the archebis-  
shop vnto them. Syꝛs now may ye  
well see that this is a holy corps by  
the great myꝛacles that our Lorde  
sheweth by him now, and al this day  
afoꝛe vs all. Wherfoꝛ let vs goe af-  
ter him foꝛ to woꝛship him. foꝛ it  
were

were not very well doone for to let hym go thus alone. My lord said þat people, ye say wel, & than al the clergy and al the comyn people litte and great that myght go: folowed þat corps. And ye ought to wit that in all the cite of Coleyn abode nother man nor woman, but went with þat corps and all the clergy folowed after singyng in great deuotion. So muche went the carte that he came to a lytle townethat is called Croyne, and there he abode styll. And ye must wit that our lord dyd shew there many fayre myracles for the loue of the holy body, for al speke people of what sykenes it was that came there for to worshyp the holpe bodye: were whole incontinent. This happed of the noble knight Reynawde of moustauban, as ye haue hearde. And ye ought to wyt that the renome of the holy body was so spred all aboute, that folke came to Croyne where it abode from ferre wayes for to seeke hym, and he made there so fayre myracles: that of all the Realme and of almayne folke drewethether. And so muche were worthe the offringes that were done there within a short whyle: that of a litte chapell there as the bodye rested, whiche was of our lady, is now a royall churche and a great. And whan the holy body was abyden in this lytle chapell as it is sayd, where god made contynually myracles: the archebysshop of Coleyn & al the clergy came to the corps & vncouered his visage that euery body should see him þat came there, yf haply þat any man or woman myght

know hym for to haue his name, for none coulde name hym, but the holy corps. But there came no man that could know. And whan the archebysshop saw þat no body could say what he was: he was soze for it; for yf he had knowen his name: he wold haue put him in a shryne of golde, bicause of the great myracles that he made dayly, for he made the deafe to heare, þat blynde to see, the lame to go & cryght many that were dombe he made to speake, & often times apated sapys of wexe byrennyng aboute the corps.

**N**ow shall ye heare howe the noble Reynawde was knowen. Ye ought to wyt that the brethren of Reynawde, that is to wyt Alarde, Guicharde & Richarde were on a daye vpon mountayne so soze that they could heare no tidinges of the brethren Reynawde. Then came a pylgrime forthby that salued the barons. Pylgrime sayde Alarde, fro whys come ye: yf ye wot any tydinges tel it vs I pray you. Lordes said the pylgrime with a good wyll I shall tell you that I know. Wyt it that I come out of Aimaïne, from a towne that is called Croyne by Coleyne vpon the ryne, where I haue seen many great myracles doone of god, for the loue of a man that came to the litte but late ago, the which was so great that euery body said there that he was a Gyaunte. And wyt ye that whan he came there: þat he sawe men make the churche of saynt Peter, so dyd he present there hym scrupce to the mayster mason, the whiche recey



## The booke of the foure

ned hym gladly. Shortly for to say: this great man dyd wonder of bearing of stones and of moxter. For he bare moze at ones: than .xv. other of the labourers that were there with hym, and he was all day without meate saue at euen: he tooke a peny that he gate, for no moze he wolde haue for hys labour a day, and therewith he bought hym a peny lose, and drank none other to it, but water, and then he went to his rest vpon a litle straw vnder a great baute. And ye muste wite, that this great man was well loued of the maysters masons of the sayd churche, whiche wolde often haue gyuen him meate and wyne, & moze money. But he wolde neuer take nothyng but a peny onely by þe day, for to bye hym selfe a peny lose as I told you afoze. He serued so well all the masons there that they were moze contente of hym alone: then of the other labourers. And whan the labourers saw that they were so litle set by for þe loue of this great man: they were soze an angred, and tooke great enuy at hym and conspired together for to slea hym shamefully. So dyd they aspye hym where as he slept vnder the baute, whyle that þe mayster masons were gone to thei dyner: and then one of thei came to hym with great hammer in his hand and bryned him, then they put hym in a sacke and caried him in a carte to the Riuer of the Wyne, where they cast hym. And wite it that whā they had doone so: our lord shewed there a great myracle. For al the fishes of the Wyne assembled them a-

boute the corps, and made it abyde in one place aboute the water. And whan that the nyght was come: angels were heard there, whiche songe melodiously the seruyce of the dead so hye: that all they of the Litle might haue heard them, and it seemed that al þe water about hym had ben in a fyre of the greates lyght that was seen there. Then came the archebysshop of Coleyne with all his colles and made the corps to be taken and brought in a Carte to the Churche. And whan he was there: the Archebysshop songe masse, for this was in the moynynge, and whan that the seruyce was doone: the Archebysshop sayd to foure Lordes whiche were there, that they should take by the corps for to haue him into his graue with saye professyon. But these foure batons coude neuer moue hym from þe place where as he was. But the corps incontynent to euery bodys sight, that was there, was brought into the carte agayne, with the twinkelyng of an eye, and sodeynly the carte departed, and wente a way alone out of the towne, as good a pace as thowge ten horses had drawen at it, whiche was soze agaynst the Wyll of the people that wept full tenderly, because that it wolde not abyde with them. But all they of the Cyte, bothe litle and great went a processyon after it, vnto a litle town where the corps of the great man abode still whiche is called Cropne in a litle chapell of our lady, where he doth now many a saye myracle, for I ensure you þe al the sick folkes that

¶ Seeke him there be made whole, & returne to their home in good helth. And so I haue left there the archebisshop of Colepne, and all the clergie that hath doo make of þ offerynges that ben gauen there vnto thys holy corps a fayre place and a roial churche, there as the sayd chapell of our lady was also.

**W**han Alarde, Guicharde and Rycharde, heard the pilgryme speake so: they began all thre to weepe ful soze for pitie that they had of theyz brother reynawde, for well they knew, it was he of Whome the Pilgryme spake of. Alas my brethren sayd Rycharde. Now ben we well destroyed, and vndoone for ever more. For I know wel that it is our deere brother that we haue sought so longe. Wyt it þ the thre brethren made there so great sozow, that it cannot be reherced. And whan they had made this greute sozow: they tooke leaue of the pilgryme and thanked hym, and went to make them redy, & than tooke theyz waye toward Croyne, by Colepne vpon the Ryne. And they dyd so muche by theyz four neys: that they came vnto Croyne. And lyghted befoze the churche they and theyz folke, wyere they found so great flowpynge and gatherpynge of the people and so great pzele of folke: þ wpth great payne they myght entre wpthin the Church. And whan the knyghtes were within: they wente nyghe the holpe corps that was vpon a fayre bere all vncouered, and

saw so great lyght aboute the corps as there had ben an hundred torches. Than wente they as nyghe hym as they coulde for to looke hym in the face and anon they knew that he was theyz brother, & with that they looked vpon hym: they fell downe in a swoone to the erth. And whan the archebisshop saw that he was soze abashed and sayd to some of his College. Syys I beleue that we shall soone know that we haue desired so long. For I wene that these lordes knowe wel this holy corps. This hanging: were the thre brethren come agayn to themselfe, and began to crye and fare as they had ben mad, than sayd Alarde al weepyng in thys maner, Alas what shall we now capteles knyghtes doo, pooze of honour and of al wele, syth that we haue lost our brother by Whome we were so soze doubted and dzed: Alas wete brother who was so haty to laye hande on you: I beleue that he knew not your debonarytie & kindnes, for he wolde not haue slayne you so cruellye. And than he turned hym towarde bys two brethren and sayd. Wy fayre brethren we ought wel to be soze, syth þ we haue lost our brother Reinalde that was all our hope our trust and comfort. Alas sayde Rycharde, brother Reinalde whi had ye euer that courage for to habandone vs as ye did: seyng that ye loued vs so muche: Alas ye stole awaye yourself by night, for to come amonge þ handes of the murderers, that haue slayne you so cruellye. Alas they wyt not þ great damage that is of your death.

Whan



## The booke of the foure

Whan the thre brethren had wepte  
proughe in great sobbynges and la-  
mentacions, for þat one of theys deere  
brother Reynawde: they went & kisse  
fed the corpes on the mouth, the one  
after the other, and with this they fel  
downe agayne in swoone. And whā  
they were come agayn to themselves:  
Archarde began to crye and saye. Alas  
saye bretheru, now ben we loste  
for euer. For we shall nomore be set  
by, nother doubred, nor ryed more  
than children, wherfoze I say that  
we should slea our selfe, to the ende  
that we may be with you, for we ou-  
gth not to liue after your death. Wit  
it þat who had be there he should haue  
had an harte hert but he should haue  
wept for to see þat thre brethren make  
theys mone.

**W**han the archebischop and þe  
Burgers that were there  
sa in the great sorow that the thre  
knyghtes made: the good Archebys-  
shop came to them and sayd, Lordes  
be ye not dyspleased of that I shall  
say to you. As to my leynge, ye  
doe not wel for to make so great so-  
row nor to discomfote your selfe so  
much as ye do, but rather ye should  
make great joy, and be glad for your  
brother that is a saynt in heuen, the  
whyche had suffred martyrdom in þe  
seruice of our lord, wherof ye may  
see that he rewardeth him wel for it.  
For ye see now before your eyes the  
great miracles þat he dooth, wherfoze  
I pray you that ye will recomfote  
your selfe. And tell vs yf it please  
you what ye ben, and howe is this

holy body named, and what his na-  
me was whā he liued in this worlde  
to the ende that his name be wyrtten  
aboute his tombe. And whan his bre-  
thren heard the archebischop speake  
thus: they began a lytle to leue theys  
sorow. And than Arde that was  
theldest after Reynawde sayd to him  
Lorde sythe it please you to knowe  
what we be and howe this corpes is  
called: I shall tel it you without faute.  
Ye muste wote that this corpes was  
called (whan he was amonge vs ali-  
ue) Reynawde of Mountaiban the  
ryght worthy knyght, and we thre  
that ben heere are his brethren, and  
wel I wote that ye haue heard speake  
of the foure sonnes of Armon, the  
whyche Charlemayne the great king  
of fraunce warred so longe. Than  
whan the archebischop and the peo-  
ple hearde that they were the foure  
sonnes of Armon, of the whyche all  
the worlde spake, and that the holy  
corpes was the good Reynawde of  
Mountaiban the noble and valiant  
knyght: they began all to weepe for  
pitie and for ioye, bycause they sawe  
al before them the moste noble & wo-  
thiest knyght of the worlde, that in  
his lyfe was more to dyede than any  
man alpyue, that was dead in the ser-  
uice of our lord, doinge penance.  
After that these thre brethren had  
thus left a lytle theys sorow: they  
made theys brother to be layde in his  
tombe, that was right riche, that the  
archebischop had doone make where  
the holy corpes resteth yet at this day  
as euidently is knowne, and he is  
called saynt Reynawde the martyr.

The

The memoꝝ of him was that time  
put in wyrtynge auctentikly, & euer  
yere is there kept for him great solem  
nitie and feast. And after the sepul  
turyng of the holpe cozps: the bre  
thern went agayne into theyꝝ owne  
Countrie.

**M**y saye lordes who that this  
present booke shall rede or  
heare, we shall pray our lord god &  
the glourous Saynt Reynawde the  
marter, that he giue vs grace to per  
seuer, and continue our lyfe in good  
woꝝdes, by the whiche we may haue  
at our endyng the life that euer shall  
last.

A M E N.

Here finisheth the hystoꝝ of the  
noble & valiaunt knyght Reynawde  
of Mownteban, and his thre bre  
thern. Imprinted at London, by  
Wynkyn de Worde, the. viii. daye of  
Maye, and yere of our lord. M. C  
LCC. liii. at the request and com  
maundement of the noble and puis  
saunt erle, the Erle of Oxenforde,  
And now Imprinted in the yere of  
our Lord. M. CCCC. liiii. the  
vi. daye of Maye, By wylliam Cop  
land, for Thomas Petet.